



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

J  
24 C. 13 *P. g. 18*













**A**  
**HANDBOOK**  
**OF THE**  
**CHINESE LANGUAGE.**

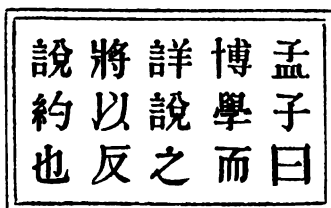
“ Die Sprachlehre lehrt nicht eigentlich, wie man *sprechen soll*, sondern nur, wie man *spricht*. . . . Die Sprachlehre ist nur eine Physiologie der Sprache; sie kann nur in so fern lehren, wie man sprechen *soll*, als sie in uns die innern Bildungsgesetze der Sprache zum Bewusstseyn bringt, und uns dadurch in Stand setzt, zu beurtheilen, ob die Sprechweise im Einzelnen diesen Gesetzen gemäss sei, oder nicht.”—BECKER's *Organism der Sprache*, page 9.

A  
HANDBOOK  
OF THE  
CHINESE LANGUAGE.  

---

PARTS I AND II,  
GRAMMAR AND CHRESTOMATHY,  
PREPARED WITH A VIEW  
TO INITIATE THE STUDENT OF CHINESE IN THE RUDIMENTS  
OF THIS LANGUAGE, AND TO SUPPLY MATERIALS  
FOR HIS EARLY STUDIES.

BY  
JAMES SUMMERS,  
MAGDALEN HALL, OXFORD,  
PROFESSOR OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE, KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON,  
LATE AN ASSISTANT IN THE LIBRARY OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM.



OXFORD:  
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.  
MDCCCLXIII.

"Study things profoundly, and investigate the precise meaning of what you learn, and then you will acquire the means of forming a comprehensive system of principles."—*Free translation of the extract from the works of MANG-TSE, which is printed on the title-page.*



## ADVERTISEMENT.

---

It has been deemed advisable to publish, in their present form, Parts I and II of the *Handbook of the Chinese Language*, in order to meet the demand which now exists for the work. They are complete in themselves, but when Parts III and IV—the Exercises and Dictionary—are finished, (which, it is hoped, may be done in a few months,) the whole will form a perfect apparatus for the student of Chinese to commence with in this country.





## P R E F A C E.

---

THE intention of the author in preparing this work for the press was to make a text-book for students of the Chinese language who attend his lectures at King's College, London, and to assist others who might commence the study of the language in this country, as well as to aid those who enter for the first time upon this study in China itself.

In order to show the need of some such book, it will be necessary fairly to pass in review the various works which are within reach of, or which may be supposed to exist for the student,—to point out candidly what appear to be their defects, and also to note their real value as aids to the study of Chinese.

The investigation of Chinese in this country, and even in Europe generally, is but of recent date. The vague expressions collected from the works of the Jesuits on the subject, though correct for the most part in themselves, needed a Jesuit to explain them and to guard the wayward fancy from misinterpreting them. The best rules and the deepest truths are often misunderstood because there is no teacher at hand to purge the *idola* from the mind and clear it of its earlier prejudices. The colouring of every thing that concerns the Chinese has been heightened by the romantic accounts of this nation given by the early historians of the East, and the imagination has supplied much that was not found in the reality.

The first work of a systematic character on the Chinese language was written by a Dominican, Père Varo, and printed from wooden blocks in Canton in 1703\*.

Theoph. Sigefr. Bayer wrote a work in Latin, which was published in St. Petersburg in 1730†. He was however not in a position to render much service to the subject which he attempted to explain. The work is made up

---

\* The title ran thus:—"Arte de la lengua mandarina, compuesto por el M. R.<sup>o</sup> P.<sup>o</sup> Francisco Varo, de la sagrada orden de N. P. S. Domingo, acrecentado y reducido a mejor forma, por N.<sup>o</sup> H.<sup>o</sup> Fr. Pedro de la Piñuela, p.<sup>o</sup> y commissario prov. de la Mission serafica de China; Añadio se un Confesionario muy util y provechoso para alivio de los nuevos ministros. Impreso en Canton, año de 1703." It consisted of 64 double leaves, 8<sup>o</sup>., printed in the Chinese manner. The work is very rare, but a copy is to be found among the Sloane MSS. of the British Museum.

† Museum Sinicum, in quo Sinicæ linguæ et litteraturæ ratio explicatur. Petropol. 1730. 2 vols. in 8<sup>o</sup>.

of various matter collected from the works of the Jesuits, which are commented on in a very vague and unsatisfactory manner. *M. Abel-Rémusat* writing, in the preface to his *Grammaire*, on this book says: "The greater part of this Grammar is taken up with details on the writing, the dictionaries, and the poetry; about fifty pages present nothing but the most ordinary notions on the mechanism of the language, and almost without any examples. The original characters are printed upon copper plates, to which the reader is referred. They are moreover so badly executed, that only those experienced in the subject can recognise them."

The next writer of note on Chinese was Fourmont\*, who was quite incompetent for the task which he undertook; but in those times he was able to palm upon his countrymen many incorrect and absurd views of his own, while the little good and true information, which his books contain, was the production of other minds. The student may spare himself the trouble of examining them, as they are only calculated to mislead him. Several other works, unworthy of consideration, were published in various parts of Europe; but no book on the subject of Chinese was produced which can be recommended as worth perusal before the learned and able treatise of Dr. Marshman. His knowledge of the Sanskrit and the classical languages of antiquity, coupled with a practical acquaintance with Chinese, through his private studies with native teachers, enabled him to arrive at correct views on the genius and composition of the Chinese language. The *Clavis Sinica*† of Dr. Marshman is still worthy of a careful perusal by the earnest student, although, as a whole, it falls short of the requirements of the present day.

Dr. Morrison's Chinese Grammar issued the next year (1815) from the same press at Serampore. This work contains some valuable matter, but from the haste with which it appears to have been prepared for publication, and from the fact of its having been published at so early a period after Dr. Morrison's entrance upon the study, the student must not expect to derive much positively practical advantage from its perusal.

The first work that appeared in some measure to correspond to the wants of the student was the very clear and scientific grammar of *M. Abel-Rémusat*‡, the first Professor of the Language and Literature of China in the Royal

\* *Meditationes Sinicæ*, 1737, in fol., and *Lingus Sinarum Mandarinicæ hieroglyphicæ Grammatica duplex*, 1742, in fol.

† The *Clavis Sinica* was published at Serampore in India in 1814. Dr. Marshman had had the opportunity of reading with several native Chinese scholars while in India, he availed himself of the aid of *M. Rodrigues*, a Jesuit from Peking, and he was assisted by *Mr. Thomas Manning*, who had also resided in China.

‡ *Éléments de la grammaire chinoise, ou principes généraux du Kou-wen ou style antique, et du Kouan-hoa, c'est-à-dire, de la langue commune généralement usitée dans l'Empire chinois.* Par *M. Abel-Rémusat*, de l'Académie royale des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres, Professeur de Langue et de Littérature chinoises et tartares au Collège royal de France. Paris, 1822, in 8°. A new edition was recently printed in Paris, edited by *M. Léon de Rosny*, with a supplement.

College of France. The author had read the valuable examples given in the MS. of Prémare's *Notitia Linguae Sinicae*, and had carefully consulted the original works referred to by that writer. M. Rémusat analysed these examples, and produced a work drawn out upon scientific principles, which keep in view the genius and peculiarities of the Chinese language.

The work of Prémare, mentioned above, remained for many years in manuscript in the Imperial Library of Paris. The author resided in China from 1698 until his death, about the year 1735. His plan was to teach by examples, and instead of giving rules, he gave the material from which rules might be formed. He recommended imitation and the practice of committing passages to memory. It will be seen therefore that although his work is an immense storehouse, it leaves the learner very much to himself in arriving at conclusions respecting the nature and genius of the language. It is not to be expected that every young man, who takes up such a work as this of Prémare's, can form a judgment of much grammatical significance from the examples before him. It is the duty of the grammarian to form the rules and to prove his propositions by examples. The value therefore of the work of Prémare is limited to affording a number of examples from which the advanced student may acquire a good deal of information on the style of the novels, and of a few other books from which they were drawn. The versions given of some of the examples are incorrect, but as a general rule they are sufficiently true to the original to be of service in acquiring the idiom of the language\*.

In the year in which Dr. Morrison's Grammar was printed at Serampore, the first portion of his Dictionary was published at Macao, having been printed at the sole expense of the East India Company. This great work in six quarto volumes, the last of which was not published until 1821, contains so much that is interesting and profitable to the student of Chinese that it is indispensably necessary to all who wish to collect information that may be depended upon. But with all praise of Dr. Morrison's ability and indefatigable labour, we cannot conceal the fact that his Dictionary is very imperfect, and often fails to render that assistance to the student which he requires. The enormous labour, almost without any help, which it involved, renders it a matter of surprise that so much was done and so well; and it behoves the author of the present small work to speak with diffidence on the subject of its demerits. Another work was written about the same time by Dr. Morrison, entitled: *Dialogues and detached sentences in the Chinese language, with a free and verbal translation in English*. This was a great help at the time it was published; but since China has been more largely opened to Europeans, and the facilities for learning the language are become greater, some parts of this work are found to savour of the Canton provincial phraseology. It is however

---

\* *Notitia Linguae Sinicae*, auctore P. Prémare, Malacœ cura academïæ Anglo-Sinensis. M.DCC.LXXXI. It was printed in 4°, at the expense of a British nobleman. A version of the Latin was made by the Rev. J. G. Bridgman, and was printed in 8°. at Canton in 1847. Copies of this work are now very scarce.

likely to prove very useful to those who can obtain it, but it is now difficult to be procured, as copies of it are scarce.

A useful little book appeared in 1823, compiled by Sir John F. Davis, Bart., F. R. S., &c., entitled *Hien yun shoo*.—*Chinese moral maxims, with a free and verbal translation, affording examples of the grammatical structure of the language*. These maxims are likely to be useful to those students who will commit them to memory; and, as the literal rendering of each word is given, as well as the free translation, it will be found useful to beginners.

The next writer who made an immense addition to the aids for learning Chinese was Père J. A. Gonçalves, a missionary at Macao. His *Arte China*, which was published in 1829, is the most complete work on the Chinese language which we possess. He spent great labour on an analysis of the characters, the result of which was what he called an "*Alphabeta China*;" but from its being explained in the Portuguese language, comparatively few study it. Every student of Chinese ought, however, to possess this work, on account of the valuable store of good phrases which it contains. After the alphabet he has ranged a collection of phrases and sentences, both in the colloquial idiom (*kwän-hwá*), and in the style of the books (*kü-wên*), graduated in difficulty to suit the beginner; then follows a *grammar*, in which he occasionally tortures the Chinese to adapt it to some peculiarity in the grammar of his own language. There is also a very good collection of sentences in the form of *dialogues*. The allusions made to facts in history, the great names, the epistolary style, extracts from prose and poetry, and the principles of elegant composition (*wên-chāng*), all enter into this fund for the Chinese student. Unfortunately very meagre explanations are given; while the sounds of the characters, except in the *alphabeta*, are omitted, and the translations appear in some cases to be not the most happy. For study with a native instructor the book is invaluable; but without such assistance it must fail to aid the beginner. Père Gonçalves also prepared several other great works, dictionaries, in Portuguese and Latin, all of which are worthy of consideration.

Two works by Mr. Robert Thom, H. B. Majesty's Consul at Ningpo, also deserve mention here, as calculated to assist the student in his initiatory studies; *Æsop's Fables* in Chinese, with interlinear translation in the Canton and Mandarin dialects; and the *Chinese Speaker, or extracts from works written in the Mandarin dialect as spoken at Peking*. The author however had not much opportunity of hearing the Peking dialect spoken, and being under the necessity of following the work from which he translated, which was a book used to teach the Mandarin dialect in the provinces, he fell into some errors of pronunciation; and what is to be regretted still more, he entirely disregarded the "tones," and neglected to insert any mark by which to guide the student in learning them.

The works of Dr. Medhurst call for some notice at this point. We can only speak of them in a general manner, as it would occupy too large a space to criticise them with any degree of minuteness. The most useful and important work of Dr. Medhurst's on the Chinese language is his Chinese-English

Dictionary, published in Batavia in 1843, 2 vols. 8°. The whole was lithographed, and therefore is so far inferior to Dr. Morrison's Dictionary, but in other respects it is far superior and more complete than Dr. Morrison's first part, to which it corresponds in arrangement. Dr. Medhurst next edited "Notices of Chinese Grammar" by Philosinensis (Dr. Gützlaff). This work was prepared in haste, and consequently neither the author nor the editor did justice to his abilities and acquirements. Dr. Medhurst afterwards published a book of Dialogues, which are good, and an English-Chinese Dictionary, as well as a Dictionary of Chinese in the Hok-kiën dialect. All his works are useful. He was a Chinese scholar of very extensive reading and indefatigable in labour.

M. Callery's Dictionary, entitled, *Systema Phonicum Scripturæ Sinicæ*, published in 1842, was on a new plan, which is worthy of the student's attention (cf. Arts. 50 and 51 of this Grammar); but the meanings given of each character are few, and the absence of words which are formed with the characters diminishes the usefulness of the book. We have found however that the meanings are very correct, and we should recommend the student to procure a copy, if possible. Mr. Williams, the editor of the Chinese Repository, now connected with the United States Mission to China, has produced several very practical works for the beginner, from among which the *Vocabulary* (English-Chinese) in the Mandarin dialect, and his recently published *Dictionary* in the Canton dialect, may be recommended. His *Easy Lessons in Chinese* are universally spoken of with praise; they are however in the Canton dialect; but much that is common to the Mandarin dialect is also to be found in the book.

The sinologues of France and Germany claim some notice at this period. Professor Julien of Paris, whose learning in Chinese is unquestioned, his accurate knowledge of the language having been proved by his excellent translation of Mencius in 1824, stands first among them. But unfortunately he has not published any grammar or dictionary of the language, tasks for which he must be eminently qualified. His writings consist chiefly of translations and critiques, and we consider his views of such weight that we recommend the student of Chinese to procure any of his works which he can meet with, especially his critical translation of the works of Mencius into Latin. Professor Bazin also deserves well of all students of Chinese for his various papers on Chinese literature, and for his *Grammaire Mandarins*, which is a good work on the subject, and may be read with profit, notwithstanding some blemishes, owing probably to the author's not having studied the language in China.

Among the Germans, Dr. Stephen Endlicher of Vienna has written a very perspicuous work on Chinese Grammar, as far as the language of the books is concerned.

Dr. Julius Klaproth was engaged upon Chinese many years, and his criticisms are generally marked by shrewd discernment and accurate distinction, but he did not write either a grammar or a dictionary, although he added a

Supplement of great value to the Dictionary of De Guignes. This latter, which we omitted to mention above, may well be noticed here. It was published by order of the Emperor Napoleon I. in huge folio. The basis of it was the Manuscript Dictionary of Père Bazil de Glemone. The editor added very little to the original MS. excepting probably the French renderings, which are given as well as the Latin. The meanings are singularly correct; they had been made from the native Chinese Dictionary of *K'ang-hi*. The deficiency however among the words which occur as compounds under each character, and the unwieldy size of the book, render it, even with the Supplement of Klaproth, inferior to the Dictionaries of Morrison, Medhurst, and Williams.

In 1857 a *Chinesische Sprachlehre* by Dr. Schott was published in Berlin. This work is in our opinion superior to all others in its simple system of grammatical analysis for the Chinese language, and although it does not extend to the spoken language—the Mandarin dialect—at all, what is said therein respecting the book-style or learned language of China, and the analysis of the same, is well worthy of the most careful study. Dr. Schott's Sketch of the Literature of China is another great acquisition to the aids in the study of Chinese. We recommend both of these to the student's attention.

In the same year in which Dr. Schott's Grammar appeared in Germany, the Rev. Joseph Edkins, B. A., of Shanghai, published a Grammar of the Mandarin Dialect. He had previously given to the public a Grammar of the Dialect of Shanghai, in which much accurate knowledge of the language was displayed; and in his next work on the Mandarin he eclipsed all his predecessors in exhibiting not the mere language of the novels, which had sufficed for Prémare, Gützlaff, and others, but the language which he had obtained *viva voce* from the natives, and by a comparison with many native scholars. We cannot agree with him in every thing he says respecting the tones or with his mode of spelling Chinese syllables in every instance, but we are bound to give unqualified praise to a work which shows so much laborious research, and which has made such an advance in the mode of treating the subject. Every student should possess himself of a copy as soon as he arrives in China.

Another work which it behoves us to mention is by the present Chinese Secretary, Thomas Francis Wade, Esq., C. B. It is entitled, *The Hsin-ting-lü, or Book of Experiments, being the first of a series of Contributions to the Study of Chinese*. It was published at Hongkong in 1859. It is devoted to the dialect of Peking, the species of Mandarin which is affected by the court and the officials of the empire; but not employed throughout the provinces as Mandarin, excepting by the high officials who come direct from the northern capital. This work of Mr. Wade's is very limited in its scope, for the 362 sentences given in the first part are confined to the single subject of "heaven" and the phenomena of the skies. The second part contains a passage from the Paraphrase of the Sacred Edict; and the third, some good sentences explanatory of the tones of the Peking dialect. The notes which the work contains are calculated to prove useful, and there is no question about its

being a *bona-fide* work on Pekinese. It is to be regretted that greater care was not bestowed on revision, and that the subject of the first part was not made more extensive in its range, so as to have answered more immediately to the wants of the student-interpreters, for whose benefit the work was composed. With the enormous labour which has devolved upon Mr. Wade as Chief Interpreter and Secretary, coupled with his own close habits of study, we may well wonder that he found time to bring any work of this kind to a completion; and we hail the "Contributions" as being likely to serve a very good purpose, and as the earnest of much more as soon as leisure affords the opportunity for its preparation.

The last work which we must notice is by Dr. James Legge, of the London Missionary Society. This bids fair to supersede all its predecessors in the field of Chinese classics. The work is entitled, *The Chinese Classics: with a translation, critical and exegetical notes, prolegomena, and copious indexes*: roy. 8vo. Hongkong, 1861. The whole work will consist of seven volumes, one of which has recently appeared; and the remaining six volumes are expected to be ready for publication during the course of the next five years. The enormous labour which must be expended upon a critical translation and explanation of the classical books of the Chinese, executed in the style which this first volume indicates, could hardly have been undertaken by a scholar more likely to succeed in the task than Dr. Legge. The Prolegomena contains digested information, on the lives and opinions of Confucius and his disciples, never before presented to European readers. Dr. Legge has drawn largely upon native sources, and the facts which he has collected, and his own remarks upon them, cannot fail to be interesting and instructive to students of Chinese in common with many others. The native text is in bold clear type, and is accompanied by a translation and critical notes on each page. The indexes will be found most valuable to the student; they form at once a concordance and dictionary to the volume; and the book as a whole will render a great service to Chinese scholars generally. We earnestly hope that Dr. Legge's health may not suffer from his close application in the climate of Hongkong.

After reading this list of the principal works on the subject of Chinese, the reader may ask what need there was of another. Our answer to this is, that no one of these books meets the wants of the beginner; they do undoubtedly *en masse* give almost all that is needed, certainly more than the author of the present work could on his sole responsibility lay before the student, but each individually cannot answer all the common questions which suggest themselves to the mind of the student on entering upon the study of Chinese. Among the questions which we may suppose to arise are, "As the Chinese have no letters, how shall I write down the sounds of their words? How do they represent words in writing? How do they pronounce? How do they distinguish one syllable from another of the same sound? What is their mode of writing? How are their words constructed? Where shall I obtain copies for writing?—text to read,—explanation to this text?" The reply might be: "You

must purchase the works of Morrison or Schott or Williams for one thing, you must buy those of Edkins and Wade for another, you must send to China for text, and buy a Dictionary which will cost you from four to ten guineas for explanations, and then you will find you want a native teacher or a European proficient in the language to help you."

In the work which the author now ventures to present to the public, he thinks a sufficient answer to the above questions will be found, as well as all the aids which a *beginner* needs in this most difficult study. He has availed himself of all the help which he felt he needed from the above authors, and he freely acknowledges the great assistance which the works of Drs. Morrison and Williams have afforded him for lexicography, and the works of Prémare, Gonçalves, Gützlaff, Schott, Edkins, and Wade, for grammar and examples to grammatical rules.

For translations of some of the passages in the *Chrestomathy* he is under obligation for help derived from the works of Dr. Medhurst, Sir John Davis, Bart., F. R. S., Père Gonçalves, and Professor Bazin.

Having noticed the various works on the subject of Chinese grammar and lexicography, and having pointed out the need which exists for a book adapted to the wants of the beginner, it remains for the author of the present work to explain the plan of it, and to show wherein it is likely to fulfil the purpose for which it was prepared. In a work which professes to initiate the student in the rudiments of a language, three things are generally looked for; 1. Some account of the letters employed to represent its sounds, with the character and quality of those sounds; 2. An explanation of its forms of words, and, if possible, a complete classification of these words as parts of speech; 3. An exposition of its arrangement of words in sentences, showing how words and clauses are dependent upon each other, either on account of their relative positions, or the peculiar inflexions of the words themselves.

These considerations naturally lead to the formation of three divisions in the grammar of the Chinese tongue. And in order to adapt it to this arrangement, we have to consider, in the first place, the best mode of representing its sounds and syllables. But as the Chinese language possesses no alphabet, we are compelled to employ that with which we are best acquainted, viz. the Roman. And then we have to consider what value each Roman letter shall possess in a system for spelling Chinese words. Shall the uncertain value of English letters be taken? or shall we assume for each letter, which we employ, a value which shall remain constant and uniform, as is the case in some of the languages on the continent of Europe? We have preferred the latter course, and have followed in the footsteps of Sir William Jones, Dr. Lepsius, and many other Orientalists. As we have to invent an alphabet to represent Chinese sounds, we deem it best to avoid the eccentricities of the English mode of spelling, and we have chosen the regular orthography of the German and the Italian in preference. It may be observed that the system of orthography adopted presents scarcely any deviation from that now acknowledged to be the best suited for writing down the sounds of strange tongues,



being most in accordance with the fundamental laws of speech. A glance at the tables given on pages 3 and 5 will suffice to show the extreme simplicity of Chinese syllables, as regards their formation, and the ease with which the mere syllable may be read. The value of each letter has been explained very fully by examples in English, French, and German, so that no mistake need arise on that score.

A more difficult subject, however, presented itself in the elucidation of the Chinese "*tones*." The explanation which the author has given of them will, he thinks, assist the student. They were the subject of his careful study while in China, and he has more than once proved his views respecting them to be correct. That there are slight variations in these Chinese tones there is no denying. But the mode of illustrating them by the accentuation or emphasis given to English words under certain circumstances will enable the foreign student to acquire the first elementary power to enunciate them; and with such an attainment, although rude and in a measure unpolished, he will have made progress in the right direction. His object should be to pronounce the tones with the full force and modulation at first, and to rely on future practice with the natives for making the unevenness and crudeness of his pronunciation to disappear. It must be remembered that a large majority of those who study to speak foreign languages *never* speak them exactly as the natives do; that refinement in the pronunciation which a native would admire is rarely attained by a foreigner, and even when it *is* mastered, it is only after a considerable degree of practice.

In the next place, the formation of words, or, as it is frequently called, "Word-building," claims our attention. If there exists in Chinese any process for the formation of words, by which a classification of them may take place, it must be for the interest of the student to know what it is. And this process, which does exist, we have endeavoured to indicate, and we leave it to the student himself to develop the principles which have been laid down on the formation of nouns and verbs. This part of Chinese grammar is vast in extent, and many years of discriminating study will be required to exhaust it. We are now but upon the threshold of the subject. Some earnest workers in this mine of the East will enter into it very much further, and will, we hope, complete the work.

And thirdly, the sentence in Chinese has been analysed with a view to a comparison of its parts, and to show the effect which certain forms of the sentence have upon the meaning and grammatical value of the words in it.

But without native text the student would find the abstract rules of grammar excessively dry and uninteresting. This want has been supplied, in some measure, by about forty pages of extracts from Chinese authors, explained at length, with translations and notes. To these we have added a third part, consisting of exercises, by which the student may acquire a practical acquaintance with Chinese prose composition, and an ability to speak the language with correctness. The fourth part of the Handbook consists of a dictionary of all the characters in general use, and it is hoped that this portion may prove

very useful to the beginner, and that the whole may answer the purpose for which it was intended.

One of the great difficulties which beset a beginner in a language like the Chinese is the enormous number of words and phrases which present themselves, without his being able to distinguish those best suited for the early stages of his course from the less common expressions which are used in books only. And no simple tales and stories exist in Chinese, as in European languages, to supply him with a stock of useful words. The examples taken from books are seldom the expressions employed in common parlance; and unless the student is in a position to avail himself of native help and proper advice, he may labour for a long time without much profit. The object, therefore, in this work has been to bring together chiefly such expressions as are of frequent occurrence in every day life. Some terms which will be met with in the Dictionary will readily be distinguished by the significations given, as belonging to the higher classes of literature. It would be useless and absurd in a writer of an English grammar for foreigners to collect words from Chaucer and Spenser, or even from Shakespeare, in order to teach them the English language of the nineteenth century. To avoid such a mistake with respect to Chinese, we have selected the most common words, and have endeavoured to clear the path of the beginner, and to give a more simple exposition of the Chinese language than has hitherto appeared.

In the absence of a teacher, a few hints on the use of this work and on the method of study which it will be advisable to adopt will perhaps be acceptable to the beginner. His first object should be to master the system of orthography which is given in this work, and exercise himself in it, by reading aloud the list of syllables on page 5, or a page of the native text in Roman letter. Then the instructions relating to intonation should be thoroughly understood and applied practically by reading again a page of the *Chrestomathy*. He should then commit to memory the words given to exemplify the tones (pp. 9—11, without the characters); and commence learning to read and write the elementary characters (pp. 19—28). And in learning Chinese characters, the student should on no account attempt too many at once. The first fifty radicals may be speedily acquired, but afterwards he will find that ten characters a day, thoroughly learnt, will test his powers; and at this rate, if it can be sustained, he will know three thousand characters at the end of a year; and if these include two thousand of those in common use, he will have made most satisfactory progress. In his choice of characters the *Grammar* will supply him first, and then the *Chrestomathy*. It is, moreover, desirable that couples and triples of characters, which form phrases, should be sought for and committed to memory, so as to store the mind with good expressions, either for positive use, or that they may be readily recognised when uttered by native Chinese. But while pursuing this mere plodding study by memory, he must not neglect to read passages in the *Chrestomathy* (Part II), and make sentences upon the model of those given in the *Exercises* (Part III). And in the *Chrestomathy* some passages will be found better adapted than others

for this purpose: we should recommend him to begin by learning to read the syllables which stand for the characters in pages 8—12 of the native text (*Hau-kiú chuen*); and pages 27—30 (*Mandarin Phrases*). The syllables will be found in the Chrestomathy. The Mandarin Phrases should be committed to memory as soon as they are understood, and daily practice in copying the characters with the Chinese pencil should be persevered in.

Four hours a day ought to be the *minimum* of time given to the study during the first year; but this is only general advice, the time allotted to the subject and the method of study must depend on the ability and power of application in each individual;—

*Sumite materiam vestris, qui discitis, æquam  
Viribus, et versate diu, quid ferre recusent,  
Quid valeant humeri.*

Some apology is necessary for the occasional defectiveness of the Chinese type used in this work; although as a whole, and when the characters are in a perfect state, they are in very good proportion, and in some cases beautiful, a few are deficient in regularity of form. But thirty-four pages of the Chrestomathy, which were printed in Hongkong with the new type, will supply to the diligent student any deficiency which may be noticed in the Grammar.

In conclusion, the author, in common with all the friends of Anglo-Chinese literature, has to thank the Delegates of the Oxford University Press for their liberality in undertaking so expensive a work upon the ground of its utility alone; and the author has only to regret the errors which may have crept in to mar the work, and render it a less worthy object of such distinguished patronage. Unlike many works of this kind, it has had but one fostering hand; and the author has none to thank for friendly counsel or assistance. It will therefore, he trusts, be accepted with a generous criticism as the first work on the subject ever published in this country, and as having been prepared under very many disadvantages.

J. SUMMERS.

KING'S COLLEGE, LONDON, Jan. 1863.



## INTRODUCTION.

---

THE language which we call Chinese is to the languages of eastern Asia what Sanskrit is to the Indian and to the Indo-Germanic stock of languages, or what Arabic is to some of the other eastern tongues; that is to say, Chinese is the parent, in some sense or degree, of Japanese, Corean, Cochin-Chinese, and Annamese, as well as of all the numerous dialects of China Proper. It is a sort of universal medium of communication throughout the vast territories of the emperor of China, which include Manchuria, Mongolia, Tibet, and other countries, which are together equal in extent to the whole of Europe. The use of Chinese in some of these countries is indeed confined to official communications, but by about 300,000,000 of the Chinese race it is spoken, and among these it forms the only colloquial medium of intercourse. In Japan, Annam, and some other regions, the written characters of China, and frequently the original words, have been so much changed by the *literati*, that they cannot be readily distinguished from the native characters and words\*. In Japan, for example, the Chinese word *t'ien*, 'heaven,' is changed to *ten*; the nasal *ng*, at the end of some Chinese words, being always omitted, the syllable *liang* would become *liau* or *lau*. Sometimes the Chinese character will represent a mere syllable, at other times it is allowed to represent an idea, and to go under a Japanese name of perhaps two or three syllables, e. g. the Chinese character *kia* or *ka* 加, changed to フ, is the common letter for the syllable *ka*, and scarcely ever carries with it the signification which the Chinese character bears (i. e. 'to add'); but the character *ch'ang* 長, 'long,' is allowed to stand for the same idea in Japanese, its name however being changed to *naga*. In Annamese the Chinese characters are more frequently taken for syllables alone, and they have undergone a variety of changes to adapt them for use in that language.

But notwithstanding these peculiar changes and modes of usage with respect to the Chinese language among the neighbouring nations, it stands

---

\* Numerous examples of similar changes both in the characters and the words employed in European languages might be given. Let the following suffice. The Slavonic *sha* [Ш] (sh English) from the Hebrew *shin* ש; the letter D altered from the *daleth* ד and *delta* Δ. The F from the *digamma* f, &c. &c. Swedish *somnar*, 'to sleep,' from the Lat. *somnare*, i. e. a Teutonic termination is appended to a Latin root. The verbs *stare*, *stand*, *stehen*, from *stāw*.

pre-eminent as a classical language to them, and it occupies the same position as Latin and Greek do among Europeans. The philosophers, historians, and poets of China are read and studied diligently by the Japanese; their works are annotated and explained by writers of that country, and every child of respectable parentage begins the study of Chinese as soon as he goes to school, and carries it on simultaneously with the study of his native tongue. The works of Confucius and Mencius have exerted a mighty influence over the minds of all these eastern tribes. Confucius was to China and her tributaries what Aristotle has been to Europe. Would that his doctrines had been more energising and more fructifying! But we may attribute the comparative failure of Confucianism not to its author, but to the recipients of his instruction. Probably Confucius would have been an Aristotle had he lived in the west, and Aristotle a Confucius in the east. The πολιτική and ἠθική of the one find their counterpart in the other, and while the Greek republics with their social and moral science have passed away, the Chinese empire still remains, a monument of political coherency and wisdom, in some respects at least, with the quality of marvellous endurance and steadfastness.

The antiquity of the Chinese language and written character invests them with peculiar interest, for in them may be discovered facts connected with the social and political history of a nation which flourished two thousand years before our era. It is remarkable too, that Chinese has suffered little change through this great period of time, compared with the mutations which have taken place in other languages. While the pronunciation of its written symbols has varied, and ever will vary in consequence of its want of an alphabetic system to represent the syllables which are uttered, the written characters have been altered scarcely at all during a period of two thousand years. Commencing with the rude pictures of objects within the sphere of life in those early times, as the Chinese mind developed, and the forms of government and society became fixed, the symbols to express authority and the various relationships of life were invented to correspond to the wants of public and private intercourse\*.

---

\* Writing, which may be defined to be a representation of language and an exhibition of it to the eye, is divided into two kinds:—1. *Notion-writing*, which is independent of any given language, and conveys its meaning to the understanding immediately through the eye;—2. *Sound-writing*, which exhibits the sounds of a particular language, the understanding of which depends upon a knowledge of that language.

*Notion-writing*, again, is divided into two kinds, viz. *Picture-writing* and *Figure-writing*. The former, which is the most natural and probably the most ancient, consists in this, that the figure which is pictured to the eye represents the thing delineated, and by this figure are also symbolized the other notions, which admit of no immediate representation, such as the tropical and symbolical meanings of the object. The mere representation of the visible thing is called *Curiosological writing* (from *κύριος*, *proprius*), and to this belong most of the hieroglyphics (v. *Champollion*, *Gram. Egyptienne*. Paris, 1836. Fol. I. p. 3). Such a kind of writing the Chinese had originally (v. *Kopp*, *Bilder und Schriften* II. 66. *Abel-Rémusat*, *Gram. Chin.* §§. 2. 4, 5), as had also the Mexicans. The same kind of writing however has another element,—the *symbolic* meaning, which rests upon a comparison of the real and possible representations with the intellectual and the abstract; and the thousandfold

These symbols are partly hieroglyphic and partly ideographic, that is, representations of objects or marks of notions. The hieroglyphs from which the forty thousand characters have been derived were originally signs of concrete notions; symbols for abstract terms and general notions were subsequently formed, as the Chinese mind developed and literature increased. The combinations, which can be effected by means of the four or five hundred elementary forms, give the Chinese language, as far as its written character is concerned, a power of expression unknown in other languages. And the simple and logical character of its formation renders it a far more efficient medium for the communication of ideas, and as an instrument of thought, than the languages of Europe.

The Chinese has a double advantage; it presents to the eye of the initiated the pictures of things, the general term derived from them, or the common notion deduced from a combination of elementary figures. It addresses to the ear, by the simple form of its constructions, the most complex notions and the most general expressions, without disturbing the necessary unity, which should always exist in the sentence; while it conveys in a few words, compactly arranged, the full idea with emphasis and logical precision. There is the language of the books and the language of conversation. These differ from each other, for, in writing, a few monosyllabic characters are made to express much, while, in speaking, many syllables are required; but they are the same in their principles of construction,—the same simplicity and logical order run through both.

---

combinations which are possible in this kind of writing approach the ridiculous. According to Diodor. (III. 4), the *hawk* among the Egyptians signified 'swiftness'; the *crocodile*, 'evil'; *lilies*, 'impudence'; the *eye*, 'a watchman'; an *outstretched hand*, 'liberality'; a *closed hand*, 'greediness and avarice'; but most of the other tropical meanings of hieroglyphics rest upon more remote comparisons: e. g. the *bee* for 'the king'; *sparrow-hawk* for 'sublimity'; *eye of the sparrow-hawk* for 'vision' and 'contemplation'; the *vulture*, on account of its maternal love, for 'mother.' Indeed in many of those which are called enigmatical hieroglyphs, the reason for the combination is sometimes doubtful and sometimes wholly unknown; as when the *ostrich feather* stands for 'justice,' because all the feathers of the wing of the ostrich are of equal size; or the *palm branch* for 'the year,' because the palm tree brings forth every year regularly twelve branches. Among the Chinese, *two men, one following the other*, stands for the verb 'to follow'; the *sun and moon* for 'light'; a *man on a mountain* for a 'hermit'; a *woman, a hand, and a broom*, for a 'matron.'

The other kind of *Notion-writing*,—*Figure-writing*,—expresses the notion by means of figures taken arbitrarily, which have no similarity to the thing intended. A rude example of this kind were the gay-coloured threads (*quipos*) of the Peruvians, who understood how to knot them and to twist them in so many ways (v. *Götting. Hist. Magaz.* III. p. 422. *Lehrgeb. der Diplom.* II. 305). The Chinese have a very complete system of this kind; they have from 20 to 30 thousand characters, which may be reduced to 214 radicals (called *keys*). To the same category belong also the technical marks used by medical men, and perhaps also the astronomical signs for the planets and the signs of the zodiac; while *such figures often seem to be only arbitrary marks, they really have proceeded from hieroglyphics*, in which the figures have been so very much contracted and mutilated that they have lost all resemblance to the original object intended to be represented (v. Ersch and Gruber's *Encyclopædie*, art. *Paleographie* by Gesenius, of which the above is a translation).

An eminent writer on logic observes, that "the chief impediments to the correct performance of the process of reasoning lie in the defects of expression \*," but we think that such defects will not be found in Chinese, while no difficulty will be experienced in forming a complete apparatus for this or for any other science as soon as the native mind becomes alive to the importance of more vigorous and systematic thinking. The subtle distinctions and exact meanings, which may be referred to a vast number of Chinese words, prove the analytic character of the language, as does also the complexity of the syntax and the arrangement of words and sentences,—a remedy, as it were, for the want of inflexions. If inflexions have arisen by the agglutination of separate and distinct words,—by pronouns, prepositions, &c., being placed after and joined to the words to which they refer; if they were produced, not merely by a scientific process, but by a vulgar and careless pronunciation of the words, and so were agglutinated, the reason why Chinese has never undergone this process, and obtained inflexions, appears to be, because the original terms, which were employed as the names of objects and relations of things, were so definite and distinct from each other, and the characters, which at a very early period represented them, so unique and separate, that union of two of the latter being impossible, two of the former could not well be agglutinated. Be this as it may, the Chinese, without any sort of inflexion in its words, affords a remarkable specimen of the power of syntactical arrangement to express the multitudinous variations of human thought. Instead of being composed, as is frequently supposed, of a vast number of arbitrary and complicated symbols, the characters of the Chinese language are compounded of very simple elements, which carry along with them into their derivatives something of their own meaning, while each generally preserves its figure unchanged. These elementary characters supply the place of an alphabet,—but it is an alphabet of ideas, not of sounds. With it may be produced thousands of different radical words, and with these words hundreds of thousands of compounded words have been and may be formed. It is not even necessary to become acquainted with more than four or five thousand of these radical words and characters to enable the literary man to understand, with etymological accuracy, the meaning of myriads of expressions which are, or may be, formed by them. The task to the foreign student is trifling, when he considers that these four thousand characters are systematically derived from two hundred and fourteen simple figures, and that when these are mastered, all other difficulties vanish entirely, or diminish to such a degree that the rest of his labour is easy and pleasant. The process however of derivation and composition is not without some arbitrary and, at first sight, absurd deviations from rules, but such exceptions are found in every language, and we do not see that the Chinese exhibits many more of them than our own tongue.

Dr. Morrison's view of Chinese etymology to be derived from the hieroglyphic

---

\* See "Outline of the Laws of Thought" by Dr. Thomson, Provost of Queen's College, Oxford. 12<sup>o</sup>. London, 1849, p. 42.



forms of characters is worth noting \*: "The ancients formed characters from things; these gradually came to be used metaphorically to denote the operations of the mind, and to serve as auxiliaries in speech. As the number of such characters increased, it was necessary to modify them again in order to distinguish them. Thus *chī* 之 was originally *chī-t'sai* 芝草 (i. e. 'the *chī* grass,' now a particle of relation, demonstration, &c.), *hū* 乎 was 吁氣 *hū-k'í* (i. e. 'the breath issuing forth in exclamation,' now a particle of interrogation), and *yén* 焉 was *yuén* 鴞 (i. e. 'a kite or fish-hawk,' now used as a final particle of assertion, interrogation, &c.). When the etymology of a word or the various metaphorical changes of a hieroglyphic can be traced, it is amusing; but the present usage alone can fix what the meaning of a word is at the present time.

"Assuming the truth of the above critic's remark, it may be inferred, that many characters are so mutilated or increased that to trace the gradual changes up to their original form is hopeless." While these remarks indicate the scope which Chinese affords for the sound discrimination of the ingenious mind, the student who follows such an authority as Dr. Morrison will not be discouraged on finding his efforts frequently unavailing to fathom the sense of a Chinese character, and to trace its origin and history.

The extent of Chinese literature and its praises cannot be expressed more fully than in the enthusiastic description of Prof. Abel-Rémusat, a translation of which we will subjoin: "There are few Europeans," he says, "who would not smile at hearing one speak of the geometry of the Chinese, of their astronomy, or of their natural history; although it is true that the progress, which these sciences have made amongst us during the last two centuries, causes us to dispense with having recourse to the knowledge of those distant nations, ought we therefore to be ignorant of their present state, and especially of what their former state was amongst a nation which has never ceased to cultivate and honour them? The proportion of the right-angled triangle was known in China B. C. 2200; and the works of Yu the Great, to restrain two streams equal in impetuosity and almost in breadth to the great rivers of America; to direct the waters of 100 rivers, and to guide their flowing over a space of ground of more than 100,000 square leagues, are more than sufficient proof of this. If the astronomical and physical theories of these people are defective, their catalogue of eclipses, of occultations, of comets, and of aërolites are not the less interesting; and if people maintain that the Chinese make mistakes in their calculations, at least we must confess that they have, like us, observant eyes.

"Besides this, rural and domestic economy is sufficiently perfected amongst them for them to teach us many useful things; of this, at least, we are assured by those who have made a study of this science. As to their descriptions of

---

\* Cf. *Chinese Dictionary*, Part I. vol. I. p. 34, where Dr. Morrison translated the above passage from a native author.

natural beings, since nothing can supply their place whilst Europeans have not free access to their country, they are not to be despised from a people so exact and circumstantial: and I hope to prove by several extracts from their books on botany and zoology that the writers in this department are as much above the Latin naturalists, or those of the Middle Ages, as they are inferior to Linnæus, Jussieu, or Des Fontaines. But if we pass to polite literature, philosophy, and history, some Chinese, in these subjects, may even set us an example.

“An immense fund of literature, the fruit of 4000 years of assiduous efforts and labours; eloquence and poetry enriched by the beauties of the picturesque language, which preserve to the imagination all its colours, metaphors, allegory, and allusion, all combining to form the most smiling, energetic, or imposing pictures; on the other side, the most vast and authentic annals which ever came from the hands of men, unfolding to our view actions almost unknown, not only of the Chinese, but of the Japanese, Coreans, Tartars, Tibetans, and of the inhabitants on the peninsula beyond the Ganges; unfolding the mysterious dogmas of Buddha, or those of the sect of the Tauists, or consecrating, in short, the eternal principles and the philosophic politics of the school of Confucius:—these are the objects which Chinese books present to the student, who, without leaving Europe, may wish to travel in imagination to these distant countries. More than 5000 volumes have been collected, at great expense, in the Royal Library; their titles have scarcely been read by Fourmont; a few historical works have been opened by De Guignes and by Des Hauterayes; all the rest still await readers and translators\*.”

These are the words of one who in his day stood high among the Orientalists of Europe, and whose opinions will always be regarded with respect by the student of Chinese. M. Rémusat had actual experience on the subject, and had read much of the literature on which he dilated. His evidence is worthy of our full credit, and, while so much has been written and said which is adverse to China and the Chinese, his testimony calls for our honest acceptance, for he views China through the writings of its great minds, and not, as too many do, by the exhibitions of some of its vulgar rulers or the acts of some low unruly mob. Even from those who should understand the subject well, we too often hear statements which, although they have some appearance of truth, are yet unfair, because they are based on insufficient grounds, but they tell nevertheless to the prejudice of this people and their language. For instance, it has been stated that “this language does not afford much scope for oratorical display,” a view which we consider very erroneous, for Chinese is just that kind of language which leaves the speaker free from the technicalities of grammar and of artificial forms of expression, and allows him to rise in sublimity by the power of allusion and the various figures of the rhetor’s art, and through the various styles of composition to affect his hearers; or to descend into the vulgar colloquial, and raise a smile at his antagonist’s expense, or ridicule the cavils of a supposed objector.

---

\* V. *Mélanges Asiatiques* par Abel-Rémusat, vol. II. p. 14.

It cannot be asserted that the speeches of the Chinese ministers of state exhibit much oratorical power, but there can be no reason why the Chinese should not display as much power in this way as did Demosthenes himself, if they once fell into the circumstances which would call it forth, and were gifted with the same argumentative powers as he was. The fault is in the mind of China, and not in the language. When the Chinese mind is elevated, the language will be found to be not only sufficient for the requirements of this development, but also a valuable agent in the work of its advancement.

But it will be necessary to notice the dialects of which Chinese is composed. The mother-tongue, which is every where expressed by the antique characters, finds a different utterance in every province of the empire. So various are the dialectal changes that the inhabitants of adjacent provinces cannot understand each other. If a native of Canton meet with a native of Shanghai he can communicate with him only by some language common to them both, or by the learned characters, which are used in books. The dialects (for there are several) between Canton and Shanghai differ very much from each other. They have, it is true, a common basis and groundwork; but the pronunciation of syllables in them, especially of diphthongal sounds, varies considerably, though these changes are in accordance with the general laws of such variations in other tongues. Their idioms, moreover, are peculiar, and these therefore present a further obstacle to the communication of ideas. The comparative tables of dialects will explain our meaning in some degree.

It must not be supposed that these dialects are so different as to present to a native a formidable task in the acquisition of several of them. Native merchants and traders frequently have a smattering of three or four; but we think that foreigners are in a position to acquire a more exact knowledge of them than natives themselves. As they are all derived from the same written language, so when this is acquired, or at least when the mandarin or court dialect is learnt, the others may be mastered with comparative ease, after a few months' practice. The foreigner in representing by Roman letters the precise sounds of the language, has an advantage over the native, who cannot do so, unless he learn the system of European orthography. The European soon perceives that certain letters of his Roman alphabet undergo regular changes in the different dialects, and this affords him an immense assistance. For example, he may observe that the primary vowel sounds, *a*, *i*, *u* (*ah*, *ee*, *oo*), generally remain in the language of each province,—thus *pa* in Shanghai remains *pa* in Canton; *ki* in Nanking remains *ki* in Peking, with a little stronger aspiration; *ku* in Ningpo is *ku* every where else: but, on the contrary, *kai* in Mandarin becomes *koi* in Canton and *ke* in Shanghai; *yau* in Mandarin becomes *yiu* in Canton and *yo* (*yao*) in Shanghai. Thus he finds that only the diphthongs (that is, those sounds formed by the combination of two primary vowels) are affected by dialectal changes. The same fact in articulate sounds is shown in our own words *clause*, *pause*, &c., where the diphthong *au*, which is formed of the two primary vowels *a* and *u*, and is generally represented by the secondary vowel *o*, has been changed in course of time to the sound of *o* in *order*. These

regular changes suggest the importance of having but one system of orthography for writing Chinese in Roman letter, so that various dialects may be acquired with greater facility. With how much greater ease, than under the present systems, would French, German, and the other European tongues be learnt, if only one system of writing existed, and but one uniform value were given to the letters employed!

It is no longer necessary to advise the public of the importance of a knowledge of Chinese to those who are connected with China; now that the whole empire is, by the late treaty, declared open to travellers with passports, the language is indispensable to those who would penetrate into the interior. The advantages to the merchant, the missionary, the traveller, and the scientific explorer, of an acquaintance with the Chinese language, cannot well be overrated. And when the vast territories under Chinese rule, and their relations to Great Britain are considered, the perfect medium of communication, which this language would afford, renders the attainment of it an object of primary importance. With this object in view, the cultivation of it should be commenced before leaving this country, that no time may be lost in entering upon a work which will require so much time and arduous effort to accomplish. Very much may be done by the young student before he leaves England, especially in the acquisition of the style of the books, and also in some degree the language of conversation. The written characters of the Chinese may be acquired any where by means of books alone, and, as the pronunciation of these written symbols is exceedingly simple, considerable progress may be made, with a little assistance, in learning such simple sentences as have the stamp of being native, but he should avoid those which are made up to suit foreign expressions. Where native teachers, good grammars, and perfect dictionaries of Chinese are wanting, this language can only be studied to perfection in its native land. Some knowledge however may and ought to be acquired under a European tutor, who can generally explain far better than a native Chinese the difficulties which will beset a beginner. The plan which we would suggest for cementing our new relations with China, and removing the numerous misconceptions which exist on both sides, is the establishment of a College in this country for the education of young Chinese in English, and for affording to young Englishmen the means of acquiring the rudiments of Chinese; and also the foundation of a College in Peking, or in some other city of China, for the preparation of such Chinese youths in the rudiments of English, and for the instruction of English youths in the Chinese language. Each College should have two departments, and these should be directed by English and Chinese tutors. The Chinese youths would cultivate the languages and sciences of Europe to the best advantage in England, while the English youths in China would learn perfectly, as natives do, the Chinese language, and would make themselves acquainted with the products and the resources of China, and gain a knowledge too of the home and foreign policy of the Chinese. Such an arrangement would be productive of most beneficial results. The plan of an Anglo-Chinese College was carried out at Malacca about thirty-

five years ago, and much good was done thereby, but from its position out of China and from a deficiency in means, less was accomplished than might have been under more favourable circumstances. For an institution of this kind to succeed, it should receive the countenance and support of the governments of both countries; but the education should not be gratuitous, as it would be desirable to obtain the better class of boys for instruction; and the relatives of such youths would be in a position to defray the expenses of their education, and thus lessen the amount of expenditure on the part of the promoters of the plan. But while the civil war in China is raging, and the government of that country is so insecure, no extensive plans of amelioration can be carried out. As commerce and Christianity advance, civilization and peace will follow in the steps of the missionary and the merchant. In the meantime it is not from the partial knowledge of European languages in the case of a few natives that much good may be anticipated, but the full and frequent dissemination of religious and political truth, by means of translations into Chinese, will affect the national mind, which is now very fully alive to the influence of Europe on the well-being of the "Middle kingdom."

Many such translations have already been made within the last few years. Improved versions of the Holy Scriptures, and of standard religious publications, have been issued in China. Valuable treatises on astronomy, algebra, arithmetic, and geometry, natural philosophy and political economy have been turned into Chinese recently\*. Many more are however needed, especially on the subjects of European history, the science of mind and the laws of thought.

---

\* Such are *Herchel's Astronomy* and *De Morgan's Algebra*, and works on *Arithmetic* and other subjects translated by A. Wylie, Esq.; works on Geography, the History of England, by the Rev. William Muirhead; several works on Anatomy, Physiology, and Medicine by Dr. Benjamin Hobson; treatises on Electricity, the Laws of Storms, and other subjects by Dr. Macgowan; and various educational works by the Rev. W. Lobscheid.



# CONTENTS.

---

## PART I. CHINESE GRAMMAR.

### CHAP. I. ETYMOLOGY.

#### Sect. I. *Articulate sounds and their symbols.*

	PAGE
§. 1. Elementary sounds and their orthography .....	1
§. 2. Syllables and their intonation .....	4
§. 3. Words and their composition generally .....	12
§. 4. The characters, and how to write them .....	14
§. 5. Arrangement of characters in books, punctuation, &c. ....	34
§. 6. On writing the characters .....	36

#### Sect. II. *The forms of expression.*

§. 1. Preliminary remarks .....	40
§. 2. On nouns and their formation .....	41
§. 3. On adjectives and their formation .....	55
§. 4. The numerals .....	60
§. 5. The pronouns .....	63
§. 6. The verb .....	69
§. 7. The substantive verbs .....	77
§. 8. Mood and tense .....	79
§. 9. The adverbs .....	84
§. 10. The prepositions .....	91
§. 11. The conjunctions .....	93
§. 12. The interjections and other particles .....	95

### CHAP. II. SYNTAX.

#### Sect. I. *On simple constructions.*

§. 1. Preliminary remarks .....	97
§. 2. General rules relating to the position of words .....	97
§. 3. The construction of simple terms .....	99

§. 4. The principles involved in the grouping of words .....	102
§. 5. The uncommon use of certain words in phraseology .....	103
§. 6. The modifications and relations of the parts of speech .....	105
§. 7. The syntax of the particles .....	142
I. Attributive particles .....	142
II. Connective particles .....	147
III. Affirmative particles .....	152
IV. Negative particles .....	158
V. Adversative particles .....	162
VI. Causative particles .....	165
VII. Conditional particles .....	167
VIII. Illative particles .....	169
IX. Interrogative particles .....	169
X. Dubitative particles .....	173
XI. Intensitive particles .....	174
XII. Exclamatory particles .....	175
XIII. Euphonic particles .....	176

Sect. II. *On sentences.*

§. 1. Preliminary remarks .....	180
§. 2. The forms of the simple sentence .....	183
§. 3. The noun sentence .....	184
§. 4. The adjective sentence .....	184
§. 5. The adverbial sentence .....	185
§. 6. On complex sentences .....	187
§. 7. On compound sentences .....	188
§. 8. On figures of speech .....	188
§. 9. On varieties of style .....	189

## APPENDICES.

I. Examples of antithesis, repetition, &c., and select phraseology .....	191
II. A list of the Chinese family names ( <i>Pě-kiā sîng</i> ) .....	201
III. A list of the dynasties, and the emperors, with dates .....	205
IV. A list of the characters in the <i>niên-hau</i> , with a table of the <i>niên-hau</i> .....	212
V. A comparison of some of the Chinese dialects .....	225
VI. Tables of weights, monies, measures, and times .....	230



## PART II. CHINESE CHRESTOMATHY.

*A short introduction to Chinese literature.*

Preliminary notices on the character, extent, and wants of Chinese literature.

—Division of Chinese literature into (1) classical, (2) historical, (3) professional, (4) miscellaneous.—Another classification into ancient and modern literature.—The *Wu-k'ing* or “Five classics.”—The *Yi-k'ing*, the *Shu-k'ing*, the *Shi-k'ing*, the *Li-chi*, and the *Ch'ün-tsiu*.—The *Sz-shü* or “Four books.”—The *Tá-hiö* of *Tsäng-tsz*.—The *Chung-yung* of *K'ung-tsz*.—The *Lün-yü* of *K'ung-tsz*.—The *Meng-tsz* (first and second).—The commentator *Chü-fu-tsz*.—The *Cheü-lü*.—*Hiaü-k'ing*.—*Ts'ü-tsz*.—*Shän-hai-k'ing*.—*Sz-mä-tsiên*.—*Tau-té-k'ing*.—The *Shi-tsz*.—(1) *Lau-tsz*.—(2) *Chuang-tsz*.—(3) *Sün-tsz*.—(4) *Li-tsz*.—(5) *Kwän-tsz*.—(6) *Hän-fü-tsz*.—(7) *Hwai-nän-tsz*.—(8) *Yang-tsz*.—(9) *Wên-chung-tsz*.—(10) *Hö-kw'än-tsz* ..... Pages 3–8.

List of Chinese works arranged in classes: (1) Ethics, politics, and mental science. (2) Mathematics and astronomy. (3) Language and the meanings of words. (4) Jurisprudence. (5) Medicine and materia medica. (6) History and statistics. (7) Biographical notices. (8) Geography, topography, &c. (9) Mythology. (10) Poetry. (11) Painting, engraving, &c. (12) The drama. (13) Works of fiction. (14) Agriculture and weaving. (15) Encyclopædias and compilations ..... Pages 9–18.

The various styles of composition,—the *Kü-wên*, the *Wên-chäng*.—Metrical composition in Chinese.—The different kinds of poetry ..... Pages 19, 20.

List of the passages in the native character ..... Page 21.

Extracts from native authors, in Roman letter, with English translations:—

The <i>Shü-k'ing</i> (text, pp. 1, 2) .....	Pages 22–27.
Epitaph of <i>Kü-tsz</i> (text, p. 2) .....	Pages 26–29.
<i>Sz-shü</i> (text, pp. 3, 4, 5), <i>Lün-yü</i> , <i>Shäng-mäng</i> , <i>Hiaü-mäng</i> ...	Pages 28–35.
<i>Shing-yü</i> (text, pp. 6, 7) .....	Pages 36–41.
<i>Häu-k'ü chüên</i> (text, pp. 8–12) .....	Pages 40–51.
<i>Shwü-hü chüên</i> (text, pp. 13–16) .....	Pages 50–57.
<i>Sän-kwö chí</i> (text, pp. 17–20) .....	Pages 58–66.
<i>Æsop's Fables</i> , translated (text, pp. 21, 22) .....	Pages 66–70.
Lin's letter to Queen Victoria, translated (text, pp. 23, 24) ...	Pages 70–76.

Supplementary treaty, translated (text, p. 25) .....	Pages 76-78.
A notice and a petition, translated (text, p. 26) .....	Pages 78-80.
Mandarin dialogues, translated (text, pp. 27-30) .....	Pages 80-86.
Extract from the <i>Ching-yin-tsüi-yau</i> , translated (text, p. 31)... ..	Pages 86-88.
Epistolary style, translations (text, p. 32) .....	Pages 88-90.
Poetical extracts, translated (text, p. 33) .....	Pages 90-94.
Proverbs, translated (text, p. 34) .....	Pages 94-96.
Extracts from the <i>Ching-yin-tsüi-yau</i> , translated (text, litho. pp. 9, 10)	Pages 96-98.
Extract from the <i>San-kuö chí</i> , translated (text, litho. pp. 11-13)	Pages 98-103.
<i>Æsop's Fables</i> , translated (text, litho. p. 14) .....	Pages 104, 105.

**PART I.**

**CHINESE GRAMMAR.**



## CHAP. I. ETYMOLOGY.

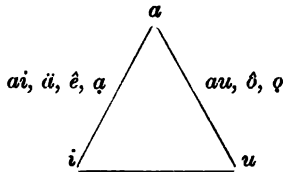
### SECT. I. ARTICULATE SOUNDS AND THEIR SYMBOLS.

#### §. 1. *Elementary sounds and their orthography.*

1. THE Chinese language does not possess, like the European languages, a series of letters with which to express elementary sounds; nor are figures employed to represent syllables merely, as in the syllabaries of the Japanese and Manchu languages. It is therefore necessary in the outset to lay before the student a clear system of orthography, in order that he may acquire as speedily as possible a correct pronunciation of the Chinese characters; and we propose making use of the Roman alphabet for this purpose.

2. The articulate sounds of the human voice are produced by the united action of the breath and the organs of speech, the lips, the tongue, and the larynx. As these organs are the same every where, the articulations of every language must partake of many sounds in common; and though they may be modified by the shape of the organs and other circumstances, they are fundamentally the same. It follows, therefore, that in learning a foreign tongue a consideration of the elementary sounds of the human voice, and the exhibition of them in that tongue, will facilitate the progress by placing the subject from the first upon a reasonable basis.

3. There are three primary vowel sounds, *a*, *i*, *u*, and from these the other vowels and the diphthongs spring\*. This fact has been proved by the absence of the *ē* and *ō* in the Sanskrit, and by the vowels of the Hebrew in its ancient form being only א *aleph*, י *yod*, and ו *vav*. These primary or fundamental vowels, with the vowel-sounds derived from them, are thus exhibited:



a) By the union of *a* and *i* the diphthong *ai* is produced, as *ai* in *aisle*; then by gradually closing and contracting the organs we form the German *ä*, the flattened *a* in *shame*, and the open French *ê* in *forêt, même*; to these may be added *æ* with a dot beneath to represent the obscure sound like *ir, er*, and *o*, in *Sir, her, son*, respectively.

β) By the union of *a* and *u* the diphthong *au* is formed, as *ou* in *plough* or *au* in *Baum* (German); then by contraction we have *ô* long in *no, nos* (French); to which may be added *ø* with a dot beneath to represent the

\* It should be understood from the first that the pronunciation of these vowels is the German or Italian; *ah, ee, oo* in English.

sound of *o* in *order* or *au* in *clause*. In the ancient Arabic, *ai* and *au* were used instead of *e* and *o*. So in the Greek and Latin, *Kaïrap* became *Cæsar*, *θαύμα* in the Ionic dialect was *θῶμα*, a case exactly similar to that which takes place in Chinese, and which will be found noticed under the Comparative Table of Dialects. The modern pronunciation of the French words *lait*, *mais*, *aussi*, illustrates the same facts, as does also the vulgar German *öch* for *auch*.

γ) By uniting *i* and *u* we produce *ew* in *yew*, *hew*, *new*, &c.; and in like manner any variety of simple vowel sound or diphthongal compound may be formed with the three vowels *a*, *i*, *u* \*.

4. We shall employ the letters of the Roman alphabet to express Chinese sounds; and the student should make himself thoroughly acquainted with the system of orthography given below. An absolutely true pronunciation can only be attained by long and regular practice, by imitating a teacher, and by a residence among the Chinese; yet, by careful attention to the advice here given, considerable advance may be made with the aid of books alone.

T. T. Meadows, Esq., one of H. B. Majesty's Consuls in China, proposed a new orthography several years ago, and made some very just remarks on the *obscure vowel sounds*, with especial reference to their delicate modifications in the Pekin dialect. (See *Desultory Notes on China*. London: Allen, 1847.)

The variations however in the pronunciation of native scholars speaking the same dialect are many, whilst all are sufficiently correct. Just as distinctions may be drawn between the pronunciation of individual scholars in this country and considerable difference be found to exist in their pronunciation of single words; but to alter the spelling of English words because the letter *a* is sounded somewhat broader or made a little longer by one than by another, would lead to endless changes. To illustrate this point—the German *ä* is not the same as the English *a* in *shame* or *ay* in *play*, nor is the German *eu* accurately expressed by *oy* in *joy*, *toy*; yet these examples may stand in a Grammar for Englishmen, because each answers so nearly to the foreign sound as to be a sufficient guide to the pronunciation, though the French *ê* in *même* and the *eui* in *feuille* correspond more nearly to the German *ä* and *eu*.

5. The quantity of each of the vowels in the following table is *long* in all positions which allow of it; that is to say, in some rare positions they will be short; as, for instance, when affected by the *jî-shîng* (902, 2291) or 'entering tone,' which is always designated by the ordinary mark ˘ for a short vowel.

The pronunciation of the short vowels is exemplified by the words enclosed in brackets.

The short *ö*, which should correctly be written with the dot beneath, will be without the dot, as the corresponding short of *ō* long rarely, if ever, occurs.

The equivalent of each vowel is also given according to Dr. Morrison's system of spelling, as the student will have to refer to his Dictionary.

---

\* For further information on this subject the student may refer to Karl F. Becker's *Organism der Sprache*; Jacob Grimm's *Geschichte der Deutschen Sprache*; and Wilhelm von Humboldt's work, *Ueber die Kawi Sprache*, vol. I. *Einleitung*.

*The system of orthography adopted.*

I. The vowels, simple and combined.		
Form.	Morr.	The value of each illustrated by examples.
i i	e eih	i in <i>police</i> ; i in <i>wir</i> (Germ.); i in <i>aussi</i> (Fr.); ( <i>bit.</i> )
e ē	ay ih	a in <i>lame</i> ; ü in <i>fähig</i> (Germ.); ē in <i>même</i> (Fr.); ( <i>bēt.</i> )
a ā	a āh	a in <i>father</i> ; a in <i>darf</i> (Germ.); a in <i>pas</i> (Fr.); ( <i>bāt.</i> )
q q̄	ā uh	a in <i>organ</i> ; e in <i>haben</i> (Germ.); ue in <i>que</i> (Fr.); ( <i>brūt.</i> )
o ō	o ō	o in <i>no</i> ; o in <i>oder</i> (Germ.); ō in <i>côté</i> (Fr.); ( <i>nōt.</i> )
q	aw	(Canton D. and Shanghai D.) o in <i>order</i> ; aw in <i>lwo</i> .
ō	—	(Shanghai D.) ö in <i>Löwe</i> (Germ.); nearly œu in <i>œur</i> (Fr.)
u ū	oo ūh	u in <i>rule</i> ; u in <i>du</i> (Germ.); ou in <i>vous</i> (Fr.); ( <i>buil.</i> )
ū ū̄	eu ue	u in <i>lune</i> (Fr.); ü in <i>Mühe</i> (Germ.); (eu in <i>peut-être</i> .)
ie iē	eay ēē	ie in <i>pied</i> (Fr.); yea (Eng.); (yē in <i>yesterday</i> .)
ia iā	ea ēā	ia in <i>lia</i> , <i>phia</i> (Fr.); ja (Germ.); (yā in <i>yankee</i> .)
io iō	ēō	io in <i>million</i> (Fr.); (Shanghai D.); (yā in <i>yacht</i> .)
iu iū	ew eūh	ew in <i>hew</i> , <i>yew</i> ; (jū in <i>juchhe!</i> (Germ.))
ei	ei	ei in <i>sein</i> (Germ.); ie in <i>pie</i> (Eng.)
eu	ow	e + u, peculiar. French MSS. would have <i>éou</i> .
ai	ae	ai in <i>aisle</i> ; so <i>iai</i> = <i>ae</i> in Morr.
au	aou	ow in <i>cow</i> ; au in <i>Frau</i> (Germ.); so <i>iau</i> = <i>eaou</i> in Morr.
oi	oy	(Canton D.) oi in <i>voice</i> .
ui	uy	(Canton D.) u + i; ui in <i>ruin</i> .
ui	uy	oui in <i>feuille</i> (Fr.); eu in <i>Beute</i> (Germ.)

II. The consonants, single and combined.		
Form.	Morr.	The value of each illustrated by examples.
b	—	as in English, not in Mand. D. (in Shang. D. and Hok. D.)
ch	ch	ch in <i>hatch</i> ; chw in <i>hatchway</i> ; chh in <i>catch him</i> .
d	—	(Shang. D. Ningpo D. &c.) as in English; dj=Eng. j.
f	f	f in <i>fit</i> . The tone in some dialects changes it to v.
g	g	g in <i>good</i> always, never g in <i>gin</i> .
h	h	h in <i>heart</i> ; before i and ü it is a strong aspiration, nearly sh.
j	j	j in <i>jeune</i> (Fr.); z in <i>azure</i> (Eng.); ju or jio.
k	k	k in <i>king</i> ; kw as qu in <i>queen</i> .
l	l	l in <i>line</i> ; lw as in <i>bulwark</i> .
m	m	m in <i>mine</i> ; mw as in <i>homeward</i> .
n	n	n in <i>nine</i> ; nw as in <i>inward</i> ; ng in <i>anger</i> .
p	p	p in <i>pine</i> .
r	r	r in <i>run</i> ; rather more rolling than the English r.
s	s	s in <i>see</i> ; sw as in <i>swain</i> .
sh	sh	sh in <i>shine</i> ; shw as in <i>a rash wish</i> .
t	t	t in <i>tiny</i> ; tw as in <i>twist</i> ; ts as in <i>wits</i> ; tw as in <i>Cotswold</i> .
v	—	v in <i>vine</i> (Shang. and Ning. D.)
w	w	w in <i>way</i> , or v in <i>vine</i> .
y	y	y in <i>you</i> .
z	z	z in <i>squeeze</i> , sz=s + z, i. e. the hissing sound of s, then the buzzing sound of z, and in <i>tez</i> =ts + z.

## 6.

## Exercise for reading.

*T's'ing ts'au k'ì lai, kiáu hai-tsè-mên, sau-sau tì, kiau-kiau hwa, gau shouèi sì lién, pau wàn hau ch'á k'í-k'í; mǔ-yüè sz tì shí-heú, k'ān-k'ān shū siè-siè tsé; sǎn-liàng-kó sz-wǎn pǎng-yüè, tsò kó shí, hía kó wet-kí, kiái-kiái mǎn-qr. tsíu k'ò-i kwò-tí jì-tsé liáu.*

## §. 2. Syllables and their intonation.

7. After having thus considered elementary sounds and the symbols suited to express them, we naturally proceed to view them as they are united to form syllables. The characters of the Chinese do not represent elementary sounds or articulations, but each character stands for an entire syllable. The syllable then in Chinese is simply the *name* given to a symbol; that is, each character is expressed by a syllable, the sound of which cannot be discovered from the composition or formation of the character. In fact, the same characters have different names in the different provinces in which they are read, just as the Arabic numerals are called by different names in the various states of Europe and Asia.

8. Every syllable in the Court dialect ends with a vowel or nasal, but commonly with a vowel. The dialectic peculiarities may be seen in the Comparative Table.

9. The Chinese divide the syllable into two parts, the initial and the final; and they define the pronunciation of characters by a process called *fàn-tse*

反切 'to cut off in opposite directions;' thus the initial of the syllable *ke* may be taken and the final of the syllable *mung*, and they together constitute the syllable *kung*. In K'anghi's Dictionary the pronunciation of characters is always explained in this way; e. g. the sound of the character 正 is explained thus: *chí shing tsè*, *chí* and *shing* being cut in the above way into *ch-ing*, which is the pronunciation of the character *ching*.

10. The number of different Chinese syllables is between four and five hundred. In the Mandarin or Court dialect—the *Kwān-hwa* 官話—there are four hundred and ten syllables, besides those with aspirates, as *thien* or *t'ien*. They are here arranged in alphabetic order, and the student will do well to read them as an exercise in orthöpy.

Table of the syllables in the *Kwān-hwa*.

1 a	13 chē	25 chüi	37 fu	49 gō	61 hiā	73 hiun
2 an	14 chen	26 chung	38 fū	50 hai	62 haii	74 hiung
3 ar	15 cheu	27 chwa	39 fung	51 han	63 hiang	75 ho
4 au	16 chi	28 chwai	40 gai	52 hān	64 hiau	76 hō
5 cha	17 chī	29 chwang	41 gan	53 hang	65 hiē	77 hu
6 chā	18 chin	30 fā	42 gān	54 hāng	66 hien	78 hū
7 chāi	19 ching	31 fan	43 gang	55 hau	67 hin	79 hū
8 chan	20 chō	32 fan	44 gāng	56 hē	68 hing	80 hung
9 chān	21 chu	33 fang	45 gau	57 heu	69 hiō	81 hwa
10 chāng	22 chū	34 feu	46 geu	58 hi	70 hiu	82 hwa
11 chāu	23 chū	35 fi	47 gī	59 hī	71 hiū	83 hwai
12 che	24 chuen	36 fō	48 go	60 hia	72 hiuen	84 hwan



85 <i>huq̄n</i>	132 <i>kiun</i>	179 <i>lǐ</i>	226 <i>nǐd</i>	273 <i>shǎ</i>	319 <i>swan</i>	365 <i>tsu</i>
86 <i>huang</i>	133 <i>kiung</i>	180 <i>kui</i>	227 <i>niu</i>	274 <i>shai</i>	320 <i>sz</i>	366 <i>tsü</i>
87 <i>huq̄ng</i>	134 <i>ko</i>	181 <i>lung</i>	228 <i>no</i>	275 <i>shan</i>	321 <i>ta</i>	367 <i>tsü</i>
88 <i>huō</i>	135 <i>kō</i>	182 <i>luan</i>	229 <i>nō</i>	276 <i>shq̄n</i>	322 <i>tā</i>	368 <i>tsü</i>
89 <i>huōi</i>	136 <i>ku</i>	183 <i>ma</i>	230 <i>nu</i>	277 <i>shang</i>	323 <i>tai</i>	369 <i>tsüi</i>
90 <i>huōi</i>	137 <i>kü</i>	184 <i>mā</i>	231 <i>nü</i>	278 <i>shau</i>	324 <i>tan</i>	370 <i>tsung</i>
91 <i>i</i>	138 <i>kü</i>	185 <i>mai</i>	232 <i>nü</i>	279 <i>she</i>	325 <i>tan</i>	371 <i>tsuan</i>
92 <i>jān</i>	139 <i>kü</i>	186 <i>man</i>	233 <i>nüi</i>	280 <i>shē</i>	326 <i>tang</i>	372 <i>tsz</i>
93 <i>jāng</i>	140 <i>kung</i>	187 <i>mān</i>	234 <i>nung</i>	281 <i>shen</i>	327 <i>tang</i>	373 <i>tu</i>
94 <i>jau</i>	141 <i>kwa</i>	188 <i>mang</i>	235 <i>nwan</i>	282 <i>sheu</i>	328 <i>tau</i>	374 <i>tü</i>
95 <i>je</i>	142 <i>kwō</i>	189 <i>māng</i>	236 <i>o</i>	283 <i>shi</i>	329 <i>tē</i>	375 <i>tüi</i>
96 <i>jē</i>	143 <i>kwai</i>	190 <i>man</i>	237 <i>ō</i>	284 <i>shǐ</i>	330 <i>tsu</i>	376 <i>tung</i>
97 <i>jen</i>	144 <i>kwan</i>	191 <i>me</i>	238 <i>pa</i>	285 <i>shin</i>	331 <i>tī</i>	377 <i>tsuan</i>
98 <i>jeu</i>	145 <i>kwq̄n</i>	192 <i>mē</i>	239 <i>pā</i>	286 <i>shing</i>	332 <i>tī</i>	378 <i>ung</i>
99 <i>jī</i>	146 <i>kwang</i>	193 <i>mei</i>	240 <i>pai</i>	287 <i>shō</i>	333 <i>tsiau</i>	379 <i>wa</i>
100 <i>jīn</i>	147 <i>kwq̄ng</i>	194 <i>meu</i>	241 <i>pan</i>	288 <i>shu</i>	334 <i>tiē</i>	380 <i>wā</i>
101 <i>jīng</i>	148 <i>kwai</i>	195 <i>mī</i>	242 <i>pān</i>	289 <i>shü</i>	335 <i>tiē</i>	381 <i>wai</i>
102 <i>jō</i>	149 <i>kuo</i>	196 <i>mī</i>	243 <i>pang</i>	290 <i>shwa</i>	336 <i>tiēn</i>	382 <i>wan</i>
103 <i>ju</i>	150 <i>kwō</i>	197 <i>miāu</i>	244 <i>pāng</i>	291 <i>shwō</i>	337 <i>ting</i>	383 <i>wq̄n</i>
104 <i>jū</i>	151 <i>kwō</i>	198 <i>mīe</i>	245 <i>pau</i>	292 <i>shwai</i>	338 <i>ti</i>	384 <i>wang</i>
105 <i>juen</i>	152 <i>la</i>	199 <i>mien</i>	246 <i>pē</i>	293 <i>shwang</i>	339 <i>to</i>	385 <i>wai</i>
106 <i>jūi</i>	153 <i>lā</i>	200 <i>mīn</i>	247 <i>pei</i>	294 <i>shwō</i>	340 <i>tō</i>	386 <i>wi</i>
107 <i>jung</i>	154 <i>lai</i>	201 <i>mīng</i>	248 <i>peu</i>	295 <i>shwōi</i>	341 <i>tō</i>	387 <i>wo</i>
108 <i>kai</i>	155 <i>lan</i>	202 <i>mīu</i>	249 <i>pi</i>	296 <i>si</i>	342 <i>tsai</i>	388 <i>wō</i>
109 <i>kan</i>	156 <i>lān</i>	203 <i>mo</i>	250 <i>pī</i>	297 <i>sī</i>	343 <i>tsan</i>	389 <i>wu</i>
110 <i>kān</i>	157 <i>lang</i>	204 <i>mō</i>	251 <i>piāu</i>	298 <i>siang</i>	344 <i>tsq̄n</i>	390 <i>wū</i>
111 <i>kang</i>	158 <i>lāng</i>	205 <i>mu</i>	252 <i>piē</i>	299 <i>siāu</i>	345 <i>tsang</i>	391 <i>ya</i>
112 <i>kāng</i>	159 <i>lau</i>	206 <i>mū</i>	253 <i>piēn</i>	300 <i>sie</i>	346 <i>tsang</i>	392 <i>yā</i>
113 <i>kau</i>	160 <i>lē</i>	207 <i>mung</i>	254 <i>pīn</i>	301 <i>sīē</i>	347 <i>tsau</i>	393 <i>yai</i>
114 <i>ke</i>	161 <i>leu</i>	208 <i>mwan</i>	255 <i>ping</i>	302 <i>sien</i>	348 <i>tsē</i>	394 <i>yq̄n</i>
115 <i>keu</i>	162 <i>li</i>	209 <i>na</i>	256 <i>pīu</i>	303 <i>sīn</i>	349 <i>tsau</i>	395 <i>yang</i>
116 <i>kī</i>	163 <i>lī</i>	210 <i>nā</i>	257 <i>pō</i>	304 <i>sīng</i>	350 <i>tsi</i>	396 <i>yau</i>
117 <i>kī</i>	164 <i>liang</i>	211 <i>nai</i>	258 <i>pō</i>	305 <i>sīō</i>	351 <i>tsī</i>	397 <i>ye</i>
118 <i>kia</i>	165 <i>liāu</i>	212 <i>nan</i>	259 <i>pū</i>	306 <i>sīu</i>	352 <i>tsiang</i>	398 <i>yē</i>
119 <i>kiā</i>	166 <i>liē</i>	213 <i>nān</i>	260 <i>pū</i>	307 <i>sīü</i>	353 <i>tsiau</i>	399 <i>yēn</i>
120 <i>kiāi</i>	167 <i>liēn</i>	214 <i>nang</i>	261 <i>pung</i>	308 <i>siuen</i>	354 <i>tsie</i>	400 <i>yī</i>
121 <i>kiang</i>	168 <i>līn</i>	215 <i>nāng</i>	262 <i>pwān</i>	309 <i>siun</i>	355 <i>tsiē</i>	401 <i>yīn</i>
122 <i>kiau</i>	169 <i>ling</i>	216 <i>nau</i>	263 <i>sā</i>	310 <i>so</i>	356 <i>tsien</i>	402 <i>yīng</i>
123 <i>kīe</i>	170 <i>liō</i>	217 <i>neu</i>	264 <i>sai</i>	311 <i>sō</i>	357 <i>tsin</i>	403 <i>yīu</i>
124 <i>kiē</i>	171 <i>liū</i>	218 <i>nī</i>	265 <i>sān</i>	312 <i>sū</i>	358 <i>tsing</i>	404 <i>yō</i>
125 <i>kien</i>	172 <i>liū</i>	219 <i>nī</i>	266 <i>sān</i>	313 <i>sū</i>	359 <i>tsō</i>	405 <i>yū</i>
126 <i>kīn</i>	173 <i>liuen</i>	220 <i>niang</i>	267 <i>sang</i>	314 <i>sū</i>	360 <i>tsiu</i>	406 <i>yū</i>
127 <i>king</i>	174 <i>lo</i>	221 <i>niāu</i>	268 <i>sāng</i>	315 <i>sū</i>	361 <i>tsiuen</i>	407 <i>yū</i>
128 <i>kiō</i>	175 <i>lō</i>	222 <i>niē</i>	269 <i>sau</i>	316 <i>sūn</i>	362 <i>tsiun</i>	408 <i>yuen</i>
129 <i>kiu</i>	176 <i>lū</i>	223 <i>nien</i>	270 <i>sē</i>	317 <i>sung</i>	363 <i>tsō</i>	409 <i>yūn</i>
130 <i>kiū</i>	177 <i>lū</i>	224 <i>nīn</i>	271 <i>seu</i>	318 <i>sūi</i>	364 <i>tsō</i>	410 <i>yung</i>
131 <i>kiuen</i>	178 <i>lū</i>	225 <i>nīng</i>	272 <i>sha</i>			

11. The syllable *q̄r* (No. 3. of the preceding list) is variously spelt by Morrison and others *urh*, *eul*, *'u*, *irr*, *ri*. It represents a peculiar sound, probably of modern origin, as it is not found in the Imperial Dictionary of *K'anghi* 康熙. The characters it expresses are called *i* in the Canton and some other dialects, and it rhymes with *i* in the *Shi-king* 詩經 or Classic Odes.

12. The articulate sounds in every language must have preceded the written character. There is no positive proof that the syllabic sounds in present use in China are of very great antiquity, though this may be inferred from one or two facts. *a.* The two hundred and fourteen elementary characters called *Radicals*, contain one hundred and fifty of the above-mentioned four hundred syllables; and this is a large-proportion unless we suppose that they had those sounds attached to them in a very early stage of the language, when, as yet, but few other characters had been invented.

*b.* The *Primitives*, one thousand seven hundred in number, another set of elementary characters, which, with the Radicals, make up the body of material out of which the thirty or forty thousand characters have been constructed, contain nearly every syllable found in the language.

*c.* Ancient poetry also goes to prove the antiquity of the present oral system, by the rhymes in the *Shi-king*. Some of these odes are very ancient. One of them, on the marriage of *Wên-wáng* 文王, a celebrated emperor, father of the *Cheü* 周 family, and which was without doubt written at that period, leads us back three thousand years, or about two hundred years before the reputed date of Homer\*.

13. Every syllable in Chinese is uttered with a certain intonation or modulation of the voice, which is commonly called its 'tone' by Europeans; by natives the tone is called *Shing-yin* 聲音, i. e. *tone-sound* (v. 2291).

14. The tones are of essential service in adding distinctness to the expression; in many cases a phrase would be quite unintelligible without its proper tones, and often convey an entirely different idea from the one intended.

15. The difficulty of learning these tones has been much exaggerated, and the published opinions of some who had a right to be heard on subjects connected with the Chinese language, have tended to confirm misconceptions. We shall here endeavour to state clearly their nature, and give directions for their acquirement.

16. In the first place, the tones are not mere *accents* or the elevated utterance of syllables in words, nor *accent*, as when we speak of the French accent, Scotch accent, a point in which every language differs, nor the wayward and uncertain intonation of words and phrases as we hear frequently in animated dialogue and oratory; but they are certain fixed intonations, peculiar to each character when uttered, and they change only when euphony would be disturbed by their accustomed sound being retained.

17. The Chinese *Shing-yin* are from *four* to *eight* of these latter intonations proper to the language of the orator, and they add as much force and vigour to the Chinese tongue as they do to our own. Only one of them is peculiar and uncommon, and this is a sort of whine or drawl; but in union with others in the same word it assimilates in some degree to the general or predominating tone, and so loses its unpleasant sound.

---

\* V. Marshman's *Clavis Sinica*, pp. 83, 84, etc.

18. The number of the tones appears to have been four in the first instance, but in the various dialects of China they rise to seven and eight. They are as follows:

1. The *p'ing-shing* 平 (2291) 'even, level tone.'
2. The *shang-shing* 上 (2291) 'rising tone.'
3. The *k'ü-shing* 去 (2291) 'departing tone.'
4. The *jü-shing* 入 (2291) 'entering tone.'

By uttering these four at a low pitch of the voice and then at a higher, eight different intonations are produced; those pitched high being denominated *shang* 上 'upper,' and those pitched low being called *hiä* 下 'lower.'

19. The Mandarin dialect, or *Kwan-hua*, acknowledges five of these tones, the whole of the upper series and the first of the lower. In common parlance they are called, 1. *P'ing*, 2. *shang*, 3. *k'ü*, 4. *jü*, and 5. *hiä-p'ing*.

20. The *Shang-p'ing-shing* is the 'upper even tone,' and may be illustrated by the sound of calling to a person at some distance, thus: '*John, fetch my horse,*' the syllables in Italics expressing the tone.

21. The *Shang-shang-shing* or 'upper rising tone' agrees nearly with our tone of the final syllable in an interrogation with surprise, 'Will he say that *now?*' 'Can he come, *eh?*' The voice is first depressed and then suddenly raised.

22. The *Shang-k'ü-shing* or 'upper descending tone' is well illustrated by a phrase of exclamation with scorn or reproach.

23. The *Shang-jü-shing* or 'upper entering tone' is equivalent to the short abrupt utterance in such a phrase as 'tit for tat,' without pronouncing the final letters. In the Peking dialect this tone is changed into the *k'ü-shing*.

24. The *Hiä-p'ing-shing* or 'lower even tone' is similar to the corresponding upper one, but is pitched *lower*, as in the tone of a direct reply to a question, 'Yes,' 'No,' 'Who fetched it?' '*John.*'

25. The *Hiä-shang-shing* or 'lower rising tone' is very much like the Scotch accent, the voice is depressed and quickly raised again. This tone and the remaining three are not recognised in the Mandarin dialect, and will therefore not be explained here. The student is referred for further information on the subject of the tones to the works of Dyer, Medhurst, Bridgman, and Edkins, all of whom have taken great pains to elucidate them.

26. The diacritical marks used by the early Jesuits to distinguish the tones we shall employ in this work. They are as follows: - ' ^ ~ 1. *P'ing*, 2. *shang*, 3. *k'ü*, 4. *jü*, 5. *hiä-p'ing*; placed above the vowel of the syllable to be intonated thus, *tā, tǎ, tǎ, tǎ, tǎ*.

27. The following passages are intended to illustrate the character of tones. The numbers attached to the words, and the diacritical marks also, refer to the tones employed in the pronunciation of them.

1. "Thère I säw Rhadamánthus (5), one of the judges of the dead, seated

at his tribunal (5). He interrogated each separately. 'Mādām' (1), says he, to the first of them, 'you have been upon the earth above fifty years; what have you been doing there all this while?' 'Doing!' (2), says she, 'really I don't know what I've been doing!' " *Guardian*, No. 158.

II. LEAR. But goes this with thy heart? (2)

CORDELIA. Ay, good my lord.

LEAR. So young, and so untender?

COR. So young, my lord, and true (5).

LEAR. Let it be so.—Thy truth then be thy dower;  
For, by the sacred radiance of the sun;  
The mysteries of Hécate, and the night;  
By all the operations of the orbs (3),  
From whom we do exist and cease to be;  
Here I disclaim all my paternal care,  
Propinquity and property of blood,  
And as a stranger to my heart and me  
Hold these, from this, for ever.

KENT. Good my liege—


LEAR. Peace, Kent!

Come not betwixt the dragon and his wrath:

I lov'd her most, and thought to set my rest

On her kind nursery.—Hence, and avoid my sight.

SHAKESPEARE, *King Lear*, Act I. Sc. 2.

28. The Chinese sometimes distinguish the tone of a syllable by a mark placed at the corner of the character, but not generally. As each character is inscribed in a square, the four corners serve as positions for tone-marks in the order shown here: 

29. The tone of a character is sometimes changed to show that it has an uncommon meaning or that its relation to the sentence is altered; thus *nouns* become *verbs*, and *adjectives* become *nouns*, but not by any constant rule: *chà* 主 'a lord' becomes *chú* 'to rule'; *ò* or *gò* 惡 'bad' becomes *wú* or *hú* 'to hate'; *shàng* 上 'upper' becomes *sháng* 'to go up, ascend'; *chóng* 重 'heavy' becomes *cháng* 'to repeat.' In such cases a small circle called *kiuén* (1282) is placed at one corner of the character to intimate the change.

30. The Chinese aspirate many of their syllables very strongly, and the absence of the aspiration nearly always renders the phrase unintelligible. For example, *kai* 該 'ought,' but *k'ai* 開 'to open.' We shall express the aspiration by the Greek *spiritus asper* ('). When the letter *h* is used it will be understood to be a very strong aspiration; thus *hai* 海 'the sea' is pronounced as if written with the German guttural *ch*, *chai*.

31. The Chinese are accustomed to arrange the characters in Dictionaries according to the *final sounds* of the syllables which they represent; thus, *sien, lien, mien, kien*, &c., come together as they rhyme with each other, and then they follow according to the *tones*, *p'ing, shàng, k'ü, jî*. In the Canton dialect there is a Dictionary of this kind, in which the syllables are arranged in thirty-three classes according to their terminations. The first of the series is *sien*; and the syllables which rhyme with this are taken through the four tones of both upper and lower series. The practice of reading these syllables after a native instructor, in the order of the tones, will be advantageous to the student: thus, *siên, siên, siên, siê*; and then, as a second exercise, he should select dissyllabic and trisyllabic combinations whose sequences as regards tone are similar.

32. The following table will show what we mean by sequence in tone, and the accompanying exercises will serve to accustom the student to practical intonation.

	<i>P'ing</i>	<i>Shàng</i>	<i>K'ü</i>	<i>Jî</i>	<i>Hia-p'ing</i>
<i>P'ing</i>	1 - -	2 - \	3 - /	4 - ˘	5 - ^
<i>Shàng</i>	6 \ -	7 \ \	8 \ /	9 \ ˘	10 \ ^
<i>K'ü</i>	11 / -	12 / \	13 / /	14 / ˘	15 / ^
<i>Jî</i>	16 ˘ -	17 ˘ \	18 ˘ /	19 ˘ ˘	20 ˘ ^
<i>Hia-p'ing</i>	21 ^ -	22 ^ \	23 ^ /	24 ^ ˘	25 ^ ^

From this it appears that twenty-five combinations of tones may be formed, though some occur more frequently than others. We shall now give several combinations intoned according to the numbers in the table:

1. *kün-t'ien* 'to-day';<sup>a b</sup> *küŋ-fü* 'work';<sup>c d</sup> *säng-küŋ* 'Mr., Sir.'<sup>e f</sup>
2. *tō-shau* 'how many?';<sup>g h</sup> *t'ien-chü* 'God \*';<sup>b i</sup> *gün-tien* 'favour.'<sup>j k</sup>
3. *säng-i* 'trade, business';<sup>l m</sup> *chī-tau* 'to know';<sup>n o</sup> *i-kiu* 'as before.'<sup>p q</sup>
4. *i-fü* 'clothes';<sup>r s</sup> *sheü-shü* 'to collect together';<sup>t u</sup> *säng-jî* 'birthday.'<sup>v</sup>

\* The word used by the Romanists.

<sup>a</sup>今 <sup>b</sup>天 <sup>c</sup>工 <sup>d</sup>夫 <sup>e</sup>相 <sup>f</sup>公 <sup>g</sup>多  
<sup>h</sup>少 <sup>i</sup>主 <sup>j</sup>恩 <sup>k</sup>典 <sup>l</sup>生 <sup>m</sup>意 <sup>n</sup>知 <sup>o</sup>道  
<sup>p</sup>已 <sup>q</sup>久 <sup>r</sup>衣 <sup>s</sup>服 <sup>t</sup>取 <sup>u</sup>拾 <sup>v</sup>日

c

5. *shī-fáng* 'a library;'<sup>ab</sup> *sā-wq̄n* 'polished, refined;'<sup>cd</sup> *kān-ts'áng* 'to follow.'<sup>ef</sup>
6. *tà-sau* 'to sweep;'<sup>gh</sup> *tà-t'ing* 'to listen;'<sup>gi</sup> *tièn-hiāng* 'to kindle incense.'<sup>jk</sup>
7. *lau-tsè* 'the old one, father;'<sup>lm</sup> *yìn-tsü* 'to drink wine;'<sup>no</sup> *t'ü-chàn* 'land produce.'<sup>pq</sup>
8. *hò-kí* 'an assistant;'<sup>rs</sup> *tsau-fán* 'morning rice, breakfast;'<sup>tu</sup> *tàng-heú* 'to wait for.'<sup>vw</sup>
9. *wei-khiú* 'hardship;'<sup>xy</sup> *tà-fü* 'to send;'<sup>zs</sup> *yèn-mü* 'the eyes.'<sup>a'b'</sup>
10. *tsü-ch'á* 'to pour out tea;'<sup>c'd'</sup> *wàng-nien* 'last year;'<sup>e'f'</sup> *tièn-t'ot* 'to nod.'<sup>g'</sup>
11. *wai-pièn* 'outside;'<sup>h'i'</sup> *chúng-huá* 'to plant flowers;'<sup>j'k'</sup> *paú-chi* 'to inform.'<sup>l'm'</sup>
12. *ché-lí* 'here;'<sup>n'o'</sup> *sí-siàng* 'to think of carefully;'<sup>p'q'</sup> *sháng-mà* 'to mount a horse.'<sup>r's'</sup>
13. *fí-yáng* 'expenses;'<sup>t'u'</sup> *yü-pí* 'to prepare beforehand;'<sup>v'w'</sup> *kaú-sü* 'to inform.'<sup>x'y'</sup>
14. *lúng-shá* 'to kill;'<sup>s'a''</sup> *hou-shí* 'liberal;'<sup>b''c''</sup> *k'í-lí* 'strength.'<sup>d''e''</sup>
15. *pí-mq̄n* 'shut the door;'<sup>f''g''</sup> *hiá-k'í* 'to play at chess;'<sup>h''i''</sup> *sé-tsing* 'affair.'<sup>j''k''</sup>
16. *tü-shü* 'to study;'<sup>l''a''</sup> *fü-chí* 'to be mad;'<sup>s'm''</sup> *chü-säng* 'domestic animals.'<sup>n''o''</sup>
17. *tsò-chü* 'to act as master;'<sup>p''q''</sup> *k'í-k'uo* 'to bear fruit;'<sup>r''s''</sup> *j'í-tsè* 'a day.'<sup>t''m''</sup>
18. *tá-ying* 'to answer;'<sup>u''v''</sup> *shuó-huá* 'talk;'<sup>w''x''</sup> *tsè-pí* 'to blame.'<sup>y''w''</sup>

<sup>a</sup> 書	<sup>b</sup> 房	<sup>c</sup> 斯	<sup>d</sup> 文	<sup>e</sup> 跟	<sup>f</sup> 從	<sup>g</sup> 打
<sup>h</sup> 掃	<sup>i</sup> 聽	<sup>j</sup> 點	<sup>k</sup> 香	<sup>l</sup> 老	<sup>m</sup> 子	<sup>n</sup> 飲
<sup>p</sup> 土	<sup>q</sup> 產	<sup>r</sup> 移	<sup>s</sup> 計	<sup>t</sup> 早	<sup>u</sup> 飯	<sup>v</sup> 等
<sup>x</sup> 委	<sup>y</sup> 曲	<sup>z</sup> 發	<sup>a'</sup> 眼	<sup>b'</sup> 目	<sup>c'</sup> 倒	<sup>d'</sup> 茶
<sup>f'</sup> 年	<sup>g'</sup> 頭	<sup>h'</sup> 外	<sup>i'</sup> 邊	<sup>j'</sup> 種	<sup>k'</sup> 花	<sup>l'</sup> 報
<sup>n'</sup> 這	<sup>o'</sup> 裏	<sup>p'</sup> 細	<sup>q'</sup> 想	<sup>r'</sup> 上	<sup>s'</sup> 馬	<sup>t'</sup> 費
<sup>v'</sup> 預	<sup>w'</sup> 備	<sup>x'</sup> 告	<sup>y'</sup> 訴	<sup>z'</sup> 弄	<sup>a''</sup> 殺	<sup>b''</sup> 厚
<sup>d''</sup> 氣	<sup>e''</sup> 力	<sup>f''</sup> 閉	<sup>g''</sup> 門	<sup>h''</sup> 下	<sup>i''</sup> 棋	<sup>j''</sup> 事
<sup>l''</sup> 讀	<sup>m''</sup> 痴	<sup>n''</sup> 蓄	<sup>o''</sup> 生	<sup>p''</sup> 作	<sup>q''</sup> 主	<sup>r''</sup> 結
<sup>t''</sup> 日	<sup>u''</sup> 答	<sup>v''</sup> 應	<sup>w''</sup> 說	<sup>x''</sup> 話	<sup>y''</sup> 責	<sup>z''</sup> 果

19. *tsò-jì* 'yesterday';<sup>a b</sup> *tsi-k'è* 'forthwith';<sup>c d</sup> *yü-fü* 'so much the more.'<sup>e f</sup>  
 20. *ch'ü-lai* 'going in and out';<sup>g h</sup> *hiü-fäng* 'a schoolroom';<sup>i j</sup> *yü-t'äng* 'together.'<sup>k l</sup>  
 21. *näng-kän* 'power';<sup>m n</sup> *jü-kün* 'now';<sup>o p</sup> *niên-käng* 'age'<sup>q r</sup> (of a person).  
 22. *wän-lí* 'elegance of composition';<sup>s t</sup> *jü-tsè* 'thus';<sup>u v</sup> *yau-shèu* 'to wave the hand.'<sup>w x</sup>  
 23. *míng-tsí* 'name and title';<sup>y z</sup> *yüng-mau* 'countenance';<sup>aa</sup> *k'í-kwai* 'marvellous.'<sup>b c</sup>  
 24. *nán-shuó* 'difficult to say';<sup>d e</sup> *fäng-ü* 'a house';<sup>f g</sup> *míng-jí* 'tomorrow.'<sup>h b</sup>  
 25. *huü-lai* 'to return';<sup>h' i'</sup> *ch'á-hü* 'tea-pot';<sup>j' k'</sup> *nü-ts'ai* 'a slave.'<sup>l' m'</sup>

33. The following may serve as an exercise for reading the different tones with the same syllable aspirated as well as unaspirated:

*Chäng* <sup>n'</sup> 'chapter'; *ch'äng* <sup>o'</sup> 'long'; *chàng* <sup>p'</sup> 'palm of the hand'; *cháng* <sup>q'</sup> 'a curtain'; *chäng* <sup>r'</sup> 'constant'; *ch'äng* <sup>s'</sup> 'to reward'; *chí* <sup>t'</sup> 'to know'; *chì* <sup>u'</sup> 'to point out'; *ch'ì* <sup>v'</sup> 'to begin'; *chí* <sup>w'</sup> 'to come'; *chì* <sup>x'</sup> 'slow'; *chüng* <sup>y'</sup> 'middle'; *ch'üng* <sup>z'</sup> 'insect'; *chäng* <sup>aa''</sup> 'to plant'; *fän* <sup>b''</sup> 'to divide'; *fän* <sup>c''</sup> 'flour'; *fän* <sup>d''</sup> 'all'; *fän* <sup>e''</sup> 'to reverse'; *fí* <sup>f''</sup> 'not'; *fí* <sup>g''</sup> 'to spend'; *fí* <sup>h''</sup> 'fat'; *hò* <sup>i''</sup> 'fire'; *hò* <sup>j''</sup> 'what?'; *hiung* <sup>k''</sup> 'an elder brother'; *hiung* <sup>l''</sup> 'a bear'; *huó* <sup>m''</sup> 'a flower'; *huó* <sup>n''</sup> 'to change'; *huó* <sup>o''</sup> 'flowery'; *kí* <sup>p''</sup> 'a foundation'; *kí* <sup>q''</sup> 'self'; *kí* <sup>r''</sup> 'to remember, record'; *k'í* <sup>s''</sup> 'he, that'; *k'í* <sup>t''</sup> 'to insult'; *k'í* <sup>u''</sup> 'to begin.'

<sup>a</sup> 昨	<sup>b</sup> 日	<sup>c</sup> 間	<sup>d</sup> 刻	<sup>e</sup> 越	<sup>f</sup> 發	<sup>g</sup> 出
<sup>h</sup> 來	<sup>i</sup> 學	<sup>j</sup> 房	<sup>k</sup> 一	<sup>l</sup> 同	<sup>m</sup> 能	<sup>n</sup> 幹
<sup>p</sup> 今	<sup>q</sup> 年	<sup>r</sup> 康	<sup>s</sup> 文	<sup>t</sup> 理	<sup>u</sup> 此	<sup>v</sup> 搖
<sup>x</sup> 名	<sup>y</sup> 字	<sup>z</sup> 容	<sup>a'</sup> 貌	<sup>b'</sup> 奇	<sup>c'</sup> 怪	<sup>d'</sup> 難
<sup>f'</sup> 屋	<sup>g'</sup> 明	<sup>h'</sup> 回	<sup>i'</sup> 來	<sup>j'</sup> 茶	<sup>k'</sup> 壺	<sup>l'</sup> 奴
<sup>x'</sup> 章	<sup>o'</sup> 長	<sup>p'</sup> 掌	<sup>q'</sup> 帳	<sup>r'</sup> 常	<sup>s'</sup> 償	<sup>t'</sup> 知
<sup>v'</sup> 始	<sup>w'</sup> 至	<sup>x'</sup> 遲	<sup>y'</sup> 中	<sup>z'</sup> 虫	<sup>aa'</sup> 種	<sup>b'</sup> 分
<sup>d'</sup> 凡	<sup>e'</sup> 反	<sup>f'</sup> 非	<sup>g'</sup> 費	<sup>h'</sup> 肥	<sup>i'</sup> 火	<sup>j'</sup> 何
<sup>r'</sup> 熊	<sup>m'</sup> 花	<sup>n'</sup> 化	<sup>o'</sup> 華	<sup>p'</sup> 基	<sup>q'</sup> 己	<sup>r'</sup> 記
<sup>f'</sup> 欺	<sup>u'</sup> 起					<sup>s'</sup> 其

These will afford practice for the student in the regular sequences of *p'ing*, *shang*, *k'ü*, and some others:

*t's'ien-lì-k'ing* 千里鏡 'thousand-mile-mirror—a telescope.'

*ch'au-shèu k'iau jìn* 招手叫人 'beckon with hand—call man.'

*g'an-t'ien ts'ui tá* 恩典最大 his 'favour very great.'

*t'än-tsüè kuò tō* 貪酒過多 'desire wine passover much—he is too fond of wine.'

It remains for the student to collect phrases with the same consecutive tones, and to practise reading them aloud. Such short sentences may be found already marked with the proper tones in the body of this work.

### §. 3. Words and their composition generally.

34. Up to this point we have considered only the *sounds* and *syllables* of the Chinese, independent of any meaning that might be attached to them. We next turn to *words* as the expression of ideas. By a word is here meant one or more syllables, which, on being pronounced, convey but one signification; e. g. *jìn* 人 'man,' *t'is-ts'ing* 鐵匠 'a blacksmith.'

35. A word in Chinese *may* consist of *one* syllable, but from the want of grammatical inflexions, and from the limited number of syllables in use, a monosyllable is rarely intelligible when alone; it generally requires some adjunct to limit or strengthen its meaning. To illustrate this; *t'í* 地 signifies 'earth;' *t'í* 帝 'ruler;' *t'í* 弟 'younger brother:' the syllables and tones of all these being alike, there is nothing to distinguish them when uttered, and it is only by some syllable or syllables being attached to them, that any notion is to be acquired from them. Thus in the phrase *t'ien-t'í* 天 | 'heaven and earth,' the meaning of the syllable *t'í* becomes known by its juxta-position with the syllable *t'ien*. In *t'í-f'ang* | 方 'a place,' the syllable *t'í* 'earth' is limited by *f'ang* 'a square,' making the compound to signify 'locality, region' merely. Again, *t'í* 'ruler,' as a general term, is limited in the spoken language to 'emperor' by prefixing *huáng* 皇 'emperor,' and is made to signify 'God' by prefixing *shang* 上 'upper.' Then again, *t'í* 'younger brother' is made intelligible at once to a Chinese by the addition of *hiung* 兄 'elder brother;' *hiung-t'í* meaning 'brethren.'

36. When two or more syllables come together in the above way to form one word or phrase, though each syllable may have a distinct meaning of its own, the compound becomes in many cases a perfect word with a new meaning, varying according to the nature of the relation existing between the syllables of which it is composed. These syllables either represent (a) *syno-*



*nyme*, as *yèn-mù* 眼目 'the eye,' *chūng-sin* 中心 'middle-heart—the centre,' *mù-wi* 末尾 'end-tail—the end,' where each is as much a dissyllable as *workhouse*, *washstand*, &c., in English; or they form ( $\beta$ ) a phrase, as in *t'ien-ti* 'heaven and earth,' *k'ung mung* 孔孟 'Confucius and Mencius,' which amounts to enumeration of objects; or ( $\gamma$ ) words of opposite meaning are united to form the general or abstract term implied by each, e.g. *hiung-ti* 'elder brother, younger brother—brethren \*,' *tō-shau* 多少 'many, few—quantity, or how many?' or ( $\delta$ ) one of the syllables stands as an attribute of the other, e.g. *shing-jin* 聖人 'holy-man—a sage, a philosopher,' *tā-huang* 大黃 'great-yellow—rhubarb,' *k'ü-nièn* 去年 'gone year—last year;' or ( $\epsilon$ ) the two are in apposition, e.g. *shí-tsí* 石字 'shí, the character—the character shí' (stone), *jín-kiā* 人家 'man-family—a person,' *k'ü-jin* 客人 'guest-man—a guest.' Similar unities may be formed by joining verbs which are synonymous or antithetical in meaning; and innumerable phrases of two and three syllables are constituted, by conventional usage, perfect words, their elements being inseparable. This subject will be found further explained in the section on the formation of nouns and verbs. The following English words and phrases will lead the student to anticipate what he may find in Chinese compounds: (a) *wire-worker*, *silver-smith*, *tin-man*, *plum-tree*, *craw-fish*, *load-stone*, *the three kingdoms* (for the whole country), *church-warden*, *feather-bed*, *sea-port*, *fox-hound*; (b) *to injure a man*, *to kill a man*, *to obey an order*.

37. From the above, however, it must not be inferred that Chinese words, thus formed, always remain in their original form when brought into construction in the sentence. The rhythm often causes the exclusion of one syllable from a word when the sense is unaffected by its absence. Thus *mù-tsin*<sup>b</sup> is 'mother-relation—mother;' *qí-tsá*<sup>d</sup> is 'son-child—son;' 'to die' is *sá*<sup>c</sup>, and *sá-liá*<sup>f</sup> means 'die-finish—died;' but in the expression 'The mother and son died together,' *tsin* and *qí* and *liá* would be omitted for the reasons just given, and the expression would be *mù<sup>a</sup> tsá<sup>d</sup> liáng<sup>g</sup>-kó<sup>h</sup> yí<sup>i</sup>-t'áng<sup>i</sup> sá<sup>c</sup>*, or *liá*<sup>f</sup> might be also attached.

38. The same principle of rhythm, which leads to the elision of one of two syllables in a word, under certain circumstances, also leads to the addition of a meaningless particle when the sound of the whole would be improved thereby. This fact is shown most clearly in the local dialects, each of which has euphonic particles peculiar to it.

\* Cf. the phrase 'The long and the short—all.'

<sup>a</sup>母 <sup>b</sup>親 <sup>c</sup>兒 <sup>d</sup>子 <sup>e</sup>死 <sup>f</sup>了 <sup>g</sup>兩  
<sup>h</sup>個 <sup>i</sup>一 <sup>j</sup>同

39. Although Chinese words are not built up from roots by the addition of terminations, nor modified by changes of the vowels in them, there are certain syllables which take the place of terminations, and these give nominal and verbal forms to the words they thus affect. We have called such syllables *formatives*. Among them are, *qr<sup>a</sup>* 'child,' *tsə<sup>b</sup>* 'son,' *t'ed<sup>c</sup>* 'head:' thus, *t'siə<sup>d</sup>-qr<sup>a</sup>* 'sparrow-child—a sparrow, or any small bird;' *siäng<sup>c</sup>-tsə<sup>b</sup>* 'box-son—a chest;' *j'it-t'ed<sup>c</sup>* 'sun-head—the sun.' The subject will be found further explained in the next chapter.

§. 4. *The characters, and how to write them.*

40. We now come to the consideration of the symbols employed to express the sounds and syllables of this language. They are not merely arbitrary figures, but ideographic characters; they express notions rather than sounds. They are very ancient, and are unique in every point of view.

41. The inventor or originator of the characters is said to have been *Fü-hi*, or, with his proper title, *Tai-hau Fü-hi* 太昊伏羲 'the most illustrious *Fü-hi*.' He was born in *Shen-si* 陝西 Prov., circ. B. C. 2200, and was the first of five ancient emperors (v. Table of Dynasties and Emperors, Appendix A.), and successor of the three mythical sovereigns. He built his capital, *K'ai-fung-fu* 開封府 in *Hu-nan* 湖南 Prov., on the *Hwang-ho* 黃河 or 'yellow river\*.' *Fü-hi* taught his rude subjects the arts of domestic life; and he invented the eight diagrams, *pä-kwá* 八卦, or combinations of whole and broken straight lines, as a substitute for the knotted cords used for recording events by one of his predecessors, *Süi-jin* † 燧人. *Fü-hi* also subsequently invented the *Li-shü* 六書, or six classes of characters given below (44).

42. Another account is, that *Hwang-ti* 黃帝, the 3rd Emperor from *Fü-hi*, ordered *Ts'ang-hiä* 倉頡, a man of extensive genius, and president of the Board of Historians, to work at the composition of the characters, and to follow the six rules of *Fü-hi*. One day, while walking by the river-side, he perceived some traces of birds' claws on the sand, and sat down to ponder on the Emperor's command. Some of the marks he copied on slips of bamboo with a pencil dipped in varnish. On his return home he multiplied the forms, always keeping in view the foot-prints of the birds, and thus produced five hundred and forty characters, which were called *niäu-tsz-won* 鳥字文 or 'bird-mark characters.'

\* A colony of Jews settled in this city in later times.

† *Süi-jin* is said, by the Chinese, to have first discovered the use of fire.

<sup>a</sup> 兒   <sup>b</sup> 子   <sup>c</sup> 頭   <sup>d</sup> 雀   <sup>e</sup> 箱   <sup>f</sup> 日

43. But the father of letters in China was *Paù-shí* 保氏 'a scholar in the reign of *Ch'ing-wáng* 正王 of the *Cheu* 周 dynasty, circ. B. C. 1100. In his work it is stated that the greater part of the characters were originally hieroglyphic; but that for the sake of appearance and convenience they were gradually changed. See Morrison's Dictionary, vol. I. *Introduction*; Marshman's *Clavis Sinica*, pp. 15, 16; and *Kang-kien* 綱鑑, or the translation of this work by Père Mailla—*Histoire Générale de la Chine*, tom. I. pp. 19, 20.

44. The *Lü-shū*, mentioned above (41), deserve some notice. The names of them, with explanations, are here given in a tabular form.

No.	Name.	Meaning of name.	Technical name.	No. in each.
1	像形 <i>Siáng-hing</i>	Similar-figure	Hieroglyphic	608
2	指事 <i>Chì-sz</i>	Indicating-thing	Significative	107
3	會意 <i>Huì-ì</i>	Combining-ideas	Ideographic	740
4	轉註 <i>Chuàn-chú</i>	Inverting-signification	Antithetic	372
5	假借 <i>Kià-tsüè</i>	False-borrowed	Metaphorical	598
6	聲形 <i>Shing-hing</i>	Sound-form	Phonetic	21,810

45. The following are illustrations of the above-mentioned six classes of characters. The modern forms are given as well as the ancient, that the student may be learning a few characters in every day use, while he sees the change which has taken place in the ancient hieroglyphic.

## CLASS I. HIEROGLYPHIC.

Ancient.									
Meaning.	'sun'	'moon'	'mountain'	'eye'	'child'	'horse'	'fish'	'tree'	'teeth'
Modern.	日	月	山	目	子	馬	魚	木	齒
Sound.	jì	yǐ	shān	mù	zǐ	mǎ	yú	mù	chǐ

丁 *tīng* represents 'a nail;' 弓 *kūng* 'a bow;' 井 *tèng* 'a well;' 𣶒 and 川 *ch'üen* 'a stream;' 口 *k'ü* 'a mouth;' 𤇀 *hò* 'fire;' and 𣶒 *shou* 'water.'

46. The second class includes those which indicate the meaning by their very form or composition.

## CLASS II. SIGNIFICATIVE.

Ancient.						
Meaning.	'dawn'	'evening'	'above'	'below'	'unite'	'middle'
Modern.	旦 <sup>1</sup>	夕 <sup>2</sup>	上	下	人 <sup>3</sup>	中
Sound.	tán	sí	shàng	xià	tsi	ch'ung

𠂔 *chě* represents a plant springing from the ground, 'to come out,'—the common character for this is *ch'ü* 出 'to go out;' 本 *pên* 'a root—beginning;' 曰 *yuǐ*, something in the mouth, 'to say.'

47. The next class includes those which are formed by the union of two figures belonging to class I; and which together give rise to an idea, sometimes of an abstraction, sometimes the name of a real thing.

## CLASS III. IDEOGRAPHIC.

Ancient.						
Meaning.	'brightness'	'obstruction'	'forest'	'to see'	'to sit'	'to follow'
Modern.	明 <sup>4</sup>	閑 <sup>5</sup>	林	見 <sup>6</sup>	坐 <sup>7</sup>	從 <sup>8</sup>
Sound.	míng	hiên	lín	kiên	tsó	ts'ung





拜 *pai* (two hands) 'to salute'—the Chinese clasp their hands together in salutations—also 'to visit;' 恤 *siu* (heart and blood) 'pity;' 夜 *ye* (roof, man, dark) 'night.'

48. The following are specimens of the fourth class; they show by the inversion of the figures the antithetic significations which are attached to them. These inversions are, however, not so apparent in the modern characters as in the ancient hieroglyphic; and whenever the original elements of a compound are sought for, the ancient forms must be consulted\*.

1. The sun above the horizon.
2. The moon beginning to appear.
3. The common character is 合 *hě* 'to unite.'
4. The sun and moon together, suggesting the idea of *brightness*.
5. A tree in a doorway,—*obstruction*.
6. A man with a large eye,—*seeing*.
7. Two men on the ground,—*sitting*.
8. Two men following,—*following*.







\* An idea of the number of ancient forms for the same character may be obtained by reference to M. Callery's "Systema Phoneticum." Introduction, pp. 31—34. He there gives from twenty to forty different forms in the ancient character.

## CLASS IV. ANTITHETIC.

Ancient.						
Meaning.	'right-hand'	'left-hand'	'to cut off'	'to continue'	'body'	'body turned'
Modern.	右 <sup>1</sup>	左 <sup>1</sup>	斷 <sup>2</sup>	繼 <sup>3</sup>	身	身
Sound.	yii	tsò	tuán	kí	shēn	yīn

49. The fifth class is more numerous than the preceding, as well as more important. All particles and proper names are included under this class. The usages with respect to these and the figurative meanings of words will be explained in the syntax and in the dictionary.

## CLASS V. METAPHORICAL.

Ancient.						
Meaning.	'mind'	'character'	'to imprison'	'peace'	'the world'	'ancient'
Modern.	心 <sup>4</sup>	字 <sup>5</sup>	囚 <sup>6</sup>	安 <sup>7</sup>	世 <sup>8</sup>	古 <sup>9</sup>
Sound.	sin	tsé	ts'ü	gān	shí	kù

So 堂 *t'áng* 'a hall' is used for 'mother'; 室 *shí* 'a house,' for 'wife'; 昇 *shēng* 'the sun ascending,' for 'tranquillity'; 興 *hīng* 'to raise,' for 'to flourish.'

## CLASS VI. PHONETIC.

50. The sixth class, under which the great mass of characters are found, has been called *Phonetic*; because, in the characters classed under it, one part gives its own sound to the whole figure, and thus acts as a symbol of sound merely. This part does sometimes convey also its symbolic meaning as well as its sound. The number of really useful phonetic characters amounts to about one thousand and forty. These, when united to the two hundred

1. The 口 and 凵 were not represented in the ancient form, but the figures for *hand* were reversed.

2. The modern character for this idea is *tuán*, with an *axe* by the side of the *silk threads divided*.

3. The modern character *kí* has *silk* added to strengthen the meaning.

4. *Sin* is the common word for *heart* in nearly all the senses in which this word is used in English;—*mind, disposition*.

5. This is a child under a roof, it means properly, *to produce*, but commonly, *a character*.

6. A man in an enclosure,—in prison, *to imprison*.

7. A woman under a roof,—sitting quiet at home, *peace, tranquillity*.

8. Three figures for ten,—thirty years, a generation, this generation, *the world*.

9. Ten and mouth,—through ten generations, *ancient*.

and fourteen elementary figures (the Radicals), produce from fifteen to twenty thousand derivatives (cf. 12 and 53).

記<sup>2</sup>, 起<sup>3</sup>, 忌<sup>4</sup>, 紀<sup>5</sup>, are all called *kì*, after 已<sup>1</sup> the common part.

訪<sup>7</sup>, 放<sup>8</sup>, 坊<sup>9</sup>, 房<sup>10</sup>, are all called *fāng*, after 方<sup>6</sup> the common part.

固<sup>12</sup>, 苦<sup>13</sup>, 枯<sup>14</sup>, 姑<sup>15</sup>, are all called *kù*, after 古<sup>11</sup> the common part.

51. The Chinese division of the characters into classes has now been given and illustrated. The figures in the margin of the table (44) show the number of characters under each class. It will be seen that the ordinary process of forming new symbols is the sixth;—by adding to a character a figure, to convey a sound merely, a new symbol is formed, which has a name corresponding to its phonetic element. Thus the figure 丁 *tīng* being added to the character 金 *kīn* 'metal,' a new symbol, 釘 *tīng* 'a nail' is produced; so, also, being added to 頁 *hié* 'a head' the symbol 頂 *tīng* 'a peak,' or 'top of any thing,' is formed. By this ingenious plan any number of new characters might be created; one part of which would designate the generic notion of the new name, and the other would indicate the *sound* by which to call it. As an illustration of this:—A newly discovered insect or fish might be called *ling* by certain rude tribes who had never expressed the sound in writing, some character having this sound *ling* would be taken by a Chinese scholar and united to the generic word *cháng* 'insect,' or *yù* 'fish,' as the case might be, and the new character, thus formed, would ever after be used as the proper name for that particular insect or fish \*.

52. The hieroglyphic element in the Chinese characters is not of frequent occurrence, that is to say, we find but a very limited number of characters whose meaning can be gathered from their formation out of simple significant rudiments; and though the hieroglyphic element may have prevailed in many characters under their primitive forms, it is now seldom to be traced through the changes which the characters have undergone. An enquiry into this branch of the Chinese would be very interesting, and would perhaps throw some light upon the acceptations of words at the present day, but as it is not of a directly practical nature it would be out of place here. The following is an example; the character 家 *kiā* 'a family' is composed of 宀 *miēn* 'a roof' placed above, and 豕 *shì* 'a pig' beneath; and these con-

1 *kì* 'self,' 2 with *words*=to remember, 3 with *walk*=to rise up, 4 with *heart*=to fear, 5 with *silk*=to record; 6 *fāng* 'a square,' 7 with *words*=to enquire, 8 with a *blow*=to set free, 9 with *earth*=a dwelling, or a street, 10 with *dwelling*=a room; 11 *kù* 'ancient' (cf. 49, note 9), 12 in an *enclosure*=firm, constant, 13 with *grass*=bitter herbs, meton. for trouble, hardship, 14 with *wood*=a rotten tree, withered, 15 with *woman*=a matron, a lady.

\* The phonetic system of arrangement for lexicographical purposes has been adopted by M. Callery in his work entitled "Systema Phoneticum Scripturae Sinicae." 8vo. Macao, 1841.

stituent parts would lead to the erroneous impression that pigs under a roof was the original notion to be conveyed; but a Chinese authority, noticed by Dr. Schott, makes the figure below to consist of the character *jîn* 人 'man' placed in three different positions, and this would at once suggest the idea of a *family* †.

53. The elementary figures or characters are technically termed *radicals* and *primitives*. The *radicals*, which were formerly about five hundred in number, are now reduced to two hundred and fourteen; the *primitives* amount to about one thousand seven hundred in common use. These, with the radicals and the characters compounded with both classes, include nearly all the characters existing in Chinese.

54. The radicals have been sometimes denominated *keys*; but the term *radicals* is very suitable when we consider their meaning and use. They include the names of simple objects, natural and artificial, and serve as generic heads for classes of characters; and, in the absence of an alphabet, they are employed as an index to the whole language, just as an alphabet is used in European tongues.

55. The Chinese term for the radicals is *tai-pi* 字部 'character-class or classifier.' They are arranged according to the number of strokes required to form them. We have given them below under this arrangement, and recommend the student to use his best efforts to acquire them so as to write them correctly.

#### TABLE OF THE RADICALS.

Note.—Of the two numbers given after each radical, the former represents the number of characters extant under that radical, and the latter the number of those in common use. The words in brackets show the position of the radical in its derivatives. (*Com.*) means that the radical is in use as a common word. The asterisk marks those radicals which are frequently found in compounds.

##### *Formed with one stroke.*

1. — *yī* \* 'one, the same' (various). 44. 16.

2. | *kuān* 'perpendicular' (through). 22. 2.

This radical is used as a sign of the repetition of a character.

3. 丶 *chù* 'a point,' also called *tiên* 上 when used as a stop or dot. 11. 2.

4. 丿 *pī* 'a curve, a sweep to the left' (various). 24. 8.

5. 乚 *yī* 'a crooked line, one;' a horary character. 42. 8.

6. 乚 *kū* 'a hooked stroke' (various). 20. 3.

† See Dr. Schott's "Chinesische Sprachlehre." 4to. Berlin, 1857, p. 22.

*Formed with two strokes.*

7. 二 *qr* 'two' (com.) (encloses, above, below). 31. 9.
8. 一 *tes*, no signification is given of this radical. (above). 39. 10.
9. 人 *jín* \* 'a man' (com.) (above). Its contr. form 亻 on the left always.  
800. 141.
10. 𠂆 *jín* 'a man walking' (obs.) (below). 52. 14.
11. 入 *jì* 'to enter' (com.) (above). 29. 5.
12. 八 *pā* 'eight' (com.) (below). 45. 12.
13. 凵 *kiung* 'a desert, an empty space' (obs.) (encloses). 51. 5.
14. 冂 *mī* 'to cover' (obs.) (above). 31. 2.
15. 冫 *pīng* \* 'an icicle' (obs.) (left). 51. 16.
16. 几 *kì* 'a table, a bench' (encloses, right, below). 40. 4.
17. 凵 *kān* 'a receptacle' (obs.) (encloses). 24. 3.
18. 刀 *tāu* \* 'a knife; a sword' (com.) (below, or right in this form 刂). 378. 33.  
The hook should be written first.
19. 力 *lì* \* 'strength' (com.) (below or right). 163. 19.  
The hook should be written first.
20. 勹 *pau* 'to wrap up, to envelop' (obs.) (encloses). 66. 4.  
The dash should be written first.
21. 匕 *pì* 'a spoon' (right). 20. 2.
22. 匚 *fāng* 'a chest' (obs.) (encloses). 65. 4.
23. 匚 *hī* 'to hide' (obs.) (encloses). 18. 3.
24. 十 *shí* 'ten' (com.) (various—below). 56. 11.
25. 卜 *pū* 'to divine' (above, right). 46. 4.
26. 冂 *tai* 'a seal' (obs.) (right, or below in this form 冂). 39. 7.
27. 厂 *hān* 'a shelter' (obs.) (hangs over). 128. 8. This is often inter-  
changed with radical 53.
28. 厶 *meū* 'crooked, perverse' (obs.) (above). 41. 2.
29. 又 *yii* 'the hand; again' (com.) (right, below). 92. 12.



*Formed with three strokes.*

30. 口 *k'èu* \* 'a mouth' (com.) (left, below). 1047. 128.
31. 冂 *hwiū* \* 'an enclosure' (obs.) (encloses). 119. 16.
32. 土 *t'ù* \* 'earth, soil' (com.) (left, under). 579. 56. Sometimes radicals 170 and 150 are used instead of this.
33. 士 *sí* \* 'a scholar; a statesman' (com.) (above, right). 25. 4.
34. 攴 *chí* \* 'to follow' (obs.) (above). 12. 1.
35. 𡗗 *shuí* \* 'to walk slowly' (obs.) (below). 24. 2.
36. 夕 *sí* \* 'evening; darkness' (com.) (various). 36. 6.
37. 大 *tá* \* 'great' (com.) (above or below). 133. 23.
38. 女 *nù* \* 'a woman' (com.) (left or below). 690. 61.
39. 子 *tsà* \* 'a son' (com.) (below, left). 87. 17.
40. 宀 *mién* \* 'a roof' (obs.) (above). 249. 52.
41. 寸 *ts'un* 'the tenth of a *chí* 尺 or Chinese foot' (com.) (right or below). 41. 11.
42. 小 *siaù* \* 'small' (com.) (above, combined). 32. 4.
43. 尢 尢 兀 允 *wáng* or *yü* \* 'crooked-leg' (obs.); *yü* 'still more' (com.) (left). 67. 2.
44. 尸 *shí* \* 'a corpse' (above). 149. 20.
45. 屮 *ch'í* \* 'a sprout' (obs.) (above). 39. 1.
46. 山 *shān* \* 'a mountain' (com.) (left, above). 637. 17.
47. 𣶒 or 川 *ch'üén* \* 'a stream' (com.) (combined). 27. 4.
48. 工 *k'ung* \* 'work' (com.) (various). 18. 5.
49. 己 *kí* \* 'self' (com.) (below). 21. 5. Distinguish this from 巳 *í* and 巳 *sí*.
50. 巾 *kín* \* 'a napkin' (com.) (left, below). 295. 19.
51. 干 *kān* \* 'a shield' (com.) (combined). 18. 6.
52. 孑 *yaü* \* 'young' (left, doubled). 21. 4. E. G. 幾 *kí* \* 'several.'
53. 冂 *yen* \* 'a covering' (obs.) (covers). 287. 29.

1: signifies 'already,' *sí* is a horary character, '9-11 o'clock A.M.'

54. 𢇛 *yīng* 'a long journey' (obs.) (left). 10. 5. Used for radical 162.
55. 𢇛 *kūng* 'folded hands' (below). 51. 2.
56. 𢇛 *yǐ* 'a dart' (right). 16. 2.
57. 弓 *kūng* \* 'a bow' (com.) (left, below). 166. 15.
58. 豕 *hǐ*, 豕 or 𪚩, 'a pig's head' (obs.) (above). 26. 2.
59. 彡 *shān* 'long hair' (right). 53. 7.
60. 𡀇 *chǐ* \* 'to walk' (obs.) (left). 227. 26.

*Formed with four strokes.*

61. 心 *sīn* \*, contr. 忄, 'the heart' (com.). (The contr. form on the left; the full form, below or elsewhere). 1077. 142.
62. 戈 *kō* \* 'a spear' (com.) (right). 111. 15.
63. 戶 *hú* 'a one-leaved door; a family' (com.) (above). 45. 5.
64. 手 *shǒu* \*, contr. 扌, 'the hand' (com.). (The contr. form on the left; the full form, below). 1092. 46.
65. 支 *chī* 'a branch' (com.) (right). 27. 2.
66. 攴 *pū* \*, contr. 攴, 'to touch' (right). 296. 21.
67. 攴 *wōn*, contr. 攴, 'to paint letters' (com.). Contr. form seldom used (below). 23. 2.
68. 斗 *teù* 'a dry measure, the North Star' (com.) (right). 33. 5.
69. 斤 *kīn* 'an ax; a Chinese pound' (com.) (right). 56. 8.
70. 方 *fāng* 'a square, a place' (com.) (left). 83. 9.
71. 无 *wū*, in comp. 无, 'wanting, not.' 13. 2.
72. 日 *jī* \* 'the sun; a day' (com.) (left, and elsewhere). 455. 51.
73. 曰 *yǐ* \* 'to speak' (com.) (below, and elsewhere). 38. 13.
74. 月 *yǐ* \* 'the moon; a month' (com.) (left). 70. 11.
75. 木 *mù* \* 'wood' (com.) (left, below). 1358. 17.
76. 欠 *k'ien* \* 'to owe, to want' (right). 236. 18.
77. 止 *chì* 'to stop at a point' (com.) (various). 91. 9.

78. 朽 *tai* \* 'a rotten bone; bad, putrid' (com.) (left). 232. 12.
79. 殺 *shu* 'to kill' (right). 84. 8.
80. 毋 *wu* 'not, without' (com.) (below). 17. 5.
81. 比 *pì* 'to compare' (com.) (various). 22. 1.
82. 毛 *mau* 'hair (not human), fur, feathers' (com.) (left). 212. 4.
83. 氏 *shí* 'a family' (com.). 15. 3. 民 *mín* 'the people' is under *shí*.
84. 气 *k'í* 'vapour' (obs.) (right, above). 18. 1. The character in use is 氣.
85. 水 *shuài* \*, contr. 𠂔, 'water' (com.) (contr., on the left; full form, below). 1586. 148.
86. 火 *hò* \*, contr. 𠂔, 'fire' (com.) (contr., below; full form, left). 639. 43.
87. 爪 *cháu*, contr. 𠂔, 'claws' (com.) (above). 37. 7. See radical 97.
88. 父 *fú* 'a father' (com.) (above). 11. 2.
89. 𠂔 *hiáu* 'to imitate' (left). 17. 3.
90. 𠂔 *chuáng* 'a couch' (obs.) (left). 50. 2.
91. 片 *pién* 'a splinter' (left). 78. 4.
92. 牙 *yá* 'molar teeth' (com.) (left). 9. 2. Cf. radical 211.
93. 牛 *niú* \*, contr. 𠂔, 'an ox' (com.) (contr., on the left; full form, below). 232. 12.
94. 犬 *k'üèn*, contr. 𠂔, 'a dog' (com.) (contr., on the left). 445. 28. Interchanged with radical 153.

*Formed with five strokes.*

95. 玄 *hiên* 'colour of the sky; dark' (com.) (combined). 7. 2. E. G. 率.
96. 玉 *yü* \* 'a jewel' (com.) (left). 473. 25.
97. 瓜 *kuā* 'fruit of the melon kind' (com.) (right or left). 56. 2.
98. 瓦 *wà* 'tiles, bricks' (com.) (right, below). 173. 2. Interchanged with radicals 32, 108, and 112.
99. 甘 *kān* 'sweet' (com.). 23. 2.
100. 生 *sāng* 'to be born, to live' (com.). 23. 2.

- 101. 用 *yíng* 'to use' (com.) (combined). 11. 2. E. G. 甫 *fù* 'great.'
- 102. 田 *t'ien* \* 'a field' (com.) (left, below). 193. 26.
- 103. 疋 *p'í* \* 'a piece of cloth; a foot' (com.) (below). 16. 5.
- 104. 疒 *ní* \* 'disease' (left). 527. 25. The common character is 病 *píng*.
- 105. 夬 *kuài* 'to stride' (above). 16. 3.
- 106. 白 *pé* 'white; clear' (com.) (left, above). 109. 8.
- 107. 皮 *p'í* 'skin; bark' (com.) (right, left, below). 95. 1.
- 108. 皿 *míng* \* 'dishes' (com.) (below). 129. 16.
- 109. 目 *mù* \* 'the eye' (com.) (left, or contr. form 𠂇 above). 646. 29.
- 110. 矛 *méu* 'a barbed spear' (left). 66. 3.
- 111. 矢 *shǐ* 'an arrow' (left). 65. 8.
- 112. 石 *shí* \* 'a stone, a rock' (com.) (left, below). 489. 23.
- 113. 示 *shí* \*, contr. 𠄎, 'an omen from heaven' (com.) (left, below).  
214. 25. The contr. form is similar to the contr. form of 145.
- 114. 肉 *jeù* 'the print of an animal's foot; a trace' (below). 13. 2.
- 115. 禾 *hó* \* 'grain' (com.) (left). 433. 31.
- 116. 穴 *hiú* 'a cave, a hole' (com.) (above). 300. 18.
- 117. 立 *lì* 'to stand, to establish' (com.) (left). 102. 7.

*Formed with six strokes.*

- 118. 竹 *chú* \*, contr. 𥵹, 'bamboo' (com.) (above). 954. 45.
- 119. 米 *mì* \* 'rice (uncooked)' (com.) (left). 321. 16.
- 120. 糸 *mì* \*, also written 𦃟 and 𦃟, 'silk, (threads)' (com.) (left, below).  
821. 71. This radical has also been called 𦃟; prob. for 𦃟 絲.
- 121. 缶 *féu* 'an earthenware vase' (left). 78. 2.
- 122. 网 *wàng*, contr. 𦉳, 𦉴, and 𦉵, 'a net' (above). 164. 15. E. G.  
罕 *hàn* 'rare.'
- 123. 羊 *yáng* 'a sheep' (com.) (left, above). 157. 9.
- 124. 羽 *yù* 'wings' (com.) (various:—above, below, right). 210. 9.

125. 老 *lǎu* 'old' (com.) (above); contr. into 耂 in 考<sup>1</sup> and 耆<sup>2</sup>. 23.5.
126. 而 *er* 'whiskers; and, yet' (com.). 23. 3.
127. 耒 *lǎi* 'a plough handle' (left). 85. 3.
128. 耳 *ər* \* 'the ear' (com.) (left, below). 172. 16.
129. 聿 *yǔ* 'a pencil' (left and below). 20. 2.
130. 肉 *jù* \*, contr. 月, 'flesh' (com.) (left, below). The contr. form is printed like 月 'the moon.' 675. 56.
131. 臣 *chín* 'a subject; a statesman' (com.) (left). 17. 4.
132. 自 *tsé* 'self; from' (com.) (various). Sometimes used for 白 *pé* 'white.' 35. 2.
133. 至 *chí* 'to come to' (com.) (below, and elsewhere). 25. 3.
134. 臼 *k'ü* 'a mortar' (various). 72. 7.
135. 舌 *shí* 'the tongue' (com.) (left). 35. 6.
136. 𠂔 *ch'üèn* 'to turn the back on; to oppose' (obs.). 11. 3.
137. 舟 *cheü* 'a boat' (com.) (left). 198. 3.
138. 艮 *k'én* 'disobedient; limits' (right). 6. 2.
139. 色 *sí* 'colour; appearance' (com.) (right). 22. 2.
140. 艸 *tsau* \*, contr. 艹, 'grass; plants' (com.) (above, in the contr. form). 1902. 95.
141. 虍 *hü* 'a tiger' (obs.) (above). 115. 9.
142. 虫 *ch'ung* \* 'an insect; a reptile' (com.) (left, below). 1067. 22.
143. 血 *hiü* 'blood' (com.) (left). 61. 3.
144. 行 *h'ing* 'to walk; to do' (com.) (encloses). 54. 8.
145. 衣 *i* \*, contr. 衤, 'clothing; covering' (com.) (contr. form on the left; full form below; sometimes half above and half below). 611. 36.
146. 𠂔 *yǎ*, also written 𠂔<sup>3</sup>, 'to cover over' (obs.) (above). 30. 3.


1 *k'au* 'aged, com. 'to examine.'2 *chí* 'this, he who, &c.'3 *sí* 'the west.'

*Formed with seven strokes.*


- 147. 見 *kién* \* 'to see' (com.) (right, below). 162. 14.
- 148. 角 *kió* 'a horn; a corner' (com.) (left, below). 159. 5.
- 149. 言 *yén* \* 'words; to speak' (com.) (left, below). 861. 105.
- 150. 谷 *kú* 'a valley' (left). 55. 2.
- 151. 豆 *teù* 'a wooden sacrificial vessel; beans' (below, left). 69. 5.
- 152. 豕 *shì* 'a pig' (left or below). 50. 3.
- 153. 豸 *chì* 'reptiles' (left). 141. 5.
- 154. 貝 *péi* \* 'a pearl shell' (com.) (left, below). 278. 46.
- 155. 赤 *chì* 'flesh colour' (com.) (left). 32. 2.
- 156. 走 *tsèu* \* 'to walk, to run' (com.) (left). 236. 11.
- 157. 足 *tsü* \*, contr. 𠂔, 'the foot, enough' (com.) (left, below). 581. 30.
- 158. 身 *shin* 'the body; trunk' (com.) (left). 98. 4.
- 159. 車 *kü* \* 'a carriage' (com.) (left). 362. 22. Sometimes called *chē*.
- 160. 辛 *sín* 'bitter,' H. C. (com.) (doubled, right). 37. 7.
- 161. 辰 *shén* 'time; an hour,' H. C. (com.) (various). 16. 3. Cf. radical 168.
- 162. 辵 *chō* \*, contr. 辵, 'motion' (obs.) (left). 382. 59.
- 163. 邑 *yí* \*, contr. 卩, 'a city' (com.) (right c. contr. form). 351. 27.  
Cf. radical 170.
- 164. 酉 *yü* \* 'new wine,' H. C. (com.) (left). 291. 20.
- 165. 采 *pién* 'to distinguish' (left). 14. 2.
- 166. 里 *lì* 'a Chinese mile; a village' (com.) (below). 14. 5.

*Formed with eight strokes.*

- 167. 金 *kín* \* 'gold; metal' (com.) (left). 803. 46.
- 168. 長 *ch'áng*, contr. 𠂔, 'long, old' (com.). 56. 2.
- 169. 門 *mén* \* 'a door' (com.) (encloses). 249. 27.
- 170. 阜 *feù* \*, contr. 阡, 'an artificial mound of earth' (left c. contr. form).  
347. 38. Cf. radical 163.

171. 叢 *tsai* 'to reach to' (right). 13. 1.  
 172. 隹 *chui* \* 'short-tailed birds' (right). 234. 17.  
 173. 雨 *yü* \* 'rain' (com.) (contr. form  above). 298. 18.  
 174. 青 *tsing* 'azure, sky-blue' (com.) (left). 18. 3.  
 175. 非 *fei* 'not so, false' (com.). 26. 3.

*Formed with nine strokes.*

176. 面 *mién* 'the face' (com.) (left). 67. 1.  
 177. 革 *ké* 'untanned hide, without hair' (left). 307. 5.  
 178. 韋 *wei* 'tanned hide' (left). 101. 2.  
 179. 韭 *kiù* 'leeks' (various). 21. 1.  
 180. 音 *yin* 'sound, tone' (com.). 43. 3.  
 181. 頁 *yé* \* 'the head' (com.) (right). 373. 30.  
 182. 風 *fūng* 'wind' (com.) (left). 183. 3.  
 183. 飛 *fei* 'to fly' (com.). 13. 1.  
 184. 食 *shí* \*, contr. , 'to eat' (com.) (contr. form on the left). 395. 38.  
 185. 首 *shèu* 'the head; the chief' (com.). 20. 1.  
 186. 香 *hiāng* 'fragrance' (com.). 38. 1.

*Formed with ten strokes.*

187. 馬 *mà* \* 'a horse' (com.) (left, below). 473. 28.  
 188. 骨 *kū* \* 'a bone' (com.) (left). 186. 4. Interchanged with radicals 130 and 181.  
 189. 高 *kau* 'high' (com.). 35. 1.  
 190. 髻 *pián* 'long hair' (above). 245. 7.  
 191. 鬥 *tsai* 'to fight' (obs.) (encloses). 24. 1.  
 192. 鬯 *cháng* 'fragrant plants' (below). 9. 1.  
 193. 鬲 *lì* 'a tripod with crooked feet' (left, below). 74. 7.  
 194. 鬼 *kwèi* 'a departed spirit, a ghost' (com.) (left). 142. 4.

*Formed with eleven strokes.*

195. 魚 *yú* 'a fish' (com.) (left). 572. 10. Interchanged with radicals 110 and 205.
196. 鳥 *niǎo* 'a bird' (com.) (right). 761. 21. Interchanged with radical 180.
197. 鹵 *lù* 'salt' (left). 45. 1.
198. 鹿 *lù* 'a stag' (com.) (above). 106. 9. Interchanged with radical 120.
199. 麥 *mài* 'wheat' (com.) (left). 132. 1.
200. 麻 *má* 'hemp' (com.) (above). 35. 3.

*Formed with twelve strokes.*

201. 黃 *huáng* 'yellow, colour of earth' (com.) (left). 43. 1.
202. 黍 *shǔ* 'millet' (com.) (left). 47. 2.
203. 黑 *hēi* 'black' (com.) (left, below). 173. 4.
204. 黻 *chì* 'to sew, to embroider' (left). 9. none in common use.

*Formed with thirteen strokes.*

205. 黽 *mǐng* 'a frog' (com.) (below). 41. 2. Interchanged with radicals 140, 195, and 212.
206. 鼎 *tǐng* 'a tripod' (com.). 15. 1.
207. 鼓 *kù* 'a drum' (com.) (above). 47. 1.
208. 鼠 *shǔ* 'a rat' (com.) (left). 103. 2. Interchanged with radical 111.

*Formed with fourteen strokes.*

209. 鼻 *pí* 'the nose' (com.) (left). 50. 1.
210. 齊 *ts'í* 'to adjust, to adorn' (com.) (above). 19. 3.

*Formed with fifteen strokes.*

211. 齒 *chǐ* 'front teeth' (com.) (left). 163. 3.

*Formed with sixteen strokes.*

212. 龍 *lóng* 'a dragon' (com.). 25. 2.
213. 龜 *kuī* 'a tortoise' (com.). 25. 1. Interchanged with radical 205.

*Formed with seventeen strokes.*

214. 簫 *yāo* 'a flute with three holes' (left). 20. 1.



56. The meanings attached to the above elementary characters have been thus classified; we give them here because they may be useful both to the general reader, to show the kind of words denoted by the elementary figures, and to the student to test his knowledge of the radicals themselves.

*Parts of bodies.*—Body, corpse, head, hair, down, whiskers, face, eye, ear, nose, mouth, teeth, tusk, tongue, hand, heart, foot, hide, leather, skin, wings, feathers, blood, flesh, talons, horn, bones.

*Zoological.*—Man, woman, child; horse, sheep, tiger, dog, ox, hog, hog's head, deer; tortoise, dragon, reptile, mouse, toad; bird, fowls; fish; insect.

*Botanical.*—Herb, grain, rice, wheat, millet, hemp, leeks, melon, pulse, bamboo, sacrificial herbs; wood, branch, sprout, petal.

*Mineral.*—Metal, stone, gems, salt, earth.

*Meteorological.*—Rain, wind, fire, water, icicle, vapour, sound; sun, moon, evening, time.

*Utensils.*—A chest, a measure, a mortar, spoon, knife, bench, couch, clothes, crockery, tiles, dishes, napkin, net, plough, vase, tripod, boat, carriage, pencil; bow, halberd, arrow, dart, axe, musical reed, drum, seal.

*Qualities.*—Colour, black, white, yellow, azure, carnation, sombre-colour; high, long, sweet, square, large, small, slender, old, fragrant, acrid, perverse, base, opposed.

*Actions.*—To enter, to follow, to walk slowly, to arrive at, to stride, to walk, to reach to, to touch, to stop, to fly, to overspread, to envelope, to encircle, to establish, to overshadow, to adjust, to distinguish, to divine, to see, to eat, to speak, to kill, to fight, to oppose, to stop, to embroider, to owe, to compare, to imitate, to bring forth, to use, to promulge.

*Parts of the world and dwellings; figures; miscellaneous.*—A desert, cave, field, den, mound, hill, valley, rivulet, cliff, retreat. A city, roof, gate, door, portico. One, two, eight, ten, eleven. An inch, a mile. Without, not, false. A scholar, a statesman, letters; art, wealth, motion; self, myself, father; a point; wine; silk; joined hands; a long journey; print of a bear's foot; a surname, a piece of cloth.

57. Some radical appears in every symbol, and the Chinese classify the characters under that radical, which is easily distinguishable from the rest of the figure. In some cases, however, the selection appears to have been arbitrary, for occasionally we find characters classified under a radical which is so intermingled with the remaining part of the figure that it is only by practical experience that it can be recognised. The student will find a list, taken from K'ang-hi's Dictionary, of all the characters whose radical is difficult to discover, in Dr. Morrison's Dictionary, part II. vol. II.

58. When the radical is found, we proceed to count the number of strokes in the remaining part, often called the *primitive*. The primitive is composed of strokes, from one to twenty and upwards; these strokes are made in one consecutive order, which depends upon the figure itself, and this order can only be learnt by practice. (The rules in Art. 76. may be consulted.) As

examples:—the character 下 *hiá* 'below' is under rad. — *yí*, with two strokes in its complement; 世 *shí* 'an age' is also under rad. — *yí*, with four strokes; 乃 *naí* 'it may be, it is, but,' is under rad. 丿 *pí*, with one stroke; 事 *sí* is under 丷 *kiú*, with seven; 五 *wù* 'five,' under 二 *qí* 'two,' with two; 井 *téng* 'a well,' under the same rad., with two; 況 *huàng* 'more,' under the same rad., with five strokes; 亞 *á* or *yá* 'second,' under the same rad., with six strokes; 以 *ì* 'to use' is under the rad. 人 *jín* 'a man,' with two strokes. If, while learning the radicals, the student will write them with the rules in Art. 76. before him, he will have little difficulty in counting the number of strokes in them, or in any character compounded with them. As the number of the radical is rarely known, even by advanced students of Chinese, the following table of the *Tsé-pú* is arranged alphabetically to assist the beginner in referring to his Chinese-English Dictionary.

*An alphabetic arrangement of the Radicals.*

二 <i>qí</i> 7	亅 <i>chí</i> 60	飛 <i>fēi</i> 183	黃 <i>huáng</i> 201	几 <i>kí</i> 16
而 <i>qí</i> 126	赤 <i>chí</i> 155	父 <i>fú</i> 88	口 <i>huǒ</i> 31	己 <i>kí</i> 49
耳 <i>qí</i> 128	臣 <i>chín</i> 131	風 <i>fūng</i> 182	衣 <i>ī</i> 145	彡 <i>kí</i> 58
長 <i>ch'áng</i> 168	爻 <i>ch'áo</i> 162	厂 <i>hān</i> 27	肉 <i>jeù</i> 114	气 <i>k'í</i> 84
鬯 <i>ch'áng</i> 192	丿 <i>ch'ü</i> 3	黑 <i>hè</i> 203	入 <i>jǐ</i> 11	欠 <i>k'ien</i> 76
爪 <i>ch'au</i> 87	竹 <i>ch'ü</i> 118	匚 <i>k'í</i> 23	日 <i>jǐ</i> 72	見 <i>kién</i> 147
車 <i>chē</i> 159	𠂔 <i>ch'üén</i> 47	香 <i>hiáng</i> 186	人 <i>jín</i> 9	巾 <i>kín</i> 50
𠂔 <i>ch'í</i> 45	𠂔 <i>ch'üén</i> 136	爻 <i>hiáu</i> 89	儿 <i>jín</i> 10	斤 <i>kín</i> 69
舟 <i>cheū</i> 137	隹 <i>ch'ui</i> 172	行 <i>híng</i> 144	肉 <i>jǐ</i> 130	金 <i>kín</i> 167
攴 <i>ch'í</i> 34	虫 <i>ch'ung</i> 142	穴 <i>hiú</i> * 116	干 <i>kān</i> 51	角 <i>kió</i> 148
支 <i>ch'í</i> 65	另 <i>ch'óng</i> 90	血 <i>hiú</i> 143	甘 <i>kān</i> 99	曰 <i>k'ü</i> 134
止 <i>chì</i> 77	匚 <i>fāng</i> 22	玄 <i>hién</i> + 95	口 <i>kān</i> 17	非 <i>kiú</i> 179
至 <i>chí</i> 133	方 <i>fāng</i> 70	火 <i>hò</i> 86	艮 <i>kán</i> 138	犬 <i>k'üén</i> 94
豸 <i>ch'í</i> 153	缶 <i>féu</i> 121	禾 <i>hò</i> 115	高 <i>kau</i> 189	冂 <i>kiung</i> 13
鬣 <i>ch'í</i> 204	阜 <i>féu</i> 170	戶 <i>hú</i> 63	革 <i>ké</i> 177	戈 <i>kó</i> 62
齒 <i>ch'í</i> 211	非 <i>fí</i> 175	疒 <i>hú</i> 141	口 <i>k'èu</i> 30	車 <i>kí</i> 159

\* Also called *yü*.

+ Also called *yüén*.

丿 <i>kǔ</i> 6	一 <i>mǐ</i> 14	生 <i>sāng</i> 100	糸 <i>sz</i> 120	母 <i>wú</i> 80
鼓 <i>kù</i> 207	二 <i>miēn</i> 40	山 <i>shān</i> 46	大 <i>tá</i> 37	牙 <i>yá</i> 92
谷 <i>kù</i> 150	面 <i>miēn</i> 176	彡 <i>shan</i> 59	彳 <i>taì</i> 78	而 <i>yā</i> 146
骨 <i>kù</i> 188	皿 <i>mìng</i> 108	手 <i>shǒu</i> 64	彳 <i>taì</i> 171	羊 <i>yáng</i> 123
工 <i>kūng</i> 48	木 <i>mù</i> 75	首 <i>shǒu</i> 185	刀 <i>tao</i> 18	彡 <i>yau</i> 52
升 <i>kūng</i> 55	目 <i>mù</i> 109	尸 <i>shǐ</i> 44	上 <i>teu</i> 8	頁 <i>yě</i> 181
司 <i>kūng</i> 57	睪 <i>mùng</i> * 205	氏 <i>shǐ</i> 83	斗 <i>teu</i> 68	广 <i>yen</i> 53
瓜 <i>kuā</i> 97	疒 <i>nǐ</i> 104	示 <i>shì</i> 113	豆 <i>teu</i> 151	言 <i>yén</i> 149
丨 <i>kuān</i> 2	鳥 <i>niào</i> 196	豕 <i>shǐ</i> 152	門 <i>teu</i> 191	一 <i>yí</i> 1
鬼 <i>kuèi</i> 194	牛 <i>niú</i> 93	十 <i>shí</i> 24	田 <i>tién</i> 102	乙 <i>yí</i> 5
龜 <i>kuèi</i> 213	女 <i>nǚ</i> 38	石 <i>shí</i> 112	鼎 <i>lǐng</i> 206	弋 <i>yí</i> 56
老 <i>lǎo</i> 125	八 <i>pā</i> 12	舌 <i>shé</i> 135	寸 <i>tsun</i> 41	邑 <i>yí</i> 163
里 <i>lǐ</i> 166	勺 <i>paü</i> 20	食 <i>shí</i> 184	艸 <i>tsau</i> 140	音 <i>yīn</i> 180
力 <i>lì</i> 19	白 <i>pé</i> 106	矢 <i>shǐ</i> 111	走 <i>tsèu</i> 156	辶 <i>ying</i> 54
鬲 <i>lì</i> 193	貝 <i>péi</i> 154	身 <i>shēn</i> 158	齊 <i>ts'í</i> 210	又 <i>yiú</i> 29
立 <i>lì</i> 117	匕 <i>pí</i> 21	辰 <i>shén</i> 161	卩 <i>tsé</i> 26	尤 <i>yiú</i> 43
鹵 <i>lài</i> 197	比 <i>pí</i> 81	父 <i>shu</i> 79	青 <i>tsing</i> 174	兀 <i>yiú</i> 43
鹿 <i>lài</i> 198	皮 <i>pí</i> 107	黍 <i>shǔ</i> 202	足 <i>tsü</i> 157	酉 <i>yiú</i> 164
耒 <i>lài</i> 127	鼻 <i>pí</i> 209	鼠 <i>shǔ</i> 208	子 <i>tsè</i> 39	龠 <i>yó</i> 214
龍 <i>lóng</i> 212	丩 <i>pí</i> 4	彡 <i>shuǐ</i> 35	自 <i>tsé</i> 132	羽 <i>yǔ</i> 124
馬 <i>mà</i> 187	厶 <i>p'í</i> 103	水 <i>shuǐ</i> 85	土 <i>t'ü</i> 32	雨 <i>yǔ</i> 173
麻 <i>má</i> 200	彡 <i>piáu</i> 190	夕 <i>sí</i> 36	瓦 <i>wà</i> 98	魚 <i>yú</i> 195
門 <i>mén</i> 169	片 <i>pién</i> 91	色 <i>sí</i> 139	文 <i>wén</i> 67	日 <i>yǔ</i> 73
毛 <i>mau</i> 82	采 <i>pién</i> 165	小 <i>xiào</i> 42	尢 <i>wáng</i> 43	月 <i>yǔ</i> 74
麥 <i>mě</i> 199	彳 <i>pīng</i> 15	心 <i>sīn</i> 61	王 <i>wáng</i> 96	聿 <i>yǔ</i> 129
厶 <i>meu</i> 28	卜 <i>pǔ</i> 25	辛 <i>sīn</i> 160	囧 <i>wàng</i> 122	玉 <i>yǔ</i> 96
禾 <i>meu</i> 110	攴 <i>pǔ</i> 66	厶 <i>sz</i> 28	韋 <i>wei</i> 178	用 <i>yung</i> 101
米 <i>mì</i> 119	殳 <i>pǔ</i> 105	士 <i>sí</i> 33	无 <i>wú</i> 71	

\* Also called *mìng*.

59. Various forms of character have been used at different periods, and some of them are still employed for certain purposes. The sheet facing this page will show six of these forms. Beginning on the right hand and reading downwards we have in the first column—*shū*<sup>a</sup> *yii*<sup>b</sup> *lū*<sup>c</sup> *t'í*<sup>d</sup>; *yǐ*<sup>e</sup>, *chuén*<sup>f</sup>; *yǐ*<sup>e</sup>, *lū*<sup>g</sup>; *yǐ*<sup>e</sup>, *kiā*<sup>h</sup>; *yǐ*<sup>e</sup>, *híng*<sup>i</sup>; *yǐ*<sup>e</sup>, *tsai*<sup>j</sup>; *yǐ*<sup>e</sup>, *sūng*<sup>k</sup>; i. e. 'There are six forms of writing, viz. the *seal* character, the so-called *official*, the *pattern*, the *cursive*, the *grass* (or abbreviated cursive), and the *Sung* dynasty character.'

60. 1) Of the *Chuén-shū*<sup>fa</sup> (col. 1.) there are several varieties, from the stiff straight lines used on seals and stiff spike-like strokes cut on brazen vessels, to the rounded angles as seen here and upon porcelain, cakes of ink, &c.

2) The *Lí-shū*<sup>ga</sup> (col. 2.) was invented by officials under the *Tsin* dynasty; it is often employed for inscriptions, titles and prefaces to books, and was formerly used for official papers.

3) The *Kiā-shū*<sup>ha</sup> (col. 3.) is the model for good writing; works are sometimes printed in this form, but not commonly.

4) The *Híng-shū*<sup>ia</sup> (col. 4.) or *running* hand is frequently used in prefaces, and for business purposes. Many varieties of it may be seen in Morrison's Dictionary, part II. vol. II.

5) The *Tsai-shū*<sup>ja</sup> (col. 5.) or *grass* character is an abbreviated form of the *Híng-shū*. These abbreviations are so various, according to the whim of the writer, that sometimes they can scarcely be read even by educated natives. This form is employed in prefaces, manuscripts, and shop-ledgers, &c.

6) The *Sūng-shū*<sup>ka</sup> (col. 6.) or as it is also called the *Sūng-pán*<sup>kl</sup> was first used, under the *Sung* dynasty, for printing from wooden blocks; an art which was invented about that time (A. D. 900). This form has continued in use for letter-press ever since.

61. In addition to these six forms, the Chinese indulge their taste and fancy in ornamental writing. They have, for example, the *wheat-ear*, the *dragon-head*, the *tadpole*, the *bamboo-sprout*, and other forms of character. The Emperor *K'ien-láng*'s<sup>mn</sup> Poem on *Shíng-kíng*,<sup>op</sup> the city of Moukden, the metropolis of Manchuria, has been printed, both in Chinese and Mandchu, with every variety of fanciful character. A very beautiful copy of this work may be seen in the Library of the British Museum.

62. Many characters have undergone a series of changes at different periods, and some are frequently used for others. The various descriptions

<sup>a</sup>書   <sup>b</sup>有   <sup>c</sup>六   <sup>d</sup>體   <sup>e</sup>曰   <sup>f</sup>篆   <sup>g</sup>隸  
<sup>h</sup>楷   <sup>i</sup>行   <sup>j</sup>草   <sup>k</sup>宋   <sup>l</sup>板 *pán* means 'a board, plank or  
 block.' The common word for a boat of small dimensions is *Sān-pán* 'three planks.'  
<sup>m</sup>乾   <sup>n</sup>隆   <sup>o</sup>盛   <sup>p</sup>京

書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草

書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草

書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草

書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草

書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草

書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草

書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草曰宋  
書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草曰宋  
書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草曰宋  
書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草曰宋  
書有六體曰篆曰隸曰楷曰行曰草曰宋



第一段日常 清早起來。叫孫子們。掃掃地。澆澆花。熬水洗臉。泡碗好茶吃吃。沒有事的時候。看看書。寫寫字。三兩個斯文朋友。作個詩。下個圍棋。解解悶兒。就可以過得日子了。到了下午。拉幾。勝弓。射幾條箭。把這身筋骨。活動活動。人又有精神。又長勁。這都是好事。不要往外頭貪翫。不要拘氣。要打架辯嘴。不要多事。不要開酒。不要過家。我說的話。一點兒錯的都沒有阿。你要聽着。不要忘記了阿。點个灯兒來阿。黑鼓影子。怎麼瞧得見呢。

第二段擇交 一個人出來。相與朋友。總要帶雙眼睛。見了那些正經人。講禮義的。謙和的老實的。董得規矩的。有良心的。見過世面的。有才情的。有本事的。可以靠得住的。你纔好替他相與。跟着他走。恭敬他。不好怠慢他。有善相勸。有事相幫。使大家有益了。若瞧見了那些不好人。一點兒本事都沒有。一把光棍嘴。哄騙人。

l k j i h g f e d c b a



家。又不好脾氣。全幹些混賬的事。又不董眼。又不顧臉。又討人嫌。人家罵他。他也不害臊。這樣的人。我瞧見了。就惱了他。你千萬不要替他走攏阿。你若替他走攏。他就拐騙你的銀子錢。還不打緊。他還要悞你的事。生出許多事來。有甚麼便宜呢。從今以後。你要打主意纔好阿。

第三段雜話 人最要緊是說話。你瞧那些有名色的人。分外不同。他說出的話。總是出經入典。有文雅氣。自不用說咯。他就隨口說句把尋常的話兒。也覺得大方。有體局。不驕傲。不下作。人家聽了。自然誇他。會說話了。然而正經話。固然要聽。就是市井上。那些閒雜人等的話。也要放長耳聾聽聽。雖然不必學他。也要知道。各處風俗。怎麼是村話。粗話。雅話。虛薄話。奉承人的話。笑罵人的話。人家說出來。你不懂得。就成了個起條子了。

u h j i h g f o d o b a





## 第一回

宴桃園豪傑三結義  
斬黃巾英雄首立功

話說天下大勢，分久必合，合久必分。周末七國分爭，并入于秦。及秦滅之後，楚漢分爭，又并入于漢。漢朝自高祖斬白蛇而起義，一統天下。後來光武中興，傳至獻帝，遂分為三國。推其致亂之由，殆始於桓靈二帝。桓帝禁錮善類，崇信宦官，及桓帝崩，靈帝即位，大將軍竇武、太傅陳蕃共相輔佐。時有宦官曹節等弄權，竇武、陳蕃謀誅之，機事不密，反為所害。中涓自此愈橫。建寧二年四月望日，帝御溫德殿，方陞座，殿角狂風驟起，只見一條大青蛇從梁上飛將下來，蟠于椅上。帝驚倒，左右急救入宮。百官俱奔避。須臾蛇不見了。忽然大雷大雨，加以冰雹，落到半夜方止。壞却房屋無數。建四年二月，洛陽地震，又海水泛溢，沿海居民盡被大浪捲入海中。

6

10

16

20

26

l k j i h g f e d c b a

時鉅鹿郡有兄弟三人。一名張角。一名張寶。一名張梁。那張角本是箇不第秀才。因入山採藥。遇一老人。碧眼童顏。手執藜杖。喚角至一洞中。以天書三卷授之。曰。此名太平要術。汝得之。當代天宣化。普救世人。若萌異心。必獲惡報。角拜問姓名。老人曰。吾乃南華老仙也。言訖。化陣清風而去。靖曰。賊兵衆我兵寡。明公宜作速招軍應敵。劉焉然其說。隨即出榜。招募義兵。榜文行到涿縣。引出涿縣中一箇英雄。那人不甚好讀書。性寬和。寡言語。喜怒不形於色。素有大志。專好結交天下豪傑。生得身長八尺。兩耳垂肩。雙手過於膝。目能自顧其耳。面如冠玉。唇若塗脂。中山靖王劉勝之後。漢景帝閣下玄孫。姓劉。名備。字玄德。○當日見了榜文。慨然長嘆。隨後一人厲聲言曰。大丈夫不與國家出力。何故長嘆。玄德曰。視其人。身八尺。聲若巨雷。勢如奔馬。玄德見他形貌異常。問其姓。

l k j i h g f e d c b a





名其人曰某姓張名飛字翼德世居涿郡頗有莊田賣酒屠猪專  
 好結交天下豪傑恰繞見公看榜而嘆故此相問玄德曰我本漢  
 室宗親姓劉名備今聞黃巾倡亂有志欲破賊安民恨力不能故  
 長嘆耳飛曰吾頗有資財當召募鄉勇與公同舉大事如何玄德  
 甚喜遂與同入村店中飲酒正飲間見一大漢推著一輛車子到  
 店門首歇了入店坐下便喚酒保快斟酒來吃我待趕入城去投  
 軍玄德看其人相貌堂堂威風凜凜就邀他同坐叩其姓名其人  
 曰吾姓關名羽字壽長後改雲長河東解良人也因本處勢豪倚  
 勢凌人被吾殺了逃難江湖五六年矣今聞此處招軍破賊特來  
 應募玄德遂以已志告之雲長大喜同到張飛莊上共議大事飛  
 曰我莊後有桃園花開正盛明日當於園中祭告天地我三人結  
 爲兄弟協力同心然後可圖大事玄德雲長齊聲應曰如此甚好

l k j i h g f e d c b a



豺烹羊 盤古初鳥獸皆能言。一日豺與羊同澗飲水。豺欲烹其羊。自念無以措辭。乃強責之曰。汝混濁此水。使老夫不能飲。該殺。羊對曰。大王在上流。羊在下流。雖濁無碍。豺復責曰。汝去年某日出言得罪於我。亦該殺。羊曰。大王悞矣。去年某日。羊未出世。安能得罪大王。豺則變羞爲怒。責之曰。汝之父母得罪於我。亦汝之罪也。遂烹之。諺云。欲加之罪。何患無辭。即此之謂也。

二鼠 村落中有二鼠。本屬親誼。一在京師。過活。忽一日來村探舊村鼠留而款之。所出之食粗糲不堪。京鼠曰。汝居無華屋。食無美味。何不隨我到京。一見世面。村鼠欣然同往。及到京。果然食用皆異。一日二鼠同酌。蕎麥一雄犬幾將村鼠櫻去。村鼠大駭。問曰。此處常有此害乎。曰。然。村鼠辭曰。非我之福也。與其悞惶而甘旨。孰若安靜而糟糠俗云。寧食開眉粥。莫食愁眉飯。即此之謂也。

l k j i h g f e d c b a



have been classified under the following designations: 1. The *Ch'ing-tsz*,<sup>ab</sup> or 'correct character,' without variations; 2. *T'ung-tsz*,<sup>eb</sup> those having 'corresponding forms,' duplicates and triplicates; 3. *T'ung-tsz*,<sup>db</sup> those conveying a corresponding signification though differing in form; 4. *P'ün-tsz*,<sup>eb</sup> and *K'ü-tsz*,<sup>fb</sup> the 'original' and 'ancient forms'; and 5. *Sü-tsz*,<sup>gb</sup> 'vulgar forms' of characters. Abbreviated forms are called *S'ang-tsz*,<sup>hb</sup> and spurious ones *Wei-tsz*,<sup>ib</sup> e.g. 思 for 思, 田 'to think.'

63. The standard works in Chinese literature are generally printed with the full form (*Ch'ing-tsz*) of the characters, but some works contain a few abbreviations (*K'ü-tsz* or *Sü-tsz*); and books in the lower style of composition—such as novels, ballads, &c.—contain numerous contracted forms. The list here given should be learnt by the student, as the forms in it are likely to occur frequently. Many more will be found in the Dictionaries of *K'ang-hi* (in Chinese), of Drs. Morrison and Medhurst (in English), and in that of *Père Gonçalves* (in Portuguese).

*List of abbreviated forms in common use.*

(N. B. They are arranged according to the number of strokes in the abbreviations.)

1 万	13 与	25 边	37 还	49 能
2 万	14 头	26 李	38 焉	50 寫
3 亡	15 太	27 似	39 興	51 興
4 凡	16 尔	28 所	40 變	52 點
5 身	17 处	29 过	41 画	53 賢
6 麼	18 仁	30 兩	42 段	54 覺
7 久	19 全	31 声	43 毡	55 數
8 斤	20 圣	32 听	44 觀	56 鷄
9 号	21 对	33 乱	45 類	57 舊
10 从	22 号	34 国	46 愛	58 台
11 雙	23 礼	35 回	47 留	59 親
12 氣	24 灯	36 實	48 難	

<sup>a</sup> 正 <sup>b</sup> 字 <sup>c</sup> 同 <sup>d</sup> 通 <sup>e</sup> 本 <sup>f</sup> 古 <sup>g</sup> 俗  
<sup>h</sup> 省 <sup>i</sup> 僞

\* These numbers refer to the sheet of characters.

64. Besides the use of these abbreviations and vulgar forms of characters in the lower class of compositions, when expressing purely local idioms, colloquial or provincial phrases, characters well known, but of an entirely different meaning from that which is to be conveyed, are sometimes employed; and the reader is supposed to understand that the character used, is so used merely on account of its sound, that is both syllable and tone. At other times characters are made by the addition of the radical 亻 *jén* 'man,'—as in the phrase 傢伙 *kiā-hò* 'utensils, implements, furniture,' or the radical 口 *k'èu* 'mouth,'—to some common character. All the local dialects, the Canton, the Amoy, the Fūcheu, and the Shanghai especially, contain such characters, which are often not to be found in the Dictionaries.

65. It will be desirable here to point out some characters which, though similar in form, or with a very slight variation, differ in sound and meaning. 己 *kì* 'self;' 已 *ì* 'to stop, finished, now, already;' 巳 *sí* '9 o'clock to 11 A.M.:' *kì* and *ì* are often written and printed interchangeably for each other. 予 *yú* 'to give' and 子 *tsè* 'son' are confounded by beginners, the former requires four strokes, the latter only three. 干 *kān* 'a shield,' 于 *yú* 'in, at, with respect to,' and 千 *ts'ien* 'a thousand,' are similar. Compare also 未 *wí* 'not yet' and 末 *mǔ* 'the end;' 了 *liào* 'finished' and 丫 *yā* or 叉 *chā* 'forked;' 大 *tá* 'great,' 太 *t'ái* 'very great, very,' and 犬 *k'üèn* 'a dog;' 天 *t'ien* 'heaven' and 夫 *fū* 'a man, a person.'

66. The Dictionary edited by the Emperor *K'ang-hi* contains about forty-four thousand characters; but of these, six thousand five hundred are obsolete forms, four thousand two hundred are without name or meaning, and, of the remainder, about twenty thousand are very rarely met with, being either duplicate forms, names of unimportant places and persons, or found only in rare and ancient works. From ten to twelve thousand is understood to be the number employed in Chinese literature, but a much smaller number suffices for ordinary purposes. The manual native Dictionary,—the *Fān-yín* 分韻 'divided rhymes,'—in use in the province of Canton contains seven thousand three hundred and twenty-seven characters. Even this number includes many characters not in common use. Four, five, and six thousand have been mentioned as an approximation to the number of characters in general use. The manual Dictionary appended to this work contains nearly three thousand five hundred, and these will be found sufficient for all ordinary purposes.

§. 5. *Arrangement of characters in books, punctuation, &c.*

67. The characters are arranged in native works in columns, and are read from the top of the page downwards, always beginning on the right hand side and proceeding column by column towards the left. This arrangement

renders it necessary to begin at, what appears to us to be, the end of the volume, as is the case in the Hebrew, Arabic, and some other languages. Two pages only are printed at a time, and these upon the same side of the paper. The leaf is folded with its blank sides placed together, and on the folded edge, which remains uncut, the general title, the running title, the chapter, section, page, and often the designation of the edition, are printed parallel to the other columns. When the characters are arranged in horizontal lines they are read from right to left.

68. The sizes of books vary from folio and quarto, which are uncommon, to imperial octavo for the classics and history; duodecimo, designated 'sleeve' editions, alluding to their portability, are taken for novels; and various smaller sizes are in use for popular poetry, ballads, and works on arithmetic: but, although these sizes predominate in, they cannot be said to be confined to, the above classes of literature. Various qualities of paper are used; works being sometimes printed on white paper; large paper copies are also found. Poems and other works are occasionally printed in white letters on a black ground. Vermillion coloured characters are a mark of Imperial design or patronage. The yellow title-page with the dragon depicted on the margin indicates the Imperial editions.

69. The divisions of a work are commonly *pên* 本 or *kiuèn* \* 卷 'volumes,' *hoiit* \* 回 'chapters,' the latter especially in novels; *tsuán* 段 'section,' *cháng* 章 'chapter,' *tsiè* 節 'section,' used for 'verse,' are also found. In extensive works the characters used in the cycle and for the time of day are employed for divisions of the *kiuèn*. The first four characters of the *Yi-king* 易經 are sometimes used for works in four parts (v. *Numerals*). Works in three volumes or parts are distinguished by the characters 上 *shàng* 'upper,' 中 *chung* 'middle,' 下 *hiá* 'lower.'

70. To the text of the classics, ancient history and poetry, there is generally attached some note, comment, annotation, or paraphrase. These are always distinguished by the size of the character, and often by the characters 註 *chū* 'comment' or 解 *kiài* 'explanation.' The comments are mixed up with the text, or they are placed above it, after it, or at the foot of the page. Interlinear translations of the old classics are also common; the phrase 旁合 *pang-hó* is then used in the title-page, and 訓講 *hiún-kiàng* is the expression applied to general explanations of the text.

71. It is not usual to punctuate the sentence in any way. The paragraph is marked by a large circle, or the first character of it is placed at the top of the column. When the period is shown, it is by a small circle, in the place of our full-stop; a dot, called *chù* or *tièn* 點, takes the place of our comma

\* *Kiuèn* and *hiüt* both signify 'something rolled up,'—'a scroll.'

or semicolon. The sentence or clause is called *kú* 句; a smaller division is stopped by a point, called *teu* \* 讀, equivalent to our comma. Small circles are placed on the right of the characters when the passage is deemed important or worthy of notice, and black dots are used when the passage is less important; the characters so pointed take the place of *italics* in English. The names of books quoted are enclosed by a line. Names of places, when marked at all, have two parallel lines on the right; names of nations are sometimes surrounded by a line; names of persons have one line only on the right. The names of emperors and others deemed worthy of honour are always made to begin a new line, and to project above the tops of the other columns, to the extent of one, two, or three characters.

### §. 6. On writing the characters.

72. The Chinese write the characters with great care, and make it their study to give them an elegant form. The importance to the student of writing them correctly is self-evident; the practice of writing them will give accuracy, and will help the memory; while, as an eminent writer on the subject has said, "no man can properly be considered to learn the language who does not devote a portion of his time to this important branch of the subject †."

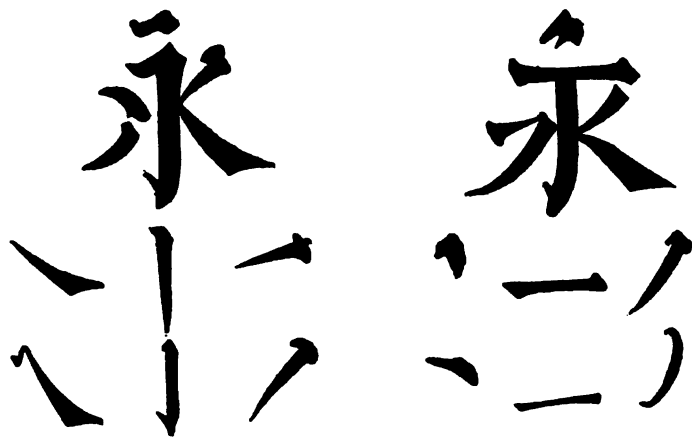
73. The materials for writing were in early times of the rudest kind; but the *varnish*, the *style*, and the *bamboo slips* have given place to the *wo-fên-fêng* 文房四寶 'the four precious implements of the study,' viz. *pencil*, *ink*, *paper*, and *ink-stone*. The *pencil*, 筆 *pi*, is made of the hair of the sable, the fox, the deer, the cat, the wolf, or the rabbit; a small bundle of it, properly adjusted, is secured in a piece of bamboo, about the length and thickness of an ordinary lead pencil. The hair of which the best pencils are made is that of the *huáng-shù-láng* 黃鼠狼, a kind of squirrel: it is sent from the Northern provinces to *Hu-chou* 湖州 in *Chè-kiang* Prov., where the pencils are manufactured. A noted shop for this article bears the name of *sân-pin-tsai* 三品齋. The pencil generally has some inscription, the name of maker, &c. The *ink*, 墨 *mě*, which is a compound of fine soot and some glutinous liquid, is cast in oblong cakes, with inscriptions, stanzas of poetry, and the maker's name impressed thereon. The use of ink became general about the seventh century. About A. D. 400. ink was made from soot obtained by burning millet or fir. In the *T'ang* dynasty, A. D. 650, ink was an article of annual tribute from Corea; this

\* Commonly pronounced *tě* 'to read.'

† See *Eugraphia Sinensis*, Art. XIX. in Transactions of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. I. part II. p. 306, by Sir John F. Davis, F. R. S., &c. &c. The lithographed copies, which are the same as those on the sheet given in this work, are well worthy of the student's attention.

was made from the pine soot. In the *Sung* dynasty, A. D. 1085, *Ch'ang-yu* 張遇 made ink from soot produced by burning oil, he scented it with musk, and called it 'dragon-composition\*.' The best ink comes from *Hwü-cheü*,<sup>a b</sup> in the Prov. of *Gan-hwü*, the native place of *Chu-fu-tsz*, the philosopher; hence the impress on the ink—*Chü-tsè-kiä-hün* 朱子家訓 'the family teachings of *Chü-tsè*;' an extract from which appears upon the reverse side of the cake. Chinese paper, 紙 *chí*, is made of bamboo fibre; it is soft, absorbent, and smooth, commonly of a yellowish tint, and well suited to the Chinese pencil and ink. There are various qualities of it; a large proportion of the best for writing purposes is manufactured in *K'ü-cheü*,<sup>c b</sup> in the Prov. of *Ché-kiang*. Paper was first made in China in the first century of our era. Ink-stones, 硯 *yên*, are small oblong slabs of stone, or hard brick; they should be hard and smooth, and should not absorb water quickly. Various forms of ink-stone are in use; some of these stones are very ancient, and are elaborately carved in fantastic shapes, with ornamental cells for water. The price varies from a hundred Chinese cash (four-pence) to several hundred dollars; these latter are valuable as relics of the past, and are seldom found in the shops.

74. The two characters 永 *yáng* 'eternal' and 衣 *ī* 'clothing' contain every stroke used in forming characters. The character *yáng* is thus formed:—









The common designations and forms of these strokes are here given. They should be copied frequently, and their names should be learnt by the student, as his Chinese tutor will frequently employ them in explaining the formation of characters.


<sup>a</sup> 徽 <sup>b</sup> 州 <sup>c</sup> 衢

\* See Morrison's Dictionary, vol. I. p. 546.

*The strokes used in forming Chinese characters.*

			
點 <i>tièn</i> a point,	畫 <i>huà</i> a horizontal line,	直 <i>chí</i> a perpendicular line,	鉤 <i>koú</i> a hook,
			
刁 <i>tiào</i> a spike,	𠂇 <i>p'ü</i> a sweep,	𠂆 <i>pí</i> a dash,	曲 <i>kü</i> an angle.

75. It is of the first importance that the student should regard the *order of making* the strokes when forming a character, as correctness in this will facilitate his reading the *cursive* hand. A few rules will be given below; and by comparing the various examples of cursive forms, given in Dr. Morrison's Dictionary (vol. II. part II.), he will see which stroke to make first.

76. The following rules may be observed:—1. Begin either at the top or on the left-hand side. 2. When a perpendicular or dash cuts a horizontal line or one leg of an angle, the latter are to be written first, (cf. radicals 19, 24, 29, 32, 33, 41, 43, &c.) 3. An angle at the top on the right side is made with one stroke, and unless *pí* (rad. 4.) or *koqn* (rad. 2.) is affixed to the left of it, the angle is made first. In radicals 18, 19, 26, 29, 39, 44, 49, 105, 124, 129, 178, 183, it is made first. In radicals 13, 20, 34, 35, 36, 76, 122, 130, the angle is made second. 4. An angle at the bottom on the left is also made with one stroke, if it be alone, or be joined to a perpendicular on the right, leaving the top or right side open, (cf. radicals 17, 22, 23, 28, 38, 45, 46, 49, 90, 206.) The characters in which  (five strokes) occurs are exceptions to this rule; the angle on the left is made first; then the angle on the right; the points, next; and the horizontal, last. 5. The angles 𠂆 and 𠂇 in 門 *mén* 'a door' are made first on each side respectively. 6. Horizontal lines precede perpendiculars, when these cross each other; but should the perpendicular terminate with the base line, then the base line is final. 7. In such characters as the radicals 42, 85, 77, 141, 197, 204, 211, the perpendiculars above, or in the middle of the symbol, are made first. 8. In such characters as 口 *k'èu* 'mouth' (rad. 30.) the perpendicular on the left is to be written first; and the interior of such characters as 國 *kwò* 'a kingdom,' 園 *yuèn* 'a garden,' is filled up before the base line is written.

77. The style of writing usually taught in schools is the *Kiai-shū* (cf. 60. 3.), the copies for which are after the writing of *Shau-ying* 邵瑛, a noted calligraphist. The characters on the fly-leaf facing this page are *Shau-ying's* copies. It will be observed that they are arranged by fours, beginning with the first column on the right-hand side. To these the author has appended observations, some of which we shall now give as briefly as possible.



78. Observe:—1. The upper part covers the lower\*. 2. The lower supports the upper. 3. The left exceeds the right in size and elevation. 4. The right exceeds the left. 5. The horizontal through the middle is extended. 6. The perpendicular is perfectly straight. 7. The hook should not be too crooked or too short. 8. The hook should not be too straight or too long. 9. The horizontal, short; the sweep, long. 10. The horizontal, long; the sweep, short. 11. The horizontal, short; the perpendicular, long; the sweep and dash extended. 12. The horizontal, long; the perpendicular, short; the sweep and dash diminished. 13. The horizontal, long; the perpendicular, short. 14. The reverse of rule 13. 15. The horizontal above, short; at the base, long. 16. The perpendicular on the left shorter than on the right. 17. The sweep on the left is shorter than the perpendicular on the right. 18. The perpendicular on the left is shorter than the sweep on the right. 19. The points of the dots converge towards the centre of the character. 20. Several horizontal lines should not be made of equal length. 21. When both sides contain nearly the same number of strokes they are written of equal size. 25. If the left portion be small, it should be level with the top of the right. 26. If the right be small, it should be level with the bottom of the left†.

79. The preceding information on the *sounds* and *characters*, with their proper pronunciation and formation, should be accurately learnt by the student before he proceeds with the next section on the forms of words, as far as they can be distinguished. Dialectic peculiarities would be out of place here, though it may be observed with regard to the pronunciation of words in the Peking dialect, that various modifications are necessary. In the northern parts of China aspirated syllables are pronounced very strongly, and letters which partake of the nature of aspiration have increased aspiration, which changes their orthography in a slight degree: e. g. *kia*, *kiang*, *k'ü* and *kiun* change into *chia*, *chiang*, *chü* and *chiun*; *tsiang*, &c., in the same way. The rule may be given thus:—All syllables having for their initial *k* or *ts* followed by *i* or *ü* change *k* and *ts* into *ch*; and it may also be observed that after *ch* or *sh* the *i*, if final, is not sounded at all. This latter rule may be said to be common also in southern Mandarin. It ought also to be observed, that the *u* after *ch* and *sh* is pronounced more like the *u* in French, that is *ü*; so that the syllables *kü* and *chu* in this work ought to be pronounced as if written *chü* in both cases. After all that can be said upon the subject of orthography, correctness in speaking lies more in the tones than in the utterance of the syllables. Various other modifications take place in the Peking dialect; but attention to the above rules and explanations will enable the persevering student to pronounce with sufficient correctness to be intelligible, though he may fail in acquiring the exact accent of the capital.

\* Each of these rules refers to four characters in the sheet.

† The remainder of these rules, some only of which are important, will be found in Dr. Bridgman's Chinese Chrestomathy, in the Canton dialect.

## SECT. II. FORMS OF EXPRESSION.

§. 1. *Preliminary remarks.*

80. The Chinese do not analyse the sentence, or classify their words and expressions in any way at all approaching to the exact method pursued in European tongues; their language is therefore wanting in those grammatical terms, which are necessary for this purpose. They do indeed distinguish between nouns and verbs: the noun they call *sè-tsz* 死字 'dead word,' and the verb, *huó-tsz* 活字 'living word.' Again, they divide words into two classes; 實字 *shí-tsz* 'real words,' and 虛字 *hū-tsz* 'empty words,' the former class includes nouns and verbs, the latter particles, in which they include all except nouns and verbs. A native author has however recently treated the subject with considerable care; and has made other distinctions, not heretofore noted by the Chinese\*.

81. As a compensation for the want of grammatical rules on ordinary construction, Chinese scholars study *wén-fǎ* 文法 'the laws of style,' and strive to bring their compositions into accordance with *wén-lǐ* 文理 'the rules of style.' We shall do well also to follow their example; and, after commencing with an exact knowledge of the *shīng-yīn*, 'the tones and syllables,' and the characters and words, we may proceed to the syntax of the language, in which lies the whole of its grammatical significance and force.

82. It is however necessary to acquire words before we can, as a native would, examine the structure of the sentence; and, therefore, though all Chinese words cannot be classified under European denominations, yet many may be placed in grammatical categories and be distinguished by the respective terms for the parts of speech. This method will be more convenient for our purpose of analysis; but it will be necessary to forewarn the foreign student of the fact that Chinese words have really no classification or inflexion, and that the distinctions of *case, number, person, tense, mood, &c.*, are unknown to natives of China.

83. The meaning of a character or word and its position in the sentence will generally determine to what category it belongs. Auxiliary syllables and particles do however frequently distinguish the parts of speech. The sentence may often be broken up into groups of syllables, and each group will then form one expression. It will be the object of this portion of the grammar to show upon what principles these groups are formed, to enable the student to realise the various classes of expressions which will come under his observation.

84. The syllables, which are appended to strengthen the original notion conveyed by the prime syllable, are such as denote the *agent*, an *object*;—the

\* See *Grammar of the Shanghai Dialect* by J. Edkins, B. A., Lond. 12mo. Shanghai, 1853.

*completion* or the *expansion* of the idea conveyed by the word to which they are joined;—or they are purely *formative* in character, and produce nouns or verbs, adverbs or adjectives, as conventional usage has determined.

## §. 2. On nouns.

85. Chinese words which may be placed in this class may be considered, either with reference to general usage or to their derivation, as,

1. Nouns *primitive*; i. e. such as are monosyllables bearing their primitive signification, and being most commonly used in their monosyllabic or crude form.

2. Nouns *derivative*; i. e. such as are formed by the addition of some formative syllable, and in this connection, as dissyllables or trisyllables, are always used as nouns.

3. Nouns *composite*; i. e. such as are formed by the union of two syllables bearing one of the following relations to each other:—

- a) The *appositional* relation, when synonymes or words conveying accessory notions are joined together.
- β) The *genitival* relation, when the former of the two may be construed as if in the genitive case.
- γ) The *dative* relation, when the former may be construed as if in the dative case with the words *to* or *for*.
- δ) The *antithetical* relation, when words of an opposite signification are united to form a general or abstract term.

86. No fixed rules can be laid down with respect to any of the above distinctions; and it must be borne in mind that in the colloquial generally, and in some dialects more particularly, combinations of two, three, and four syllables, to form nouns, are very common, while the same notions would in the books frequently be conveyed by one syllable only.

87. *Primitive* nouns, or those which are monosyllabic, and are generally understood to be nouns, are such as the following:—

人 *jīn* 'man,' 飯 *fán* 'rice,' 茶 *ch'a* 'tea,'

風 *fūng* 'wind,' 血 *hū* 'blood,' 馬 *mà* 'horse.'

This class is not a large one, and the monosyllable is not intelligible to a Chinese when pronounced by itself, it must have some syllable or syllables with it: e. g. 'a man' must be called *yī-kó* (one) *jīn*; *fán*, 'rice,' must enter into some phrase, as *k'ī-(ch'i)-fán* 'to eat rice,'—'to dine,' or *tsau-fán* 'early rice,'—'breakfast,' or *wán-fán* 'late rice,'—'dinner,' *ch'a* 'tea,'—'the infusion,' must be distinguished from the leaf, by such phrases as *yīn-ch'a* 'to drink tea,' or *ch'a-yī* 'tea-leaf.' Nouns which designate objects that may be numbered take with them a word in apposition with the number prefixed; e. g. *mà*, 'horse,' takes *yī-p'ī* (1988), 'one,' before it, *yī-p'ī-mà* 'a horse,' *sān-p'ī-mà* 'three horses.'

88. *Derivative* nouns, or such words as have acquired the form of substantives by the addition of a *formative* syllable, are much more numerous than primitive nouns, or monosyllables. These always remain nouns, while some primitive nouns may be used as verbs. This class of words belongs chiefly to the colloquial and the lower style of composition.

89. *Formative* syllables, or those used as such, being similar to terminations in European languages, may be classified thus:—

- a) Those which generally indicate an agent: e. g. *jīn* 人 'man;' *nù* 女 'woman;' *shǒu* 手 'hand;' *fū* 夫 'man, person;' *zǐ* 子 'child.'
- β) Those which refer to a class, and form appellatives relating to *position* or *gender*: e. g. *tí* 帝 'a ruler;' *nù* 女 'a woman.'
- γ) Those which imply a round shape: e. g. *tóu* 頭 'head.'
- δ) Those which relate to objects of various forms and combinations: e. g. *kūi* 塊 'a lump;' *zǐ* 子 'child.'

90. Many characters are used as formative syllables, like the words *man*, *boy*, in *herdsman*, *handicraftsman*, *footman*, *stable-boy*, *post-boy*, *errand-boy*. The characters of this class, which generally indicate an agent, are *shǒu* 手 'hand,' *jīn* 人 'man,' *tsiáng* 匠 'workman,' or *kūng* 工 'artisan,' *fū* 夫 'fellow,' *hú* 戶 'householder,' *zǐ* 子 'son,' *ér* 兒 'child.' This latter—*ér*—is used especially in the north of China:—*tóu* 頭 'head,' *shēng* 生 'born, —produced,—a performer.'

91. Of those formatives which generally indicate a person or agent, the following examples illustrate the use of *shǒu* 'hand:'

*shuǐ-shǒu* 水, 'water-hand,'—'a sailor.'

*yíu-shǒu* 遊, from *yíu* 'to wander,'—'a vagrant.'

*p'áu-shǒu* 炮, from *p'áu* 'a cannon,'—'a gunner.'

*k'iaù-shǒu* 巧, from *k'iaù* 'skilful,'—'an adept.'

Examples of the use of *jīn* 'man.'

*fū-jīn* 婦 'a woman, a matron.'

*k'è-jīn* 客 'a guest.'

*fū-jīn* 夫 'a lady.'

*kūng-jīn* 工 'a workman.'

*ch'ái-jīn* 差 'a messenger.'

*p'áu-jīn* 報 'a reporter' (of news &c.).

92. Nouns formed with *tsiáng* 'workman,' *kūng* 'artisan—labourer,' and *fū* 'a man—a fellow,' are such as these:

mù-tsing 木, from mù 'wood,'—'a carpenter.'

yin-tsing 銀, from yin 'silver,'—'a silveramith.'

t'ü-tsing 鐵, from t'ü 'iron,'—'a blacksmith.'

h'wá-k'ing 畫, from h'wá 'to sketch,'—'a painter.'

t'ü-k'ing 土, from t'ü 'earth,'—'a husbandman, a gardener.'

má-fü 馬, from má 'a horse,'—'a groom.'

t'ian-fü 挑, from t'ian 'to carry on the shoulders,'—'a porter.'

kiaú-fü 轎, from kiaú 'a sedan-chair,'—'a chair-bearer.'

kiú-fü 月, from kiú 'a foot,'—'a courier or messenger' (1246).

n'ing-fü 農, from n'ing 'to cultivate the ground,'—'a husbandman.'

93. *Tsz* 'child' and *qr* 'infant' are very common formatives for designations of persons and agents, though they frequently help to form names of things, and often form diminutives.

#### Examples of the use of *tsz* 'child.'

n'ing-tsz 女 'a mother' (1823).

ch'ang-tsz 長 'the eldest son.'

t'ien-tsz 天 'the son of heaven,'  
i. e. 'the emperor.'

s'ün-tsz 孫 'a grandchild.'

l'ang-tsz 浪 'a fop,—a rake' (1498,  
'wave').

chü-tsz 廚 'a cook.'

kuōn-tsz 拑 'a cudgel' (1434).

kuó-tsz 果 'a fruit' (1468).

yin-tsz 銀 'money.'

sh'ün-tsz 身 'the human body.'

si'ang-tsz 箱 'a box.'

chü-tsz 主 'the master.'

#### Examples of the use of *qr* 'infant.'

h'at-qr 孩 'a child.'

nü-qr 女 'a girl.'

j'ín-qr 人 'a man.'

m'ing-qr 名 'a name' (of any thing).

huó-qr 話 'a word.'

huó-qr 物 'a thing' (esp. antique &c.).

94. *T'ei* 'head' and *kiá* (*chiá*) 家 'family' also designate persons and agents, but *t'ei* often means *things* of a round shape, or all in a piece, and *places*; and *kiá* frequently denotes a whole *class*,—*faculty*, *sect*, &c.

Examples of the use of *t'ou* 'head'

<i>yā-t'ou</i> 丫 'a servant-girl *.'	<i>shǐ-t'ou</i> 舌 'the tongue.'
<i>tuì-t'ou</i> 對 'an enemy *.'	<i>jì-t'ou</i> 日 'the sun.'
<i>lǎu-t'ou</i> 老 'a gaoler.'	<i>kū-t'ou</i> 骨 'a bone.'
<i>fàn-t'ou</i> 飯 'a cook.'	<i>piě-t'ou</i> 鼻 'a nose,' met. 'a servant.'

Examples of the use of *kiā* 'family.'

<i>jīn-kiā</i> 人 'people.'	<i>i-kiā</i> 醫 'the medical faculty.'
<i>lǎu-jīn-kiā</i> 老人 'an old man,—gentleman.'	<i>tau-kiā</i> 道 'the Tauists.'
<i>pèn-kiā</i> 本 'a clansman.'	<i>ch'uen-kiā</i> 船 'ship-owners.'
<i>tūng-kiā</i> 東 'a master.'	<i>fú-kiā</i> 富 'the rich.'
<i>tién-kiā</i> 店 'a shopkeeper.'	<i>kuoi-kiā</i> 貴 'the noble.'

95. Some other words, as *hú* 戶 'a house-door,'—for 'householder,' *t'í* 帝 'a ruler,'—a prince,' *nǚ* 女 'a woman,' and *sāng* 生 'born,' form nouns in a similar way to the preceding, though some of these may perhaps be considered to be in apposition to their prime syllables: e. g.—

<i>k'ái-hú</i> 丐 'beggars.'	<i>i-sāng</i> 'a medical man' (848, as above, line 7).
<i>liáng-hú</i> 糧 'a tax-collector.'	<i>huáng-tí</i> 皇 'an emperor.'
<i>pín-hú</i> 貧 'the poor.'	<i>shàng-tí</i> 上 'God.'
<i>siēn-sāng</i> 先 'a teacher.'	<i>yü-tí</i> 禹 'God,' acc. to Budd.† religion.
<i>ch'ü-sāng</i> 畜 'domestic animals.'	<i>ch'ü-nü</i> 姪 'a niece.'
<i>hóu-sāng</i> 後 'a young man.'	<i>tūng-nü</i> 童 'a virgin.'
<i>hió-sāng</i> 學 'a student.'	<i>ch'ü-nü</i> 處 'a young lady not yet introduced to society.'

Here also we may notice those nouns formed with *shī* 師 'a teacher,' *chū* 主 'a lord,' and *shou* 首 'a head, a chief:' e. g.—

<i>ch'á-sí</i> 茶 'a tea-inspector.'	<i>ch'uen-shou</i> 船 'a captain' (of a ship).
<i>tién-chū</i> 店 'a shopkeeper.'	<i>huoi-shou</i> 會 'the principal' (of a society).

\* The more common words are *yáng-jín* 傭人 'servant, male or female,' and *ch'ü-jín* 仇人 'enemy.'

96. The designations of agents are very commonly formed by the periphrasis of an active verb and its object with the addition of the genitive particle 的, which throws the whole into the form of a participial expression similar to the Greek form  $\delta \pi\acute{\alpha}\tau\epsilon\upsilon\omicron\nu$ ,  $\delta \pi\acute{\alpha}\gamma\mu\alpha\tau\alpha \pi\acute{\alpha}\tau\epsilon\upsilon\omicron\nu$ , &c.

tà-yù-tí 打魚, lit. 'strike-fish (sub. *person*), one who takes fish,' = a fisherman.

nā-yù-tí, fr. nā 拿 'to take,' has the same meaning.

tó-sūng-tí 做生意 'make trade (*person*),' = a tradesman.

k'ān-chai-tí 砍柴 'cut fuel (*person*),' = a woodcutter.

t'ung-míng-tí 聰明 'clear-bright (*person*),' = an intelligent person.

náng-kān-tí 能幹 'able to transact affairs,' = an able man.

pān-sí-tí 辦事 'manage business (*person*),' = a manager.

Nouns formed in this way are very numerous, but they are not often used in the presence of the individual whose calling or character they signify.

t'í-shū-tí 讀書 'one who reads books, a scholar, a learned man.'

kiáu-shū-tí 教書 'one who teaches book-lore, a teacher.'

97. In addition to the above names of persons, others will be found under the articles treating of *composite* nouns. We will now consider those derivative nouns which designate *objects* and *localities*. Besides the use of *tsè* and *q'ér* 'child,' and *t'èu* 'head,' for general objects, we have *t'èu* 'head,' *k'èu* 'mouth,' and *m'q'n* 'door,' as formatives for designations of places.

#### Examples.

t'ui-tsè 刀 'a knife.'

yín-tsè 銀 'silver,—money.'

k'ín-tsè 金 'gold.'

tiè-tsè 帖 'an invitation card.'

shén-tsè 扇 'a fan.'

jì-tsè 日 'a day.'

t'ing-tsè 釘 'a nail.'

tièn-q'ér 點 'a little.'

m'q'n-q'ér 門 'a door.'

míng-q'ér 名 'a name.'

huà-q'ér 話 'a word.'

shì-t'èu 舌 'the tongue.'

k'ui-t'èu 骨 'a bone.'

mù-t'èu 木 'a piece of wood.'

chì-t'èu 指 'a finger.'

shān-t'èu 山 'a mountain-top.'

ch'üèn-t'èu 肩 'a roadstead' (324, 'ship').

mà-t'èu 馬 'a jetty,—a landing-place.'

ch'wāng-k'èu 窗 'a window.'

shān-k'èu 山 'a mountain-pass.'

lú-k'èu 路 'a thoroughfare.'

yá-mén 衙 'magistrate's office.'

lǎu-mén 牢 'a gaol.'

wù-mén 午 'the ante-rooms.'

98. *Composite* nouns are such as are formed by the union of two or three syllables, each preserving its individual signification when in composition. They have been divided into four classes according to the relations which these syllables bear to each other. We now proceed to consider the first of these classes, namely, that in which the *appositional relation* predominates.

Observe.—We understand by the term *apposition*, words, identical or cognate in meaning, placed together and explanatory of each other; e.g. *Victoria Queen of England, Cicero orator, Urbs Roma, &c.*

99. One division of this class consists of words formed by the union of two syllables identical in signification or synonymous, one syllable standing as the exponent of the other. And, in the first place, those which are identical are simply *repetitions* of the same word: thus—

t'ai-t'ai 太太 'aged lady,' used in addressing or speaking of a mandarin's lady.

nai-nai 奶奶 'married lady of rank,' with similar usage.

kō-kō 哥哥 'elder brother,—Sir,' in speaking to one of inferior rank.

100. In the next place, *synonymes* are united to form common nouns: thus—

fāng-ū 房屋 'a house.'

yén-téng 眼睛 'the eye.'

i-fū 衣服 'clothing.'

sīn-cháng 心腸 'the heart, the feelings.'

yīng-ér 嬰兒 'an infant.'

lǐ-lǐ 律例 'statute-law.'

101. Two verbs are sometimes united to form nouns: e. g.—

háng-wéi 行爲 'actions,' both verbs meaning *to do* (synonymes).

fèi-yòng 費用 'expenses,' lit. *to expend—to use* (cognate).

shuō-huà 說話 'conversation,' lit. *to talk—to say* (synonymes).

fàn-huán 反亂 'revolution,' lit. *to reverse—to rebel* (synonymes).

Nouns expressing the abstract notion of verbs are generally formed in this way, just as the infinitive is used in German and Greek; *das Leben, das Haben, το ζην, &c.*

102. Two adjectives are united to form nouns: e. g.—

chín-pai 寶 'precious-precious—a jewel' (216).



jín-t'zì 仁慈 'benevolent-kind—kindness.'

yiü-mín 憂悶 'sad-sorrowful—sorrow.'

103. Two nouns of a series are used to form the name of the class which the series expresses: e. g.—

k'ung-heü 公侯 'a nobleman,' lit. *duke—marquis*; the series being *k'ung-heü-p'è-tzè-nán* 'the five degrees of nobility.'

kiä-tzè 甲子 'the cycle;' these two characters being the signs of the 1st year of the cycle. Cf. Alphabet. A. B. C.

104. Many nouns are formed by placing generic terms, the equivalents for *tree, stone, flower, fish, &c.*, after the special object: e. g.—

ü-yü 鯉魚 'the carp.'

kwéi-huä 桂花 'the flower of the cassia.'

s'ung-shü 松樹 'the fir-tree.'

y'ing-shí 英石 'limestone.'

105. Under the appositional relation we must also consider the very large class of nouns formed by the use of what have been called *numeratives* or *classifiers*. These correspond to our words *gust* of wind, *flock* of sheep, *cup* of wine. The words *gust, flock, cup*, are not in the genitive or possessive case, but in apposition to the words *wind, sheep, wine* \*. The Chinese, in conversation, extend the use of such words to every object; they say, for example, 'one handle fan' for a *fan*, 'one length road' for a *road*. They are here called *appositives*, a term more appropriate than *numeratives* or *classifiers*. We shall now give a list of these appositives, and point out those which claim our first attention, and the classes of words to which they are prefixed in order to form nouns.

106. *List of appositives, with the nouns and classes of nouns to which they are united in composition.*

1. kó 個, 箇 or 个, is the most common app.; it is used with almost all objects: thus, yí kó jìn 'a man.'
2. ch'í 隻 'an individual thing, single;' with names of *animals, ships, and things that move*.
3. kién 件 'a division;' with *things, affairs, clothes*.
4. k'wéi 塊 'a clod; a lump;' with *dollar, land, stone, and things of an irregular shape*.
5. t'iaü 條 'a twig, a division;' with *long things, roads, fish, snakes, &c., laws, &c.*
6. tsé 座 'a seat;' with *house, hill, clock, of things fixed in a place*.
7. p'ên 本 'root, origin;' with *book*. This is a *borrowed* character.

\* Compare Lat. *Urbs Roma*, Ger. *ein Glas Wein*.

8. *pà* 把 'a handle;' with *knife*, *chair*, things that may be held.
9. *kān* 根 'a root;' with *tree*, *pole*, *club*, &c.
10. *chāng* 張 'a sheet;' with *paper*, *table*, *bow*, &c., things spread out.
11. *chī* 枝 'a branch;' with *pencil*, *branch*, &c.
12. *p'í* 匹 'a piece or a pair;' with *horse*, *ass*, &c.
13. *tuì* 對 'a pair;' with *shoes*, or any thing in pairs.
14. *shuāng* 雙 'a couple;' used as the above (13).
15. *kiēn* 間 'an interval, a space;' with *house*, and buildings generally.
16. *fāng* 封 'to seal;' with *letters*, &c.

107. The above are the appositives in most general use. A list of those characters which are less frequently used in this way is now given. The student may by reference to Mr. Edkins' *Grammar of the Mandarin Dialect* find a more particular notice of each.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>chēn</i> 陳 'a gust of wind.'               | 17. <i>píng</i> 柄 'a handle.'                  |
| 2. <i>ch'ing</i> or <i>shing</i> 乘 'a carriage.' | 18. <i>p'ú</i> 鋪 'to spread out.'              |
| 3. <i>chū</i> 軸 'an axle.'                       | 19. <i>pú</i> 步 'a pace.'                      |
| 4. <i>chū</i> 處 'a place.'                       | 20. <i>sò</i> 所 'a place.'                     |
| 5. <i>fú</i> 幅 'a fold, a piece.'                | 21. <i>t'ei</i> 頭 'a head.'                    |
| 6. <i>kān</i> 杆 'a pole.'                        | 22. <i>tíng</i> 頂 'a top.'                     |
| 7. <i>kiá</i> 架 'a frame, a stand.'              | 23. <i>tò</i> 朶 'a bunch.'                     |
| 8. <i>k'èu</i> 口 'a mouth.'                      | 24. <i>tū</i> 堵 'a low walk.'                  |
| 9. <i>kiuēn</i> 卷 'a roll.'                      | 25. <i>ts'ān</i> 'a meal' (2786).              |
| 10. <i>k'ò</i> 顆 'a grain.'                      | 26. <i>ts'áng</i> 層 'a layer, a story.'        |
| 11. <i>kō</i> 科 'rank, examination.'             | 27. <i>tsi</i> 節 'a joint.'                    |
| 12. <i>kuān</i> 管 'a pipe.'                      | 28. <i>tuān</i> 端 'a piece of cloth, &c.'      |
| 13. <i>līng</i> 領 'a collar.'                    | 29. <i>tsūn</i> 尊 'honourable.'                |
| 14. <i>mən</i> 門 'a door.'                       | 30. <i>wān</i> 文 'the tenth of a copper cash.' |
| 15. <i>mei</i> 枚 'a stem.'                       | 31. <i>wei</i> 'a tail' (3121).                |
| 16. <i>mien</i> 面 'the face.'                    | 32. <i>wei</i> 位 'a person.'                   |

Besides the above, many words are used as *appositives*, especially such words as express *quantity* of any kind, a *collection* or a *class* of objects\*:

108. The second class of composite nouns includes all those whose first part may be said to stand in the *genitive* case, and which expresses the *origin* or *cause* of the second part, or that person or thing to which the second part *belongs* or has *reference*. Under this class also will come such compounds as have an attributive attached to them, whether an adjective or a verb in its participial form.

109. Examples of nouns of two syllables, the former of which is in the genitive case:—

t'ù-chàn 土產 lit. 'soil's produce,' = produce.

t'ien-kí 天氣 lit. 'heaven's breath,' = the weather.

shāng-háng 商行 'a merchant's house and premises.'

mén-kǒu 門口 lit. 'door's mouth,' = door.

tián-chū 店主 lit. 'shop's lord,' = innkeeper or shopkeeper.

niú-jǔ 牛肉 lit. 'cow's flesh,' = beef.

110. Examples of nouns of two syllables, the former of which is an adjective or a participle:—

tá-mě 大麥 lit. 'great-corn,' = wheat. tú-huáng 黃 '(yellow) rhubarb.'

tiè-jī 昨日 'yesterday.' tè-yé 夜 'last night.'

wén-yǒ 文約 'a written agreement.'

chūng-sin 中心 lit. 'middle-heart,' = centre.

kì-sing 記性 lit. 'recording-faculty,' = memory.

kiài-fǎ 解法 lit. 'explaining-method,' = explanation.

lí-yén 戲言 lit. 'sporting-words,' = a joke.

míng-t'ien 明天 lit. 'bright-heaven, or when the heaven becomes bright,' = to-morrow.

hién-shuō 閒說 'idle-talk.' siàu-sz 小斯 'a waiter or valet.'

chāi-p'ái 招牌 lit. 'calling-board,' = a sign-board.

fī-k'iaú 飛橋 lit. 'flying-bridge,' = drawbridge.

111. Sometimes designations of place and time, which are commonly used as prepositions or adverbs, enter into the composition of nouns: e. g.—

\* See *Grammar of the Mandarin Dialect* by Rev. J. Edkins, pp. 129, 130.

*siên-fung* 先鋒 lit. 'forward-point, van,' = the van of an army.

*kín-jī* 今日 lit. 'now-day,' = to-day. Cf. uses of *nū* and *wāla*.

*tsau-fán* 早飯 lit. 'early-rice,' = breakfast. Cf. Ger. *Früh-stück*.

*wán-fán* 晚 | lit. 'late-rice,' = the evening-meal. Cf. Ger. *Abend-brod*.

112. The third class of nouns is much smaller than the preceding, but it includes many idiomatic expressions. The first syllable of the two stands to the other in what we shall call the *datival* relation to its associate. The examples will show what is meant by this expression:—

*hiō-fáng* 學房 lit. 'learning-room,' i. e. a room for that purpose, = a school-room.

*tsiū-liáng* 酒糧 lit. 'wine-measure,'—'the capacity for drinking.'

*ch'á-hú* 茶壺 'a tea-pot, a pot for tea.'

*píng-lǐ* 兵律 lit. 'soldiers'-law,'—'discipline.'

*yín-k'ú* 銀庫 lit. 'silver-store,'—'treasury.'

113. In addition to the names of agents mentioned already, the expression *sī-fú* 師傅 'a teacher,' and the verb *tsō* 作 'to make,' are used to form nouns: e. g.—

*nī-kū-sī-fú* 尼姑 lit. 'pure-lady,' = nun.

*t'í-t'á-sī-fú* 剃頭 lit. 'shave-head,' = a barber.

*shí-tsō* 石 lit. 'stone-make,' = a stone-mason.

*shuài-tsō* 水 lit. 'water-make,' = a confectioner or baker.

114. A verb and its object are sometimes used as a noun with and sometimes without the particle 的: e. g.—

*k'í-t'á* 起頭 lit. 'begin-head,'—'beginning.'

*hóu-tín* 回信 lit. 'return-letter,'—'a reply,' to a letter.

115. The verb sometimes stands in the second place with a noun before it, without any apparent construction existing between them: e. g.—

*shí-mó* 石磨 lit. 'stone-grind,' = a grindstone. *mó-shí* too is used.

*shú-lung* 樹礮 lit. 'tree-grind,' = a wooden mill for grinding grain.

116. Many of the appositives are placed *after* words, and they then help to form general terms: e. g.—

mà-pí 馬匹 'horses.'

pú-pí 布匹 'piece-goods.'

ch'üen-ché 船隻 'ships.'

shí-hw'ei 石塊 'stones.'

117. Nouns formed by uniting words *antithetical* in meaning are very common, and they generally signify the abstract notion implied by these extremes: e. g.—

k'ing-chung 輕重 lit. 'light-heavy,'=weight.

tso-shau 多少 lit. 'many-few,'=quantity, which is the common phrase for 'how many?' or 'how much?'

ch'ang-tsun 長短 lit. 'long-short,'=length.

kau-ti 高低 lit. 'high-low,'=height.

118. The union of syllables of an opposite signification gives rise to a *general term*: e. g.—

hiung-ti 兄弟 lit. 'elder brother and younger,'=brethren.

chi-mei 姊妹 lit. 'elder sister and younger,'=sisters.

119. The student should notice the class of *abstract* nouns which are formed by the addition of such words as k'í 氣 'breath,' füng 風 'wind,' sin 心 'heart,' sing 性 'nature,—disposition,—faculty:'—

i-k'í 義 'integrity.'

wên-füng 文 'literary taste.'

nü-k'í 怒 'anger.'

siàu-sin 小 'attention.'

k'è-k'í 客 'etiquette.'

ch'ung-sin 中 'the centre.'

t'í-k'í 地 'climate.'

liàng-sin 良 'conscience.'

mæn-k'í 悶 'sadness.'

kü-sin 懼 'fear.'

wai-füng 威 'dignity.'

k'í-sing 記 'memory.'

mín-füng 民 'nationality.'

sin-sing 心 'disposition.'

120. Other *abstract* nouns are formed upon the same principle as those noticed in the foregoing articles; viz., (1) by uniting synonymes, (2) by placing one noun in the genitive case before another, (3) by joining two verbs or (4) an adjective and its noun:—

- (1) *jìn-ngai* 仁愛 'benevolence, philanthropy.'  
*gān-tièn* 恩典 'favour, grace.' Ger. *Gunst*.  
*chung-kièn* 中間 'the midst.'
- (2) *chü-t* 主意 'the will,' lit. 'the idea of the master.'  
*míng-shēng* 名聲 'reputation,' lit. 'sound of the name.'  
*tai-lí* 道理 'doctrine,' lit. 'the rule of reason.'
- (3) *mai-mai* 買賣 'trade,' lit. 'to buy, to sell.'  
*siat-hoá* 笑話 'joking,' lit. 'to laugh, to talk.'  
*wên-tá* 問答 'dialogue,' lit. 'to ask, to answer.'  
*fân-pí* 分別 'difference,' lit. 'to divide, to distinguish.'  
*kūng-lái* 功勞 'merit,' lit. 'to merit, to labour.'
- (4) *siàu-sin* 小心 'attention,' lit. 'small heart.'  
*pên-fên* 本分 'duty,' lit. 'own part.'  
*kaú-míng* 高名 'celebrity,' lit. 'high name.'

121. Proper names may be mentioned appropriately here. Chinese names proper are always significant. Foreign names are put into Chinese form by simply representing the syllables of which they are composed by Chinese characters. There are about five hundred characters used as the names of families. (See Appendix.) In addition to this *síng* 姓, 'surname,' each individual has several designations, the principal one, which follows the *síng* immediately, is the *míng* 名 or common 'name,' and sometimes a *tái* 字 or 'title.' In addressing a person the *síng* is used with some polite expression suffixed, such as *siên-sāng* 'elder-born,' *siāng-kūng* 'Mr.' A few of the most common geographical and other proper names will be found in the Appendix.

122. *Diminutives* are formed by means of certain words, signifying *little*, *small*, prefixed; *siàu-yáng* 'small sheep,' = a *lamb*, *siàu-mà* 'small-horse,' = a *colt*; or by the word *tài* 'child,' *qr* 'infant,' suffixed, *hai-qr* 'a little boy.'

123. The distinctions of gender and number are made in a similar way by prefixes or suffixes:—

*nán* 男 'male' and *nü* 女 'female' are prefixed to *jín*, 'man,' to express the gender; so also are *kūng* 公 'male' and *mù* 母 'mother,' to names of animals, to distinguish the gender.

father' and *mù* 'mother,' *tsz* 'son' and *nü* 'daughter,' are employed with the names of relations; as, *uncle*, *aunt*, *nephew*, *niece*. They are however suffixed.

## Examples.

*nán-jín* 男 'a man.'

*nü-jín* 女 'a woman.'

*pə-fú* 伯 'uncle.'

*pə-mù* | 'aunt.'

*kūng-chū* 猪 'a boar \*.'

*mù-keù* 狗 'a bitch.'

*chī-nü* 姪 'a niece.'

*sūn-nü* 孫 'a granddaughter.'

The Chinese ascribe certain genders to various objects of nature, according as they belong to the male and female principles, the *yáng* 陽 and the *yin* 陰, the dual powers of the universe. The 'sun,' *jī*, is masculine, the 'moon,' *yü*, is feminine. But this does not affect the form of the words or their construction. Frequently the gender is shown by a distinct appellation; as, *tsz* 'son,' *nü* 'daughter.'

124. A proper name may be used as a common noun either by itself or with the addition of *tàng* 等 'sort, class;' instead of saying "He was a perfect Confucius," the Chinese would say "He is of the Confucius sort." But this form of expression is scarcely ever used; the notion would be conveyed in some other way, especially in the colloquial style.

125. When the plural is expressed in Chinese it is done in several ways, each having reference to the extent of the notion of plurality. The simplest form of the plural is the reduplication of the syllable, a method common to Japanese as well as to Chinese †. It expresses *all* in a general sense, in some expressions indefinite, but in others limited by locality or the nature of the subject; e. g. *jín-jín* 人 signifies either 'every body' (but not without exception) or 'all men,' if the nature of the case or sense of the passage require it; just as we say, *most men*. The same may be said of *jī-jī* 日 'daily,' which is an adverb.

126. The following are the syllables commonly prefixed to express plurality: those common to the conversational form are marked thus—(c); the others are only used in the books:—

衆 *chúng* (c) 'all,' either 'every,' or merely 'all' the party in a certain place, generally of persons, followers, attendants.

諸 *chū* (c) 'all,' in a more general sense applied to smaller classes.

庶 *shú* 'all,' chiefly in the books.

\* Cf. *oīs ndapos* of Homer.

† In Japanese *ito* is 'man,' *ito-bito* 'men.'

多 *tō* (c.) 'many, or much, or often,' of men or things. 許 *hū-tō* or 好 *hāi-tō* are stronger colloquial forms.

凡 *fān* (c.) 'all,' of number or quantity; also *tā-fān*. 兆 *chao* 'all, generally' (seldom).

悉 *sī* 'all, completely,' often as an adverb.

並 *píng* is used both before and after the noun, but only in books.

127. These below are placed after the noun, and are emphatic, and commonly imply universality as well as mere plurality:—

皆 *kiāi* (c.) 'all,' in company,—*in universum*, it comprehends the whole class.

都 *tū* (c.) 'all, entirely, altogether.' This is also used as an adverb, to intensify; and then gives the sense of, *at all, quite*.

俱 *kū* 'all,' chiefly in books and the higher colloquial.

咸 *hiēn* 'all,' also uncommon in speaking.

舉 *kū* 'all,' lit. 'to raise up,' confined to the books.

均 *kūn* 'all, equally.' 眾 *tsiēn* 'all,' in books especially.

等 *tāng* (c.) 'a class, sort.' This is common in books too.

輩 *pei* (c.), as in *chàng-pei* 長 'elders, superiors.'

全 *ts'uen* (c.) 'complete,' also used in the books.

們 *mén* (c.), the common mandarin particle for 'all;' it may be looked upon as a *formative* particle.

128. The most common method is to employ some number or expression which sufficiently defines the plurality of the noun to which it is attached; just as the vulgar expression 'three foot' for 'three feet,' and in German *drei hundert mann*, &c. The numeral determines the plurality; and frequently in Chinese a special number prefixed serves to form a general or universal notion: e. g.—

si-hai 四海 'the four seas,' i. e. the world.

pā-kwān 百官 'the hundred mandarins,' i. e. the officials.

li-fāng 六房 'the six rooms, departments,' i. e. the six boards of government.

wán-mín 萬民 'the ten thousand people,' i. e. all the people. 幾 *tsai* and 幾 *tsai*, 'several,' and some other syllables determine the plural. Cf. the use of *μῑρος* in Greek.



129. Those relations of words to each other, which are shown in the classical languages of Greece and Rome by the *cases* of nouns and by the *persons* and *tenses* of verbs, are exhibited in Chinese by the arrangement and sequence of the words themselves. The consideration therefore of the cases of nouns must be referred to the syntax of the language.

130. The only case which can be distinguished by the form of the expression is the *genitive*. The particles which show this are *ti* 的 and 之 *chī*; the former in speaking, the latter in the books. They have the nature of demonstratives, and stand for the *s* with an *apostrophe*—*'s* or *'*.

### §. 3. On adjectives.

131. Adjectives in Chinese may be divided, as the nouns have been, into three classes. Some syllables are used exclusively as adjectives, and are but seldom employed in the other grammatical relations; they may therefore be looked upon as *primitive*: e. g. *hau*, 'good,' is most commonly used as an adjective, although sometimes, with a change of tone—*hau*, it means 'to love.' Others seem to require the genitive particle to *form* them into attributives, and may be considered as *derivatives*. Others again are formed by the union of two or more syllables, and may be called *compounds*. Examples of this classification are to be found in the following articles.

132. The common formative particles, which strengthen the attributive force of the adjective, are *ti* 的 in the mandarin and *chī* 之 in the books. When these must be used depends in a great measure upon the rhythm of the expression: e. g. we may say *fú-kwei-jín* 富貴人 or *fú-kwei-ti-jín* 'a rich man,' but *ti-hai-jín* 利害 would not pass, because it might signify 'to injure a man,' *hai* being a verb 'to hurt,' but *ti-hai-ti-jín* is 'a hurtful man,'—'a fierce, bad person.' The *ti* is required generally when a verb enters into the composition of the adjective, therefore especially after verbal adjectives and participles.

133. Adjectives of cognate signification come together and strengthen each other: e. g.—

*t'ien-pō* 淺薄 'shallow—thin,' = poor, weak.

*kiā-miāu* 巧妙 'clever—marvellous,' = ingenious.

*kiē-kū* 堅固 'firm—strong,' = firm.

134. A substantive sometimes stands before an adjective, as one noun stands before another in the genitive case, and thus intensifies the adjective: e. g.—

*pīng-liáng* 冰涼 'ice's cold,' = icy-cold.

*sū-pā* 雪白 'snow's white,' = snowy-white.

135. A noun and an adjective combined sometimes form an epithet, which is used as an adjective: e. g.—

*tá-tàn-ti* 大胆 lit. 'great-liver,'=brave.

*kūng-tau-ti* 公道 lit. 'just-doctrine,'=just.

Such compound adjectives always require 的 *ti*.

136. An adjective or a noun is prefixed to an adjective with an adverbial force, and it is sometimes doubled to intensify the meaning: e. g.—

*tsing-si-ti* 精細 'fine-small,'=fine.

*tsing-tsing-si-ti* 'very elegant.'

*wên-yà-ti* 文雅 'letters-elegant,'=of literary elegance.

*wên-yà-yà-ti* 'of a very fine style of composition.'

137. The addition of *k'ò* 可 'can,' or *hau* 好 'good, much,' to a verb forms adjectives which terminate in *-able* in English; they must always be followed by *ti*: e. g.—

*k'ò-liên-ti* 憐 lit. 'can-pity,'=pitiable, miserable.

*k'ò-yung-ti* 用 lit. 'can-use,'=that may be used.

*hau-yung-ti*, lit. 'good-use,'=useful.

*hau-sia-ti* 笑 lit. 'good-laugh,'=laughable.

138. The quality of a verb may be attributed to a noun by a participle formed by suffixing *ti* to the verb itself: e. g.—

*huân-hi-ti* 歡喜 lit. 'to be pleased with,'—'pleasant.'

*huò-tung-ti* 活動 lit. 'to live and move,'—'lively, active.'

139. The quality or possession of the quality of a noun may be attributed to another noun by prefixing *yiù* 有 'to have,' and suffixing *ti* to the noun whose quality is concerned: e. g.—

*yiù-tung-tien-ti* 銅錢 lit. 'has-money,'=monied, rich.

*yiù-lì-k'í-ti* 力氣 lit. 'has-strength,'=strong.

*yiù-liàng-sin-ti* 良心 'conscientious.'

*yiù-hau-i-si-ti* 意思 'with a good meaning or intention.'

140. Many adjectives are formed from nouns, especially when they are descriptive of the shape or material of which any thing is made: e. g.—

*st-fāng-ti* 四方 lit. 'four-square,' = square.

*chì-ti* 紙 'of paper.' *kín-ti* 金 'of gold,' = golden.

These latter sometimes take the verb *tsó* 做 or *tsò* 作, 'to make,' between the noun and the particle *ti*:

*mù-tsò-ti* 木作 'made of wood,—wooden.'

Such are however to be regarded as the participles from compound verbs, corresponding to the German compound verb *handhaben*.

141. Some adjectives with an intransitive or passive signification are formed by prefixing *jìn*, 'man,' to the verb: e. g.—

*jìn-hàn-ti* 狠 lit. 'men-hate,' = hated.

*jìn-ngai-ti* 愛 lit. 'men-love,' = esteemed.

Such adjectives as *wolfish*, *hateful*, &c., are sometimes expressed by conventional terms, sometimes by circumlocutions: e. g.—

*yii-chai-láng-ti* 狼性, lit. 'has-wolf's-disposition,' = wolfish; or,

*siáng-chai-láng-ti*, lit. 'like-wolf,' = wolfish.

*jìn-k'ò-hàn-ti*, lit. 'men-can-hate,' = hateful.

142. Adjectives formed in European languages by means of a privative syllable are made by prefixing *pŭ* 不, 'not,' to the simple word, and adding *ti*, the genitive particle: e. g.—

*pŭ-siāng-kān-ti* 相干 'unimportant.'

*pŭ-shuāng-kw'at-ti* 爽快 'unwell' or 'unwholesome.'

*pŭ-hò-mŭ-ti* 和睦 'inimical.'

143. In this way many adjectives are formed in Chinese as equivalents for adjectives not produced by means of a privative syllable, but of a more emphatic power: e. g. for *bad*, *ugly*, *hearty*, the Chinese would frequently say *pŭ-hau-ti*, 'not good,'—'bad,' instead of *ò* 惡. All such require *ti*, the genitive particle.

144. There is no form of the adjective which expresses the degree of intensity or comparison. Words which may be mentioned in this connection as affording a means of expressing the comparative and superlative are, *kāng* 更 'more,' *chí* 至 'to come to (the extreme point):' e. g.—

*kāng-hau-ti*, lit. 'more good,'—'better.'

*kāng-yung-i-ti* 容易 lit. 'more easy,'—'easier.'

*chí-kau-tí* 高 lit. 'extremely high,'—'highest.'

*chí-jín-ngai-tí* 仁愛 lit. 'extremely benevolent,'—'very benevolent.'

145. The verb *kiā* 加 'to add' is sometimes joined to *kāng*: e. g.—

*kāng-kiā-k'í-kw'ái-tí* 奇快 'more wonderful.'

*kāng-kiā-pai-pai-tí* 寶 | 'more precious.'

146. Several words are used to express the superlative or the intensity of the attribute, such as *tíng* 頂 'the top,' *kí* 極 'the extreme point,' *hên* 狠 'to hate,' *ts'ü* 絕 'to cut off,' *hau* 好 'good,' *t'ai* 太 'great,—very,—too,' *shín* 甚 'very,' *tsü* 最 'very.'

#### Examples.

*tíng-siàu-tí* 小 'very small,'—'the smallest.'

*tíng-hau-tí* 好 'the best.'

*kí-tá-tí* 大 'very great,'—'the greatest.'

*hên-tō-tí* 多 'very many,'—'the most.'

*ts'ü-miau-tí* 妙 'most wonderful.'

*hau-tō-tí* 多 'very many \*.'

*t'ai-ts'ien-tí* 淺 'very shallow.'

*shín-k'ü-tí* 苦 'very bitter.'

*tsü-yau-kín-tí* 重要 'very important.'

147. The relations expressed by the forms of comparison, and by what is commonly called the superlative, are *often* produced by syntactical arrangements; the consequence is that the simple adjective must often be construed into European tongues by the forms of comparative and superlative: e. g.—In choosing long articles a person might say, 'This is longer by a foot;' the Chinese would say, 'This is long by a foot,' i. e. *longer* than some others, or 'this is a good one' for 'this is a better one.' This is syntactical; the duration and the extent being expressed *after* the word to which they respectively refer.

148. There are certain words with which it may be well to make the student acquainted here, because they are employed to state the comparison of the adjective in circumlocutions: e. g.—*pí* 比 'to compare,' thus 'you compared with him are tall' for 'you are taller than him.'

\* Of the English phrase, a *good many*.

*yü* 又 'again, still,' *tsai* 再 'again, more.' Cf. the use of *encore* in French and *noch* in German:—*encore mieux*, *noch mehr*.

*huan* 還 'still, again, beside,' pron. *hai* in coll.

*yü* 越 'to pass over,' and *yü-fa* 發, which is more colloquial, in such phrases as 'the more, the better.'

*yü* 愈 'to exceed, more,' used as *yü*.

149. Sometimes verbs are used to express the idea of adding to or lessening the force of the adjective: e. g.—

*kiā* 加 'to add,' e. g. *kiā-tō* 'add-many,'=greater.

*kiên* 減 'to subtract,' e. g. *kiên-siàu* 'reduce-small,'=smaller.

150. The particle *yü* 於 'in, at,' which is used chiefly in the book-style, is also employed in conversation in the sense of 'in comparison with,'—'than.' Likewise several other words and expressions which signify 'a little.' These are placed after the adjective, as adverbs, and induce the notion of comparison: e. g.—

*ché-kó* *shí* *tá* *yü-tièn-qr* 'This is great a little,'  
 這個是大一點兒 for, 'This is a little greater.'

151. Another very common way of forming the superlative is by prefixing the ordinal number *tí-yí* 第一 'first,' or the expression *shí-fún* 十分 'ten parts,' to the adjective in its simple form. Both these expressions give the notion of *entirety*, *completeness*. The Chinese employ the decimal system, and therefore *ten parts* means the *whole*. The word *mán* 萬 'ten-thousand, all,' is also used as an intensifier.

152. When the verb *tí* 得 'to obtain' is employed after the adjective, and is itself followed by some word which signifies *limit*, *extremity*, *urgency*, *severity*, &c., as 很 *hên*, 極 *kí*, 緊 *kín*, 利害 *lí-hai*, the superlative is formed by the whole expression, which denotes a very high degree of the quality signified by the adjective: e. g.—

*kuo'at-ló-tí-hên* 快樂 'very glad indeed.'

*sîn-siên-tí-kí* 新鮮 'very fresh indeed.'

*k'ù-nân-tí-kín* 苦難 'very hard to bear.'

*hiung-tí-lí-hai* 凶 'very fierce indeed.'

153. The following expressions are often suffixed to show the degree of

the attributive: *pü-koo* 不過 'not pass-over,' *pü-shing* 不勝 'not over-come,' 不完 *pü-wān* 'not finish,' also 了不得 *liào-pü-ti* 'finish not obtain,' i. e. extremely. The characters 殊 *shū* 'to kill,' 盡 or 儘 *tsin* 'to complete,' 嚴 *k'í* 'strict,' 凱 *k'ái* 'excellent,' 從 *ts'ung* 'to follow,' 殺 *shā* 'to kill,' 森 *sān* 'abundant,' are also used in this connexion.

154. Certain other words, which signify *great, upper, good*, are used for the same purpose: e. g.—

*tá-fān-pi* 大分別 'very different.'

*shàng-ku-ti* 上古的 'most ancient.'

*liàng-kiù-ti* 良久的 'of a very long time ago.'

#### §. 4. The numerals.

155. The cardinal numbers are,

一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十
<i>yí,</i>	<i>ér,</i>	<i>sān,</i>	<i>sì,</i>	<i>wù,</i>	<i>liù,</i>	<i>ts'í,</i>	<i>pā,</i>	<i>kiù,</i>	<i>shí.</i>
one,	two,	three,	four,	five,	six,	seven,	eight,	nine,	ten.

156. The remaining numbers are formed thus:

*shí-yí,* 11; *shí-ér,* 12; *shí-sān,* 13; *shí-sì,* 14;  
*ér-shí,* 20; *ér-shí-yí,* 21; *ér-shí-ér,* 22;  
*kiù-shí-kiù,* 99; *yí-pě* 百, 100;  
*yí-ts'ien* 千, 1000; *yí-wán* 萬, 10,000.

157. The ordinal numbers are formed by prefixing 第 *tí* 'order,' to the cardinal numbers; and up to the *tenth*, *ch'ü* 初, 'to begin,' may be prefixed instead of *tí*. In expressing the days of the month, the cardinal numbers may be used alone for the ordinals.

158. Fractional parts are expressed by the character *fān* 'to divide,—a part,' the *half* by *pán* 半, and the *quarter* by *k'è* 刻.

#### Examples.

*pán-jí* 半日 'half a day.'

*jí-pán* 日 'a day and a half.'

*sān-fān-chí-yí* 三分之一 'one of three parts,' =  $\frac{1}{3}$ .

*kiù-fān-chí-sì* 九分之四 'four of nine parts,' =  $\frac{4}{9}$ .

159. Many characters not properly numerals are used as numerals in

Chinese as in Hebrew and Greek. The characters in passages from noted authors are employed as numerals. Such are the first four characters of the *Yi-k'ing*; viz. *yuén* 元, *h'ing* 亨, *li* 利, *ch'ing* 貞, which serve for the numbers *one, two, three, four*, for volumes of books &c. The characters *shàng* 上 'upper,' *ch'ung* 中 'middle,' and *hiá* 下 'lower,' are used for works in three parts or volumes. The three months of each season are designated by *máng* 子, *ch'ung* 仲, and *kí* 季.

160. The characters commonly used for the purposes of higher calculation and chronology &c. are two series, one consisting of *ten*, the other of *twelve* characters; viz.—

(a) 甲, 乙, 丙, 丁, 戊, 己, 庚, 辛, 壬, 癸, and  
*kiá, yí, ping, t'ing, wù, k'ì, k'ang, sìn, j'ín, k'wei,*

(β) 子, 丑, 寅, 卯, 辰, 巳, 午, 未, 申, 酉, 戌, 亥.  
*tsè, ch'èu, yín, mài, ch'én, s'í, wù, wí, shín, yü, s'í, hái.*

The principal use of these is for the production of the names of the sixty years of the Chinese cycle, which is called *Hwá-kiá-tsè* 花甲子. The number of the cycle must be determined by the 年號 *niên-hau* 'year's designation,' by the title of the reign, or by the name of the emperor, and then the two characters from the two series given above will show the number of the year in the cycle. A list of the *niên-hau* and of the emperors will be found in the Appendix. The date is frequently noted both by means of the emperor's title and the year of his reign, and by the characters of the cycle for that particular year: thus, *K'ien-lung sì-shí-ér-nien, sú-tsè t'ing-yü shí-ér-yü shí-kiú-jí*; that is, 'The forty-second year of *K'ien-lung*, the year *t'ing-yü* (A. D. 1778), in the twelfth month, on the nineteenth day.'

161. The following diagram and dates of the first year of each cycle since the birth of Christ will be of use to the student.

A. D. 4. was the first year of the 45th cycle.

A. D. 64.	46th.	A. D. 664.	56th.	A. D. 1264.	66th.
124.	47th.	724.	57th.	1324.	67th.
184.	48th.	784.	58th.	1384.	68th.
244.	49th.	844.	59th.	1444.	69th.
304.	50th.	904.	60th.	1504.	70th.
364.	51st.	964.	61st.	1564.	71st.
424.	52nd.	1024.	62nd.	1624.	72nd.
484.	53rd.	1084.	63rd.	1684.	73rd.
544.	54th.	1144.	64th.	1744.	74th.
604.	55th.	1204.	65th.	1804.	75th.
				1864.	76th.

	甲	乙	丙	丁	戊	己	庚	辛	壬	癸
子	1		13		25		37		49	
丑		2		14		26		38		50
寅	51		3		15		27		39	
卯		52		4		16		28		40
辰	41		53		5		17		29	
巳		42		54		6		18		30
午	31		43		55		7		19	
未		32		44		56		8		20
申	21		33		45		57		9	
酉		22		34		46		58		10
戌	11		23		35		47		59	
亥		12		24		36		48		60

162. The *distributive* form of the numeral is expressed by a circumlocution; thus 'one a-piece' might be translated *kò-yí-kó yí yí-kó*, lit. 'each one has one.' The phrases 'by ones, twos, threes,' are turned into *yí-kó, yí-kó; liàng-kó, liàng-kó; sān-kó, sān-kó*. Repetitions of the words or expressions have a distributive force; thus, *yí-ts'ang, yí-ts'ang* 層 'in layers' or 'by layers,' *tí-ai-tí-ai* 條 | 'each article.'

163. *Proportionals* which answer to the question 'How many times as much or as great?' are expressed by adding the word *pei* 倍 to the cardinal number, and placing both after the adjective; thus, *tō-shí-pei* 多十倍 'ten times as great;' and if a fractional part, by adding the word *fān*;—*tō-wù-fān* 多五分 'five-tenths greater.'



§. 5. *The pronouns.*

164. The *personal* pronouns commonly used in the Mandarin dialect are,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
ngò or wò 我 'I,'		ngò-mq̄n 們 'we,'
nì 你 'you,'		nì-mq̄n 'you or ye,'
t'ā 他 'he.'		t'ā-mq̄n 'they.'

In the dialects these syllables change or are replaced by others: e. g.—In Peking, *tə̀* 咱 'I.' In Shan-tung, *ngàn* 俺 'I.' In Shanghai, *nùng* 儂 'you,' and *nā* 侬 'ye or you,' and *ī* 伊 'he.' While the plural is formed by adding *nī* to the 1st person, making *ngò-nī* 'we,' and *kə̀* to the 3rd, making *ī-kə̀* 'they.' In Fū-kien, *lín* and *gwa* 'I,' *lì* 'you.' In Canton, *k'ú* 渠 or 佢 'he.'

165. There are besides many characters used as pronouns in the books, which are seldom found in the conversational style; e. g.—

wú 吾, yú 余, yú 予, for 1st person, 'I.'

jú 汝, q̄r 爾, jù 若, (also q̄r 而 and nài 乃 sometimes,) for 2nd person, 'you.'

k'í 其 and kiú 厥 are used for the 3rd person, 'he.'

The plural is formed by *tàng* 等 'series,' *ch'at* 仝 and *ts'at* 曹.

166. The Chinese have no *possessive* pronoun, but its place is supplied by the genitive case of the personal pronoun: e. g. *ngò-tí* 'my or mine,' *nì-tí* 'thy or thine,' *t'ā-tí* 'his,' *ngò-mq̄n-tí* 'our or ours,' *nì-mq̄n-tí* 'your or yours,' *t'ā-mq̄n-tí* 'their or theirs.' No difference is made between the possessive pronoun when used as an attribute to a noun and when used as the predicate to a sentence: e. g.—

'This is our house,' = *ch'è-lí shí ngò-mq̄n-tí fāng-tsè*;

'This house is ours,' = *ch'è-kiên fāng-tsè shí ngò-mq̄n-tí*.

Sometimes the particle *tí* 的 is omitted when the euphony of the expression would be injured by its presence.

167. For the *reflexive* pronouns *self*, *own*, &c., *tət* 自 'self,' *kí* 己 'self,' and their compounds *tət-kí* and *tət-kiá* 自家 are used *after* the personal pronouns: e. g.—

*ngò-tət-kí* 'I myself,' or *tət-kí* alone;

*nì-tət-kí* 'you yourself.'

When the subject of the proposition is well known, *tət-kí* may stand for any person, but it usually is employed for the first person only. *tsin* 親 'dear,

related,' is used for 'self;' as well as *shēn* 身 'body' and 躬 *kūng* 'body:' also the compounds *tsin-tsz*, *kūng-tsin* \*.

168. The most common pronoun is the *demonstrative*, and of this class the Chinese possesses a large number; some of these are peculiar to the books, others to the colloquial style. They may almost all be used as pronouns of the third person (see Art. 165). Such are, (a) *tsz* 此 'this, = *hic*,' and (β) *k'i* 其 'that, = *ille*.' Under (a) may also come *tsz* 茲, *sz* 斯, *shí* 是, and *ché* 這, (coll.) Under (β) are also 彼 *pí*, 夫 *fū*, 者 *chē*, 厥 *kuí*, 那 *nā*, and 個 *kó*, (coll.) The Chinese have no demonstrative for the second person, like *iste* in Latin. The student should remember that the *appositives* (Arts. 106 and 107) will be required after these pronouns: e. g.—

*ché-chē-mà* 'this horse.'

*k'i-pā-tau* 'that knife.' or 'his knife.'

*tsz-fūng-sin* 'this letter.'

*nā-kó-jin* 'that man.'

169. Our English word *such*, for *that* or *this* sort, considered as a demonstrative pronoun, would be rendered into Chinese by any of the above pronouns followed by *yáng* 樣 'sort, fashion:' e. g.—

*ché-yáng tī sīn-tsing* 心情 'such a disposition.'

*nā-yáng tī tsiang-kiün* 將軍 'such a general.'

170. The plural of these demonstrative pronouns, when not shown by the context, is expressed by the addition of *sz* 些, 'a few,' to them: e. g.—

*ché-sz-kwō-tsz* 'these (few) fruits.'

171. The want of *relative* pronouns in Chinese is supplied partly by the demonstratives and partly by the interrogatives, to which they are correlative: e. g. *nā-kó*, 'that,' is also 'which?' interrogative, and 'which,' the relative; *shuí* 誰 'who?' interrogative, is also 'who,' the correlative of it; *só* 所 'that which,'—'what,' which seems to be a relative, is in its nature, first, indicative of place, and, secondly, an adjunct to a demonstrative expression, and is frequently a substitute for *chē* 者, i. e. the definite article. The method of expressing relative clauses must be referred to the syntax, where examples will be found.

172. The *interrogative* pronouns most common in Mandarin are the following: *shuí* 誰 'who?' *nā-kó* 那個 'which?' *shín-mó* 甚麼, pron. *shimmo*, 'what?' also written *shí-mó* 什 |. 'Who?' may also be expressed by *shímmó-jin*, lit. 'what man?' *shuí-tí* 'whose?' or *shímmó-jín-tí*!

\* So the old English adjective *sib*, for 'self,' meant 'related.' Cf. Key's Lat. Gr. p. 49.

The book word *hó* 何 'what' is sometimes used in the colloquial style: e. g. *hó-jín* 'what man?' for *shut-jín* 'who?' *Kí* 幾 'several' is used as an interrogative in such phrases as 幾時 *kí-sí* 'what time?' for *when?* Some other characters and phrases having reference to this subject will be found under the adverbs.

173. The interrogative pronouns used in the books may here be mentioned. Such are, *shí* 孰 'who?' *chóu* 疇 'who?' *hó* 曷, *kí* 豈, and *yén* 焉 sometimes take the place of *hó* 何 in the books. See the articles on the interrogative particles.

174. The *indefinite* pronouns are sometimes merely the interrogatives used as correlatives: *shut* 'who?' used for *any body*; *shímmb* 'what?' used for *any*; *meù* 某 'a certain,' for *some*. *None* is expressed by 'not any,' therefore by *mèi-shímmb* 沒, i. e. 'not what.' So also *kí* 幾 'several,' for *some*, is an indefinite pronoun, as well as an interrogative. *Líng* 另 and *pí* 別 express 'other' and 'another.' *kó* 各 'each,' *mèi* 每 'every,' *wó* 多 'many, much,' *síe* 些 'a few, a little,' and *sú* 數 'several.'

175. *Whoever, whatever, whichever, and wherever* are formed by prefixing *sut-pièn* 隨便 lit. 'follow convenience,' *pü-lún* 不論 lit. 'not talk of,' or *pü-kuàn* 不管 lit. 'not control,' or *pü-k'ü* 不拘 lit. 'not prevent,' to *shímmb-jín* 'who?' *shímmb-tüng-sí* 東西 'what thing,' or *shímmb-sí-tsing* 事情 'what affair,' or to *nà-lí* 那裏 'where:' e. g.—

- (1) *sut-pièn shímmb* = 'whatever' or 'whichever.'
- (2) *sut-pièn shímmb-jín* = 'whoever.'
- (3) *sut-pièn shímmb-tüng-sí* = 'whichever thing.'
- (4) *pü-kuàn shímmb-sí-tsing* = 'whichever affair.'
- (5) *pü-k'ü ná-lí* = 'wherever' (properly an adverb).

176. When these expressions take a general sense and mean 'all,' one of the following words is employed: *fán* 凡, *tá-fán* 大凡, *chü* 諸, *chung* 衆, *tá-kaí* 大概, and several others. The *whole* is very often expressed by the numeral 'one' with a word signifying to *complete*, to *cut off*, and the like: e. g. *yí-tsüing* 總, *yí-t'üing* 統, *yí-ts'í* 切. The words meaning 'all' are too numerous to mention here; reference may be had to Articles 126, 127, and to the Dictionary for the rest.

177. *Both* is expressed by *liàng-kó* 兩個, 'two,' after the personal pronouns; and *neither* by *kó* 各 or *mèi* 每, 'each,' followed by a negative: e. g.—

*ngò-mn̄ liàng-hó* = 'both of us' or 'we two';

*kô-jîn* or *mêi-jîn m̄i* = 'neither of them.'

*Only or alone* is expressed by *tū-yi-ko* 獨一个 'one alone.'

178. Before leaving the present section, upon the pronouns, we must notice some of the nouns which the Chinese employ when in European tongues the pronouns would be used. These expressions arise out of the desire to excel in politeness and courtesy, and some of them are of very ancient origin; they correspond to our terms *Sire, Sir, your worship, your honour*, and other titles of respect. Their terms of humility are not used among us, except in the close of a letter, *your humble servant, &c.*

179. The substitutes for the personal pronoun *I* and *my* are,

*siàu-ti* 小弟 lit. 'small younger brother,' for *I*.

*siàu-k'ien* | 犬 lit. 'small dog,' for *my dog*.

*yá* 愚 lit. 'stupid,' for *I*, especially in letters. *chín* 朕 'I, the emperor.' A merchant calls himself 'trader,'—*shāng* 商 or *pùn-shāng* 本; and this word *pùn* 'own' is frequently prefixed to the names of offices and professions, in edicts especially, in which the personal pronoun is never used; e. g. *pùn-hián* 縣 'I, the district magistrate,' and *pùn-chīng* 丞 'I, the assistant magistrate.' In addressing the emperor various titles are used; a tributary prince says *kuá-jîn* 寡人 or *kū-jîn* 孤, *yá-yi-jîn* 予 or *yu-siàu-tai* 小子; a minister of state calls himself *chín* 臣 'your subject,' if a Manchu, *nú* 奴 'your slave.' The people in writing to superiors call themselves *tsū-jîn* 罪人 'sinners,' and *t* 蟻 'ants.'

180. The characters which most commonly enter into such phrases are *siàu* 小 'small'; *tsièn* 賤 'mean, poor'; *hán* 寒 'cold, chilly'; *pí* 敝 'bad, vulgar'; *ts'au* 草 'grass, coarse.' The characters *shé* 舍 'cottage' and *kiā* 家 'family' are often used for *my*.

Examples of the above.

*pí-sing* 姓 'vulgar surname,' for *my name*.

*hán-shé* 舍 'chilly cottage,' for *my house*.

*hán-mn̄* 門 'cold door,' for *my home*.

*siàu-s'á* 徒 'little scholar,' for *I*.

*ts'au-tsé* 字 'coarse title,' for *my title*.

*kiā-fú* 父 'family father,' for *my father*.

shé-tí 弟 'cottage younger brother,' for *my younger brother*.

ts'ien-fū-jin 夫人 'mean lady,' for *my wife*.

181. Substitutes for the second personal pronoun are commonly the names or titles of honour of the individuals addressed; and the possessive pronouns corresponding to *thy, your, &c.*, are such expressions as the following, made with the words *kwéi* 貴 'noble,' *tsūn* 尊 'honourable,' *kau* 高 'high,' *ling* 令 'good,' *lao* 老 'old,' *tá* 大 'great,' &c.

Examples with *kwéi* 貴 'noble, generous, honourable.'

*kwéi-sing* 姓 'your noble surname.'

*kwéi-kuó* 國 'your noble country.'

*kwéi-kāng* 庚 'your noble age.'

*kwéi-fu* 府 'your noble palace,' for *your house*.

*kwéi-t?* 體 'your noble body.'

182. Examples with *tsūn* 尊 'honourable,' *kau* 高 'high,' *ling* 令 'good,' and *tá* 大 'great.'

*tsūn-ming* 名 'your honourable name.'

*tsūn-kiá* 駕 'your honourable carriage,' for *you, Sir*.

*tsūn-pí* 筆 'your pencil,' for *your handwriting* or *your composition*.

*kau-sheu* 壽 'your high age.'

*kau-kién* 見 'your high opinion.'

*ling-láng* 郎 'your good son' \* (*láng*=pavilion).

*ling-t'áng* 堂 'your good mother' (*t'áng*=hall).

*ling-ngai* 愛 'your good daughter' (*ngai*=love). She is also called *tsien-kín* 千金 (lit. '1000 gold pieces') 'your treasure.'

*tá-hau* 號 'your great title,'=your literary designation.

*tá-ming* 名 'your great name.'

The same words are applied to form other designations and forms of address, but chiefly in letters, in novels, and in the language of etiquette.

\* Cf. *Monsieur votre fils* in French and *Liebe Mutter* in German.

183. Examples with *lǎu* 老 'old.'*lǎu-yē* 爺 'old father,' for *Sire* or *Sir*.*lǎu-hiung* 兄 'old elder brother,' for *you*.

So also *tá-hiung* 大 ('great'), *t'ái-hiung* 台 ('eminent'), *jín-hiung* 仁 ('benevolent'), *hiên-hiung* 賢 ('wise'), in addressing superiors, for *you*.

*tá-jín*, *lǎu-tá-jín*, and *lǎu-tá-fū* 夫 are used in addressing people of rank and position in society. And instead of the personal pronouns, the name of the individual, or of his office or his title, is substituted in speaking or writing: e. g.—

*shén-fū* 神父 'spiritual father,' for *I*, *you* or *he*.*tá-lǎu-yē* 大老爺 'your Excellency' or 'your Highness.'*t'ái-sz* 太師 'great general,' to military mandarins, for *you*.*wán-sūi-yē* 萬歲爺 'Sire of 10,000 years,' of or to the emperor.*t'ái-hoàng-ti* 太皇帝 'great emperor,' of or to the emperor.*pí-hiá* 陛下 'your Majesty' (*pí*=steps to a throne).*tsū-hiá* 足下 'you,' especially in letters and documents.

184. The characters *fán* 範 'a pattern, a rule,' *yén* 顏 'the countenance,' in conjunction with *t'ái* 台 'exalted' or 臺 *t'ái* 'a high tower or terrace,' are used in elegant writing for *you*: e. g.—

*kuāng-fán* 光 'bright pattern,' for *you*.*k'ù-fán* 苦 'earnest rule,' for *you*.*ī-yén* 儀 'polite figure,' or *t'ái-yén* 'exalted face.'*t'ái-fū* 甫 'your honoured name,' when asking a person's name.*nī-fū* 尼 'you,' used for Confucius.*t'ái-t'ing* 鼎 'lofty tripod,' when addressing high officers of state.*ā-wéi* 列位 'distinguished persons,' = Gentlemen!

185. A few other expressions of this kind are formed with *paù* 寶 'precious, valuable,' *shàng* 上 'upper,' and *hiá* 下 'lower:' e. g.—

*paù-háng* 行 'valuable line of buildings,' for *your shop*.

*pai-cheü* 舟 'precious barge,' for *your boat*.

*fü-shäng* 府 'up in your palace,' for *your house*.

*shé-hiá* 舍 'down in my cottage,' for *my house*.

*kü-hiá* 閣 'under your pavilion,' for *you*.

Also *t'ái-shäng* or *t'ái-hiá* for *you*.

### §. 6. The verb.

186. Some syllables in Chinese are the representatives of characters, which are commonly used as verbs; these are *simple* and *primitive*: many others however are formed into verbs by their connexion with certain auxiliaries and adjuncts; these may be designated *compound* or *derivative*.

187. Although monosyllables are sometimes found to express a verbal notion, they are almost always assisted by some word of cognate signification, or by some syllable which completes the crude notion expressed in the primitive. This is most general in the spoken language of China, and makes it a polysyllabic rather than a monosyllabic tongue, as it is commonly supposed to be. The stems in all languages are monosyllables in the same way.

188. *Moods* and *tenses*, as such, are quite unknown to the Chinese. No distinction is made between *active* and *passive* verbs; nor are the *persons* or *numbers* noticed at all by them. The context and the circumstances under which any thing is said are the chief guides to the exact sense of any passage. *Time* and *mode* are very clearly shown by the meaning of the whole sentence, or by the conditions under which it has been uttered.

189. The composition of verbs may be considered under nearly the same heads as the composition of nouns. We have compound verbs formed (a) by repetition, or by the union of synonymes or words bearing a cognate meaning; (β) by joining to the primitive an auxiliary verb, without which the former would convey only a general notion; (γ) by prefixing to one verb another, denoting *power*, *origin*, *fitness*, *desire*, *intention*, *obligation*, &c.; (δ) by placing certain verbs *before* or *after* others, to give the idea of intention or completion to the action; (ε) by uniting two verbs, similarly to those mentioned above (β), but which when united give rise to a notion different from the meanings conveyed by the parts separately, or one of them is equivalent to a preposition; and (ζ) by adding the proper object to the verb, like the cognate accusative in Greek, and thus forming a new verb, (cf. Art. 36.) These are general heads merely; it will be necessary to notice other formations below.

190. Verbs of the first class are very common, and are such as the following: \*

(a) *k'án-kién* 看見 lit. 'look-see,' i. e. *see* / or *seeing*.

\* The Chinese verb, when standing alone, must be construed into the imperative mood, or the infinitive mood as a substantive.

k'ān-k'ān 看看 lit. 'look-look,' i. e. *look!*

huān-hī 歡喜 lit. 'rejoice-joy,' i. e. *being pleased with*.

k'ī-hūng 欺哄 lit. 'cheat-deceive,' i. e. *cheat*.

hiún-kiaú 訓教 lit. 'instruct-teach,' i. e. *teach*.

yīng-kai 應該 lit. 'should-ought,' i. e. *ought*.

191. One verb follows another as an auxiliary to limit or perfect the notion of the primitive: e. g.—

(β) lúng-shā 弄殺 lit. 'do-kill,' i. e. *kill*.

lúng-huāi 弄壞 lit. 'do-injure,' i. e. *spoil*.

kwet-pai 跪拜 lit. 'kneel-worship,' i. e. *prostrate*.

tiē-sz 跌死 lit. 'fall-die,' i. e. *fall down dead*.

k'ī-ching 結成 lit. 'unite-complete,' i. e. *knot and become, or dot*.

192. The following verbs, denoting *power, origin, fitness, &c.*, require another verb as a complement:—

(γ) nāng 能 'able, can' (*physically*).

k'ī 起 'arise, begin.'

yü 欲 'long for, wish.'

yīng 應 'it is fit.'

i 宜 'it is right.'

k'ò 可 'can, may' (*morally*).

k'í 去 'go,' cf. Hebrew idiom.

yau 要 'will, intend.'

kai 該 'it is proper.'

tāng 當 'ought.'

193. Examples of the above with their complements are,

nāng-fī 飛 'can fly.'

nāng-siē 寫 'can write.'

nāng-tsò 做 'able to do.'

k'í-tsò | 'go to do.'

yau-tū 讀 'will read,' fut. 'read!'  
or 'wish to read.'

yīng-t'ing 聽 'should listen.'

k'ò-k'í 去 'may go.'

k'ò-tsò 做 'may do (it).'

k'í-tsò | 'begin to do.'

yü-sz 死 'wish to die.'

kai-tāng 當 'ought to bear,' = *ought*.

194. The common auxiliary verbs which stand *before* or *after* the principal verb and determine the tense into which it must be construed are, (1) for the perfect tense, liáu 了 'to finish,' kwó 過 'to pass over,' yiu 有 'to have,'



or *wán* 完 'to finish,' placed *after* the other verb; and *ì* 已 'already,' *kí* 既 'finished,' and *tsáng* 曾 'already done,' placed *before* it. (2) For the *future* tense, *yau* 要 'will,' *yuén* 願 'desire,' *k'ing* 肯 'shall' or 'will,' *tsiáng* 將 'to approach,' or *pí* 必 'certainly, must,' placed *before* the verb.

195. Compounds of two of these are also formed in the colloquial style, and thereby the particular tense is more clearly defined: e. g.—

(8) *sà-liàu* 死 'is or was dead.' *k'í-liàu* 去 'is or was gone.'

*tí-kwò* 讀 or *tí-kwò-liàu* 'has read or studied.'

*sì-kwò* 寫 or *sì-kwò-liàu* 'has written.'

*k'í-wán* 吃 or *k'í-wán-liàu* 'has eaten.'

*yii-shá* 有殺 or *yii-shá-liàu* 'has killed.'

*ì-chí* 至 or *ì-k'ing* 經 *chí-liàu* 'has arrived.'

*tsáng-shí* 食 or *tsáng-k'ing* *shí-liàu* 'has eaten.'

*tsáng* 曾 is more commonly found with a negative prefixed: e. g.—

*pí* 不 'not,' or *wí* 未 'not yet.' *wí-tsáng-lai* 'not yet come.'

*ch'áng* 嘗 'to taste, to try,' is also prefixed occasionally to the verb to form the past tense; thus, *ch'áng-tsò* 作 'already done.'

196. Examples of the forms by which the *future* tense is expressed:

*yau-k'í* 要去 lit. 'wish-go,' = *will* or *shall* go. *tsiáng* 將 may be prefixed.

*tsiáng-tsò* 將做 lit. 'approach-do,' = *shall* do, or *about* to do.

*pí-hing* 必行 lit. 'certainly-walk,' = *shall* walk, or *must* walk.

The distinction of tense is often shown in the context by some adverb of time: e. g. 'to-morrow I shall go' would be expressed in Chinese by 'to-morrow I go;' 'yesterday I came' would be expressed by 'yesterday I come.' These peculiarities do not belong to this part of the grammar, but will be found treated of in the syntax, under the section on tenses.

197. The next class of verbs is formed by the union of two verbs, the latter of which is supplementary to the former; and from the union of their separate notions a third verbal notion is formed. The adjuncts which serve for this purpose are very numerous. The most common are mentioned here:—

(c) 得 *tí* 'to obtain.'

開 *k'ái* 'to open.'

出 *ch'ú* 'to go out' (cf. *aus*).

上 *sháng* 'up' (cf. *áva*).

去 *k'ü* 'to go away' (cf. *ék*-, *weg*-).散 *sān* 'to scatter' (cf. *dis*-, *zer*-).見 *kién* 'to see.'罷 *pá* 'to cease.'着 *chō* 'to take effect.'進 *tsín* 'to enter in' (cf. *hinein*).住 *chú* 'to rest in, to fix.'下 *hiá* 'down' (cf. *kára*-).來 *lai* 'to come' (cf. *eis*-).攏 *lùng* 'to collect' (cf. *zusammen*-).*k'í* 'to arise, to begin' (v. Art. 192).定 *tíng* 'to fix.'

過 *kuó* 'to pass over or by,' 完 *wán*, 畢 *pí*, 盡 *tsín*, 'to finish,' and some others are used as the above, and occupy the place of inseparable prepositions in the compound verbs of some languages.

198. As examples of the uses of the above we may give the following:—

(c) *k'í-tí* 記 lit. 'record-obtain,' 'to remember.'

*t'ing-tí* 聽 lit. 'listen-obtain,' 'to hear.'

*ná-ch'ü* 拿 lit. 'take-go out,' 'to bring out.'

*t'au-ch'ü* 逃 lit. 'run-go out,' 'to escape.'

*fān-k'ái* 分 lit. 'divide-open,' 'to separate.'

*tsuè-k'ái* 走 lit. 'walk-open,' 'to walk away.'

*tsuè-sháng* | lit. 'walk-above,' 'to walk up.'

*tiū-k'ü* 丟 lit. 'throw-go away,' 'to throw away.'

*fā-sán* 發 lit. 'shoot out-scatter,' 'to expend (money &c.).'

*wén-kién* 聞 lit. 'hear-see,' 'to hear of.'

*yú-kién* 遇 lit. 'meet-see,' 'to meet with.'

*tsó-pá* 做 lit. 'make-cease,' 'to finish making.'

*shuí-chō* 睡 lit. 'sleep obtain,' 'to go to sleep.'

*pau-tsín* 跑 lit. 'walk-enter,' 'to walk in.'

*k'au-chú* 靠 lit. 'rely on-rest in,' 'to depend upon.'

*ān-hiá* 按 lit. 'lay-down,' 'to deposit.'

*lā-lùng* 拉 lit. 'drag-collect,' 'haul up.'

*chán-k'í* 站 lit. 'stand-arise,' 'stand up.'

*shuō-tíng* 說 lit. 'say-fix,' 'decide.'

*yau-kwó* 搖 lit. 'row—pass over,' 'row past.'

*yíng-wán* 用 lit. 'use-finish,' 'use up.'

*t'án-pì* 彈 lit. 'harp-finish,' 'finish playing.'

*híng-tsin* 行 lit. 'walk-complete,' 'go through entirely.'

*lai* 來 'come,' *k'á* 去 'go,' or *liáu* 了 'finish,' are added to these compounds to express that the action of the verb has taken effect.

199. Other syllables of like meaning are sometimes used instead of the above; e. g. *tau* 到, 'to arrive at,' is used for *lai* 來, 'to come,' in some expressions: and many other words, which signify *to complete, end, die, kill, conquer or spoil*, help to strengthen the verb; such are, *ch'ing* 成, *yi* 訖, *shí* 急 or *shí* 殺, *sz* 死, *shíng* 勝, *yíng* 贏, *shū* 輸, and *pai* 敗.

200. Another class of verbs is formed by the addition of the cognate object, or that on which the action of the verb naturally falls. This object is not often added in English, but it is in Chinese, and it increases the perspicuity of the expression. The following are examples:—

(C) *tú-shū* 讀書 lit. 'read-book,' for *read*, (for study.)

*xiě-tz* 寫字 lit. 'write-character,' for *write*, (for practice.)

*k'í* or *ch'í-fán* 吃飯 lit. 'eat-rice,' for *eat*, (any meal.)

*shé-tsüi* 赦罪 lit. 'forgive-sin,' for *pardon*.

*t'ing-míng* 聽命 lit. 'listen to—order,' for *obey*, (cf. *obedio*, fr. *ob-audio*.)

*k'üèn-jín* 勸人 lit. 'advise-man,' for *exhort*.

201. Adjectives sometimes enter into the composition of verbs to intensify or limit the meaning of the primitive: e. g.—

*lín-kín* 臨近 lit. 'come-near,'—'approach.'

*chàng-tá* 長大 lit. 'increase-great,'—'enlarge.'

*pai-ch'ing* 擺正 lit. 'place-correct,'—'arrange.'

*wá-k'ung* 挖空 lit. 'scoop-hollow,'—'excavate.'

202. There are a few idiomatic verbal compounds made by the union of a verb and an adjective or a noun: e. g.—

*tí-tsüi* 得罪 lit. 'obtain-fault,'—'offend.'

*ch'ung-i* 中意 lit. 'hit the centre—idea,'—'please, suit.'

203. In addition to the above, the following idiomatic forms of expression may come under the head of compound verbs:

1. Those formed with *tà* 打 'to strike;' e. g.—

*tà-suán* 算 lit. 'strike-calculate,'—'plan, reckon.'

*tà-kǐ* 結 lit. 'strike-knot,'—'tie.'

*tà-shuì* 睡 lit. 'strike-sleep,'—'go to sleep.'

*tà-t'ing* 聽 lit. 'strike-listen,'—'listen.'

*tà-sau* 掃 lit. 'strike-sweep,'—'sweep.'

*tà-shuǐ* 水 lit. 'strike-water,'—'draw water.'

2. Impersonals and phrases in which the subject follows: e. g.—

*hiá-yù* 下雨 lit. 'falls-rain,'—'it rains,' (or *lù-yù* 落.)

*hiá-sǔ* | 雪 lit. 'falls-snow,'—'it snows.'

*fān-fūng* 翻風 lit. 'change-wind,'—'the wind is changeable.'

204. Many nouns are used as verbs, though they do not differ from them in form; such being always monosyllables, the context only can determine the part of speech to which they belong: e. g.—

*tiēn* 點 'a point, a dot;' also means 'to punctuate, to blot out, to light, to nod.'

*taú* 道 'a road, reason;' also means 'to say,' (cf. *lógos*=*ratio* and *oratio*.)

*shuō-huà* 說話 'conversation;' also means 'to talk.'

205. *Frequentatives*, or verbs which express the repetition or continuation of an action, are formed in Chinese by repeating the primitive syllable: e. g.—

*mó-mó* 磨 'to go on rubbing.'

*t'iaú-t'iaú* 跳 'to jump about.'

*hō-hō* 喝 'to keep on drinking.'

*ch'ü-ch'ü k'í* 出氣 'giving off steam constantly.'

*t'an-t'an siáú-siáú* 談笑 'keep talking and laughing.'

The repetition of the verb does not always give it the frequentative force, but only intensifies the meaning of the simple primitive.

206. *Iteratives*, that is, verbs which express the reiteration of the action, as in English when the phrases *backwards and forwards, again and again*,

*up and down* are used, are formed in the following manner with *lai* 來 'come,' *k'í* 去 'go,' *sháng* 上 'above,' and *hiá* 下 'below:' e. g.—

*tsòu-lai-tsòu-k'í* 走 'walk backwards and forwards.'

*fí-sháng-fí-hiá* 飛 'fly up and down.'

*siàng-lai-siàng-k'í* 想 'think again and again.'

207. *Inceptives*, or verbs which indicate the beginning of an action, are formed by adding *k'í-lai* 起來, 'begin-come,' to the primitive: e. g.—

*huó-shwò-k'í-lai* 話說 'begin to talk.'

*k'í-k'í-lai* 哭 'begin to cry.'

*tú-k'í-lai* 讀 'begin to read.'

*liú-ch'í-k'í-lai* 流出 'begin to flow out.'

*k'í-lai* has not always this force; sometimes it stands as the complement to another verb: e. g.—

*lì-k'í-lai* 立 'stand up!' or 'stood up,' as the context may require.

208. *Desideratives*, or verbs which express the desire or wish to do any thing, are formed by prefixing *yáu* 要 'to want,' *yü* 欲 'to wish,' *yuén* 願 'to desire,' followed by *tsò* 做 'to make,' or *wei* 爲 'to become,' to the primitive, if it be a noun, but without *tsò* or *wei* if it be a verb: e. g.—

*yáu-k'í* 口吃 'wish to eat.'

*yü-tsò* 坐 'wish to sit.'

*yuén-híng* 行 'wish to do.' (B.)

*yáu-tsò-wáng* 王 'wish to be a king.'

*yuén-wei-chü* 主 'wish to be master.'

209. *Diminutives*, or verbs which indicate the diminution of the action expressed by the primitive, are formed by adding *yí-tiē-qr* 一點兒 'a little,' or by the repetition of the verb with *yí* 一 'one' placed between: e. g.—

*k'ái-yí-tiē-qr* 開 'open a little.'

*shau-yí-tiē-qr* 少 'lessen a little.'

*tàng-yí-tàng* 等 'wait a little,—delay.'

*tsòu-yí-tsòu* 走 'walk a little,—promenade.'

210. Verbs which express *being provided with* are formed by prefixing *yiù* 有 'to have' to some noun. These verbs are mostly employed as participles (cf. Art. 139): e. g.—

*yiù-kò-ti* 角的 'having horns.'

*yiù-yén-tsing-ti* 眼睛 'having eyes.'

211. *Causative* verbs are formed by prefixing *kiaü* 叫 'call,' *kiaü* 教 'teach,' *shí* 使 'cause,' *ling* 令 'command.' *kiaü* 交 is used for 教 incorrectly; and *jè* 惹 'provoke' is also used in the colloquial style: e. g.—

*kiaü-lai* 教來 'cause to come.'

The object of the verb always comes between the two parts of it.

*kiaü-ngò-tsò-kwân* 我做官 'cause me to be a magistrate.'

*kiaü-ngò-pû-nâng-kiàng* 不能講 'prevented my speaking.'

*shí-t'ā-sheü-k'ù* 他受苦 'caused him to be miserable.'

212. The *passive* form of the verb is produced by prefixing one of the following verbs to the active form, which may be then considered as a dependent noun; thus with

*kién* 見 'to see,' *kién-siaü* 笑 'to be laughed at.'

*sheü* 受 'to receive,' *sheü-k'í* 欺 'to be insulted.'

*k'í* or *ch'í* 吃 'to bear,' *k'í-kw'ei* 虧 'to be reduced.'

*ling* 領 'to receive,' *ling-kiaü* 教 'to be instructed.'

*ts'au* 遭 'to meet with,' *ts'au-k'in* 擒 'to be seized.'

*wei* 爲 'to become,' *wei-jín-sò-hàn* 人所恨 'to be hated.'

213. Several auxiliary verbs are also used with some primitive verb and a noun to express the *passive*, by which form they must generally be translated: such auxiliary verbs are,

*pei* or *pí* 被 'to suffer, to reach to,' usually translated 'by.'

*ná* 拿 'to take, to use;' also *yung* 用 'to use.'

*yaí* 挨 'to rest upon, depend on,' (seldom.)

*tsiáng* 將 'to take, to seize;' with *ì* 以 'to use.' (B.)

Also *yü* 於 or 于 'in, by,' and *mung* 蒙 'favoured by' (in books).

214. The following are examples of the uses of these auxiliary verbs, showing how they help to form the passive:—

*pí-hù-shí-liào* 被虎食了 'was eaten by a tiger.'

*pí-t'ā-huá-ngò* | 他話我 'I was told by him.'

*ná-shí-t'cū-tà-sí-tí* 拿石頭打死的 'was killed by a stone.'

*tiāng-tai-tz-shā-tí* 將刀子殺的 'was killed with a knife.'

*yung-pien-tz-tà-tí* 用鞭子打 | 'was beaten with a whip.'

*k'í-yü-jín-chò* 欺於人者 'one hated by men.' (B.) (Cf. Art. 212.)

*máng-k'í-pau-hú* 蒙其保護 'protected by him.' (B.)

215. Two other modifications of the verb, the *reflexive* and the *reciprocal*, which in Greek are effected by the middle voice, are produced in Chinese by the syllables *tzì* 自 'self' and *siāng* 相 'mutual' being placed before the verb: e. g.—

*tzì-shā-tzì-kiā* 自殺自家 'to kill one's self.'

*siāng-lún* 相論 'to discourse together.'

*siāng-yü* | 遇 'to meet with any one.'

*siāng-hai* | 好 'to be on good terms with.'

### §. 7. The substantive verbs.

216. Of these there are several, which vary according to the nature of the case in which they are used, and the connexion of the subject with the predicate in a sentence. The *logical copula*, 'is,' is expressed by the verb *shí* 是. It denotes either that the predicate is, or, that it is generally supposed to be, an attribute of the subject by nature; it corresponds to the original use of *phúw*, *πέφωκα* in Greek, from which come *fui*, *fuierim* &c. in Latin, used as tenses of *esse* 'to be.' *Shí* in the *kù-wén* 古文 'ancient style,' i. e. the language of the classics, is used as a demonstrative.

With *shí*, *tsiá* 就 'then,' *yè* 也 'also,' and *tú* 都 'all,' are united; thus *tsiá-shí*, lit. 'there-is,' 'that is,' in Peking dialect sometimes *k'ò-tsiá* or *k'ò-chiá* (可): *yè-shí*, lit. 'also-is,' 'besides it is,' *tú-shí* (都), lit. 'all-is,' 'completely is,' 'is quite.' These are recognised phrases in the colloquial mandarin dialect.

217. The verb *wéi* 爲 'to do, to exist, to become,' is also used as a substantive verb, but only when the notion of *becoming* something by some

conventional arrangement is implied, not as is the case with *shí* 是, when the relation between the subject and predicate is a natural consequence. In "Fire is hot" use *shí*. In "The Yellow River is the boundary" use *weí*. Also especially before designations in the predicate: "He is (*weí*) a slave." This distinction may be said to apply more particularly to the style of the books than to that of conversation. The adjuncts used with *weí* will also serve to indicate its meaning in some passages: e. g.—

*náng-weí* 能爲 'able to be' or 'to become.'

*ì-weí* 以爲 'consider to be, take to be.'

使喚之女爲婢 *shí-huān-chí-nǚ weí pī*

'Servant women are called *pī*,' i. e. slaves.

天子以四海爲家 *t'ien-tzū ì sì-h'ài weí kiā*

'The son of heaven considers (all within) the four seas to be (his) family.'

218. When the substantive verb implies *location*, the verb *tsai* 在 'to exist or consist in' is used; and when the *possession* of some attribute, the verb *yiù* 有 'to have,' e. g. in "he is here" use *tsai*, in "this is polite" use *yiù*: thus—

*t'ā tsai ché-lí* 他在這裡 'he is here.'

*ché-yáng yiù lí* 這樣有禮 lit. 'this has politeness,' i. e. *this is polite*.

*t'ā-tsai-kiā* 他在家 lit. 'he is in family,' i. e. *he is at home*.

*tsè-yiù-lí* 此有理 lit. 'this has reason,' i. e. *this is reasonable*.

219. The verb *tsai* 在 refers to *place* or *position*, and means *to be in* or *to consist in*; the verb *yiù* 有 means 'to have *some quality*,' as an acquired possession, or as an accident, so 'to happen to be,' and consequently in the beginning of the sentence it always means 'there is' or 'there was,' like the use of *avoir* in French (cf. *il y a*, *il y avait*).

#### Examples.

*tsai sîn mîn* 在親民 \* 'consists in renovating the people.'

*yiù jîn shuō* 有人說 'there are men (who) say,' *on dit*.

220. The word *naí* 乃 (rar. 迺), which was originally demonstrative, and

---

\* This is from the *Tá-hü* 大學 'The Great Science,' the first of the "Four books," a work belonging to the Chinese classics. It begins with the sentence, "The principle of the great science consists in renovating the people, in perfecting the original virtue (in self), and in resting only in the summit of excellence."



signified 'there' as a designation of locality, and afterwards as a mark of time 'then,' seems to take the place of the substantive verb occasionally, especially in the book-style. It is found with all the preceding substantive verbs, and may be said to partake of the meaning of each. It denotes also 'to wit, it may be.' In the following example 乃 and 是 are in parallel clauses of the same nature:

德乃天理, 色是人慾 *tí nài t'ien-lí, shí shí jìn-jú*

'Virtue is heaven's order, vice is man's lust.' (v. Dict. 3311. for *jú*.)

The word 係 *hé* 'belong to, is, am,' which is used in the books and in the Canton dialect, corresponds in force to *shí* 是 and *nài* 乃.

221. The words *tsó* 做 'to do,' *tsó* 作 'to make,' and *tāng* 當 'to bear, to meet with,' are also used in the senses of the substantive verb. The two former are used as *wei* 'to be called, to become,' the latter conveys the notion of a definite article, or of a demonstrative pronoun, like *ille* in Latin; e.g. *tāng-ch'ü* | 初 'that early time,' i. e. 'in the beginning.' *tāng-ch'ü-tí* | 差的 'that sent one,' i. e. 'he who is (or was) sent.' And when *tāng* is used in this way, it serves to point out the subject or predicate, and so renders the use of a positive copula unnecessary; (cf. the use of *shí* 是 in the *hà-wqn*, v. Art. 216.)

222. Very frequently the verb substantive is understood in consequence of the form of the sentence, or when an adverb or conjunction follows: e. g.—

*sing nà tsi hàn* 送你即好 'to present it to you will be good.'

*mài-mai pū t'üing* 買賣不通 'commerce cannot be carried on.'

### §. 8. Mood and tense.

223. A Chinese verb when uttered by itself expresses (1) the notion of the verb in the *imperative* mood; e. g. *tsòu-k'ái* 走開 'walk away!' *lái* 來 'come!' or (2) the abstract notion of the verb as given in the infinitive mood; it then stands as a substantive: e. g. *tsòu-k'ái* 'to walk away,—walking away,' *lái* 'to come,—coming,' are virtually nouns; so *t'au-ch'ü* 逃出 'to run away,' i. e. 'the act of running away,' is either a noun or simply the imperative 'run away!' When however we construe *t'au-ch'ü* 'running away,' something more is expected,—it is then only the subject to a sentence. It might for example be said, *t'au-ch'ü pū-hàn* 'running away (is) not good.' So that in truth a Chinese verb can only be construed properly into the imperative when it stands *alone*.

224. The *indicative* mood has no special sign. When the subject,—a noun or pronoun,—precedes a verb, that verb is generally in the indicative mood, but not always, for it may be a verb which is a mark of some other mood, or

it may be in the *imperative*; e. g. *nì lai*, lit. 'you come,' may be (1) *you come* (ind.), (2) *come!* (imp.), or (3) *when you come*; in the first and third cases being entirely dependent upon the context: thus 'you come here twice a-day' would be *nì lai ché-lí yí t'ien liáng-tsé*; and 'when you come, I shall go,' *nì lai wò tsu k'ú*.

225. We have seen that the *subjunctive* mood is only distinguished from the indicative by the context; and the discussion of some peculiarities of this mood may be reserved for the syntax, by which alone they are to be distinguished. Certain particles however require that the verb following them should be in the subjunctive: such are, *jō* and *jō-shí* 若是 'if' (*si*); *hwō* and *hwō-chè* 或者 'perhaps' (*si forte*); *t'àng* 倘 'if' and *t'àng-jèn* 儼然.

226. The *potential* mood is designated by the verbs *may*, *can*, *would*, *should*, *must* being prefixed, and by the addition of certain particles and auxiliary words to the primitive: e. g.—

*k'ò-tú* 可讀 'you may read' (permissive).

*náng-lá* 能拉 'I can pull it' (potential, physically).

*hwūi-tsó* 會做 'I can do it' (potential, intellectually).

*yaú-k'án* 要看 'I would look' (optative).

*yaú-k'án* 要看 'you should look' (hortative).

*pì-kì* 必記 'you must remember' (obligatory).

*pì-sé* 必死 'he must die' (necessarily).

227. The following particles and auxiliary words affixed to the verb also show that some tense of the potential mood will be required:—

*tí* 得 'obtain' is suffixed, and followed by *lai* 'come,' *k'í* 'arise,' or *chó* 'take effect,' or some other auxiliary to mark the direction or completion of the action (see adjuncts, Art. 197). Examples will be found in the syntax.

*k'ò-i* 可以, lit. 'can-use,' is prefixed commonly to indicate the potential, either of permission or capability.

*hài* 好 'good' is used before verbs for the potential: e. g. *hài-k'ú* 'it is well to go,' i. e. *go!* (hortative), or 'it is well (for you) to go,' i. e. *you may go* (permissive). The word *pá* 'to cease,—it is enough,' is put after the verb in this latter sense: e. g. *k'ú-pá*, lit. 'go, and that is sufficient,' for *you may go*\*.

228. The *infinitive* mood, that is, the verb without an adjunct, which is construed into English with 'to,' is always appended to some word, which expresses *capacity*, *fitness*, *readiness*, *goodness*, *facility*, *difficulty*, and the like,

\* Cf. Naaman's reply to Gehazi, "Be content, take two talents," 2 Kings v. 23.

and by this it is governed. It also follows such words as require the infinitive of *purpose* or *result*, just as in English. The position alone shows the infinitive mood: thus—

(1) *ngò náng-tó tsè* 我能做此 'I am able to do this.'

*t'á k'ò-i tsuì* 他可以走 'he is able to walk.'

*nì yíng-kai k'í* 你應該哭 'you ought to cry.'

*yá-pí hǎng-wai* 預備行外 'prepared to travel.'

*hau-k'án í-píng* 好看義兵 'it is good to look at the volunteers.'

*yíng-í sié-tet* 容易寫字 'it is easy to write characters.'

*ná-yáng nán-tsò* 那樣難做 'in that manner it is difficult to do.'

(2) *t'á-lai kién-ngò* 他來見我 'he came (or is come) to see me.'

*ngò-mən lai k'í-fán* 我們來吃飯 'we are come to dine.'

229. The *participles* are generally shown by the genitive particle *tsi* 的 or *chí* 之 being suffixed to the verb in one or other of its tenses; by a preposition being prefixed; or by the position of the verb after certain words denoting *like* or *dislike*: e. g.—

(a) *pién-tsi* 辯 'discussing' (pres. part.).

*houi-tsi* 回 'returning.' *pai-tsi* 拜 'paying respects.'

*pién-liau-tsi* 辯了 'discussed' (past part.).

*houi-liau-tsi* 回了 'returned.' *pí-liau* 避 'escaped, fled.'

(β) *tsai-k'au* 在考 'in examining' or 'in being examined' (gerund).

*tsai-múg* | 夢 'in or whilst dreaming.'

(γ) *hau-yau* 好遙 'fond of rowing.' *hau-lún* 論 'fond of arguing'

*hau-tsi* 狼讀 'hates reading.'

*hau-yau* might be, 'good to row;' and with *tsi*, 'well-rowed.'

*houān-hi pién-lún* 歡喜辯論 'fond of arguing.'

230. The participles thus formed by the verb and some appended particle hold a very important place in Chinese construction, the syntax and the context however determine the precise meaning in each case: e. g. The above (a) *pién-tsi*, in *ngò pién-tsi*, makes, 'what I am discussing,' or *pién-tsi* 'he who discusses.' The preposition *tsai* 在, 'in,' must be prefixed, if the sense of

the present participle is to be given; thus, *tsai-piên-ti* 'discussing,' or 'in the discussion of.' (See the constructions with 的 in the syntax.)

231. The *tenses* of the verb can be distinguished only by the various adverbs of time or by the context; and all that can be done here is to give the auxiliaries, which may be said to form the principal tenses, the *present*, the *past*, and the *future*. The numerous modifications of the time of an action are produced by the arrangement of the words and the form of the sentence, for which the student may refer to the syntax. It will be necessary even here to follow the synthetical rather than the analytical method, and to show the student how the exact meanings of the tenses found in European languages are conveyed in Chinese.

232. Pronouns and adverbs of time must be used in order to show the true state of the verb. If the verb *tú* 讀 'read' be taken, the forms of the *present* tense are,—

'I read (habitually or constantly)' *ngò cháng-shí tú* (常時 'always').

'I am reading (now or periodically)' *ngò ín-tsai tú* (現在 'now').

'I do read (truly)' *ngò shí-tsai tú* (實在 'truly').

233. The *past* tense with *liàu* 了, *kuó* 過, &c.

'I read (last year)' *k'ú-nièn ngò tú-liàu* (去年 'last year').

'I have read (at some former time)' *sièn-shí ngò tú-kuó-liàu* (先時 'before time').

'I have read (what you wrote)' *ní siè-ti, ngò tú-liàu*.

The *past* tense is sometimes formed by the auxiliary verbs *yiù* 有 'have,' and *wán* 完, 已, 既, 曾, &c. (v. Art. 194): thus—

'I have written (the thing in hand)' *ngò yiù-siè-liàu* 寫.

'I have passed over (this river before)' *ngò tú-kuó-liàu* 渡.

'(We) have known (the contents &c.)' *chī-tāu-liàu* 知道了\*.

'He once said (so and so)' *yiù-shí t'ā kiàng-liàu* 有時他講了.

Without *liàu* it would be 'sometimes he says or speaks.'

234. The rule about the *past* tense appears to be, that when the perfect with 'have' is required, and refers to an action recently performed, it is sufficient to add *liàu*, *kuó-liàu*, *wán*, or *wán-liàu* to the simple verb; but when the *past* indefinite is meant, either the context must show it, or some word such as

\* This is the phrase written by the emperor in vermilion on the documents which are presented to and perused by him.

*siên* 先 'before,' *siên-shí* | 時 'formerly,' *ts'ang-ts'ien* 從前 must be used as well as the above auxiliaries, and if the action refer to a definite time, and that time be mentioned, the auxiliaries may be dispensed with, if the rhythm permit: e. g.—

'I loved her most' (past indef.) *siên ngai t'ā ting-tō* 先愛他頂多.

'He wandered ever' (past indef.) *t'ā ts'ang-ts'ien yid-hing* 遊行.

'We learnt too late' (past indef.) *ngò-mên t'at-chí hiò hiàu* 太遲學.

'Last night I heard it' (past def.) *tsò-yè ngò t'ing-liàu tsò* 昨夜聽了此.

'To-day I forgot' (past def.) *kín-t'ien ngò wáng-kì-liàu* 今天望記了.

235. The perfect tense of impersonal verbs is formed by adding *liàu* 了:  
e. g.—

*hià-liàu-yù* 下了雨 'it rained,' (occ. in replies.)

Probably the following expression may be referred to this form:

*tsò liàu shuài liàu* 走了水了 'it has been run with water,' i. e. *water has been fetched*: (v. Mr. Wade's *Hsin-tsing-luh*, Cat. of *t'ien*.)

236. *Ts'ang* or *ts'ang* 曾 (1) 'to add,' (2) 'already past,' prefixed to the principal verb, denotes the past tenses, often the *pluperfect*, but this depends upon the sense of the passage and the sequence of clauses:—

*si-nièn t'ā ts'ang-yù .... jén-shí* 昔年他曾與....認識  
'In former years he had formed acquaintance with ....'

*tsù-sháng ts'ang-tsò-kwò* 祖上曾做過....  
'Among his ancestors there had been ....'

237. The expression of *future* time is effected by the words *yau* 要, *tiang* 將, or *pí* 必 being prefixed to the verb:—

*yau* gives the force of *will*, *shall*, *should*, or *must*, and is frequently used in compounds; e. g. with *k'ú* 去 'to go,'

'I shall go (to-morrow)' *ngò yau k'ú*.

'You shall go' or 'you must go (to-morrow)' *nì yau k'ú*.

'Go!' or 'Do you go (now)!' *nì yau k'ú*.

'He must go (any time)' *t'ā yau k'ú*.

\* These examples are from the *Háng-lé-mung* 紅樓夢 'Dreams of the Red-chamber,' a modern work in the Peking dialect.

*tsiāng* is used with *yaú*, and gives the force of *about to*; e. g. with *lat* 來 'to come,'

'I am about to come,' *ngò tsiāng lat*.

'He is about to come,' *t'ā tsiāng-yaú lat*.

*pí* is also joined to *yaú*, and then the force of the compound is *must, certainly shall or must*; e. g. with *t'au* 逃 'to run away,'

'I must run,' *ngò pí t'au*.

'You must certainly run,' *nì pí-yaú t'au*.

The addition of an adverb of future time always compensates for the absence of these special words: e. g.—

'To-morrow I shall go,' *míng-t'ien ngò k'ú* (明天 *míng-t'ien* 'to-morrow').

'In the afternoon you will go,' *hiá-wù nì k'ú* (下午 *hiá-wù* 'this afternoon').

'By and by he will come,' *mán-mán t'ā lat* (慢 | *mán-mán* 'by and by').

### §. 9. The adverbs.

238. Monosyllables commonly used in an adverbial sense are *primitive* (α); those of two or more syllables formed by the addition of a distinctive or formative particle are *derivative* (β); and those formed by a locution, and which may be resolved into their separate parts, are *compound* (γ): e. g.—

(α) *Primitives* are not very common in the colloquial dialect, but are frequently met with in the books.

已 'already,' *kín* 今 'now,' *hou* 後 'after,' *siēn* 先 'before.'

(β) *Derivatives* are such as the following, formed by adding *já* 如 'as,' *ì* 以 'to use,' or *jén* 然 'yes,' to the primitive: thus—

<i>huò-jén</i> 忽   'suddenly.'		<i>kuò-jén</i> 果   'certainly.'
<i>tuàn-jén</i> 斷   'decidedly.'		<i>chā-jén</i> 輒   'immediately.'

(γ) *Compounds* are such as are made up of two primitives, or of two or more syllables which constitute a phrase: e. g.—

*ì-kīng* 已經 lit. 'already-now,' = *now*.

*ch'ā-pū-tō* 差不多 lit. 'error not much,' = *almost*.

*t'āng-tsiēn* 從前 lit. 'from-before,' = *formerly*.

*t'ien-t'ien* 天天 lit. 'day-day,' = *daily*.

*tsiāng-lat* 將來 lit. 'about to come,' = *afterwards* or *hereafter*.

*mán-mán-sì* 慢慢 | 的 lit. 'slow-slow,' = *slowly*.

*tā-tā* 大家 lit. 'great-family,' = *altogether*.

*yí-ts'z* 一次 lit. 'one-series,' = *once*.

239. It will be seen that nouns, adjectives, and verbs enter into the composition of adverbs, and that the same principle of formation is followed as was observed with respect to the other parts of speech. Synonyms are united or syllables are repeated to intensify the meaning; or the repetition implies the continuation of the prime notion; or the words are in construction, viz. as subject and verb, as adjective and substantive, or as attributive genitive and the word which it qualifies; or the compound is an idiomatic locution.

240. Before giving lists of the adverbs, it will be well to classify them with regard to their meanings and uses in Chinese.

1. Adverbs of *time*; in reply to the questions 'when?' and 'how long?'
2. Adverbs of *place*; replying to 'where?' 'whence?' and 'whither?'
3. Adverbs of *manner*; in answer to 'how?'
4. Adverbs of *intensity and frequency*; in answer to 'how often?' 'how much?'
5. Adverbs of *quantity*; in reply to 'how great?' or 'how much?'
6. Adverbs of *quality*; in reply to 'of what sort?'
7. Adverbs of *affirmation*, of *doubt*, and of *negation*.
8. The *interrogative* adverbs are the correlatives of the above.

241. The common adverbs of *time*, simple and compound, which answer to the question 'when?' are the following:—

1. The simple or primitive adverbs.

*kín* 今 'now' (*nunc, nū*). *hién* 現 'now' (*jam, tñ, à présent*).

*fāng* 方 'now, just now' (*nunc or tunc*). *kāng* 剛 'recently, just now.'

*pién* 便 'then' (*tunc*). *tsiú* 就 'then' (*tum*).

*sién* 先 'before' (*antea*). *heú* 後 'after' (*postea*).

*ch'ü* 初 'at first' (*ἀρχή*). *sí* 昔 'formerly' (*olim, pridem*).

*kù* 古 'of old' (*τὸ παλαιόν*). *hiáng* 向 'hitherto' (*adhuc*).

*cháng* 常 'always' (*semper*). *wí* 未 'not yet' (*nondum*).

2. The compound adverbs of time.

*kín-t'ien* 天 'to-day.'

*hién-kín* 現

*tsò-t'ien* 昨 'yesterday.'

*tāng-kín* 當

} 'now' or 'at present'

*míng-t'ien* 明 'to-morrow.'

*já-kín* 如

*ts'ien-t'ien* 前 'day before yesterday.' *hiên-tsai* 現在 } 'now' or 'at present.'  
*fāng-ts'at* 方纔 'then, just now.' *i-kāng* 已經 }  
*piên-shí* 是 'then.' *tsiū-shí* 就是 'then.' *tsi-k'í* 即刻 'immediately.'  
*tsai-siēn* 在先 'formerly.' *sí-shí* 時 'in ancient times.'  
*chāng-shí* 時 'always,' or *shí-shí* | 'at most times.' *wú-shí* 無 'never.'  
*yiū-shí* 有 'sometimes.' *tō-shí* 多 'often.' *tsai* 早 'early.'  
*wí-ts'ang* 未曾 'not yet.' *heú-lai* 來 'afterwards.' *chí* 遲 'late.'  
*hau-kiū* 好久 'a long time ago.' *mí-hiá* 目下 'at present.'  
*shāng-kù* 上古 'in high antiquity.' *wán-shāng* 晚上 'in the evening.'  
*ts'ien-sān-jì* 前三日 'three days ago.' *kuai-kuai* 快 'soon.'  
*kuó-sí-t'ien* 過四天 'four days hence.'  
*ts'ang-ts'ien* 從前 'formerly, from of old.'  
*tòng-yiū* 總有 lit. 'generally have,' = *always*.

Duration of time is shown by the position of the adverb *after* the verb.

242. The common adverbs of *place*, which answer to 'where?' are the following:—

*ché-lí* 這裡 lit. 'this interior,' for *tsai ché-lí* 'in this interior,' = *here*.

*ná-lí* 那 | lit. 'that interior,' for *tsai ná-lí* 'in that interior,' = *there*.

The syllables *tí* 他, *ku'ei* 塊, *t'eu* 頭, *ch'ú* 處, *fāng* 方, *mién* 面, and *piēn* 邊, which all denote *place*, are used with the demonstrative (cf. Art. 168), often preceded by the preposition *tsai* 在 'in:' thus—

*tsai-tsè-tí*, lit. 'in this place,' = *here*.

*tsai-ché-piēn*, lit. 'on this side,' = *here*.

*tsai-ná-t'eu*, lit. 'on that head (for *place*),' = *there*.

*tsai-pi-ch'ú*, lit. 'in that place,' = *there*.

*yí-tsè* 於此 and *tsai-tsè* 此 lit. 'in this,' = *here*.

*tsai-pi* 彼 lit. 'in that,' and *ná-sò-tsai* 那所 lit. 'that place,' = *there*.

243. It will be seen that almost all the adverbs are produced by the construction of words with one another. Many of the prepositions are used as adverbs in construction with verbs, as we say 'he is gone before,' *t'á-ts'ien-k'í*

Examples of adverbs of place ('where?').

*ché-lí* 'here' (*hic*).

*ná-lí* 'there' (*ibi*).



- nì-pièn-ché-lì, lit. 'your side here,' 'here by you' (*isthic*).  
 t'ü-pièn-ná-lì, lit. 'his side there,' 'there by him' (*illuc*).  
 tsai-yí-yáng-tí-fāng, lit. 'in the same place' (*ibidem*).  
 tsai-hiáng-pièn, lit. 'in two (for *the two*) places,' 'in both places' (*utroque*).  
 ch'ü-ch'ü\* or k'ü-ch'ü 'every where' or 'in each place' (*ubique*).  
 p'ü-hiáu-tí-tsai-ná-lì, lit. 'not know in which place,' 'in some place' (*alicubi*).  
 n'ü-pièn-tsai-ná-lì 'anywhere you please' (*ubivis* and *usquam*).  
 tsai-pí-tí-fāng, lit. 'in other's place,' 'elsewhere' (*alibi*).  
 p'ü-k'ü-shim-mô-tí-fāng 'wherever' (*ubicumque*).  
 p'ü-tsai-ná-lì 'no where' (*usquam*).

244. The adverbs of place, which express *direction from* a place, are formed by prefixing ts'ung 從 'to follow' to the simple adverb of position: e. g.—

- ts'ung-ché-lì 'hence' (*hinc*);  
 ts'ung-ná-lì 'thence' (*inde*);  
 ts'ung-nì-pièn-ché-lì 'from your place' (*isthinc*):

and so of all the others.

245. The adverbs of place, which express *to or towards* a place, are formed by prefixing tsú 到 'to reach to' or hiáng 向 'towards' to the simple adverb of position: e. g.—

- tsú-ché-lì 'hither' (*huc*).  
 tsú-ná-lì 'thither' (*eo*).  
 tsú-nì-pièn-ná-lì 'to your place' (*isthuc*).  
 tsú-k'ü-pièn-ná-lì 'to that place' (*illuc*).  
 hiáng-ché-lì 'towards this place.'

246. Adverbs of *manner* are generally derivatives formed by the addition of jèn 然 to some adjective or verb. Such are, huì-jèn 'suddenly,' tuàn-jèn 'decidedly,' in Art. 238.

Other examples of adverbs of manner are,—

- ché-yáng 這樣 'thus' (coll.). jū-tzì 如此 'thus' (B.).

Like is expressed by the form

- jū 如 . . . . yí-yáng — | or yí-p'wān — 般.

- pí-yáng 別 | lit. 'other fashion,' = *otherwise*, (or *hiáng-yáng*.)

247. The repetition of the adverb or adjective forms an adverb of manner frequently: e. g.—

- p'ing-p'ing-ān-ān 平 | 安 | 'peacefully, comfortably.'

- huān-huān-hì-hì 歡 | 喜 | 'gaily.' mán-mán-tí 慢 'slowly.'

\* The notion conveyed by repetition is *most*, a *good deal*, and never seems to mean absolutely *all* or *every*.

248. Adverbs of *intensity* and *frequency* are such as the following; they are sometimes called adverbs of comparison:—

kāng 更 'to change,' adv. 'more, again.'

tsai 再 'again,' also yiu 又.

tīng 頂 'the top,' adv. 'very.'

ki 極 'the extreme point,' adv. 'very.'

huan 還 'moreover.' fu 復 'again.'

Some other syllables, used to form the comparative and superlative of adjectives, are adverbs (v. Arts. 146, 148). Words denoting 'to pass over, exceed,' and the like, are used adverbially; e. g. kuó 過, yü 越, &c.

t'ai 太 and t'ei 忒 denote 'too.'

tō 多 'many or much' is used adverbially.

pü-kuó 不過 lit. 'not pass over,' = *only*.

shí-fān 十分 lit. 'ten parts,' = *very*.

tā-fān 大凡 lit. 'great, general,' = *mostly, generally*.

yí-siē 一些 lit. 'one few,' = *a little*.

shào 少 'few' and liǎo 畧 'an outline' are also used for *little*.

p'ó 頗 'rather' is less frequent in conversation.

shāng-hiá 上下 'almost.' tá-yō 大約 'nearly, about.'

249. The adverbs which express *frequency*, and answer to the question 'how often?' are such as,—

jī-jī 日 | or t'ien-t'ien 天 | 'daily.'

nién-nién 年 | or sui-sui 歲 | 'yearly.'

tō-shí 多時 'often.' yü-shí 有 | 'sometimes.'

250. Several adverbs of *quantity* have already been given, and others are formed by the following constructions: e. g.—

ché-yáng-tō 多 lit. 'this manner much,' = *so much (tantum)*.

t'ai-tō or t'ei-tō 太多 'too many,' or 'too much' (*nimum*).

tsai 到 'to arrive at,' = *so much as, or up to*.

Especially after pü 不 'not:' e. g.—

*ché-kó yáng-ts'ien pŭ-tau sán pè kwéi*, 'these dollars do not reach to three hundred pieces.'

251. The adverbs of *quality* are generally formed by uniting an adverb of *manner* to an adjective; e. g.—

*ché-yáng-hau-jín* 'so good a man.'

*yí-yáng-hau-jín* 'an equally good man.'

*pè-puán* 百般 'all kinds of,' lit. 'a hundred classes.'

252. The adverbs of *affirmation*, of *doubt*, and of *negation* are the following:—

*Affirmative adverbs.*

*shí* 是 'it is,' = *yes*; e. g. in 'Is there?'—'Yes.' *hí* 係 for 'yes,' is peculiar to the Canton dialect; e. g. *hai-ló* 'yes.'

*jén* 然 denotes *acquiescence*; it is especially used in the books.

*yiù* 有 'there is,' after appropriate questions; e. g. 'Have you?'—'Yes.'

*kwò-jén* 果 | 'certainly.' *shí-tsai* 實在 'truly.'

*tai-jén* 自 | 'certainly.' *ching-jén* 誠\* | 'surely.'

*sín* 信, *ká* 固, *ching*\*, *kò* 果, *shín* 甚 are all used in the books, but not in the colloquial style, except in compounds.

The affirmative is also expressed by *pŭ-ts'ò* 不錯 lit. 'not mistake,' or *wá-ts'ò* 無 'without mistake.' *ch'á* 差 often stands for *ts'ò*.

253. Adverbs of *doubt* are such as the following:—

*huò-chè* 或者 'perhaps.' *ch'è-p'á* 只怕 'perhaps.'

*shū-kí* 庶幾 'perhaps' (B.), and *wí-p'í* 未必 (B.).

*k'ung-p'á* 恐怕 'lest perhaps' (coll.).

254. The *negative* adverbs are these:—

*má* 沒 'to be without,' = *no* or *not*; opp. to *yiù* 有 'to have,' = *yes*, *there is*.

*pŭ* 不, 'not,' is the most commonly used negative, and it has no other use.

*fí* 非 'not to be,—false,' = *it is not*; opp. to *shí* 是 'to be,' = *yes*, *it is*.

*wá* 無 'not to have,' = *without*, = *má-yiù* 沒有, which is also common.

The negative of possession is expressed in Canton dialect by *mò* 冇.

*mò* 莫 'not, do not,' is a synonym of *pŭ* 不 'not.'

*m* 唔 (in the Canton dialect) = *mò* and *pŭ* of the books.

*wá* 无, *wàng* 亡, *wáng* 罔, *wí* 靡, *wú* 勿, *fěi* 匪, *wí* 未, and *fěi* 否 are used in the books, and some of them in local dialects, but seldom in the Mandarin, except in compounds.

255. The interrogative adverbs correlative to the above classes are:—

*kì-shí* 幾時 'at what time?' = *when*?

*kì-cháng-yuán* | 長遠 'how long? how far?'

*kì-tō-t'ien* | 多天 'how many days?'  
*kì-tō-nièn* | | 年 'how many years?' } = *how long*?

*sièn-kì-nièn* 先 | 年 'how many years ago?'

*shímmò shí-heú* 什麼時候 'at what time?' = *when*?

*tshí-mó-yáng* \* 怎 | 樣 'how? in what way?'

*tshí-nà-lí* 在那裡 'where?'

*tshí-úng-ná-lí* 從 | | 'whence?'

*tshí-ná-lí* 到 | | 'whither?'

*kì-ts'z* 幾次 'how many times? how often?'

*kì-peí* | 倍 'how many fold?'

*kì-tō* | 多 'how much?'      *kì-tá* | 大 'how great?'

*hó-yáng* 何樣 'of what sort?'

*siáng-shímmò* 像 | | 'like what?'

*shí-pū-shí* 是不是 'is it so or not?'

*yiù-mì-yiù* 有沒有 'have you or not?'

256. *yên* 焉, *hó* 何, *kú* 故, and several other words are used in the books as interrogative adverbs or particles. They are prefixed generally.

*wei-hó* 爲何 'why?' (coll.) or *wei-shímmò*?

*ān* or *gān* 安 is interrogative, chiefly in books; *ān-tsai* 在 = *where*?

*k'í* 豈 at the beginning of a sentence is interrogative, (*quomodo*.)

The interrogative particles will be found further on (Art. 272), and the forms of the interrogative sentence in the syntax.

\* *Tshí* is also pronounced *tshén*, *tshéng* or *tshéng*, and formerly it was called *tshim*: v. *Edkins' Grammar of the Mandarin Dialect*, p. 153.

§. 10. *The prepositions.*

257. The relations expressed by the prepositions are shown in Chinese partly by prepositions properly so called, and partly by the union of these in construction with postpositions. The former are generally verbs; the latter, commonly nouns.

The following are words used as prepositions:—

*tsai* 到 'to reach to,'—*to* (*ad*), and *up to* (*usque ad*).

*tsai* 在 'to be in a place,'—*in* (locative) (*in*) or *on*.

*ts'ung* 從 'to follow,'—*from* (*de* or *per*) or *through*.

*hiang* 向 'to go towards,'—*towards* (*versus*).

*i* 以 'to use, to take,'—*with* (instrumental) (*de* or *ex*) (B.).

*ki* 及 'to arrive at,'—*with* (*cum*).

*hiên* 連 'to connect,'—*with*, *united with* (*cum*).

*tsai* 代 'to act as a deputy,'—*instead of* (*pro*).

*yü* 與 'to give,'—*for* or *to* (*pro* or *ad*) (B.).

*ki* 給 'to give,'—*for* or *to* (*pro* or *ad*).

*tà* 打 'to strike,'—*from*, but only in colloquial, and especially in the Shanghai dialect, in which it is pronounced *tàng*.

*t'ang* 當 'to meet with,'—*in*, *at* (cf. Art. 221); it occupies the place of *tsai* 'in,' mentioned above.

*wei* 爲 'to do, to become,'—*for*, *on account of* (*propter*).

*tsui* 對 'to be opposite to,'—*towards*, *opposite to*, and *for*.

*t'ung* 同 'the same, together with, in company with' (*cum*).

*hó* 和 'concord,'—*along with*.

*tsai* 自 'self,'—*from* (B.), used with *ts'ung* 'from.'

*t'i* 替 'for, instead of;' also *to* or *for* (*ad*).

*yin* 因 'because of' (*propter*).

*yü* 由 'origin,'—*from*, *by* (*ex* and *per*).

*yü* 於 and *yü* 于 are equivalents of *tsai* 'in,' and several other prepositions, but they are used only in the books.

258. The words used to express the relations of place in construction with

the preposition *tsai* 在 are treated as nouns, and may be called *postpositions*. The most common are these:—

*nūi* 內 (pron. *nei* occ.) 'interior,' *tsai-fāng-tse nūi* 'within the house.'

*waí* 外 'exterior,' *tsai-fāng-tse waí* 'outside the house.'

*lǐ* 裡 'interior,' is used similarly with *tsai* for *within*.

*sháng* 上 'above,' *tsai-shān-sháng* 'upon the mountain.'

*hiá* 下 'below,' *tsai-mà-hiá* 'under the horse.'

*chūng* 中 'middle,' *tsai-ū-chūng* 'in the middle of the house.'

*ts'ien* 前 'before' (*coram*), *tsai-mên-ts'ien* 'before the door.'

*heú* 後 'after,' *tsai-ngò-heú* 'behind me.'

259. The same words may stand after nouns without *tsai* being prefixed:  
e. g.—

*ch'ing-nūi* 城內 'within the city.'

*kwò-waí* 國外 'outside the kingdom,' = *abroad*.

*shān-hiá* 山下 'at the foot of the mountain.'

*mà-sháng* 馬上 'upon a horse,' = *on horseback*.

*heú* 後, 'after,' is also used as a *preposition*;—*heú-ngò* 'after me.'

260. Some explanatory locutions and phrases, such as the following, supply the place of prepositions: e. g.—

*má-yü* 沒有 lit. 'not to have,' = *without* (*sine*).

*pū-yung* 不用 lit. 'not use,' = *without* (*sine*).

*pū-tsai* 不在 lit. 'not present,' = *without* (*postposition*).

*waí-t'ēu* 外頭 lit. 'outside head,' = *beyond* (*extra* or *ultra*).

*kwò-k'ú* 過去 lit. 'pass over go,' = *beyond* (*extra*).

Examples of the above in construction.

*má-yü lí-k'í* | 有力氣 'without strength.'

*pū-yung fān-hiāng* 不用焚香 'without incense.'

*t'ā-mên pū-tsai* 他們不在 'without them' (they being absent).

*miat-mên wai-t'ei* 廟門外頭 'outside the temple-gate.'

*Mai-ling kwò-k'ü* 梅嶺過去 'beyond the *Mai ling*' (Mt.).

§. 11. *The conjunctions.*

261. *Copulative* conjunctions are of rare occurrence in Chinese, but *disjunctive* and *adversative* conjunctions and those with the *hypothetical* and *illative* force are frequently found.

The ordinary copulative conjunctions are:—

*k'í* 及 'with,' *hó* 和 'with,' *píng* 並 or *píng* 并 'together with,'  
也 *yě*, the final particle of the books, is used in colloquial style for *and*,  
especially in the phrases *yě-yü* 'also have' and *yě-shí* 'also is,' *huán* 還  
(occ. *hai* in coll.) 'still, moreover,' is used in the same sense. *yí* 亦 'also,'  
*yiú* 又 'again,' *ts'í* 且 'moreover,' and 而且 *qí-ts'í* are found in books;  
so also is *lién* 連 'to connect,' = *with, through*. *hién* 兼, 'together with,'  
is seldom used in coll. The copulative conjunction is frequently omitted.

262. The *disjunctives* are such as the following:—

*huò-ché* 或者 ... *huò-ché*, lit. 'perhap ... perhaps,' = *either ... or*.

*yí* 抑 ... *yí* are used in the same way for *either ... or*.

*p'ü-shí* 不是 ... *shí*, lit. 'not is ... is,' = *either ... or*.

*p'ü-shí p'ü-kwò* 不 | 不過 'not only' (*non solum*), = *f'í-tü* 非獨 (B.).

*tán-shí* 但 | or *huán-shí* 還 | 'but is' or 'also is' (*sed etiam*), = *ts'ü-shí*.

*yí-mián* 一面 ... *yí-mián* 'on the one side ... on the other side' (*tum ... tum*).

*yí-shí* 一時 ... *yí-shí* 'now ... then' (*modo ... nunc*).

263. The *concessive* conjunctions are these:—

*sui-jén* 雖然 'although' (*etiam*).

*jén-qí* | 而 'although, yet' (not often in colloquial style).

264. The *adversatives* are principally,—

*tán-shí* 但是 'but' or *ts'ü-tí* 到底 'yet, but.'

*p'ü-tán* 不 | 'not only,' *qí-ts'í* 而且 'but also.' (B.)

*tán* 單, *tán* 儻, *wet* or *wí* 惟 or 維, and *nai* 乃 are used in  
books, both singly and in composition with *qí* 而 and *jén* 然, for *but*,  
*only*, &c. *ch'í* 祇 and *tí* 第 are used for *but, only*, in edicts.

265. The *conditional* or *hypothetical* conjunctions in common use are,—

若 *jǒ*, *jǒ-shí* | 使, and *jǒ-shí* | 是 ‘if;’ *huò-ché* 或者 ‘if’ (*si forte*);  
*chě-p’á* 只怕 ‘suppose, if;’ *t’àng* 倘 ‘if,’ and *t’àng-jên* | | ;  
*p’i-já* 譬如 ‘suppose, if,’ or *p’i-já* 比如 (coll.) or *kià-já* 假如 (B.);  
*shě-jǒ* 設若 ‘if;’ *chíng-jǒ* 誠 | ‘if indeed’ (*sin vero*);  
*shú-kí* 庶幾 ‘if perhaps;’ *keú* 苟 ‘if;’ and many other words are used  
 in the book-style.

266. The *causal* conjunctions are,—

*yīn* 因 and *yīn-wei* 因為 ‘because’ (coll.).

*kí* 既 and *kí-jên* ‘since’ (B.).

以 and *i-wei* 以爲 ‘on account of’ (B.).

*yuén* 緣, *yuén* 原, *kú* 故 and *i-kú* 以故, and *kaí* 蓋 are common  
 to the literary style.

267. The *conclusive* or *illative* conjunctions are,—

所以 and *kú-sò-i* 故所以 ‘therefore,’ and *tsiú* 就 ‘then.’

*kú-tsè* 故此 and *yīn-tsè* 因此 are less common.

268. The *final* conjunctions are these:—

以 ‘in order that, so as to’ (*ut*).

*k’àng-p’á* 恐怕 ‘lest, so that not’ (*ne*).

269. The *temporal* conjunctions are expressed by the adverbs and the  
 form of the sentence: e. g.—

*Before* he came (*prius quam*), *t’ā wí-ts’àng lai*, lit. ‘he not yet come.’

*After* he was gone (*post quam*), I &c., *t’ā k’ú-liàn, ngò tsiú*, lit. ‘he being  
 gone, I then.’

*As soon as* he came, I &c., *t’ā lai, ngò tsiú*, lit. ‘he comes, I then.’

*So long as* he reads, I &c., *t’ā-tú-tí-shí-heú, ngò* &c., lit. ‘while he reads, I &c.’

*As often as* he eats, he sleeps, *t’ā-k’í, tsiú cháng-shí shuú*, lit. ‘he eats, then  
 always sleeps.’

*Whilst* I am here, *ngò ché-ù, i. e.* ‘I, being here.’

The position of words and clauses affects the nature of their connection very  
 considerably. In the syntax this will be further elucidated.



§. 12. *The interjections and other particles.*

270. The *interjections*, which are the involuntary expressions of feeling, are rather numerous in Chinese. The following are among the most common:—

āi-yā 愛呀 'ah!' is an expression of joy or surprise (cf. *eja* in Latin).

tāng-t'ien! tāng-t'ien 蒼天 'heavens!'

k'ò-hièn 可憐 or k'ò-si 可惜 'alas! mercy!'

k'ú-pá 去罷 'away! be off!'

kiú-jîn 救人 'help! help!' lit. 'save man.'

wán-hàu 萬好 'very good! beautiful!'

kí-miáu 奇妙 'wonderful!'

271. Besides the ordinary interjections of surprise, admiration, &c., there are in the Chinese colloquial style a great number of expressions in imitation of the various sounds heard in nature (*onomatopœia*), as the *falling of water*, *jingling of crockery*, *bursts of laughter*, &c. &c. Such are,—

ai-ai 哀哀 'Oh! oh!' (to indicate pain.)

hi-hi 嘻嘻 'Hi! hi!' (to resemble laughter.)

fān-fān jāng-jāng 紛紛嚷嚷, to express the noise of business in a market-place.

272. The euphonic and interrogative particles remain to be mentioned. They vary in the different dialects. In the Mandarin the following are the most common:—

h 哩, mǎ 嗎, lā 拉, yā 呀, and lǎ 咯 are final euphonic particles.

mǒ 麼 is a final interrogative particle. (Mandarin.) Contr. 么.

nī 呢 is a final interrogative particle. (Canton D.)

ǎ 阿 and āi 愛. In replies for 'Oh,'—'very well,' &c.

273. The following particles should also find a place here as they are used in the ordinary colloquial style:—

yuén-lai 原來 lit. 'originally come,' = *lo! just then!* This is used at the beginning of clauses as an exclamation.

uh 兀 and ūh-ŭ is a sign of the vocative case, especially in the Plays of the Yuen dynasty.

*pā-pū-ti* 巴不得 'would that!' (*utinam*,) = *I hope, I desire*; and with a change of tone it applies alternately to the speaker and the person addressed, e. g. 'would that I were &c.!' or 'would that you were &c.!'

*nì-tai* 你道 lit. 'you speak,' = *speaking! tell me!* introduces a question.

*nān-tai* 難道 lit. 'difficult to say,' also introduces a question, generally followed by *whether*, that is, a dependent question.

*p'í* 哦 or 唔, particles used at the beginning of a sentence, are expressive of contempt or irony.

*nai-fān* 耐煩 lit. 'bear trouble,' and *nai-hó* 奈何 lit. 'happen what,' may be regarded as particles. They occur in many phrases, sometimes as an exclamation; e. g.—

*nai-hó! nai-hó* 奈何 | | 'what shall we do!'

The remaining particles, more common to the books than to the colloquial idiom, will be found treated of at the end of the syntax.

274. We have now reached the end of the first division of the grammar, in which has been noticed, 1st, the sounds and syllables, the characters which represent the syllables, and the manner of writing the characters; 2ndly, the formation and grouping of the words and syllables, which enables the student to analyse the sentence with greater ease than he can when each character and each syllable is considered as a separate word. The fact that the Chinese generally put two and three syllables together to form a simple notion is enough to show that the term monosyllabic is not applicable to this language.

275. The first object of the student should be to group the words or syllables in the sentence so as to be able to say as nearly as possible to what category each group belongs; the more complete and certain classification of the words cannot be made until their relations to each other in the sentence are viewed in accordance with the rules given in the syntax.

## CHAP. II. SYNTAX.

### SECT. I. ON SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIONS.

#### §. 1. *Preliminary remarks.*

276. By etymology we intended to describe the *forms* of Chinese words, with their true meaning and classification under those forms, in so far as they are distinguishable by the prefixes and suffixes attached to them; by syntax we mean to denote that *arrangement* of the words which expresses the relations existing between them, and the various forms of the sentence by which simple and complex ideas are exhibited.

277. The words of the Chinese language being without inflexion, the external form of the word cannot be introduced as an element to be considered in the construction of sentences. The case of the Chinese is similar to that of the English language in this particular, that the *position* of a word shows to a great extent its grammatical relation to the other words of the sentence. We have to consider then as we proceed to analyse the Chinese sentence; (1) the relative position of the words, (2) the relative position of clauses, and (3) the presence of certain particles, or words used as such.

278. It is assumed that the student is able to recognise in the sentence the particles and other words which help to form nouns, verbs, adverbs, &c. In order to do this he must have an accurate acquaintance with the earlier sections of this work, especially with Arts. 89, 90, 106, 107, 126, 127, and 130, for nouns; and Arts. 192, 194, 197, 211, 212, and 213, for verbs; also the Arts. on the adverbs and prepositions. The student will also do well to refer again to Arts. 35 and 36, on the composition of words, for the same general principles, there noticed, held good with respect to the syntax of words and sentences.

#### §. 2. *General rules relating to the position of words.*

279. The expression of the time *when* of an action generally stands first in a sentence; e. g.—

*kín-nièn kuo-tai tō* 今年菓子多 'this year there is much fruit.'

*kín-t'ien hau* 今天好 'to-day it is fine.'

*t'ien-t'ien wán-sháng* | | 晚上 'every day at eventide.' [122.]\*

*hièn-tai kô-chú-êr* 現在各處兒 'now in every place &c.' [125.]

---

\* The numbers in brackets refer to Mr. Wade's *Hein-tsing-t'hi*, (Peking dialect.)

280. The designation of *place* follows the expression of time; e. g.—

*t'āi-t'ien tsai Pě-k'ing* 昨天在北京 'yesterday in Peking &c.'

281. The subject of a sentence, when it is expressed, is placed before its verb, though not always immediately before it, for sometimes adverbial expressions come between it and the verb; e. g.—

*jī wí ch'ū* 日未出 'the sun not yet being out.' Chrest. p. 8. a. 13.

*t'ā tsai Kwáng-t'ung p'ǎi hāi* 他在廣東不好 'he was not well in Canton.'

*jī-yǐ tsai-t'ien ch'ui-hing* 日月在天週行 'the sun and moon revolve in the sky.' [90.]

282. The subject is often understood from the previous clause, and then it is generally a pronoun of the first person; e. g.—

*kiū nà k'í ngò tsò ché-kó* 求你給我作這個 'I beg you to do this for me.' cf. Dialogues in Mandarin. Chrest. p. 27. a. 17.

283. The adjective precedes its noun always; when it *appears* to follow it, it should be looked upon rather as the predicate of a sentence, in which the noun that it qualifies is the subject, as in the example above, the literal rendering would be, 'this year the fruit is much.' e. g.—

*hāi-jín* 好人 'a good man.' | *ché-kó jín hāi* 'this man is good.'

284. Words and phrases, which qualify other words and phrases, regularly precede them; thus the attributive genitive is shown by its position before the noun: e. g.—

*kwān-fū t'í ché-tsò* 官府的車子 'the mandarin's sedan.'

*t'āi-t'ien t'í k'ing-ér* 秋天 | 景兒 'the aspect of autumn.'

*t'ien liáng t'í shí-heú* | 亮 | 時候 'the time of sunrise.'

285. In accordance with this rule the relative clause, being a qualifying expression, is thrown into the form of an attribute to the noun, which would otherwise be its antecedent: e. g.—

*nà chú t'í t'í-fāng* 你住的地方 'the place, in which you live,'  
lit. 'you dwell's place.'

*kiāu lūi p'í t'í nà-kó-jín* 叫雷霹 | 那個人 'that man, who was struck with lightning.'

*lūi*, lit. 'thunder,' *p'í* 'to rend by lightning.' *kiāu* here = *p'ei*, v. Art. 213.

286. Adverbs generally precede the words they qualify, but they sometimes follow them; e. g.—

yí-sz wú ts'ō 一絲無錯 'without the least mistake.'

chē-tí yí-kó 只得一個 'only one.'

shān-t'í\* p'ó gān 身體頗安 'I am pretty well.'

lién-lién tà-kùng 連連打拱 'repeatedly bowing.'

287. The expression of length, height, or duration is placed after the phrase to which it belongs; e. g.—

kāu lü ch'í 高六尺 'six cubits high.'

ts'ü-lü s'ü-lü 道路四里 'the road is four miles long.'

hiá-yü s'ün-t'ien 下雨三天 'it has rained three days.'

### §. 3. The construction of simple terms.

288. When two nouns come together, the former of them is in the genitive case, or they are one of the following constructions; viz. (1) an enumeration of two objects, *and* being understood between them; (2) in apposition to each other; (3) the former is the subject, the latter, the predicate of a sentence; (5) the latter of them is an adverbial expression of time, place, or manner: e. g.—

chün t'ien 春天 lit. 'spring's sky,'—'the sky in spring;' cf. Art. 109.

kuān-fü shing-ming 官府聲名 'the mandarin's reputation.'

(1) yü, s'ü 雨雪 'rain and snow.'

jí, yü, s'ing-sü 日月星宿 'sun, moon, and stars.'

(2) chü-tsai 主宰 'lord or master;' cf. Art. 100, &c.

(3) fú hai, shéu shān 福海壽山 'his happiness be it a sea, his age, a mountain.'

jín-shān, jín hai 人山人海: 'men as many as mountains and seas.'

(4) kiuen yé shéu kiā 犬夜守家 'the dog by night keeps the house.'  
yé, 'night,' is here an adverb of time.

289. A noun before an adjective is either (1) the subject of a sentence of which the adjective is the predicate, or it is (2) construed as an adverb; e. g.—

(1) s'ín ch'á 心窄 'his heart is narrow.'

\* shān-t'í 'body,' cf. the use of *corpus* for the personal pronoun in Latin.

*ch'í-ts'qn p'ü-tsuí* 尺寸不對 'the measurement is not the same.'

*yü-liáng hào* 月亮好 'the moonlight is beautiful.'

(2) *p'ing liáng* 冰涼 'cold as ice;' v. the first example in Art. 297.

*f'ung kw'at, p'í ch'í* 風快, 壁直 'sharp as a needle, straight as a wall.'

290. A noun after an adjective is qualified by that adjective, or it forms an adverbial expression in composition with the adjective; e. g.—

(1) *sh'ing-jín* 聖人 'a holy man,—a sage.'

*wei-f'ung t'í mién k'ung* 威風的面空 'a dignified countenance.'

(2) *m'ing-niën* 明年 lit. 'bright year,' = *next year*.

*gám-t'í-t'í* 暗地裏 lit. 'dark place within,' = *secretly*.

291. A noun before a verb is either (1) the subject of that verb, or (2) an adverbial expression of time, place, or manner, formed by the two words; e. g.—

(1) *K'ü'ng-ts'è shw'ò-ts'ü* 孔子說道 'Confucius said,'

*p'áng-yüè hu'it-lai* 朋友回來 'my friend is returned.'

(2) *hiáu-k'ing fú-mù* 孝敬父母 'reverenced his parents with obedience;' pron. also *fú-mèu*.

*mà p'au t'í kw'at* 馬跑的快 'as quick as a galloping horse.'

292. A noun after a verb is either (1) the object of that verb, or (2) an adverbial expression of time, place, or manner, formed by the two words; e. g.—

(1) *l'ò-liàu sh'ín-f'án* 落了身分 'lost his position.'

*t'á-f'ü liàu jín-chai* 打發了人差 'sent a messenger.'

(2) *f'ang-s'ín shw'ò-p'á!* 放心說罷 'freely speak!'

*hiën-yé t'á k'ü* 連夜他哭 'all night she cried.'

*f'ang-s'ín* is literally, 'release heart;' cf. Chrest. p. 27. a. 13.

*hiën-yé* is literally, 'connect night,' = 'all night,' sometimes, 'day and night;' cf. *San-kw'ò-ch'í*, Chrest. p. 17. a. 24, 25.

293. When two adjectives come together they follow the same rule in several particulars as that in Art. 288 with respect to two nouns; viz. (1) the first is an attributive to the second, and qualifies or intensifies it; or (2)

they express simply an enumeration of two qualities; or (3) they are in apposition, and form a compound adjective; or (4) they form an adverbial expression of time, place, manner, or degree: e. g.—

(1) *ch'ang-yuèn* 長遠 'long-distant,' = distant.

*ts'ing-ts'ü* 清楚 'clear-distinct,' = distinct.

(2) *fāng, yuèn* 方圓 'square and round.'

*kāi, t'ā* 高低 'high and low.'

(3) *kān-sau* 乾燥 'dry.' Cf. Art. 136.

*ts'üng-ming* 聰明 'intelligent.'

(4) *yin-yin yà-ngai* 殷 | 雅愛 'most affable and courteous.'

*yin* means 'full, complete.'

*ts'ü ts'ü siaü* 齊楚笑 'respectfully and heartily laughing.'

294. An adjective before a verb either (1) qualifies it as an adverb; (2) it is used as an abstract noun, and is then the subject to the verb; or (3) they form an adverbial expression: e. g.—

(1) *t'ā kw'at tsuè-liàu* 他快走了 'he walked fast.'

*tō yung sün sū* 多用心思 'he thinks much.'

(2) *ō p'ā t'ā gān* 惡不得安 'the wicked cannot obtain peace.'

*shén yüè shén p'au* 善有善報 'virtue has a good reward.'

(3) *t'ā-ō-ā shau-t'ā hau-t'ing* 雀兒啣得好聽 'the birds sing sweetly,' lit. 'good to hear.'

295. An adjective after a verb follows a similar rule; either (1) it is used adverbially, or (2) as an abstract noun, and is then the object of the verb; e. g.—

(1) *t'ā kiàng hau* 他講好 'he speaks well.'

*shuō ming* 說明 'to speak plainly.'

*pai ching* 擺正 'to arrange properly.'

(2) *ts'ü p'ü yüè t'ü* 此彼有異 'there is a difference between this and that.'

*hiò hau wéi shén* 學好爲善 'to learn goodness is a good thing.'

296. When two verbs come together they are in composition or in construction either (1) as a compound word, or (2) the second is the natural

complement of the first, or (3) they are used as an adverbial or attributive expression; e. g.—

Examples for (1) and (2) will be found in Arts. 190—198.

(2) *ngò pŭ-năng tsèu* 我不能走 'I am not able to walk.'

*tsè jŭn k'ò-ì tŭ* 此人可以讀 'this man can read it.'

*tsiú yau shí ò* 就要施禮 'then he was about to go through the rites,' or 'to make the proper greetings.'

(3) *tet ts'ù siáu hā hā* 齊楚笑哈 | 'respectfully-heartily laughing.'

*liên-liên tà kŭng kùng* 連打恭拱 'repeatedly bowing reverently.'

#### §. 4. The principles involved in the grouping of words.

297. Besides the ordinary formation of the parts of speech by the union of two, and sometimes of three syllables, the Chinese are fond of grouping together syllables, which form a rhythmical expression, and which are attached to each other upon principles often different from the *primary* rules, but which accord with the *less common* rules of composition and construction: e. g.—

*tsü-t'ien sŭn-k'ù* 嘴甜心苦 'on the lip sweet, in the heart bitter.'

*tā-t'ung siáu-t* 大同小異 'in a great degree the same, in a small degree different,' = *nearly alike*: cf. Arts. 289 (2) and 293 (4).

298. The first important principle of grouping is the appropriate selection of words having an opposite meaning, or which are generally connected in dissyllabic phrases: e. g. *t'ien-ti* 天地 'heaven and earth,' *wen-wu* 文武 'civil and military.' These are separated, and compounded with two other words to form a set phrase or group: e. g.—

*t'ān-t'ien shuo-ti* 談天說地 'to talk about every thing, to gossip.'

*tŭng tsai sŭ wai* 東倒西歪 'to fall in all directions,' lit. 'eastward and westward.' *Hau-k'iu-chuen*, p. 12. h. 16.

299. Another leading feature in the grouping of words is *repetition*. This is extremely common, and has the effect of intensifying the meaning of the single syllable, and gives the notion of *a good many*, often *all*, *every*, to the single noun. It is true, however, that it gives occasionally a meaning somewhat at variance with the original notion conveyed by the word: e. g.—

*kān-kān ku'ān liú* 懇 | 欠留 'to detain as a guest with importunity.'

*tŭ-tŭ-hiün-hiün* 得醉醺 | 'intoxicated completely.'

*hau-hau sŭng ngò* 好 | 送我 'conduct me properly.' Chrest. p. 12. i. 23.



*jīn-jīn tū shuō* 人 | 都說 'every body says.'

*chē-chē sāng-píng* 隻 | 生病 'each (animal) is sick:' (cf. Arts. 106. 2.)

*shí-shí k'ò-lién* 實 | 可憐 'truly to be pitied.'

300. These repetitions must be construed according to the sense of the passage, sometimes as nouns, sometimes as adverbs, and sometimes as expressions of plurality, and very often as the imitation of natural sounds: e. g.—

*yii wán-wán* 遊玩 | 'to roam for pleasure.'

*moán-t'ien tū shí sīng-sīng* 滿天都是星 | 'the whole sky is starry.'

*siáu hā-hā tī* 笑哈 | 的 'laughing with a Ha! ha!'

301. Words expressing cognate notions or commonly associated ideas are placed together, and become phrases in groups of two, three, and four characters each. These are virtually nouns or verbs, general terms, or special designations of objects: e. g.—

*k'ai-t'ien p'í-tí* 開天 | 地 lit. 'open heaven, split earth,' = *creation*. (1997.)

*yén, hīng, tūng, tsing,* 言行動靜 'words, ways, and deeds,' = *conduct*.

*wú-hú sī-hai* 五湖四海 lit. 'the five lakes and the four seas,' = *the world*.

*hiáu-chán wán-chán* 餚饌碗盞 lit. 'the food and cups,' = *the feast*.

*wáng-heú wáng-heú* 望候望 | lit. 'to look and wait,' = *to visit friends*.

#### §. 5. Uncommon use of certain words in phraseology.

302. The employment of single words in Chinese is very various, and frequently is quite exceptional, and to be explained only by reference to conventional usage; e. g. in

*hò-pà* 火把, 'a torch,' we have the noun *fire* and the verb *to hold* united to form a conventional term for *torch*.

*k'èi-wí* 口味 'taste,' from *mouth* and *to taste*.

*k'èi-k'ung* 口供 'evidence,' from *mouth* and *to declare*.

*fūng-p'í* 封皮 'the government confiscation paper posted on the front-door,' from *fūng* 'to seal,' and *p'í* 'skin, bark.'

*shí-shéu* 尸首 'a corpse,' from *corpes* and *head*.

*p'í jìn yén k'í* 不忍言去 'cannot bring himself to speak of going,'

lit. 'not suffer to say to go,' where *k'ü* 'to go' stands as the object to the verb *yên* 'to speak, talk of.'

*shéu-i* 壽衣 lit. 'long-life's garments,' or 'the apparel of old age,' = *shroud*.

303. Phrases are often affected by ellipsis, and would according to the ordinary rules of composition appear to be absurd, but, when the customs of the people of China are considered, these phrases become intelligible, and frequently display elegance and vigour of expression: e. g.—

*pai-shéu* 拜壽 lit. 'to bow to, or worship age,—long life,' = *to pay compliments on a birthday*.

*pai-niën* 拜年 lit. 'to worship year,' = *to pay compliments at the new year*.

304. So also many technical and legal terms are formed by an extraordinary use of words, for which the student should be prepared: e. g.—

*kó-pên* 貨本 'goods for a beginning,' = *capital, funds*.

*tung-si* 東西 lit. 'east-west,' = *thing, any thing*.

*yuên-kau* 原告 lit. 'origin-accuse,' = *plaintiff*.

*pí-kau* 被告 | lit. 'one being accused,' = *defendant*.

305. The student of Chinese must also expect to meet with very many designations formed by the metaphorical use of words. Such are,—

*siú-ts'at* 秀才 lit. 'sprouting talent,' = B. A., the first degree in scholarship.

*yün-ngé* 雲額 lit. 'cloud-forehead,' = *a headband*.

306. In like manner the names for many officers of government are formed by metonymy, using the name of the place, or of the employment: e. g.—

*láng-chung* 郎中 lit. 'pavilion centre,' = *gentleman usher*.

*t'ung-chi* 同知 lit. 'with-know,' but *chi* is here put for

*chi-hien* 知縣 lit. 'knows the *hien* (town)' or

*chi-fu* 知府 lit. 'knows the *fu* (city),' therefore *t'ung-chi* means 'an assistant of the *chi-hien* or *chi-fu*.' And these are equivalents for 'prefect' or 'mayor.'

307. Many expressions are purely foreign, and, although represented by Chinese characters, those characters are not to be taken in their ordinary sense, but simply as the equivalents for certain foreign sounds: e. g.—

*yá-p'ien* 鴉片 'opium.'

*pó-ki* 玻璃 'glass,' acc. to Mr. Edkins, from the Sanskrit *sphatikā*.

The words referred to in this section are to be employed as compounds, excepting in such a case as *chī-hiēn*, when the *chī* may stand in another compound for *chī-hiēn*. This habit of eliding a syllable is common in Chinese \*.

§. 6. *The modifications and relations of the parts of speech.*

308. The meanings of words are modified by their connexion with other words. A *noun* may be the expression for a general notion, or an abstract term; or it may be used to designate an individual only. In the expressions 'man is mortal,' 'what will a man give for his life?' 'the man came again,' the word *man* stands in different relations; in the first case it means *mankind*; in the second, *any man* or *every man*; and in the third, *some particular man*. In Europe, grammarians call the words prefixed to the noun, by which the definite and indefinite or general notions are indicated,—*articles*. These articles are in their nature demonstrative pronouns; and accordingly the Chinese use such pronouns when they desire to circumscribe the notion of the noun: e. g.—

*jīn*=man, mankind; *kō-jīn* 'that man,'=*the man*; *yī-kō-jīn* 'a man.'

*mà-pí* 'horses'; *ch'üēn-chē* 'ships,' (cf. Art. 116.)

*kō-chē-mà* 'the horse'; *nà chē ch'üēn* 'the ship.'

*nù-jīn* 'woman'; *kō-nù-jīn* 'the woman'; *yī-kō-nù-jīn* 'a woman.'

These are in the colloquial idiom; in the books various words (cf. Arts. 168 and 174) are employed to limit or to render indefinite the substantival notion. For the general term the simple monosyllable is often sufficient in classical composition.

309. It must however be borne in mind that these distinctions in the meaning and use of words are not confined to the noun. Chinese verbs are used in a general sense or with a special application according to the form of the sentence or to the circumstances of their position and the addition of certain particles or adjuncts. If the student will refer to Arts. 189 &c. on the verb, and will compare them with the examples here given, he will obtain a clearer idea of these remarks than by the following examples alone. In Art. 301. *yēn-hīng-túng-tsing*, 'words, ways, and deeds,' for the whole *conduct*, illustrates this remark. The words mean literally 'to speak, to act, to move, to rest.' *Túng-tsing* especially is an expression for a general term, the scope of which is indicated by the two opposite terms of *moving* and *resting* implied by its component parts. In epistolary correspondence, and in the style of the classics, such forms of expression are common: e. g. in the preface to the *Shing-yü* or 'Sacred Edict' we have

ì - chí - yü k'ang-s'ang tsò - sì chī hiēn

以至於耕桑作息之間

'Even to that which concerns the culture of the land and the mulberry and labour in general.'

\* As the examples, which will be given in what follows, will be made up generally of words previously used in this work, the characters belonging to them will not be printed, excepting those not likely to be known by the ordinary student.

310. Verbs formed in the manner described in Art. 200, belong to those used in a general sense, or as abstract terms, and they may stand as the subjects of simple sentences, or as the *result* or *purpose* in a compound sentence: e. g. in the expressions *tú-shū shí yáu-kín-tí* 'to read is important,' *ní k'ò-ì tú-shū mó?* 'Can you read?' the word *read* is used in a general sense independent of any special act of reading. Again, in *t'ā lai tú-shū*, 'he comes (or came) to read,' the word *tú-shū* expresses a purpose; and in *yúng sìn tsú k'ò-ì tú-shū*, 'take pains and then you will be able to read,' it expresses a result. When such expressions as *tú-shū* 'to read,' *sè-tsé* 'to write,' *kí-fún* 'to eat rice,' *k'ái ch'üen* 'to sail,' *hai-jín* 'to injure,' *shé-tsúí* 'to forgive,' are used in construction in the sentence, except in cases such as the above, the nouns compounded with them are dropped or separated from the verbal element. Thus: *t'ā tú-liài sām-pèn-(shū)* 'he has read three volumes.' But *tú* is also a special word for *studying* books: *ní tú-kwò Sè-shū mó?* 'Have you read the Four books?' that is, 'Have you studied them thoroughly?' To *read* simply is, *k'ān* 'to look at.' The uses of such words will be found exemplified in the exercises, which follow the grammar.

311. The union of opposite terms has already been referred to in Arts. 117, 118, and there it was shown that two nouns of opposite signification form a *general* term; and that two adjectives in a similar way form an *abstract* noun. The same may be said of two verbs which represent two opposite notions; e. g. *to labour*,—*to rest*, gives the general or indefinite notion of *labouring*,—*working*.

312. The position marks the *nominative* case of the noun. Any word which stands before the verb may be the subject of that verb, unless it be inconsistent with the sense of the passage to construe it as such. In any other case it would be an adverbial expression, or as it were the accusative case placed absolutely, denoting the thing or part affected by the verb: e. g. (cf. Arts. 91, 92, 93, and 198, for the characters; and Hom. Od. α, 274, for acc. abs.)—

*k'è-jín tsuè-k'ái, pú chung-í k'í-ch'á*

'The guest walked away, he was not pleased to drink tea.'

*huó-k'ung wán-kién ch'ái-jín tì shuò-huó, tsú pú huán-hí*

'The painter heard the messenger's words, and (then) was displeased.'

*í-fú yè táng-wán-liài* 'clothes, even they were pawned.'

313. The *genitive* case is also shown in most cases by the position of the word before the noun to which it belongs, and very frequently by the presence of the particle 的 between them, or 之 if it be in the literary style: e. g.—

*t'íe-tsíang tì nù-qr* 'the blacksmith's daughter.'

*kiá-fú tì kwán-tsé* 'the courier's cudgel.'

*mà-fú tì siáng-tsé* 'the groom's box.'

*mà-kiá* or *mà chí kiá* 'the horse's foot.'

*siên-sáng chí hiung* 'the teacher's brother,' or 'the gentleman's brother.'

314. The *dative* case is shown by the use of certain verbs which signify to give, to offer. Such are *kí* 給 and *súng* 送 and *yù* 與, the two first being used in the colloquial idiom, the other in the book style\*: e. g.—

*kí nì fán k'í* 'give rice to you to eat.'

*kí ngò tso ché-kó* 'do this for me.'

*súng yù t'á yí-kwoi yáng-ts'ien* 'to present a dollar to him.'

*kiàng yù jìn-jìn* 'to speak to every body.'

315. Other words, which are commonly used as prepositions, supply the want of case in the noun. Article 257 contains almost all the words which are employed for this purpose. But as they are to be regarded as prepositions or postpositions, we must refer the student to the syntax of that part of speech.

316. The *accusative* case is shown merely by the position of the word after its verb, or between the parts of a separable verb: e. g.—

*ngò kiau-liaù kó jìn lai* 'I have called the man here.'

*k'è-shāng pū yau mai ch'á* 'the merchant does not wish to buy tea.'

*sièn-sāng ch'í fán liaù* 'the teacher has eaten the rice,'—(*has dined*.)

317. The *vocative* case is distinguished by being cut off from the rest of the sentence, either by the addition of a particle of exclamation, by the repetition of the word or the appropriate pronoun, or by the sense of the passage and the context: e. g.—

*Lai-yê-ya! k'ò-lièn ngò*, 'O Sir! pity me!'

*siàu-qr! nì pū-yau k'í*, 'Boy! weep not!'

*Cháng-ngó! Cháng-ngó! nì*, 'O Luna! Luna! you &c.'†

Cf. Mr. Wade's *Hsin-tsing-lü*, Category of *T'ien*, [5.]

318. The *ablative* and the *locative* and *instrumental* cases will be found fully exemplified under the Articles on the syntax of the prepositions. Two or three examples may here be given:—

*From* (a place) is expressed by *ts'ung*, 'to follow,' or *tsé*; e. g.—

*t'á shí ts'ung Sháng-hai lai t'í* 'he is from Shanghai.'

*With* (instrumental) is translated by *yung*, 'to use,' or *í*; e. g.—

*ngò yung niau-ts'iāng, tà t'á*, 'I struck him with a gun,' i. e. *I shot him*.

*By or through* (causal) is expressed by *yin-wei* or *wei-tsé* 'on account of';—

*t'á tau-k'í, yin-wei yiu p'á*, 'he fled through fear,' lit. 'because he had fear.'

319. The modifications of the noun with regard to *gender* and *number* are seldom made. When this is done, special words are employed to mark the gender of the noun, and certain adjuncts are used to show the plurality. Some of these words will be found in Arts. 123—128. The following are examples of the use of such words:—

\* 與 and 代 are used to translate *for*, (instead of.)

† Vide J. G. Bridgman's translation of Premare's *Notitia Linguae Sinicae*, p. 29.

yiù nân-jîn, yiù nù-jîn sháng-hiá sãn-pã-kó, 'there were men and there were women, about three hundred.'

nì tī chí-nù lai mō? 'Is your niece come?'

kin-t'ien tá-liè, tà-shá yī-chē kung-chū, 'to-day in hunting, (we) killed a boar.'  
K'ung-tsè tâng mǔ-yiù liàng-kó, or mǔ-yiù liàng-kó K'ung-tsè, 'there are not two of the Confucius sort.'

320. Examples of the use of the plural particles and adjuncts, given in Arts. 126 and 127, now follow:—

chúng-jîn huán wí-kí tá-yíng 'before the men had replied;' v. Chrest. *Hau-k'íu*, p. 11. b. 10.

chū-wei siên-sāng! 'Gentlemen!'

shú-mín (B.) = pǎ-sing-mǎn (coll.) 'the people.'

chū-siên-sāng kiaī wú píng 'none of the teachers are ill.'

hū-tō jìn pǔ k'ò-ì tà-hò-ts'iang 'many men cannot shoot.'

ché-tí-hiung-mǎn 'your brothers' (often); v. *Hsin-tsing-lǔ*, *Shing-yü*. [19.]

nù-mǎn píng-mín-mǎn 'you, soldiers and people.' [39.]

chúng-shén kǒ yiù sò kwàn tī sz-tsing 'each of the gods has his own affair to manage.' [358.]

pǎ-sing-mǎn sò pāi tī kǒ-chú-qr, pǔ t'ung, 'the places where the people worship are various,' lit. 'each place not the same.'

píng-mín-jîn tâng 'soldiers and people all.'

321. Further examples to illustrate the plural particles in Arts. 126, 127:—  
jîn-kiaī chí tsè 'all men know this.'

kiün-chīn kiaī kǔ 'the prince and the minister both wept;' v. *San-kuó*, p. 18. d. 12.

k'ū-kǒ t'ung-k'ū 'all and each wept bitterly;' v. *San-kuó*, p. 18. k. 25.

jū-hièn ts'ung chí 'the scholars all followed him.'

shú-huán-ch'ân-shwò 'all obstinate detractors;' v. *Shu-king*, p. 1. i. 23.

nūng-fū kung-ts'iang tâng 'husbandmen and artisans.'

shì yiù huán-kwān Tsau-tsí tâng 'at that time there were the eunuchs of Tsau-tsí's party;' v. *San-kuó*, Litho. p. 11. g. 13.

Tàng<sup>a</sup>, peī<sup>b</sup>, lui<sup>c</sup>, tsí<sup>d</sup>, tsau<sup>e</sup>, and cheū<sup>f</sup> are all used after nominal notions to express plurality,—a class or party: e. g.—

ō-peī 'the wicked;' ts'ien-peī 'predecessors;' heū-peī 'successors.'

wáng-í chí peī 'those who forget right principle.'

t'ung-peī chí jîn 'men of the same class,' i. e. *equals*.

kwān-tsau, 'officers, mandarins,' (not commonly used.)

fī<sup>h</sup>-lui or fī-t'ú<sup>i</sup> 'vagabonds;' wú-tsí, 'we,' belongs to the literary style.

chū-fān wū-kién 'the universe of things,'—*all things*.

yiù-sò-tsé-wǔ k'ū pǔ sheū 有所賜物俱不受 lit. 'the things that were given, all he did not receive,' i. e. *he received none of the things that were given*.

<sup>a</sup> 寺 <sup>b</sup> 輩 <sup>c</sup> 類 <sup>d</sup> 儕 <sup>e</sup> 曹 <sup>f</sup> 儔 <sup>g</sup> 忘 <sup>h</sup> 匪 <sup>i</sup> 徒

*Tō* 多, 'many,' sometimes follows the noun to which it belongs: e. g.—  
*Ching-kwo jîn tō ch'ü wai-fang* 'many Chinese go abroad.'

322. A few of the ordinary phrases denoting plurality, or the whole group or collection of objects, may here be given. The Chinese in naming certain classes of things have attached a number to the generic term, according as they conceived the genus to be divided into more or fewer species; and these expressions have come to mean the whole class accordingly: e. g. they say—

*sān-kuāng*<sup>a</sup> 'the three lights,' i. e. *sun, moon, and stars.*

*sān-tai*<sup>b</sup> 'the three powers,' i. e. *heaven, earth, and man.*

*sān-kiāu*<sup>c</sup> 'the three religions,' i. e. *jū*<sup>d</sup>, *shī*<sup>e</sup>, *taū*<sup>f</sup>, 'Confucius, Buddhist, and Taoist.'

*sī-kí*<sup>g</sup> 'the four seasons,' i. e. *chūn, hiá, ts'ü, t'ung*, 'spring, summer, autumn, and winter.'

*wù-hing* 'the five elements,' i. e. *kín, mǔ, shuǐ, hò, t'ò*, 'metal, wood, water, fire, and earth.'

*wù-lún* 'the five relations of life,' i. e. between *kiün* and *chín*, *fú* and *tsz*, *fū* and *fú*, *hiung* and *tí*, *páng* and *yiü*, '1. Prince and subject, 2. father and son, 3. husband and wife, 4. elder and younger brothers, and 5. friends.'

*wù-k'ü* 'the five kinds of grain,' *wù-tsü* 'the five degrees of nobility.'

*wù-wí* 'the five tastes,' i. e. *sour, sweet, bitter, acrid, and salt.*

*wù-chung* 'the five virtues,'—*jín, í, lì, chí, sìn*, i. e. *benevolence, justice, propriety, prudence, and truth.*

*liú-í* 'the six arts,'—*lì, yǒ, shé, yú, shū, sù*, i. e. *etiquette, music, archery, driving a carriage, writing, and arithmetic.*

*tsi-tsing* 'the seven passions or emotions,'—*hì, nú, gāi, lǒ, ngai, wú, yü*, i. e. *joy (external), anger, grief, delight (internal), love, hatred, desire.*

*pā-kwā* 'the eight diagrams,' the theme of the *Yi-king*.

*kiù-t'ien* 'the nine heavens,' and *kiù-cheü* 'the nine islands,' for *the world*.

*wán-tí* 'all the virtues,' and *wán-shí* 'all ages.'

They also sometimes express multitude by using adverbially such terms as *swarms of insects, vast forests, oceans, seas, mountains, &c.*: v. Art. 288. (3.)

323. The modifications of *adjectives*, in respect of *degree*, are very various, and are effected by the addition of certain words and particles to the adjective. No alteration however can be made in the adjective to show the distinctions of gender, number, and person. It stands generally *before* its noun, either immediately, or it is connected with it by the particle *tí* 的 (c.) or *chí* 之 (B.) being placed between them. Some adjectives seem to require these particles, either to avoid ambiguity in the expression, or for the sake of the rhythm; e. g. *shén-jín* 'a virtuous man,' not *shén-chí-jín*, but *kung-tau tí jín*

<sup>a</sup>光   <sup>b</sup>才   <sup>c</sup>教   <sup>d</sup>儒   <sup>e</sup>釋   <sup>f</sup>道   <sup>g</sup>季

'a just man.' The rule given in Art. 132 should be observed, that when a verb enters into the composition of the adjective, the *tí* or *chí* is required.

324. Examples of the construction of adjectives \*.

*chē-lí, tsien-shuài*, 'here it is shallow water.'

*t'ā-tí kién-shí<sup>a</sup>, ts'ien*, 'his knowledge is superficial.'

*līng-lí-tí jīn* or *ts'ūng-ming-tí jīn* 'a clever man.'

*k'iaū-miaū-tí tsiang-kūng* 'a dexterous artisan.'

*sū-pā-tí chí* 'snow-white paper.'

*pīng-liang-tí shuài* 'icy-cold water.'

*tó-tàn-tí haū-kí<sup>b</sup>* 'a brave hero.'

*kūng-taū-tí huáng-tí* 'a righteous emperor.'

*uōn-yā-tí siēn-sāng* 'a scholar of great attainments and polish.'

*ché-kó-tsé tsing-sí-tí siē* 'these characters are written with elegance.'

*k'ò-liēn-tí jīn-kiā* 'a miserable individual.'

*k'ò-yūng-tí fā-tsé<sup>c</sup>* 'a method which may be used.'

*haū-yūng-tí niaū-ts'iang<sup>d</sup>* 'a useful fowling-piece.'

*haū-siaū-tí sé-tsing<sup>e</sup>* 'a laughable affair.'

*ché-lí huān-hì-tí tī-fāng* 'this is a pleasant place.'

*ché-kó siaū-qr huō-tūng-tí* 'this boy is active.'

*t'ā yūi yūi-t'ung-ts'ien-tí pāng-yūi* 'he has rich friends.'

*tsé jīn yūi lí-k'í-tí* 'this man is strong.'

*mū-yūi liang-sin-tí* 'a man without a conscience.'

*shí yūi-haū-í-sé-tí* 'he is a well-intentioned person.'

*ché-kó tūng-sī shí chí-tí* 'this thing is made of paper.'

*pū shí, shí mū-tsō-tí*, 'no, it is made of wood.'

*shí jīn-hān-tí kwān-fú* 'he is a hated mandarin.'

*tsé sé shí jīn-k'ò-hān-tí* 'this affair is hateful.'

*pū-siang-kān-tí* 'it is of no consequence,'—'n'importe.'

*kīn-t'ien t'ā pū shuōng-kwaí-tí* 'to-day he is unwell.'

*Chūng-kuō, Yīng-kuō, pū-hò-mū-tí*, 'China and England are inimical to each other.'

325. The comparison of the adjective can best be shown by means of examples. For the auxiliary adjuncts the student may refer to Arts. 144, 145, and 148—150.

*ché-kó haū-tí, nà-kó kāng-haū-tí*, 'this is good, but that is better;' and

*nà-kó kāng-kiā-haū* 'and that is better still.'

*ngò tsò-t'ien mōi kāng-kiā-paū-pet-tí tūng-sī* 'I bought a still more precious thing yesterday.'

*nì pì t'ā kau* 'you are taller than he is.'

*t'ā pū jū-nì kau* 'he is not so tall as you,' or

*t'ā mū-yūi nì-kau* 'he has not your height.'

\* For the words the student may refer to Arts. 133—142, p. 55.

\*見識    <sup>b</sup>豪傑    <sup>c</sup>法則    <sup>d</sup>鳥鎗    \*事情



*nà-kó haù nī* 'this is better!' lit. 'this is good!' We must suppose some one making a selection, and taking up one article, which he conceives to be superior to the rest.

*pū haù tī tō, haù tī shaù*, lit. 'the not good are many, the good, few,' which is equivalent to 'there are more bad ones than good ones.'

326. The expression of the comparative degree is further effected by means of the words *yíu* 'again, more,' and *tsai* 'again,' *huán* 'still, besides,' *yǐ* 'to pass over,' *yú* 'to exceed,' and some others of a similar meaning: cf. Art. 148.

#### Examples.

*yǐ-tsau-yǐ-haù* 'the earlier the better;' *yíu* is used in the same way, but not often in speaking.

*hó k'ái-haù k'èu-tsè, hía-yú yíu tō*, 'when the river had overflowed its banks, the rain fell still more.'

*mī-yíu tsai sí-tī* 'there is no finer.'

*pū náng pī ché-kó sí-tī* 'you cannot get finer than this.'

*yaú-ch'uen huán yaú ku'ái* 'row faster.'

*ngó k'án t'ā pī pī-jín tū chúng* 'I look upon him as certainly more honest than other men;' *chúng* = 'heavy,'—'well-principled.'

*fū tá liáng tá* 'the greater his fortune, the greater his bounty.'

*ngé wai kiā siú* 額外加修 'give a higher salary,' lit. 'allowance beyond add recompense.' *Hsin-ting-lü*, Part III. 22.

*kāng k'í chùng-liàu* 更氣腫了 'the more inflamed it swells.' *Hsin-ting-lü*, P. III. 29. The *chùng-liàu* in this place is like the impersonal in Latin.

Most of these sentences might be otherwise translated in respect of form, but no difference in meaning would arise therefrom.

327. The form for the limitation of the quality of the adjective is the following. Various words may be used for *rather*.

*mai kwei yí sié* 'bought it rather dear.'

*tā-liáng tién qí* 'a little more generous.'

*nā yí-kó tuàn yí ch'í* 'that one is shorter by a foot.'

328. The word in Chinese forms of comparison which seems to take the place of *than* in English is *yū* 於: e. g.—

*tsiú haù yū shuài* 'wine is better than water,' or

*tsiú pī shuài kāng haù* would express the same, although it is not so exact as the former, for in it the goodness of both is implied, which might not be true of some other articles under comparison.

*shin yū hai* 'deeper than the sea' (B.).

*jín fəu yū zé* 'men more than work for them' (B.); *fəu* 'to float,'—'to exceed.'

於 *yū* has the sense of 'with respect to,' and so 'in comparison with;' v.

Arts. on the particles, and the examples in the exercises.

329. In Arts. 146 and 151—154 the student will find the forms of the *superlative* degree, and it remains only to give here a few examples of their usage. The various degrees of the superlative are shown by the same words, which must be translated by *most*, *very*, *too*, according to the sense required by the context: e. g.—

*t'ā tī hāng-wet tīng-pū-hau* 'his actions are very bad.'

*hau k'ī-kw'ái yè* (好) 'very wonderful' (B.).

*hau pū k'ū yè* 'very much afflicted;' this expression, in which *pū* 不, 'not,' intensifies, is equivalent to *shī-fān k'ū tī*; and *mū* 沒, 'to be without,' is sometimes substituted for *pū* in such phrases. The adjective with the negative before it must be looked upon as one word, and the negative particle then stands as a privative particle; e. g. *hau mū-liàng-sin* is 'very wanting in conscience,' not 'well may he have no conscience,' as translated after Premare by Bridgman \*. The other examples given by Premare prove this view to be correct,—for *wū* 無, 'without,' is used occasionally in the same sense: thus—

*nī hau mū-tai-lī* 'you are very unreasonable.'

*hau wū-pā-pi* <sup>a</sup> 'entirely without method,' or 'very unmethodical.'

*k'ī ts'ūng-ming shīn pū shing* <sup>c</sup> 'his intelligence is quite unsurpassable.'

*tī-mū t'ái ch'ū yung-i* 'the theme turns out to be a very easy one.' The *ch'ū* here belongs to the *yung-i*; *tī-mū* is the subject, the remainder the predicate of the sentence.

330. It may be observed that the particles which form the superlative are very frequently suffixed instead of being prefixed,—and this is especially the case in the books, and in the higher colloquial style; e. g.—

*mèi shī shīn k'ī* 'a very beautiful countenance.' (1700, 1071.)

*k'ò-gai shīn i* (矣) 'very amiable.'

331. Examples of the superlative with *t'ái* 太, *t'ē* 忒, and *kwó* 過 are the following:—

*pū yau t'ái k'ien* <sup>d</sup> 'do not be too modest.'

*ché k'í t'ái hién* <sup>e</sup> 'this plan is too dangerous.'

*hiá sheu t'ē hèn-liàu* 'it is struck too much,' this is the impersonal form,

but it is equivalent to 'you struck me too hard.'

*t'ē tsing-sí liàu* 'it is too delicate.'

*nī yè t'ē tō sin* 'you are a person of too much heart.'

*tsiū t'ē k'í k'í liàu* 'the wine—it was drunk too quickly.' (1068, 1074.)

*wān-lī pū shīn t'ung-t'eu* <sup>f</sup> 'in learning not very profound.'

*sing-ts'ing kwó ngau* 'he is too proud;' *sing-ts'ing* = 'temper, mind.'

\* Vide Bridgman's translation of Premare's *Notitia Linguae Sinicae*, p. 83.

<sup>a</sup>把 <sup>b</sup>鼻 <sup>c</sup>勝 <sup>d</sup>謙 <sup>e</sup>險 <sup>f</sup>通透

332. The following expressions illustrate the use of *kí* 極, *tsū* 絕, *tsūi* 最, and *hàn* 狠:—

*ché-kó shí k'ò-siaù-kí-liaù* 'this is most laughable.'

*kí-tá yí-tsò-miaú* 'a very large temple.'

*kí-k'iaú-tí huó-kūng* 'a most clever painter.'

*kí-mù-k'iaú-tí huó* 'most unintelligible language.' *k'iaú* (1129).

*tsū wú kī-huó<sup>b</sup>*, lit. 'entirely without opportunity.' Mr. Bridgman has rendered it 'exceedingly unfortunate.'

*tsūi-kau sheu-tuān<sup>c</sup>* 'very skilful.' *kau* 'high.'

*miaú pū-k'ò-yên* 'wonderful, unspeakably.'

*hàn-shin-tí tsing* 'a very deep well.'

*tsū-miaú, tsū-miaú*, 'very good! very good!'

*shí kó tsū-miaú-tí fā-tsè* 'it is a most admirable plan;' v. *Shing-yü*, p. 7. h. 24, &c.

333. The phrases *shí-fān* and *tí-yí, pū-shing, pū-kwò*, and *liaù-pū-tí* (v. *Arta*. 151 and 153) should be remembered as adjuncts to form the superlative notion: e. g.—

*shing-tí shí-fān tsing-siú<sup>d</sup>* 'born very well-favoured.'

*pū tó-shí-fān-hau* 'not very very good.'

*tí-yí miaú* 'very wonderful:' cf. Americanism *first-rate*.

*\* shí-qr-fān jīn ts'at<sup>e</sup>* 'very beautiful in countenance;' so

*wú-fān hau* means 'five parts good,'—'pretty good,' and

*kí-fān hau* 'several parts good,'—'in some degree good.'

*pū-shing hāi-huān*, lit. 'not conquer joy,'—'extremely glad;' or

*hāi pū-té-shing*, lit. 'joyful not conquer himself,' like *εκστασις*.

*hāi-huān liaù-pū-tí* 'most joyful,' lit. 'cannot end his joy.'

*huān-hāi wá-sò-pū-kí<sup>f</sup>*, lit. 'joy—interminable.'

*tsūi k'ò pū-kwò* 'most miserable beyond compare.'

*kūng-tau pū-kwò-tí* 'surpassing just.'

*kw'at-sū<sup>g</sup> mō<sup>h</sup> kwò yū tsè* 'insurpassably swift.' (B.)

*cheu-ò shīn-pū-shing* 'desperately wicked.'

*ts'án-niò wá yū tsè* 殘虐無踰于此 'incomparably cruel.' (B.)

334. There are other phrases and words used for the purpose of intensifying the attribute, but these will be found under the section on the particles and in other parts of this work. The following however must come in here (cf. *Arta*. 152 and 153 for the characters used):—

*hiung tí kī-hai* 'most cruel;' (*tí* 'to obtain,' or *tí* the gen. pa.)

*ní yè shā lau-shí liaù* 'you are too honest;' (*yè* 'also,' the fin. pa.)

*t'án tsui kwò-tō* 'he is too fond of wine.'

<sup>a</sup> *shí-fān* meaning 'ten parts,' which is like saying the whole of any thing. *shí-qr-fān* would mean 'twelve parts,' and be a stronger intensifier than *shí-fān*.

<sup>a</sup> 數      <sup>b</sup> 機會      <sup>c</sup> 手段      <sup>d</sup> 清秀      <sup>e</sup> 材  
<sup>f</sup> 及      <sup>g</sup> 快速      <sup>h</sup> 莫

*ch'au-kiün* 超羣 lit. 'to surpass the common herd.'

*chō-lí* 卓立 lit. 'to establish as pre-eminent.'

*chō-tsū* | 絕 lit. 'to surpass exceedingly.'

*chō-yü* | 越 lit. 'surpassing excellent.'

*chū-lüi* 出類 lit. 'to stand out from his class.'

*sai-kuó* 賽過 lit. 'to excel and overpass.'

*sai-shing* | 勝 lit. 'to excel and conquer.'

*tsüi-kwei* 罪魁 lit. 'sin's chief,'—'chief of sinners.'

*ō-kwei* 惡 | lit. 'wicked head,'—'the most wicked.'

*kat-shí* 蓋世 lit. 'cover age,'—'the most eminent of his age.'

These expressions do not occur in common conversation, but are used with elegance in literary composition.

335. The measure of a thing, as regards *number*, is denoted by the numeral being placed before the noun, with the proper appositive between them, or by placing the numeral and the appositive after the noun, thus *sān-pí-mà* or *mà sān-pí* is 'three horses,' *sí-chē-ch'üen* or *ch'üen-sí-chē* 'four ships,' *yí-kién kù-kuoá tī sí-tsing* 'a strange affair,' and when it refers to *quantity* it is expressed by the numeral and some special word denoting the measure of quantity, and these are placed after the noun to which they apply (cf. 287): e. g.—

*sān-sí-kó-jín yín-liàu sān-wù-pēi-tsü* 'three or four men drank from three to five cups of wine.'

*ngò yáu mài í-cháng sān-t'áu* 'I wish to buy three suits of clothes.'

*tiú-pí<sup>a</sup> sān-nièn, yí-tān t'ung-lí<sup>b</sup>* 'separated for three years, on a sudden we are united.' (Prov. and Epistolary.)

336. The following examples will show how numbers are constituted and modified:—

*sān-sí-kó* 'three or four;' *shí sí-wù kó* 'fourteen or fifteen;'

*wù-lí-shí kó* 'fifty or sixty;' *lí tsí ts'ien* 'six or seven thousand;'

*tsí pā mán* 'seventy or eighty thousand.'

337. It should be noted that a *point* of time is placed first generally, but not before the subject of the sentence, and especially if this be a pronoun; and that *duration* of time is placed after the expression to which it belongs: e. g.—

*ngò tsò-t'ien tū-shū liàu* 'I read yesterday.'

*t'ā tū-shū sān-t'ien* 'he has read for three days.'

<sup>a</sup> 丟別

<sup>b</sup> 旦同列

*nà ts'ien-jì pū lai* 'you did not come the day before yesterday.'  
*ts'ien-sân-t'ien t'ā pū-shí ché-yáng* 'three days ago he was not so.'  
*ts'ien-sân-t'ien t'ā pū k'í-fán* 'three days ago he would not eat.'  
*t'ā pū k'í-fán yìu sá-t'ien* 'he has not eaten anything for four days.'  
*ts'ien-sân-t'ien t'ā sá-liàu* 'he died three days ago.'  
*t'ā sá-liàu sân-t'ien* 'he has been dead three days.'

338. The measures of *length* or *breadth*, *weight* or *quantity* of any kind are put after the verb:—

*kó-tsé p'au-ch'ū shí lí liàu* 'the robber ran ten *lí*\*.' (2826, 1919.)  
*ché yí-liàu-hó k'wán-tí yí-lí-lú* 'this river is one *lí* wide.'  
*nà lai-tí-ch'í yí-tièn-chūng* 'you came late by an hour.'  
*ché-yí-tsó-t'ā kau-tí shí cháng* 'this pagoda is ten *cháng*\* high.' (2529.)

339. Many measures of *time*, *space*, *weight*, &c., are used as appositives, and then stand in the place of the appositive, between the numeral and the noun: e.g.—

*lǐ tsé meù t'ien* 'a six or seven acre field.' (1710.)  
*yí tǎn mǐ* 'a pecul of rice.' (2559.)  
*wù t'ien shí-heù* 'a period of five days.' (584.)  
*t'ā k'í-liàu sân-wán-fán* 'he has eaten three bowls of rice.' (五碗.)

See Appendix for the tables of times, weights, and measures.

340. The syntax of proper names and their relative positions may here be noticed, and the student may refer to Art. 121 for the same subject.

The name of an individual consists of his *sing*, the name of his family (*gens*), which is commonly but one syllable, and is placed *first*; and then follows his *míng* (*cognomen*), which is generally dissyllabic: e.g. in

*T'ang Hsü-hiun*, *T'ang* is the name for the whole *gens*, and *Hsü-hiun*, the name (*cognomen*) for the individual of that *gens*.

Sometimes in books the word *shí* 氏, 'family,' is added after the *sing*, but only when the *míng* is omitted. In asking a person's name we should always enquire what his *sing* is, and then address him by that name with the appropriate addition of *siên-säng* or *siäng-küng*, &c.: e.g.—

*Siên-säng, kau sing á?* 'Sir, your eminent name?'

*siaù sing Li* 'my insignificant name is Lee.'

*Li siên-säng k'ò hau má?* 'How do you do Mr. Lee?'

No distinction is made by the Chinese between the name of the clan (*gens*) and the name of the family (*familia*), but the name of the whole *gens* is attributed to each individual. It will be seen that the Chinese and the Roman order of announcing the names is similar; first the *nomen*, then the *cognomen*; first the *sing*, then the *míng*. In his writings the author uses his *míng* by way of humility, but in addressing any one worthy of respect the *sing* is invariably used. The *tsé* 字 or 'title' is taken by every youth of education

\* A *lí* = 1807½ feet English, or 27½ *li* = 10 miles English; and a *cháng* = 10 ch'ü, or 141 inches English.

on attaining his majority. In writing this follows the other two names. In addition to these there is a name given to honour the dead, this is called the *houi* 諱章 ('to respect'); and if it be in honour of a great man, or of an emperor, the expression is *miáu-hau* 廟號 'temple designation,' because the memorials of such persons are preserved in the temple of ancestors, like the images of the Roman ancestors in the *atrium* \*.

341. All the *titles of honour and of office* precede the *sing*, which is used alone in such cases: e. g. *K'in-ch'ü, Tá-chün, P'ing-pü Sháng-shü, Liáng-Há Tsung-tü, Lín*, i. e. lit. 'Imperial Commissioner, Minister of State, a President of the Board of War, and Governor of the Two-Hu ('lake') Provinces,—*Lín*.' (cf. the notes upon the Chinese text in page 23 of the *Chrestomathy*.) This rule does not however hold good with respect to the terms *siên-säng* 'teacher,' *siäng-k'ung* 'Sir,' and such expressions of civility; these invariably follow the *sing*.

342. The names of places in China are all significant, although, as with European local names, the meaning is seldom thought of: e. g. *Kiäng-si* 'the river's west,' *Há-nán* 'the lake's south,' are names of provinces. But the names of foreign places and persons are given in a changed form, according as the Chinese are able to pronounce them †: e. g. *Ying-ká-li* for 'England,' *Fá-lan-si* for 'France,' *Ngo-lo-sz* for 'Russia,' *Lan-tan* for 'London.' 'Alexander' would be *A-lá-shan-ta-qr* in Chinese; 'Elgin,' *E-qr-kin*. But foreigners in China generally choose a Chinese family name (*sing*), which is like the first open syllable of their own surname, and they adopt this for their surname: e. g. 'Mr. Hobson' might use *Ho*; 'Mr. Cave,' *Ka* or *Kai*; 'Mr. Brown,' *Lau* or *Lo*.

343. The names of *cities and towns* are simply the names of the provinces or districts of which they are the chief places: e. g. *Shün-t'ien-fü*, i. e. 'chief place of the department of *Shün-t'ien* is Peking.' The word *Pé-k'ing* means the 'northern capital,' just as *Nán-k'ing* means the 'southern capital.' *Kwáng-cheü-fü*, i. e. 'chief place of the department of *Kwáng-cheü* is Canton,' a word which is a corruption of *Kwáng-t'ung*, written by the Portuguese in former times *Can-ton*.

344. The names of *countries, islands, rivers, mountains*, are followed by the words *kuó*<sup>a</sup> 'kingdom,' *t'ài*<sup>b</sup> or *cheü*<sup>c</sup> or *sü*<sup>d</sup> 'island,' *kiäng*<sup>e</sup> or *hó*<sup>f</sup> 'river,' *shān*<sup>g</sup> or *l'ing*<sup>h</sup> 'mountain or peak.' e. g. *Ji-p'ên kuó* 'Japan,' *Ying-ká-li-kuó* or *Ying-kuó* or *Tá-ying-kuó* 'England,' put for 'Great

\* M. Bazin says, in his *Grammaire Mandarine*, p. 2, that there are two thousand three hundred different family names given in the "Universal Biography." This is a large Chinese work called the *Shi-sing-p'ü*, i. e. 'Records of families,' a copy of which is preserved in the Royal Asiatic Society's Library.

† This is similar to the French pronunciation of foreign words: e. g. *Greenwich* for *Greenwich*.

<sup>a</sup>國 <sup>b</sup>島 <sup>c</sup>洲 <sup>d</sup>嶼 <sup>e</sup>江 <sup>f</sup>河 <sup>g</sup>山 <sup>h</sup>嶺

Britain; *Kiau-i-choi* commonly called 'Green Island' (near Hongkong); *Tang-láng-cherū*, i. e. 'Kellet's Island; *Chū-sū* 'Bamboo Island; *Hē-shān* 'Black mountain; *Mèi-líng* 'Plum-peak or ridge' (to the north of Canton).

345. The construction of *pronouns* now claims our attention. In their isolated state, without the addition of any grammatical particle, their position alone will show the case to which they belong: e. g. in *t'ā t'àng-nì yaú k'ú*, 'he wants to go with you,' the pronoun *t'ā* must be in the nominative case, and the pronoun *nì* in the accusative after *t'àng*:

*t'ā pū huām-hà nì* 'he does not like you.' *t'ā* is nom.; *nì*, acc.

346. The *personal pronoun* is frequently omitted in Chinese: when it is expressed its position shows the case in which it must be construed; if before the verb, it will almost always be in the nominative case; if after the verb, in the accusative. The words used for the pronoun of the first person vary according to the style of the composition in which they occur. Some of these distinctions will be seen by referring to Arts. 164, 165, and 179, where the characters will be found.

*ngò yaú nì t'àng-ngò k'ú* 'I want you to go with me.'

*pū yaú t'àng-nà k'ú* 'I will not go with you.'

*nì tà ngò, pū-hài* 'you strike me and do wrong,' or 'in striking me, you do wrong.'

In the books the student may expect to find the pronoun occasionally placed before the verb as the object of the verb, not the subject; e. g. in the Lun-yu of Confucius—

*pū ngò chī* 不吾知 lit. 'not me know,' 'when I am unrecognised.'

*ngò shut k'í* 我誰欺 lit. 'I whom insult,' 'whomsoever I insult.'

347. The nature of the expression enables the Chinese sometimes to dispense with the pronoun; e. g.—

*kau síng á?* 'Your great name Sir?'

*kíu wén tai-hiung* 'I have long heard of you Sir.'

*kí sè yí-huóí* 'I have ardently desired a meeting with you,' v. *Hau-k'ia-chuen* (1), p. 8. h. 20 and 28.

348. The designation of the person is frequently used for the personal pronoun:—

*Lí sién-sāng k'ò hau má?* 'Are you well, Mr. Lee?' (v. Art. 340.)

*chū-k'ung tsid sū pí chī* 'My lord you should avoid him;' v. *Sān-kuò-chí* (4), p. 20. d. 13.

*k'ien-k'ia tá-yè ché kó gān-tièn* 'I beg of your excellency to grant me this favour,' v. *Dialogues &c.* (1), p. 27. b. 1.

*wai-shāng fū t'ai - jín tai tsien, fū - kí chui - kú p'ien-shāng*

外商赴太人臺前伏祈垂顧本商

'I, the foreign merchant, hasten to your excellency's tribunal, and humbly beg you to bestow a glance on me, a merchant.'

*siàu-tī tō-jī tsin-yē* 'I (lit. 'younger brother') yesterday proceeded to wait upon you;' v. *Hau-k'ia-chuên* (1), p. 8. d. 13.

349. As the Chinese have no *possessive* pronoun in form, they use constantly the personal pronouns with the particle *tī* 的 attached to them, and this is equivalent to the genitive case, which answers the purpose for which the possessive pronoun is commonly used: e. g. *nì-tī fū-mù* 'your parents'; *t'ā-tī hiūng-tī* 'his brother'; *ngò-tī fāng-ū* 'my house.'

350. In questions and commands or invitations the pronouns are frequently omitted: e. g.—

*tsing-tsò* 'pray be seated'; *yaú shímmò* ? 'what do you want?'

*yaú chí fán* 'I want my dinner'; *pū pī tō-ā* 'do not be extreme in etiquette.'

*yaú ngò tsò shímmò* ? 'what do you wish me to do?'

351. The reflexive pronoun *tsé-kì* regularly follows the personal pronouns, but it is often used alone when the other pronoun is understood: e. g.—

*ngò tsé-kì pū-k'āng k'ú* 'I for my part will not go.'

*nì tsé-kì shuō-taú-liàu ché-kó* 'you said that yourself.'

*t'ā tsé-kì pū huān-hí* 'he himself is not pleased.'

But other words are used for the reflexive pronoun, such as *shin* 'body,' &c.

352. The demonstrative pronouns follow the same rules as the personal pronouns, but the syntax of the *relative* pronoun, or rather of the demonstrative used for the relative, will require further elucidation: e. g.—

*nà tà ngò tī* 'the man who struck me.'

*ngò sò shuō tī* 'what I said.'

*nì sò tū tī shū* 'the book, which you are reading.'

*yiù pū ts'ung chè, chàn-chī*, 'if there are any who will not follow, cut them down;' v. *Sān-kuò-chí* (3), p. 19. b. 15.

*shün-ngò chè, sāng*; *yí ngò chè, sz*, 'those who obey me, shall live; those who oppose me, shall die;' v. *Sān-kuò-chí* (3), p. 19. i. 11.

*gai-fú-mù-chè* 'those who love their parents;' v. the Arts. on the particles *chè* 者 and *sò* 所.

353. Sometimes there is no sign for the relative, but the context shows that the words must be construed with a relative pronoun in English: e. g.—

*tsò-sháng yí-jìn t'ui-gān* 'one man, of those who were sitting, pushed the table;' v. *Sān-kuò-chí* (3), p. 19. g. 7.

354. The use of the *shui*, 'who,' and *shímmò*, 'what,' for *any body* and *any thing* may here be exemplified: thus, a master speaking to his servant might say, *lai tī shí shui* ? 'who is that come?' the servant might reply, *mī yiù shui lai* 'there is not any one come.' *Nì yaú shímmò*, *ngò tsiaú tsò shímmò*, 'If you want any thing, then I will do it (any thing);' v. Mandarin Phrases, p. 27. d. 6.



355. The characters in Art. 174 are further illustrated by the following examples:—

*mèi-jîn kau-sū-liàu ngò* 'a certain man told me.' Chrest. p. 28. a. 20.

*nì yìu kì-tō yìn-tièn?* 'how much money have you?'

*ngò mū yìu shímmò* 'I have not any.'

*ché-kì-t'ien hiá-yù-liàu* 'it has rained for some days.'

*līng jì tsai t* 'another day again consult;' v. *Sān-koò-chí* (4), p. 20. b. 18.

*pū yau hai pī-jîn* 'do not injure others.'

*nì k'ò-ì pī-yáng tsó* 'you may do it another way.'

*pī-yáng mū yìu* 'there is no other kind.'

*sū-pē jîn mà* 'several hundred men and horses;' v. *Sān-koò-chí* (2), p. 18. d. 4.

*mēi-jì k'ò tū* 'you may read every day.'

*mū-yìu yì-siē* 'I have not even a little (or a few).'

*kò-jîn yìu yìn-ts'ien tō* 'each man has much money.'

356. The forms for *whoever*, &c., given in Art. 175, need further exemplification. A few examples of their uses may be given here, and an exercise upon them will be found in the third part of this work.

*nì suí-pièn shuō* 'say whatever you like.'

*pū-kuàn shímmò jîn kiàng* 'whoever speaks.'

*pū-k'ū hō jîn shuō tsz* 'no matter who says this.'

*pū-k'ū tō-shau yìn-ts'ien* 'whatever quantity of money,' or 'no matter how much money.'

*jîn pū-k'ū tau nà-lì* 'wherever a man goes,'

*tū yau kiàng ò-sing* 'he ought to speak common sense.'

Some of the forms used in the books are occasionally employed in the higher colloquial style.

*pū-lân hō shì* 不論何時 'whenever.'

*mēi yì nién* 每念 'whenever I think.'

*ngò mēi-tsá tau t'ā nà-lì k'ū, kī ngò sūng-lì* 'every time I go to his place, he gives me presents.'

*sui yú, chē ch'au* 隨遇輒抄 'whenever I met with any, I at once copied them.'

*Sui*, lit. 'to follow,' conveys the signification of 'as often as, according to, in consequence of:' cf. *sequence* from *sequor*, Germ. *Folge*, *folgend* from *folgen*, *yú* 'to meet with.' The other words which mean *to follow*, *to use*, *to take*, *to meet with*, correspond with the usages of Greek words: cf. ἀκολουθῶς 'in accordance with,' ὁ τυχών = Lat. *quivis*, and the use of χρόνος, ἔχων, φέρον, λαβών. See 以, *yíng* 用, *yìu* 有, *nā* 拿, *pà* 把. Cf. also 從 *ts'ung* 從 and 率 *sū* 率 'to accord with, to cause to follow, to lead,' in the phrase 通常 *tā-sū* 'generally, on an average.'

357. The expressions *tá-fân* and *fân* alone, *tá-kai*, *yí-tsing* for the whole, often convey the sense of *whoever*, *whatever*, &c., especially when followed by *sò* (cf. Art. 176): e. g.—

*tá-fân sò shuō tī* 'whatever is said.'

*fân yìu t'ien-hiá chí kuō* 'every country of the world,' or, if in a dependent sentence, 'whatever country of the world.'

*yí-tsung tī tsú tū kuōi yí kái-gai* 'all sin is reducible to pride,' i. e. 'whatever sin, or every sin which is committed:' cf. *πᾶς*, for *any one*.

358. It has already been remarked that the designation of the person is put for the personal pronoun (v. Art. 348). The use of the title and the various substitutes for the pronouns may now be exemplified. The characters are given in Arts. 179—185.

#### Examples.

*siàu-tī tsò-jī tsin yě* 'I yesterday proceeded to wait upon *you*;' v. *Hau-k'íu-chuén* (1), p. 8. d. 13.

*siàu-tī yí pū-jīn yén-k'íu* 'I cannot bring myself to speak of going;' v. *Hau-k'íu-chuén* (1), p. 9. a. 26.

*ché shí mīng-k'í siàu tī* 'this is plainly to insult me;' v. *Hau-k'íu-chuén* (1), p. 10. o. 11.

*yú-tī meū-meū-tsé tən* 'your humble servant so-and-so bows;' v. Epistolary style, p. 32. o. 19.

*pən tǎng líng kiáu* 'I ought to receive your commands;' v. *Hau-k'íu-chuén* (1), p. 8. k. 6.

*chín siēn-chau sī-tú* . . . 'I (lit. 'your subject') am the Minister of Instruction of the late dynasty's . . .;' v. *Sān-kuō-chí* (1), p. 27. l. 18.

*sing-shīn mīng-shuī*, lit. 'surname what, name who?'

*sháng-sing káu mīng*, lit. 'superior surname, exalted name?'

*káu-mīng yá-hau*, lit. 'exalted name, elegant designation?'

These expressions are all equivalent to, 'Will you favour me with your name?'

*wí sī<sup>a</sup> kuōi-pū<sup>b</sup>*, lit. 'not yet acquainted with *your* honourable position.'

This is used by classmen when unknown to each other. *Pū*, lit. 'a place for planting trees' (2084), is elegantly used for *place* or *position* in the list of prizemen, for which *fū<sup>c</sup>*, 'eminent,' is used; e. g.—

*t'ái-fū hó mīng* = 'Pray what is your name Sir?'

The following is employed by ordinary scholars or passmen:

*wí wən tǎn-hau*, lit. 'not yet heard of *your* honourable designation.'

And this by merchants and others for 'I have not the pleasure of knowing you:'

*wí-chī tsò-hiá*, lit. 'not yet know *you* Sir.'

\* See Bridgman's translation of Premare's *Notitia Lingua Sinica*, p. 143.

<sup>a</sup> 采

<sup>b</sup> 圃

<sup>c</sup> 甫

*t'ien mung-jü lín pí-yí shí* 'when on a former occasion you condescended to come to my poor place;' v. *Hau-k'ü-chuén* (1), p. 8. i. 2.

*kwei-kuo sui tsai cháng-yáng q̄r wán tī wai* 'although your honourable kingdom is in the great ocean above two myriads of miles away;' v. Official papers, Lin's letter, p. 23. d. 11.

*yü kī wei ling-ling* 'there are how many of your sons?' v. Dialogues &c. (2), p. 28. j. 10.

359. Many other designations of persons are used for the personal pronouns. The signification and use of each will be indicated in the Dictionary. (Part IV.) Some are more commonly used than others; each province and place has its own peculiar words of this kind; and the language of etiquette, the rank of the persons speaking, and various other conditions determine the particular epithet to be employed. The following dialogue may exemplify this:

Q. *Ling-tsün hau-mó?* 'Is your respected father well?'

A. *Kiā-fú hau*, lit. 'the *paterfamilias* is well;' v. Dialogues, Chrest. p. 30. l. 5.

Q. *Yü kī-wei kwei-nü?* 'How many young ladies (for daughters) have you?'

A. *Yü sán-kó kú-niáng* 'I have three girls' (for daughters); v. Dialogues, Chrest. p. 28. j. 15.

The following may be noticed here as they were omitted above:

*hán-kīng* 寒荆, lit. 'cold-thorn,' is used for *my wife*: (cf. Chr. 9. j. 19.)

*siàu-kiuèn* 小犬, lit. 'little dog,' for *my son*.

*siàu-t'ü* 小徒, lit. 'small scholar,' for *I, your pupil*.

*ts'au-ts'z* 草字, lit. 'grass title,' for *my name*.

*jín-hiung* 仁兄, lit. 'benevolent elder brother,' for *you, Sir*.

*láu-shin* 老身, lit. 'old body,' for *I*, used by old women in the novels.

360. In treating of the modifications which the verb undergoes, we may begin by considering those simple verbs which stand between the subject and predicate of a sentence to express that the subject *is*, *has*, *becomes*, *makes*, *exists in* or *happens to be* something. They are commonly called *substantive verbs*, because they express the reality or the assumed reality of the predication. But this reality may exist under various conditions or modes of existence, for example: 'Victoria *is* (by nature) a woman, she *has* a crown, she *becomes* a queen, she *makes* a good queen, she *exists in* her palace, and she *is* (but not by nature) an accomplished lady.' Some languages express more definitely than others these distinctions. In Chinese they are each marked by a separate word, and the syntax of these may be here noticed in addition to the remarks given in Arts. 216—222.

361. The substantive verbs may be arranged thus:

1. *shí* 是 'to be, is, was,' that is a *being by nature*, or at least *apparently so being*. The verb *hí* 係, 'is,' is used in the Canton dialect for *shí*, and in the books in this sense, and in a manner similar to the use of *naì* 乃, which is also employed occasionally where we might expect to find *shí*.
2. *yiù* 有 'to have,' which implies the *possession* of some object or quality by the subject. Instead of saying, 'he is rich,' the Chinese would say, 'he has wealth.'
3. *wei* 爲 'to become,' which indicates that the subject was not naturally such as the predicate asserts, but that it *was made* or *became* such. 'He was king,' would be, 'he became king.'
4. *tsai* 在 'to exist in.' This refers especially to the *location* of the subject. Instead of saying, 'the master is at home,' the Chinese would say, 'the master is in the house.'
5. *tsò* 做 'to do' or *tsò* 作 'to make,' which both stand as the verb *to be* in the sense of *makes, acts as, or means*. When we say, 'that man is a good magistrate,' the Chinese idiom would require, 'that man makes (or acts as) a good magistrate.' The character *tāng* 當, 'to bear,' is used in a similar way: cf. *Hsin-tsing-lü* [I. 1 and 2]. *Kiāu* 'to call,' *swàn* 'to reckon,' *sāng* 'to be born,' all stand in the same category with this; see the examples below.
6. *naì* 乃 'to wit, it may be,' which often takes the place of *shí* (1), but it seems to differ in this, that it is most correctly used in sentences where the predicate is not so positive an assertion as in those in which *shí* is used. It occurs also for *yiù* (2) in the *kü-wên*, when that character would signify 'there is, there happens to be.'

It must be observed that all these verbs partake more or less of the nature of the demonstrative pronouns, especially *shí*, *tāng*, and *naì*, which are commonly used as such in the literary style of composition\*. *Shí* and *naì*, *wei* and *tsò* (*tsò*, *tāng*, &c.) form pairs; *wei* and *naì* are more common in books than in the colloquial style.

362. These substantive verbs come invariably *between* the subject and

\* This curious fact, that the demonstrative pronoun and the substantive verb are of cognate origin is clearly shown in Chinese, but it seems to exist in almost all languages. Cf. the pron. *is* and the verb *esse* in Latin; and see Becker's *Organism der Sprache*, p. 123, where he says: "Wenn man die Lautverhältnisse des Aussagewortes und die ganze Art seines syntaktischen Verhaltens in den bekannten Sprachen näher betrachtet; so kann man kaum mehr bezweifeln, dass das Aussagewort, wie das Pronom, ein ursprüngliches Formwort, und mit dem Pronom ursprünglich sehr nahe verwandt ist."

predicate in a sentence, and not at the end of the clause or at the beginning unless the subject or the predicate be omitted: e. g.—

*chē-kó shí lāu-jîn-kiā* 'this is an old man.'

*yiū yí cháng-kau* 'it is one foot high.'

*tā-jîn yiū tē-tān* 'this man is brave.'

*tāi-ti yiū hū-tō yē-sheū* 'there are many wild beasts about here.'

*wei chūng sō sin* 'he was believed of all,' lit. 'whom all believed.' (B.)

*t'ā tsān<sup>a</sup> ngō wei shēn-jîn* 'he praised me, as being a virtuous man.' (B.)

*si tsai mui ts'ien* 'the business is before your eyes.'

*hiō kwān-huā, yāu tsō kwān-fū*, 'learn the mandarin dialect, in order to act as a mandarin.'

*ngō tsō Chī-hiēn<sup>b</sup>, nī tāng-pīng*, 'I am the Chi-hien, and you are a soldier.'

*t'ā nai hiā-chē* 'he then was dismounting from the carriage,' i. e. 'it so happened that &c.'

*wū nai wāng tī, Chīn-liū Wāng yē*, 'I am the prince's brother, Chin-liu, the prince.' (17. l. 3.)

*huōn pū chī-tsai shīmō<sup>c</sup> kiāu<sup>c</sup> yū-fū-kī tī jîn* 'I do not yet know what is a happy man.'

*chē-kó pū nōan<sup>d</sup> chān-t'ien* 'this is not spring weather.' (29. n. 7.)

*sheū hī sīng Lī* 'the chief is surnamed Li.'

363. The negation and intensification of these verbs is effected by placing the negative and intensive particles before each respectively. But it will be necessary to show which particles accompany the different verbs by giving a few examples of the usage in each case.

The verb *shí* 是, 'to be,' takes *pū* 不, 'not,' before it to form the negative, and also the antithetical word *fī* 非, 'not to be,' occasionally in the same sense; e. g. *pū shí chē-yāng* 'it is not so.'

*kō tsāng-kiūn pū-shí tā-tān tī* 'that general is not brave.'

*fī* before *shí*, to negative it, is an idiom which belongs to the book-style.

*fī-shí* 非是 or *shí-fī* 是非 is a phrase which means 'true and false.'

364. The modification of this verb, as far as regards the intensification of its meaning, is effected by means of such words as *yiū* 又 'again,' *yē* 也 'also,' *piēn* 便 'then,' *tsiū* 就 'then,' *tsī* 卽 'then,' *chē* 只 'only,' and other particles of similar meaning: e. g.—

*t'ā yiū shí pū hau* 'he is still bad.'

*tsi shí tsin-hiūng* 'he is forsooth my own brother.'

*yē-shí nī sō shuō tī* 'it is just what you said.'

*piēn-shí Tī Chūng-yū* 'I am indeed Tī Chung-yu.' cf. Chrest 11. e. 16.

<sup>a</sup> 讚

<sup>b</sup> 知縣

<sup>c</sup> 叫

<sup>d</sup> 算

*tsiú-shí t'á-jí Hwáng-k'ung t'í* 'it is the very same who broke into the Imperial palace.' cf. Chrest. 10. d. 14.

*jí-t'á tsiú-shí t'ái-yáng* 'jí-t'á is the same as t'ái-yáng (the sun).' [I. 57.]  
*tán ch'è-shí t'ing-shín &c.* 'but it is just this, that in early morning &c.' cf. Chrest. 9. c. 11.

365. The verb *yiù* 有, 'to have,' takes the place of the substantive verb, when the notion of the attribution is *accidental* or *acquired*, or at least to be considered as such: e. g. *t'á yiù píng* 'he is sick,' which is an abnormal state; the regular phrase is *t'á sāng-píng-liàù* 他生病了, lit. 'he has produced disease.' *T'á yiù ts'ien* 'he is rich,' lit. 'he has money,' which is an attribute acquired. Instead of saying, 'what is your plan,' the Chinese would say, 'you have what plan,' *nì yiù shímmó fā-tsè*<sup>a</sup>. This verb *yiù* is the common word for 'there is' at the beginning of a sentence: e. g. *yiù yí ch'è-b'yang-sh'uen tau-liàù* 'a foreign vessel is arrived,' or 'there is a foreign vessel arrived;' but before numerals it means *ago*, as the Fr. *il y a*.

Further examples to illustrate the use of *yiù*.

*k'ò-chú k'ò-tí yiù ch'ing-k'ing jín* 'every where there are upright men.'

*ts'ien-jí yiù k'è-jín lai pái* 'the day before yesterday there was a gentleman (lit. 'guest') who came to make a call.'

*ch'è-kó yiù shímmó fān-pí*<sup>c</sup> 'what difference is there in this?'

*yiù sh'ing-jín, yiù kwei-shín*, 'there are saints, and there are spirits.' [I. 2.]

This verb is used also as an auxiliary to form the past tense with *have*: e. g.—  
*yiù tú-kuó-liàù* 'I have read it.' *yiù sié-kuó-liàù* 'I have written it.'

366. There is a special negative for *yiù*, the opposite of it, *mù* 沒 'to be without,' just as *f'í*, 'not to be,' is used as the negative of *shí* 'to be': e. g.—

*k'ān-p'ü-ch'ü-lai, mù-yiù k'wāng-liáng*<sup>d</sup>, 'I cannot see, there is no light.'

*ch'è-kó ch'á mù-yiù yèn-sí*<sup>e</sup> 'this tea has no colour,' or 'there is no colour in this tea.'

*nì shuò tsò liàù, mù-yiù shímmó k'wān-hí*<sup>f</sup>, 'if you make a mistake, it will not be of any consequence.'

*lau-t'ien-yé mù-yiù p'ü-p'ü-yiú t'í* 'heaven will not be wanting in protecting him.' [I. 31.]

*f'í* 非 also occurs as the negative of *yiù*: e. g.—

*f'í yiù sò k'üü yé* 'there is nothing else to ask;' v. *Hau-k'üü-chuén*, Chrest. 8. o. 30.

<sup>a</sup> 法子      <sup>b</sup> 洋      <sup>c</sup> 分別      <sup>d</sup> 光亮  
<sup>e</sup> 顏色      <sup>f</sup> 關係      <sup>g</sup> 保佑

It will be seen in the Arts. on the forms of interrogation that *mǔ-yiù* at the close of a sentence often means, 'or not?' And this compound verb *mǔ-yiù* 'there is not, not to have,' also helps to form the perfect tense: e. g.—

*kín-jí mǔ-yiù fán shí* 'there is no rice to eat to-day.'

*jí-t'èu mǔ-yiù ch'ù-shān* 'the sun has not arisen.'

367. The modifications of the verb *yiù* 有, 'to have,' are effected by means of the following particles among others: *yě* 也, which means, 'also,' *huán* 還 'moreover,' *tsai* 再 'again,' *yiù* 又 'again,' *tú* 都 'all,' *chē* 只 'only,' *pí-tíng* 必定 'must, certainly.' And in the style of the classics words of similar meaning are used: e. g. *yí* 亦 for *yě* 也, *kiā* 皆 for *tú* 都. Examples of these latter will be found under each particle respectively.

*t'ā pū sá, ngò tsíu-yiù í-kaú,* 'if he had not died, I should have been supported.'

*tsai-yiù t'ang-ts'ien* 'I have more money;' cf. Fr. *j'ai encore de l'argent.*

*yě yiù fū-kwei tī mō?* 'are there any more rich ones?'

*huán-yiù shímō kàng-tí?* 'what more have you to say?'

*liáng-mín pí-tíng-yiù liáng-ēn* 'good people always have a good conscience.'

These particles may also precede *mǔ-yiù*: e. g.—

*tsai-mǔ-yiù ché-mō wai<sup>a</sup>-tí* 'there never was such a dwarf.'

*yě-mǔ-yiù ché-kó náng-lí* 'I have not indeed such strength.'

368. The verb *wei* 爲 'to do or make,' as a substantive verb, is used to signify that the subject *holds the office of*, or *becomes* what the predicate expresses: e. g.—

*Chang yě pū wei lí* 'but Chang was not polite,' or 'did not perform the salutations;' v. *Hau-k'iu-chuen*, Chrest. II. f. 6.

*k'í wei jín yě tō-tsai tō-náng* 'this is a man of great talent and ability.'

*shín<sup>b</sup> wei k'í-kwai<sup>c</sup>* 'truly it is wonderful;' *shín* is lit. 'deep.'

*wei jín yí-shí<sup>d</sup> pū-tsó sên-jín<sup>e</sup> lí-kí tī sá* 'should a man all his life do no injury to others for his own advantage, &c.;' v. 366. for the apodosis.

This verb is most frequently used in the style of the books. It corresponds to *tāng* 當, *tsó* 做, &c., in the style of conversation.

369. The substantive verb *tsai* 在, 'to be in,' comes next. There are a few idiomatic uses of it, but generally the notion of the locality of the subject in the sentence will indicate the case in which it must be used.

*pū chí tsai yě pū tsai* 'I do not know whether he is there or not.'

*làu-yě tī māu-tsè tsai ché-lí* 'your cap, Sir, is here.'

<sup>a</sup>矮    <sup>b</sup>深    <sup>c</sup>怪    <sup>d</sup>世    <sup>e</sup>損

*nì tī fú-mà tū tsai mô?* 'are your parents alive?' v. *Dialogues &c.*, Chrest. p. 28. i. 13.

*jī, yǐ, sīng-sū tū tsai nà-lā*, 'the sun, moon, and stars are there' (in heaven); cf. *Hsin-ting-lü*. [I. 10.]

370. The common negative which is used with *tsai* is *pū* 不 'not:' e.g.—  
*t'ā pū tsai* 'he is not in' (=not at home).

*mù-tsin pū tsai shí* 'my mother is not in the world,' for, *is deceased*.

371. The verbs *tsó* 做 'to make,' *tsó* 作 'to do or make,' *tāng* 當 'to bear the office or act the part of,' *kiaū* 叫 'to call or be called,' *sān* 算 'to reckon, to count,' *sāng* 生 'to be born,' are used as substantive verbs, the various accessory notions implied in them being understood. *Kiaū* is followed by *tsó* or *tsó* sometimes, and the two may be translated 'is said to be' or 'is called:' e.g.—

*nì kiaū-tsó shímmō mīng?* 'what is your name?' cf. *Hsin-ting-lü*. [75.]

*hō-kū tsó tsā t'au-yén?* 'what reason is there for these formal expressions?' cf. *Hau-k'ia-chuen*, Chrest. p. 9. f. 24.

*nā sān-kó tsāng-kiūn tāng nū-ts'at* 'took three generals and made them slaves:' cf. also *sāng-ping* 'to be sick,' and *sāng-k'í* 'to be angry.'

These are negated by the usual word *pū* 不 'not.'

372. The verb *nai* 乃 'to wit, is,' remains to be noticed. It is more common to the books than to the conversation; it sometimes corresponds with *shí*, and sometimes with *yiā*.

*hau shén qī wú-ō nai jīn chí chāng-t'ing* 'to love the good and hate the evil is man's common disposition.'

373. Two of these substantive verbs are often united to strengthen the expression: e.g.—

*yī-hau<sup>a</sup> kiā-tsū<sup>b</sup> shí mī-yiū tī* 'there is not a particle of fiction in it' (Prém. Brid. p. 51.)

374. *Shí* 是 is often redundant, and *wai* 爲 is used at the beginning of a sentence sometimes, where it is hardly wanted, and where some expression for 'if' would seem to be needed. Thus when we say, 'if such a thing were to happen,' the Chinese might say, 'it being so and so:' and the modifying particles are used with the verb; e.g.—

*kuōn-shí lau-tā-jīn shuō-tē t'ung-ku'at* 'of a truth, the old gentleman speaks very shrewdly.' Chrest. 9. m. 1.

*shí t'ā pū shí hau jīn* 'he is not a good man.'

375. In simple sentences, in which the predicate is the natural attribute of the subject, the substantive verb is generally understood: e.g.—

一毫 假借



*nà-kó yín-ts'āi* \* *kaū* 'those clouds are high.' [157.]

*t'ien yín-lian* 'the sky is cloudy.' [147.]

376. When a description of the subject forms the matter of the predicate then *shí* seems invariably to be used: e. g.—

*lū shí hē-hiá tī ch'au-k'í, huā-ch'ū-lai-tī shuoi*, 'dew is the damp vapour of night changed into water.' [247.]

377. For the expression of tense and mood as regards these substantive verbs very few rules can be given. The ordinary auxiliary particles, which distinguish tense and mood, are not employed with these verbs, but the circumstances of *time* and *manner*, either expressed or understood, define the relations of tense and mood: e. g.—

*wang-niên ngò shí fú-kwei-tī* 'last year I *was* rich,' or

*wang-niên ngò yui ts'ien* 'last year I *had* money.'

*lai-niên ngò tsó fú-kwei-tī* 'this year I *shall* be rich.'

*tsó-t'ien t'ā pū-tsai* 'yesterday he *was* not at home.'

*giù-shí-heú ngò shí yui t'ang-ts'ien-tī* 'I *have been* rich,' lit. 'there was a time (when) I *was* a person who had money.'

378. The *pluperfect* and *future perfect* tenses will be dependent upon some circumstance: thus—

*t'ā wí-tsang lai ché-lí, ngò sāng-ping*, 'before he came here, I *had been* sick.'  
*ts'ien-sān-niên ngò tsó sāng-tī tsai Chung-kuó* 'three years ago, I *was doing* business in China.'

*ní mīng-t'ien lai tī t'au-lí, t'ā tsó wáng*, 'before you shall have arrived to-morrow, he *will have been made* king.'

379. The tenses of the subjunctive mood are expressed by *k'ò-ì* 可 以 and *k'ò*, and certain particles, such as *jō* 若 'if,' *huó-chè* 或者 'perhaps' (cf. *Arta.* 263, &c.), followed by the substantive verbs just given: e. g.—

*k'ò-ì tsó ché-yáng* 'it *may be* so.'

*Hwang-tí ts'iaù, huó-chè shí ché-yáng*, 'when the Emperor died, it *might perhaps have been* so.'

*ní yè-lí mìn-wai shú, k'ò-ì sāng-ping*, 'if you sleep out of doors at night, you *may be* ill.'

*pū yau k'í ché-kó, K'àng-p'á ní suàn hō-sang*, 'do not eat this, lest you *should be taken* for a Buddhist priest.'

380. So much information has already been given upon the formation of the kinds of verbs, in *Arta.* 189—215, that it remains to notice here only the same in construction, and to point out the *form of the sentence*, which affects the tense or mood of the verb; and the remarks will have reference to the words and forms given on pp. 70—76.

The various modifications of the verbal notion are produced in four ways:

1. By a change of the tone or the syllable; 2. By the position of the word in

the sentence; 3. By the juxta-position of some particle or auxiliary word, or 4. By the circumstances under which the expression occurs.

The changes of voice, mood, tense, and person in construing a Chinese verb frequently leave the word unchanged; the conditions under which it is uttered being a sufficient guide to the limitation of its meaning. Adverbial expressions of time, and indeed a whole clause in which a certain time is indicated, force the construing of the simple verb into particular moods and tenses; while the subject of the verb (often understood) shows the person which must be construed with the verb unchanged.

381. By a change in tone, the *voice* or kind of the verb may be altered,—an *active* verb may become *passive*, a *transitive* verb may become *neuter* or *causative*: e. g.—

爲 *wei* 'to make, to do' (trans. v.), changes into *wei* 'to be made, to be considered as' (pass. v.).

占 *chén* 'to seize upon' (trans. v.) becomes *chén* 'to divine' (neut. v.).

行 *háng* 'to baste, to beat' (trans. v.), becomes *háng* 'to walk, to act' (neut. v.).

聽 *t'ing* 'to hear' (trans. v.) becomes *t'ing* 'to hearken, to obey' (intrans. v.).

382. The position of the verb in the sentence may determine its relation to the other parts of the same, according to the following general rules:

1. A verb standing alone or as the first word in a clause is commonly in the imperative mood; e. g. *lái ché-lì* 'come here!' *t'ing-tsó* 'please to sit.' or it is intended to express the general notion of the verb, which is about to be spoken of, and is consequently the subject of the sentence; e. g.—

*t'ü-shü shí shí-fān yau-kín-t'í* 'to study is a very important thing,'

*t'ing-ming shí nà t'í pān-fān* 'to obey is your duty.'

or the verb belongs to an absolute clause,—the expression of some circumstance connected with the principal clause; e. g.—

*tau tsé-jí* 'having arrived at the next day,' = *when the next day had come*;  
cf. *Hau-k'ü-chuén*, Chrest. p. 8. a. 10.

2. A verb between two nouns belongs to the former as its subject, and to the latter as its object (cf. Arts. 291, 292, and 296); or the first noun being put for an adverbial expression of time or place, the verb stands with the subject understood in the present or past tense, according as the other conditions of the clause will allow; e. g.—

*yé, pü yau häng-lü*, 'in the night do not travel;' the fuller colloquial form is *yé-lü* 'in the night.'

*Pè-k'ing, tsau pü hau*, 'in Peking it is bad walking.'

*jí-jí k'í-fán liáng-tsé* 'every day he eats twice.'

3. One verb following another directly or indirectly, without a particle being between, must be considered as expressing a *purpose* or a *result*: e. g.—

*t'ā lai, k'ān*, 'he is come to look.'

*ngò hīng lú tō, sāng-pīng*, 'I walked much and fell sick.'

In these rules we cannot take cognizance of the auxiliary verbs as such, because they are often attached to the simple verb, and become part of a compound with it.

383. The auxiliary verbs and particles which are used to modify the verbal notion have been given in Arts. 192, 194, 197, and 199. And here it may be remarked, that the verbal notion may be viewed under two aspects: 1st, as expressing the entire and general notion of the verb as an abstract idea, and independent of any positive act; 2ndly, as entering into relation with some real transaction. Two expressions therefore commonly occur, which correspond to this distinction; one, *general*, the other *particular*.

384. Verbs which express a general notion are such as those given in Arts. 200 and 203: e. g.—

(Gen.) *tū-shū, shí nì-tī pān-fān*, 'to study is your duty.'

(Par.) *t'ā pū-k'ing tū Sz-shū* 'he will not learn the Sz-shū.'

(Gen.) *kī-fān, shí jīn-jīn pī-tīng tsó tī*, 'to eat, is what all men must do.'

(Par.) *tau-tī ngò mī-yiū shīmō fān k'ī* 'but I have no rice to eat.'

(Gen.) *nì k'ò-tī tà-suán mō?* 'can you calculate?'

(Par.) *tsiū suán ché-kì sū-mū* 'then reckon up these numbers.'

(Gen.) *kiaū siaū hai-qr, tà-saū*, 'call the little boy to sweep.'

(Par.) *t'ā saū-liaū ché-kò tī-fāng* 'he has swept this place.'

(Gen.) *tà-fā yī-kò-jīn, tà-t'ing*, 'send a man to listen!'

(Par.) *ngò t'ing-kien-liaū t'ā-tī huó* 'I have heard what he said.'

Those compounds with *tà*, 'to strike,' do however frequently keep the *tà* when particular acts are mentioned: e. g.—

*hiō-fāng tà-saū-liaū* 'the schoolroom is swept.'

But with such compounds as *tà-shuūi*, 'to draw water,' *shuūi*, 'water,' would be dropped in construction: e. g.—

*ngò yau nì kī-ngò tà-shuūi* 'I want you to draw water for me.'

*shuūi tà-liaū* 'the water is drawn,' or *tà-liaū* 'it is drawn.'

385. It will be well to show, by a few examples, how each of the auxiliary words affects the principal verb when it is joined with it.

The character *liāu* 了, 'to finish,' is very commonly used after verbs, to indicate that the action of the verb is accomplished, and the expression may therefore be construed in one of the perfect tenses or by the perfect participle. The following examples will show its use:

*ché-tē t'ē-liāu mīng-tī* 'he only presented his card.' (8. f. 23.)

*kī-kē tsū-yau hīng-liāu* 'at once I should be on my journey.' (8. k. 18.)

*ché-kien Shuūi-yuēn, huūi tsuē-liāu, tsin-lai*, 'who should they see but Shui-yun, having suddenly walked up, enter.' (9. g. 4.)

*k'ān-liāu yīu k'ān* 'having looked, he looks again.' (11. f. 13.)

*yü yi-chāng qī chī, shì k'ī-siàu-tī-liàu*, lit. 'wishing to take one cup and then stop, is to have insulted me.' (11. l. 13)

*pū kái lai tsé-kú-liàu*, lit. 'ought not to come, to have taken notice of me.' (8. n. 28.) Cf. 10. n. 4. also.

In oblique narration *liàu* must sometimes be construed into the pluperfect tense: e. g.—

'The attendants announced, that the second son of academician Li (*lai-liàu*) had arrived' (or 'to have arrived'). (10. h. 15.)

This character often means 'has become'; e. g. *hāng-liàu* 'has become red'; *pě-liàu* 'has become white'; *míng-pě-liàu* 'has become clear,' = *has understood*. Thus an adjective is changed into a verb when followed by *liàu*.

When *liàu* is repeated, the first *liàu* must be taken as the verb 'to finish,' and the second as the auxiliary particle to express the perfect tense or the participle. It is however seldom found thus, though Prémare gives one or two examples of it.

*shou-wán-liàu ts'ien* 收完了錢 'having received the money.'

*chāng kuò-liàu* 嘗過了 'having tasted.'

*Liàu* is very commonly used in the court dialect, and in the mandarin generally; also in the ordinary novels, but seldom in the *Sān-kuò-chí* and the better class of books.

Sometimes the object of the verb is placed between the verb and the auxiliary *liàu* 了: e. g. *k'ī-siàu-tī-liàu* 'you have insulted me.'

386. The addition of *kuò* 過, 'to pass over,' as an auxiliary verb, is very common; it regularly forms the perfect tense when used in this way: e. g.—

*nà t'áng-tě t'ā shuō-kuò-tī* 'you understood what he said.' (28. d. 24.)

*kién-kuò t'ā kī-tsé?* 'you have seen him, how many times?' (28. g. 10.)

*Liàu* is frequently superadded to *kuò* in the same sense of *completing* the action of the verb. *Kuò* sometimes enters into the composition of a word, and then it cannot be looked upon as an auxiliary verb, but the verb 了 seems to be used to form the perfect tenses in that case: e. g.—

*nà-kuò-lai* 'bring over'; *nà-kuò-lai liàu* 'it is brought over.'

387. The verb *yiù* 有, 'to have,' also occurs as an auxiliary verb, like *have* in English, but this use of it is not common in Chinese. When used in this sense, it must stand *immediately before* the verb to which it belongs: e. g.—

*yiù kī-fán* 'I have eaten rice (i. e. dined).'

*tsing mǔ-yiù-k'ān-kién ché-yáng-tī yī-kó-tsé* 'I never yet have seen such a character as this.' (30. i. 16.)

*huán mǔ-yiù-tà sān-hiá* 'it has not yet struck three o'clock.' (29. k. 19.)

388. The verb **完** *wán*, 'to finish,' is also set after the verb to form the perfect tenses with the other auxiliary verbs and particles: e. g.—

*t'ā siè-wán ché-yì-shèu-shí* 'he has written this ode.'

*Sí-chún pŭ tâng t'ā shuō-wán* 'Sí-chun did not wait until he *had done* speaking.'

*ngò wí-tāng tsò-wán ché-kó sá-tsing* 'I have not yet finished this business.'

*Kí* 訖 'to stop speaking,' *pŭ* 畢 'to finish,' and some other words have a similar force and usage in the books, where they will present no difficulty.

389. The particle 已 *yí*, 'already,' is used as an adjunct to form the perfect and pluperfect tenses: e. g.—

*í-fū hiá-jín tsat hiá-chú* 'he had hidden a menial in the lower room.' (8. b. 25.)

*nà Lī kŭng-tsè ì-tseù tsáú sŭ-ts'ien* 'this Mr. Li had walked up to the festive board.' (10. h. 29.) *sŭ-ts'ien* is 'before the mat,' by met. 'feast.'

*híng sŭi tsq̄n q̄r sŭn ì-sè* 形雖存而心已死 'the body indeed may remain, but the soul is departed.'

This word is however more frequently used as a book-particle than in the colloquial idiom. It is used with adjectives like *hiáú*, but *prefixed*, and then it signifies *had become*: e. g.—

*t'ien-sŭ ì-wán t'ŭi-ping* <sup>b</sup> 'when the day had become late he withdrew his soldiers.'

And in phrases it often loses its grammatical force, or, to say the least, the value of the word is hidden by the figure *ellipsis*: cf. 9. f. 12.

390. *Kí* 既 'finished, to exhaust,' is employed in a similar way, and is placed before the verb to form the perfect and the pluperfect tenses, or the past participle of the verb, according as the circumstances require each form of translation respectively: e. g.—

*kí mung ts'á-kú* 'having favoured me with this regard.' (8. o. 4.)

*kí Wáng Lì q̄r-hiung k'ŭ-liên sán-shāng* 'having taken with our two friends, Mr. Wang and Mr. Li, three cups in succession.' (11. k. 30.)

*kí yau-hing, hò pŭ tsau-k'í* ? 'if you wished to go, why did you not go earlier?' (10. n. 21.)

*kí sŭ t'ái-hiung, pŭ ì pāng-yiù wai ts'ing*, 'it being thus, Sir, that you make no account of friendship as a motive.' (9. b. 18.)

391. *Tāng* 曾, 'already done,' stands before the principal verb as an auxiliary to form the perfect tenses and participles: e. g.—

*tsū-shung tāng-tsò-kuò yŭ-kó-siàu-siàu Kīng-kwān* 'one of their ancestors had been an insignificant official at the Capital.' (*Hung-leū-mung*.)

*tāng-kīng k'í-ch'ing* <sup>c</sup> 'he has already set out on his journey.'

<sup>a</sup> 天色

<sup>b</sup> 退兵

<sup>c</sup> 起程

392. It must be observed too, that particles such as *tsiú* 就, *pién* 便, *kió* 却, *tsau* 早, *yín* 因, each of which means 'then,' commonly throw the succeeding verb into the *past* tense, the *past participle* or the *future* tense. They occur naturally in the apodosis of a sentence where the perfect or future tense is often required: e. g.—

*jí-wí-ch'ü*, *tsiú k'í-lai*, 'before the sun came out, (then) he arose.' (8. a. 13.)  
*Kwó tsiú súng tsó* 'Kwo then having invited his guests to sit.' (9. n. 15.)  
*tsau fí páu-yü Kwó k'ung-tsè* 'then he hastened to inform Mr. Kwo.' (8. c. 11.)  
*yín lién-lién tà k'ung-k'ung* 'then he continuously bowed profoundly.' (8. e. 4.)  
*yín kién shín-ts'ing héu-mau* 'when he saw the deep feeling and generous manner displayed.' (19. e. 15.)

*tsiú-yau h'ing-liáu* 'I am about to proceed on my journey.' (8. k. 20.)  
*wáng-wai tsiú-tsèü* 'he went out, being about to depart.'

But in parallel clauses, or those joined with *and* understood, the verb which follows these particles must be construed like the verb in the corresponding clause preceding. And when the protasis is a hypothetical proposition, the verb in the apodosis will be in the *future* tense: e. g.—

393. Several verbs which are placed before the principal verb may be considered as belonging to the class of auxiliaries, since they serve to define the notion of time more clearly. For the *future* tenses and *future participles*, *yaü* 要, *tsiäng-yaü* 將 |, and *tsiú-yaü* 就 | are used. The following examples will show how they are employed:

*ngó ming-t'ien yaü k'ü* 'to-morrow I shall go.'

*lai nién nì tsiäng-yaü lai* 'next year you will come.'

*k'í-fán-liáu, tsiú-yaü k'ü*, 'having eaten his rice, he was about to go.'

But after *nì*, 'you,' *yaü* would signify *should* or *must*: e. g.—

*nì ming-t'ien yaü lai* 'to-morrow you must come.'

394. Many words are used to modify the notion expressed by *yaü*, as well as other words employed to mark the future time, and to change the expression so as to mean *must*, *should*, *would*, &c.; as, for example, *pí* 必 'must, certainly;' and adverbs of intensity, with certain verbs of like signification: e. g.—

*t'á pí-yaü tsi-shü* 'he must study.'

*huáng-tí yè yaü sè* 'the emperor must also die.'

*kiáu-fü shí-tsai yaü-lai* 'the chair-bearer will really come.'

*nì kwò-jèn yaü-k'í-fán* 'you certainly will dine.'

*sién-säng pü-k'ing lai tsi* 'the teacher will not come to read,' (won't.)

395. The verbs given in Art. 197 will need some further exemplification, as they play an important part in the modification of the verbal notion. We will take each in order. 1st, *é* 得, 'to obtain,' follows verbs whose signification requires some such supplementary notion to complete their sense: e. g.—

*ngó tung-tè nì-ti shuò-huá* 'I can understand your language.'

nì k'ú-tê, k'ò-ì, 'you may go,' where k'ò-ì is redundant, but idiomatic.

The negative *pū* 不 comes between the verb *tí* and its associate, and denotes that the action of the principal verb does not or cannot take effect; and this is common with all these auxiliary verbs: e. g.—

*ché-yí-t'iaú-lú ku'ân-pū-tí* 'this road cannot be widened.'

*kó yáng-jín k'ú-pū-tí* 'the servant may not go.'

*Tí* also forms, with certain verbs, an expression equivalent to *utinam* in Latin, in wishes, 'would that!' e. g. *hên pū-tí* 恨 'annoyed at not getting,' = 'would that!' but the more common phrase in conversation is *pā-pū-tí* or *pà-pū-tí*, which signify respectively, 'would that I' and 'would that you,' i. e. with one tone it refers to the subject who speaks, with the other, to the object spoken of, or to the person addressed. *Pū-tí* enters into a variety of phrases, as *liàu-pū-tí*, 'finish not obtain,' for an intensive, = *very*; and sometimes for 'it will not suffice': cf. Chrest. 30. e. 21.

396. The verbs *k'ú* 去 'to go,' *ch'ü* 出 'to go out,' *k'ai* 開 'to open,' and *sân* 散 'to scatter,' have a good deal in common. They express the present or the perfect tenses of the indicative mood;—the imperative mood; or the potential mood, with *can* as the sign in English: e. g.—

*k'ân pū ch'ü-lai, mǔ-yüi kuāng-liāng*, 'I cannot see, there is no light.'

*t'ā nā-ch'ü yí-kuoi yáng-ts'ien* 'he took out a dollar.'

*shuōi ts'ung shān-ü liú-ch'ü lai* 'water flows out from the mountains.'

*t'ā-ch'ü, pū-yau tàng ché-lí*, 'Flee! do not tarry here.'

*ngò pī-k'ai yí-kuoi mǔ-t'oi* 'I split a log of wood.' (Indic.)

*nì pī-k'ai yí-kuoi mǔ-t'oi* 'split a log of wood!' (Imper.)

*jǐ t'ā chèn-mei nì, lí-k'ai t'ā yuén*, 'if he flatters you, keep at a distance.'

*nà-kien mǔ-sí* <sup>a</sup> *lú-ch'ü* <sup>b</sup> *lai-liàu* 'that secret has come out.'

*ngò pién-yau nì kī-liàu-k'ü* 'I am determined you shall drink it:' (now, so pres.) (12. a. 2.)

397. The verb *pá* 罷, 'to cease,' corresponds in force to *liàu* 了, 'to finish,' as an auxiliary verb. But it very commonly has the effect of turning the sentence either into an imperative sentence, or it gives to it a hortative force. The following examples will show both these uses of *pá*:

*Tí kung-tsè ch'á pá* 'Mr. Tí having done tea.' (8. j. 20.)

*shuō-pá, yíu wai tseu*, 'having spoken, he again made for the door.' (8. m. 19.)

*siàu-tí kīng-tsíu tsó-pá* 'I am already seated.' (10. i. 15.)

*fáng-sin shuō pá!* 'speak freely!' (27. a. 12.)

*tsā-mǎn tū yí-kuoi-qr tseu-pá!* 'let us all walk together!' (30. b. 17.)

*ngò-mǎn sháng-chíng pá!* 'let us go up into the city!' (28. l. 19.)

*Hō-kí, nì tái ngò kuó hò pá!* 'Friend! carry us over the river!' (28. n. 10.)

Cf. also 28. l. 5. and 27. l. 28.

<sup>a</sup> 密事

<sup>b</sup> 露出

After a conditional clause, referring to the second person, or after an absolute clause, it will generally give the sense of *may*, or some tense in the *potential* mood, or be construed into the *imperative*: e. g.—

*nà pū yau tàng, k'ò-ì k'ú pá* (or *tsiú k'ú-pá*), 'if you will not wait, then you *may* go.'

*k'í-fán heú, tsiú k'ú pá!* 'after dinner, then you *may* go!' (or 'then go.')

*tàng-yí-tàng ngò chò-yáng tsò pá!* 'wait a little, I will do it so!' which would be also, 'let me do it so.' (27. k. 5.)

398. The verb *chú* 住 'to rest in, to stay,' partakes of the same nature and grammatical force as the preceding verb. It may be said to attach itself to the verb in almost every mood and tense, to show that the action of its associate, which always precedes it, has taken effect: e. g.—

*Kwó lán-chú tau* 'Kwo opposed him and said.' (8. l. 8.)

*Kwó yí-sheù chò-chú tau* 'Kwo with one hand stopped him and said.' (8. m. 25.)

*chò-tê chú-hiá* 'he stayed there.' (9. c. 26.)

*ì-tseù tau sì-ts'ien chò-chú tau* 'he had walked in to the banquet and stopped them, saying.' (10. h. 29.)

*pién lí-chú tē-yíng tau* 'then he arose and answering, said.' (11. e. 8.) Cf. also (12. c. 1) and (12. f. 1).

In its own proper sense we have *chú* in (10. b. 15) *yiú chú-sheù chū-t* 'he had the idea of desisting (from drinking).'

399. The verbs *lai* 來 'to come,' *tsin* 進 'to enter,' and *láng* 攬 'to collect,' may be classed together as auxiliaries, being allied in meaning and use, and being often united in the same phrase. All three convey the notion of *direction towards* the subject, just as *k'ú* 'to go,' *ch'ü* 'to go out,' and *k'ai* 'to open,' express the *direction from* the subject of the sentence. *Lai* precedes *liáu* when it helps to form the perfect tenses of neuter verbs, but when an object comes in between, *liáu* goes with the chief verb, and *lai* is suffixed after the object mentioned: thus—

*ná-liáu tsi-tsè lai* 'he took his card.' (8. b. 10.)

*ngò huán mī-yiú k'í lai* 'I have not yet arisen.' (30. o. 18.)

*Tsin* and *láng* precede *liáu* in the sentence, and come immediately before it: e. g.—

*tsin-lai* 'to come in' (cf. *hineinkommen*), or 'come in!'

*láng-lai* 'to collect together' (cf. *zusammenhaufen*).

*t'ā t'í-k'í p'í lai* 'he takes up his pencil.'

*t'ā t'í-k'í p'í lai-liáu* 'he took up his pencil.'

*hò-láng ná-kó tung-si lai* 'collect those things.'

*hò-láng-liáu* 'they are collected.'

The student must learn to distinguish between words which stand as grammatical adjuncts from the same when used as principal verbs: cf. *ngò-fū q' lai*, *ngò-fū q' k'ú*, 'to come fasting,' 'to go fasting.' (9. c. 16.)



Many of these auxiliary verbs form the various tenses, or stand for the prepositions found with the verb in some European languages. The Chinese may be said to correspond with the idiom of the English in this respect. We may say either, 'he *offered up* tea, or he *presented* tea.' In colloquial Chinese, '*offered up*' is the form of more correct phrase: cf. Chrestomathy.

*yí-mièn hién-sháng ch'á lai* 'while they offered up tea.' (8. h. 10.)

400. The verbs *sháng* 上 'to go up' and *k'í* 起 'to arise' are similar in their grammatical use, for they both signify the *beginning* or *raising* of the action of the chief verb; but they do not seem to have any effect in forming the tenses of the verb, although they *assist* in producing the perfect tense sometimes: e. g.—

*tsiú lí-k'í shín lai* 'then he *arose*.' (8. j. 25.)

*yí-mièn hién-sháng ch'á lai* 'while they *were offering* up tea.' (8. h. 10.)

*p'ü t'ü-shí p'ei-sháng tsüú lai* 'not long after they *prepared* and brought up wine.' (9. n. 8.)

*yiú yiú Hwüt-tsü tsö-huán-k'í-lai-liáu* 'there were also the Turcomans who *had rebelled*.' Gonç. *Arte China*.

*yín ná-k'í ná-p'ei-tsüú lai* 'then he *took* that cup of wine.' (12. a. 9.)

*hiáu tsö-yiú chin-k'í liàng-chäng* 'he called the attendants to *pour* out two goblets.' (11. j. 24.)

*K'í* is used sometimes to form the *inceptive* verb, even with a verb of an opposite signification, e. g. with *hiá* 下 'down, to descend,' while *k'í* means 'to arise:' thus—

*hiá-k'í tá-yü* 'it began to rain heavily.'

This is exceptional usage, for the auxiliary is commonly suited to the action of the verb to which it is joined; *hiá* 下 is generally used for a downward movement and *sháng* 上 for an upward movement: e. g.—

*hiá kó-wet-kí* 'to play the game of *siege* (a kind of chess).' Chrest. litho. p. 9. c. 4.

*ní t'ü-shäng t'ü-shai* 'how much will you wager?' (lit. 'bet-up,' = Eng. *lay*.) (27. g. 9.)

*p'ü . . . . . siàng-shäng yí siàng*, lit. 'touching . . . . . enter upon thinking!' (6. m. 22.) = 'with regard to . . . . . take a thought!'

401. Many other verbs are used in senses similar to the preceding, and assist in forming the tenses or in conveying the notion of direction implied in the verbs to which they are attached. From the preceding articles the principle involved will be seen; but many additions to the examples may be given by the student as he proceeds in his reading. The following expressions must suffice to exemplify these remarks:

*yén-hiá* 咽下 'to swallow down,' = coll. *t'án-hiá* 吞 |.

*jí* 入 'to enter' is used for *tsin* 進 'to enter,' and both are occasionally

used together; e. g. *tsein-jí* 'enter!' *tsein-lai* 'come in!' *tsein-k'ú* 'go in!' and *sháng-tsin-k'ú*, lit. 'ascend-in-go,' for 'go in!'

*kán-sháng-k'ú* 'to pursue after.'

Each of these adjuncts is affixed to some verbs, just as prepositions are to assist in forming compounds in European languages. The student of the Greek will at once perceive the analogy between Chinese and that language on this point, as he will too in many other Chinese forms of construction and usages of words. (Compare *πρός* with *lai*; *ἀνω* with *k'ú*; *ἐξ* with *ch'ú*; *ἐν* with *tsein*, &c.)

Thus—*ná-lai* 'bring!' *ná-k'ú* 'take away!'

*ts'ù-k'uo* 取 'to bring over:' e. g.—

*kiáu-jín ts'ù-k'uo p'í lai* 'tell a man to bring a pencil over here;' so

*ts'ù-ch'ú* 'to take out,' *ts'ù-k'ú* 'to take away.'

402. When verbs compounded with these auxiliary adjuncts are negated, the negative particle is placed either between the principal and the auxiliary, —and they then generally signify *cannot* do what the verb expresses,—or before the two verbs as a compound, when they mean *does not*, *has not*, or *will not*: e. g.—

<sup>a</sup> *ná-p'ü-lai* 'cannot bring it.' *ná-p'ü-k'ú* 'cannot take it away.'

*sié p'ü sháng lai* 'cannot go on writing' *ts'ü p'ü ch'ü lai* 'cannot speak.'

<sup>b</sup> *k'í-p'ü-tí* 'cannot eat it.' <sup>c</sup> *t'á-p'ü-ch'ü* 'cannot escape.'

*p'ü ná-lai* 'does not bring it, has not brought it,' or 'will not bring it,'

according as the circumstances of the case require.

*t'á p'ü tsin-lai* 'he will not enter.' *ní p'ü tsin-lai* 'you, do not enter!' (Imp.)

*hó-p'ü-láng-lai* 'cannot be brought together.'

*ní tsin-p'ü-lai* 'you cannot enter.' *ngó ts'ü-p'ü-tí* 'I cannot read it.'

*ngó p'ü k'í-tí* 'I do not eat it,' = *I will not eat it*.

<sup>d</sup> *kiàng-p'ü-tíng* 'cannot be settled by discussion.'

*ngó t'íng-p'ü-kién* 'I cannot hear.' *ngó p'ü t'íng-kién* 'I do not hear.'

<sup>f</sup> *mai-p'ü-lai* 'I cannot buy it.' <sup>g</sup> *mai-p'ü-k'ú* 'I cannot sell it.'

403. After these remarks upon the value of the above-mentioned auxiliary verbs, the explanation of such phrases as the following will present no difficulty.

*tsou-lai tsou-k'ú* 'to walk backwards and forwards.'

*shuo-lai shuo-k'ú* 'to say again and again.'

*siàng-lai siàng-k'ú* 'to think of this and that,' = *to keep on thinking*, in which form all such expressions may be construed. They cannot however be affected by the auxiliaries for the *past* and *future* tenses as the simple verb can; they signify merely the general notion in the infinite mood.

404. The *imperative* mood in Chinese is marked by certain verbs, which signify to *invite* or *beg*, to *yield*, to *cause*, to *call*, to *exhort*, and the like, being prefixed to the principal verb; but very frequently the command is

<sup>a</sup> 拿 <sup>b</sup> 吃 <sup>c</sup> 逃 <sup>d</sup> 講 <sup>e</sup> 定 <sup>f</sup> 買 <sup>g</sup> 賣

conveyed simply by the verb alone; e. g. *lái* 'come!' *k'ú* 'go!' *k'án* 'see!' or with the subject only placed before it; e. g.—

*nà pū-yau-k'ú* 'do not go!' (Lat. *noli ire*.)

*t'á pū-yau-k'ú* would be 'he will not go' or 'he may not go.'

The verbs just referred to are, *t'ing* 請 'to invite,' *k'iu* 求 'to beg,' *jáng* 讓 'to yield,' *shí* 使 'to cause' or *ling* 令 'to cause,' *kiaū* 叫 'to call,' *kuén* 勸 'to exhort,' of which the following examples will show the use in this connection:

*t'ing nà tsé mau-tsé* 'take off your cap,' lit. 'invite you to remove the cap.'

*hiú* 休 is prohibitive; e. g. *hiú-shuō* 'do not say!'

405. In pursuing the method of European grammar, and seeking equivalents for the voices, moods, and tenses, we may wander from the proper sphere of the grammar of Chinese: in the analysis of this language we ought rather to confine ourselves to the physiology of it, and leave the consideration of the method of expressing moods and tenses until we come to the third part (the Exercises), which may be looked upon as the synthetical portion of the grammar.

It remains however to mention the verbs which act as auxiliaries in forming the passive voice. They have been already given, but a few more examples may be of service to the student. The verbs referred to are, *kién* 見 'to see,' *shéu* 受 'to receive,' *k'í* 吃 'to eat,' *ling* 領 'to receive,' *ts'au* 遭 'to meet with,' *pei* 被 'to suffer,' &c.: (cf. Arts. 212 and 213.)

*pí Tí ché yí-túī tsáú*: 'by Tí he was pushed away, with these words:' (12. f. 29.)

*li-wéi! pū-yau kién-siaú* 列位不要見笑 'Gentlemen! Do not be inclined to smile,' a phrase made use of when a scholar reads his own essays before the learned: (v. Prém. under 見, p. 61.)

*Kién* 'to see, to seem, to be affected by,' forms the passive here just as in other cases, although we do not so express the sentence in English, for we may say, 'do not smile!' It is literally, 'do not be seen to smile!'

*t'á pū kién-huān-hí* 'he was not pleased.'

*sui-jén ngò k'í-tiēn-kw'ē* 雖然我吃點虧 'although I shall be a loser.'

*pí tsò-jín kiè-k'ú* 被賊人劫去 'was carried off by robbers.'

406. The student may refer to Arts. 211—213 for several auxiliary or formative verbs and examples, and seek for further examples under the following section on the meaning and use of the particles.

Few precise rules can be given for construing verbs into certain moods and tenses, beyond those already noticed, because the mood and tense often depend upon the circumstances of the action, or upon the previous sentence.

Examples of both will be seen in the passages given in the Chrestomathy. We must now proceed to the consideration of the syntax of the verbs and nouns, which serve to supply the place of the prepositions.

407. The verbs which are used as substitutes in some sense for the prepositions are given in Art. 257, p. 91. Examples of their use is all that is needed here.

1. *taú 到*, 'to arrive at,' implies *motion towards and arrival at*: e. g.—  
*t'ā taú-ché-lí lai-liàu* 'he has arrived here,'—'at this place.'  
*ngò yáu taú-Pē-kīng k'ú* 'I wish to go to Peking.'  
*nì kì-shí taú-Kwáng-tūng lai?* 'When did you come to Canton?'  
*t'ā-mn̄ shā taú t'ien mīng* 'they went on killing until break of day.'  
*yù lǐ taú pòdn yè* 'the rain fell until midnight.'

Phrases: *lai-taú 來* 'come, arrived.' *tsi-taú 接* 'received.'

*taú-chú 處* 'every where.' *taú-tí 底* 'but, still, after all.'

2. *tsai 在*, 'to be in a place,' implies *position, rest in a place*: e. g.—  
*tsai-Kwáng-tūng tsò sūng-ti hau* 'trade is good in Canton.'  
*tsai-kiā-lí pū-hau* 'it is not pleasant in the house.'

Phrases: *tsai-kiā 家* 'at home.' *tsi-tsai 自* 'to be without absence of mind.'

*tsai-há 乎* 'to consist in.' (B.)

3. *ts'ung 從*, 'to follow,' implies *motion from, through, or out of*: e. g.—  
*t'ā ts'ung Pē-kīng lai liàu* 'he is come from Peking.'  
*t'ā tsuē ts'ung ching-lí kuók-k'ú* 'he walked all through the city.'  
*ts'ung huáng-shang taú hiá-mn̄* 'from the emperor down to the lowest of the people.'  
*ts'ung fang-tsè ch'ū* 'he went out of the room:' (cf. 27. l. 1.)  
*ts'ung yuēn qī-lai* 'come from a distance.'

With a negative preceding, it implies *means from or by which*: cf. *tsi* (15) below.

4. *hiáng 向*, 'to go towards,' implies *motion towards*, but it is not so commonly used as *taú* (1).

*hiáng-ngò lai* 'come towards me!'

*pū yáu taú-ngò lai* 'do not come to me.'

*kó-chē-niàu fī hiáng-t'ien k'ú* 'that bird flies towards heaven.'

Phrases: *hiáng-nán 南* 'southward.' *hiáng-tsién 前* 'forward.'

*hiáng-shang 上* 'upward.'

*Hiáng 向* and *yàng 仰* are sometimes used for *yà 於* 'to, at': e. g.—

*hiáng pāng-yiù shuō* 'to speak to a friend.'

*wei-tsai-shí yàng kō-lauō sh'uen-chē* 'by this notification we address ourselves to the ships of all nations.'

Wáng 望 and yáng 仰, 'to look towards,' are also used like *hiáng*.

5. 以 'to use, to take,' implies the *means by which*, and it precedes the *instrument* by which any thing is done, or the *cause* or *motive* for an action.

Yáng 用, 'to use,' is more commonly employed in this sense in the colloquial style; and as 以 is looked upon generally as a book particle, the student is referred to the section on particles for examples of its grammatical use.

ngò yáng-tai-tai shá-t'á 'I killed him *with* a knife.'

yín yáng-shèu chí-chò Tí, tai, 'then *with* his hand he pointed to Tí, and said.'

Ná 拿, 'to take,' is also used in the same sense as *yung*, for *by* or *with*.

6. 及, 'to arrive at or reach to,' is used for *with*, *and*, *until*, and *with reference to*; but this word is more common in the books than in the colloquial style.

k'í-chò mǒ k'í jù 稽察莫及汝 'the examination has no reference to you.'

k'í q' yú 及二月 'until the second month.'

It also has the sense of *about* in some phrases: e. g. lún-kí 論及 'to talk about;'—a book is 'about' (*lún-kí*) a certain subject. In this sense it agrees with that of pà 把 'to take,' which often means *taking*, *touching*, *concerning*.

7. lién 連, 'to connect,' is used in the sense of *and*, *with* (like *cum* or *et*); and at the beginning of a clause it often means *in addition to*.

lién hó-kí mau sá 連夥計冒死 'he braved death with his companions.'

The verbal signification of *lién* admits of its being construed by several words, such as *both*, *and*, &c., and it often appears to be redundant at the head of a sentence: e. g.—

lién í-fú shèu-shí tū p'í hién-liàu 'she found neither her clothes nor her head-dress.'

lién nà yè-má ching-k'ing 連你也没正經 'you too are without right principle.'

Phrase: lién-yè 連夜 'day and night.'

8. tái 代, 'to act as a deputy,' is equivalent to the prep. *instead of*:

tai-tí t'áng-hiáng-jin<sup>b</sup> shéu-k'ù 'he suffered trouble in the place of his townsmen.'

<sup>a</sup> 首飾

<sup>b</sup> 同鄉人

*t'ā tai-jîn shū-tsūi-liàu* 'he, instead of men, made atonement for sin.'

9. *yù* 與, 'to give,' involves the notion of the *dative* case with the prep. *to* or *for*. But more examples will be given of its use under the section on the particles.

*tsau fī pài-yù Kwo-kūng-tsè* 'then he hastened to give information to Kwo-kung-tsz.' (8. c. 11.)

容小弟去與仁兄作伐如何 *yáng siàu-ā k'ū yù jîn-hiung tsò-fā jū-hó?* 'allow me to go for you, Sir, and negotiate the marriage, will you?'

10. *kī* 給, 'to give,' is more commonly used in the conversational style for *yù*, as the mark of the *dative* case.

*kià nì kī ngò tsò ché-kó* 'I beg of you to do this *for* me.' (cf. 27. a. 25.)

*súng ché-kó kī t'ā k'ū-liàu* 'presented this *to* him.'

*tsai<sup>a</sup> kī-ngò yī-pū-k'ān<sup>b</sup>* 'give (to) me another copy to look at.'

11. *wei* 爲 'to do, to become,' is used for the prep. *on account of, for, and* it enters into several phrases in this sense: e. g.—

*yīn-wei* 'because,' *wei-shímmò* 'for what,' = *why*.

*wei nà lai-Yu ngò kaù ché-kó* 'on your account, Mr. Yu, I will change this.'

*wei shímmò lai liàu?* 'why are you come?'

*i-hò wei kiaí* 依河爲界 'taking the river *for* the boundary.'

*wei t'ien-hiá siàu* 'to be a laughing-stock *for* the world.'

12. *túì* 對, 'to be opposite to,' makes the prep. *towards, opposite to (ad-versus), &c.*:

*nì túì t'ā shuò* 'speak *to* him!'

*túì t'ien shuò-shí* 'he swore *by* heaven.'

Phrase: *túì-mièn* 面 'on the opposite side.'

13. *t'áng* 同, 'the same,' stands as the prep. *together with (cum)*:

*ngò pū-yáu t'áng-nì k'ū* 'I do not wish to go *with* you.'

*shí t'áng nà-kó yī-yáng* 'it is the same *as* (with) that.'

14. *hó* 和, 'concord,' is commonly employed as the prep. *with, in company with, = t'áng* (q. v. 13. above):

*ngò yáu hó nì hīng-lú* 'I wish to walk *with* you.'

*liên-jīn hó mà* 'both men *and* horses.'

*hó hiung-tí yī-k'í hiang-lí-mièn tsèu* 'with my brother I went in.'

15. *tsé* 自, commonly 'self,' has the same force and usage as *t'áng* (q. v. 3.

above) 'to follow,' and therefore signifies 'from.' This is more frequently the case in the book style than in the colloquial idiom; and will be exemplified under the particles.

16. *t'í* 替 'for, instead of,' is a more frequent colloquial expression than *tsai*, mentioned above (8). *T'í* also corresponds with *yü* 'for, to,' as a mark of the dative (9).

*ngò kió t'í nì siú* 我却替你羞 'well, I am ashamed of you!' (*Hsin-ching-tu* III. 76.)

*t'í-jîn ch'ü-lí* 人出力 'to exert one's self for people.'

*yäng-jîn t'í t'á qí-tsè tsò-fá* 央人 | 他兒子作伐 'he solicited a person to negotiate a marriage for his son.'

17. *yîn* 因 'because of' and *yü* 由 'origin' are both used for *on account of, by or through*, although the manner of using them varies: e. g.—

*yîn tsü-tsè, sè-liàu*, 'he died by the sword.'

*yîn nì pü-ní* 因你悖逆 'because of your obstinacy.'

*yîn wéi p'á, pü k'í-fán*, 'he could not eat through fear.'

*yü tsè mên tsin* 'enter by this door!'

*yü yüèn jì ü* 'by the garden enter the house!'

*yü wá-kwán ching-pán* 'transacted by the military officers.'

408. The forms of construction, which stand as equivalents for the *relations of time and place*, commonly expressed by prepositions in European tongues, need some elucidation: (cf. Art. 258.)

Any general term for a relation of place or time may be used in construction, as a noun, with the preposition *tsai* 在 'in' or *ts'ung* 從 'from,' (according as the notion of *rest in* or *motion* is implied,) placed before the noun to which such relation of place or time refers; the expression then becomes equivalent to a preposition with its case in Latin or English: e. g.—

*ngò kú tsai-ching-lí* 'I reside in the city,' lit. 'in the city's interior.'

*t'á ts'ung-ching-lí k'ü* 'he went through the city.'

*nì tsèu tsai-ching-wai* 'walk outside the city,' lit. 'in the city's exterior.'

409. It is of great importance for the student to be able to divest his mind of the idea of a Chinese word being a noun or a verb, and to be able to treat any word as a noun or a verb, according as the case may require. The value of this is especially observable in the construction of words to express the relations of time and space, where we use adverbs and prepositions. Instead of saying 'upon the table,' the Chinese would say 'in the table's upper part,' *tsai chò-tsè sháng*. Several examples of this form of expression have already been

武官承辦

given in Arts. 258—260, and to these the student may refer. When the phrase thus formed, as an adverbial expression, stands as the nominative case, or the subject of a sentence, *tsai* need not be used: e. g. *ch'ing-nüi yü mī mai* 'in the city there is rice to sell,' lit. 'the city's interior has rice to sell.' But the method of expressing these relations will find its appropriate place in Part III, where the exercises will necessitate a number of rules for turning English into Chinese. One caution should be always remembered, that the position of the words alone can determine how the expression must be construed. A noun may become a verb, simply from its position, and a noun may so stand with another noun, as to form a preposition in signification, although it is not prefixed (*præpositum*). Thus *hiá-shān* 'descend a mountain,' but *hiá-fāng* 'lower room,' and *shān-hiá* 'at the foot of the mountain.' *Wai-kuó* 'foreign countries,' *kuó-wai* 'out of the country,' = *abroad*. *Shàng-mà* 'to mount a horse,' *mà-shàng* 'on horseback.'

410. The adverbs do not admit of any modification of a grammatical nature, excepting their intensification, either by being repeated, or by an intensifying particle being prefixed to them. (Cf. Arts. 238—256, p. 84.)

It will be necessary to notice, in the next place, the particles which affect words and sentences, and thus modify them, but in a manner so peculiar as to call for a separate section, and a distinct analysis of their uses as *attributive, connective, affirmative, negative, adversative, causative, conditional, illative, interrogative, dubitative, intensitive, exclamatory, and euphonic* particles.

### §. 7. The syntax of the particles.

#### I. *Attributive particles, 的 *de*, 之 *chī*, 者 *chě*, and 所 *sò*.*

411. The very first principle of Chinese construction is, that the qualifying words and clauses precede those which they qualify, and though there is frequently nothing to show the point at which the attribute ends and where the object of that attribute begins, several particles do exist, which, under certain circumstances, show this. They have been referred to above in Arts. 130, 132, and 313.

As the effect of these particles is to throw that which precedes them into the form of a qualifying or attributive expression, that is, either the genitive case of a noun, the adjective, or the relative clause, we shall call them *attributive* particles; and here it will be well to illustrate their use by several examples. They were all originally demonstratives, excepting *sò*, and the two first may be looked upon as equivalent to our *s* with an apostrophe, which appears to be only a contraction of *his, its, or hers* \*; the last—*sò*—contains the notion of 'place.'

\* Since the above was written we have met with the following extract from a native author on the subject: "Fān yén chī chě 'Whenever *chī* is expressed,' *b* wū yìu sò chī 'there is a thing pointed out,' *c* z' yìu sò shū 'there is an affair connected with it,'

°凡言之者 °物有所指 °事有所屬



的 *tí* is used only in mandarin and in the novels. After a noun it produces the genitive case, after a verb it makes the participle, and after a sentence it must be construed into the form of the relative clause: e. g.—

*huáng-tí-tí* 'of the emperor,' *huáng-tí-tí mà* 'the emperor's horse.'

*huáng-shàng* 'imperial,' *huáng-shàng-tí* 'that which is imperial.'

*chē-kó shì ngò tsò tí* 'this is what I made.'

*yiù tsòu-tí, yiù fī-tí*, 'there are those which walk and those which fly,' or 'some walk, others fly.'

*ná-kó shì tsò jī lat tī jīn* 'that is the man who came here yesterday.'

*kàng-tàng-tí* 'just waiting,' or 'who was just waiting.'

412. With respect to the particle *chī* 之, Dr. Morrison says, that in the ancient books it occurs in the sense of *yī* 於, *shì* 是, *tsz* 此, *t* 遺, *chí* 至, and *pién* 變. (See these words in the dictionary.) Its original meaning was the same as *chí* 至 'to proceed, to go to,' or as a demonstrative particle, 'that' or 'this.' The meanings of all these words run into each other. Compare the notion in *chí* 至 as a particle to form the superlative; it signifies 'to proceed to the extreme,' or 'that;,' e. g. *chí-hau* 'that good thing or person,' *par excellence*, therefore 'the best.' Although the characters 之, 此, 是, 至 are different, the ideas first attached to them were probably the same, and perhaps the sound too, for *chí*, *tsz*, *shì*, *chí* are all cognate in sound. As the Chinese language became more analytic, the characters were invented and diversified, and words (by which syllables merely are intended), which had at first but one primitive meaning, came to receive special significations in certain connections, and, as a matter of course, distinct characters to represent them. Examples of the uses of *chī* \*:

*jīn chí k'í sò tsin-gat* 人之其所親愛 'men, as to those things which they love.' (Tá-hiō.) Here *chī*=*yī* 於 'with respect to.'

Cf. *Classics*, vol. I. p. 233.

*chí tsz yī kwei* 之子于歸 'this girl is on the return to her husband's house.' (Shi-king.) Here *chī*=*shì* 是. Cf. *Classics*, vol. I. p. 236.

\* *tí yü sò wáng* 'there is a place which is visited;,' \**lién shū chí tsz yé*,—it is an expression of connection and relation. See Dr. Morrison's Dictionary, vol. I. p. 34. See also the extract given in the Introduction, p. xxi.

\* The references are to vol. I. of Dr. Legge's recently published work: *The Chinese Classics, with a translation, critical and exegetical notes, &c.* Roy. 8vo. Hongkong, 1861. The author here wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to this first volume, and to recommend it to the student of classical Chinese. The student may compare also the classic usage of *chí* 'these,' com. = 'only,' and *tsz* 'to go to,' com. = 'then.'

地有所往 連屬之辭也 只 卽

*Mêng-tsè chī Ping-lū* 孟子之平陸 'Mencius went to Ping-lū.'  
(Chūng-yūng.) Here *chī*=*chí* 'to proceed to.'

*wí chī yìu yè* 未之有也 'there never was such a thing,' where *chī* is merely euphonic, though in such a position it sometimes appears to represent the object of the verb *yìu*.

413. *Chī* 之 frequently stands after a verb, as a pronoun, the antecedent for which is either expressed or understood; e. g. 學而時習之 *hiò q̄r shí sì chī* 'to learn and constantly to practice it,' viz. 'what you learn,' (*Lun-yü, ad init.*) Here *chī* is *objective*, and occupies the same place as *tsè* 子, in the Shanghai dialect, after verbs. There *tsè* is looked upon as a euphonic particle, and *chī* in the books, when in this position, is probably nothing more, or merely like *it* in some English phrases (cf. "*Thu' es heute*," in the Prologue to Goethe's *Faust*). The following is an example of two uses of *chī*; 1st, as a verb; 2nd, as a euphonic particle, as that just referred to: cf. *kiù-chī* 久 | 'a long time past.'

*yü shí q̄r chī-yên-chī wéi tau* 由是而 | 焉 | 謂道 'from this place proceeding is called *tau*' ('road'). The *yên* is put in to separate the former *chī* from the latter more clearly, and to make the expression more rhythmical.

*Chī*, used as the object, has also the effect of making *tsé* 自, which precedes the verb, the subject, and prevents it from being the reflexive pronoun and object, which is commonly the case: e. g.—

*ch'áng tsé shé chī* 常自射 | 'he always shot them,' but

*yín tau tsé kīng* 引刀自剄 'with a sword he killed himself.' v. *Schott. Chin. Sphr.* p. 80.

414. *Chī* 之 is also *subjective*, and used as such in the *kù-wōn* for *chè* 者; e. g. *kù-chī* 古 | 'the ancients;' and it has the same effect as *chè* (i. e. as a formative), and then it corresponds with *tsè* 子 in the colloquial idiom. In this way it occurs very frequently, and it must be considered either as a formative or as a rhythmical or euphonic particle.

415. *Chè* 者 is also an attributive particle, for it unites the whole sentence which precedes it, and makes the noun or verb to which it is affixed an attributive: thus, *shwō-chè* 說 | 'he who speaks,—the speaker or speakers,'—*kù-chè* 古 | 'those of ancient times,—the ancients.' But although the attributive force may generally be referred to this particle, it will be needful to notice the other more common explanations of it.

*Chê* 者 is frequently to be regarded as a *demonstrative* pronoun, and stands after words, as the article *ô, ô, rô*, in Greek, stands before words, to individualize or make special, particular persons, things, or expressions; and most commonly where an explanation is about to be given of the object thus specified. This explanation which succeeds, determines not only the meaning of that which precedes, but also the grammatical value of the word itself; e.g. *jîn-chê* 仁 | would be either 'benevolence' or 'the benevolent,' according to the definition which followed: thus,

*jîn-chê jîn yê* 仁者人也 'humanity is man,' (i. e. 'to fulfil all the demands involved in the human relations is to act as a man,') but

*jîn-chê ló shān* 仁 | 樂山 'the benevolent delight in the mountains.'

So also the addition of the particle *yê* 也 or *chî* 之, between the verb and *chê*, separates the verbal notion, and causes the whole to form an abstract noun: thus,

*sāng-chê* 生 | 'those which are born or which grow,—the living.'

*sāng-yê chê* 'that in which growth is or consists,—life.'

416. When in an explanatory sentence the subject is marked by *chê* being attached, and the explanation consists of several words, or includes a relative clause, another *chê* often precedes the final particle *yê* 也. It would be so in a sentence like this: "God is the all-wise and beneficent creator and preserver of all things."

*jú - tsè chê tsai k'í k'í shīn chê - yê*

如此 | 災及其身 | 也

'He who does so will bring evil upon himself.'

Prémare says that *Ngau-yáng* 歐陽 used *chê-yê* | 耶 for *chê-yê*, and also *shí-yê* 是也 for the same, in common with writers of the first class; and he gives one example which goes to prove that *chê* 者 and *shí* 是 alike mean *this* or *is*, as we choose to render the sentence\*.

*kù chī jīn yīu hīng chī chē, Wū-wáng shí yē,*

故 | 人有行 | 者武王是也

'Among the ancients there were those who did it, Wu-wang was one of them.'

417. When *chê* is placed after a complete sentence the whole will form an abstract notion, or it will represent some particular action in an abstract point of view: e.g. after the sentence 'the soldier braves death,' *chê* would make the whole to signify 'the soldier's braving death,' which might form either the

\* Cf. note on page 122.

subject or the predicate of a new sentence. 'Alexander went to India,' followed by *chè*, would become, 'Alexander's going to India.' Sometimes *chè* follows two clauses, as in this example:

*i'iaü - chè luò-n - p'ó chè, hò? Siün-tsè.*

若折卵破者何

'The cracking of the reed, and the breaking of the egg, how is it?'

(The nest was well formed and strong, but the support was infirm: cf. The house built on the sand.)

*Yau-Shān sīng chè, T'āng Wù fán chī,*

堯舜性者湯武反之

'The principles of Yau and Shun were perverted by T'ang and Wu.'

*chī - chī - chè, p'ü jü hau - chī - chè,*

知之者不如好之者

'Knowing it is not like loving it,' or 'those who love it are better than those who know it.'

418. *Chè* frequently serves only to mark the subject of the sentence, and to separate it from the predicate: e. g.—

*kiün - tsè tau chè, sām.* Cf. Chrest. 3. e. 13—23.

君子道 | 三

'The principles of the superior man are three.'

*k'ò - chè, yü chī; k'í p'ü k'ò - chè, k'ü chī,*

可 | 與之其不可 | 拒之

'With those who are worthy, treat; those who are unworthy, reject.'

419. *Chè* appears to stand like *chī* 之, for the object of the verb, and after the predicate, in the following examples (cf. Art. 413):

*fū hò-wei chè? fū hò-wei |* 夫何爲 | 'but how are you to do it?'

*Chung-ni p'ü - wei i shīn chè*

仲尼不爲已甚 |

'Chung-ni never went to excess.'

420. The use of *chè* 者 does not date so early as that of *chī* 之. It is rarely, if at all, to be found in the *Shū-king* and the most ancient classics, but it is very common in the *Ss-shū* and all later classical writings. It is sometimes difficult to give any definite signification to *chè*, but if the student will bear in mind that it unites the whole clause and makes it participial, as when *the* is prefixed to a clause in English, or *ὁ, ἡ, ὅς* in Greek, he cannot be very far from apprehending the notion which the passage conveys.

421. The remaining particle *sò* 所, which originally signified 'place,'

perhaps 'that place,' has been classified with attributive particles, because it often has the force of the relative pronoun, and the relative clause is undoubtedly an attributive clause. The common rendering of *sò* is 'that which, what;' *nì sò yìu* 你所有 'what you have.' This character, like *chê*, appears to have been seldom, if ever, used in the ancient books, though common enough in the later classics of Confucius and his disciples: e. g. in the *Sê-shû* (4. c. 23), *sò wéi kù-kwò ché* 'the kingdoms which are called ancient,' or, as is said in English, 'what is called an ancient kingdom is &c.' Again (4. l. 15), *..fì jîn sò náng yè* '... is not what men are able to do,' and (4. d. 17) *sì-ché sò tsin, kîn-jì pù chî k'ì wáng yè*, 'the former ministers whom you advanced, to-day you are not cognizant of their loss.'

*sò-wet hó sè?* 所爲何事 lit. 'that which he is doing is what business?' = *what is he doing?* (B.)

*sò-kien pû shû* 所見不殊 'our opinions (the views which we take) are not diverse.'

*p'î k'î sò-pû-wet* 叱其所不爲 'to slander is what he will not do.'

422. There are several phrases into which this particle enters; e. g. *sò-ì* 所以, 'the means by which,' is commonly translated 'therefore:' 幾所 *k'î-sò* 'several which, a good many, some.' The following formula should be remembered, and the classical scholar may observe that it accords with the Greek expression for the same form with two negatives:

*wá sò-pû-náng* 無所不能 lit. 'there is nothing which he could not do,' = *omnipotent*.

*wá sò-pû-sung* 無 | | 送 'there is nothing which they would not have given,' or 'which they would not give;' and this corresponds exactly with the Greek of Demosthenes, οὐκ-ἔσθ' ἔ-τι οὐκ ἐδίδοσαν: v. Dem. de Coronâ, Reiske 261.

## II. Connective particles, 亦 *yì*, 而 *ér*, 又 *yìu*, 并 *píng*, &c.

423. Characters which may be called *connectives* in Chinese are rather numerous, but they cannot be designated as simply *copulative*, for they generally convey some accessory notion. The above however are the common equivalents for 'and, also;' and they imply an addition of something to the previous clause. We must consider each separately.

424. *Yì* 亦, 'also,' generally comes second in the clause, and then, like *ai* in Greek, it means 'even' or 'indeed:' e. g.—

*pû yì yǐ hú?* 不亦說乎 'is it not indeed pleasant?' (*shwò* is here used for 悅 *yǐ*.) Chrest. 3. d. 17.

*pû yì lè hú?* | 亦樂乎 'is it not indeed enlivening?' Chrest. 3. d. 25.

jên, Ching wáng, Tsz yì yìu pǐ lì yén,  
然鄭亡子亦有不利焉

'Yea, if Ching were lost, Tsz indeed would not have any advantage.'

And in many expressions it is simply intensitive: e. g.—

pì pǐ haù, tsz yì pǐ haù,  
彼不好, 此亦不好

'That is not good, this too is not good.'

Phrases yì-k'ò 亦可 and yì-haù | 好 are terms of assent, = *Well! Good!*

425. 而 *ér* 'and, and yet, and then, but, and consequently,' is commonly used as a connective particle, but sometimes it has an illative force, and sometimes it is merely euphonic. It should be observed, however, that it never connects substantives: e. g.—

hó ì shì k'í pǐ tsz *ér* shè chí  
何以識其 | 才 | 舍之

'Whereby shall I know his want of talent and reject him?' Chrest. 4. e. 1, also 3. e. 26. and Art. 439.

k'ing s'ing *ér* hì chí 驚醒而戲之 'he awoke in a fright, and then played with him.' (Chrest. 21. g. 19.)

pǐ ló shén-taú, *ér* wáng k'í kwò,  
不樂善道而亡其國

'He delighted not in virtuous principles, and so he lost his kingdom.'

It is joined with *tsiè* in the following example:

*ér*-tsiè jǐ p'ín 而且日貧 'and moreover he daily grew poorer.'

And it is euphonic in the following *apodosis*:

.. *ér*-huàng yǐ jìn há! 而況於人乎! '...much more as regards man!'

426. The difference between *yíu* 又 and *yì* 亦, each of which means 'also,' seems to be that the former has a more purely connective force, and often stands at the beginning of a clause, though it does sometimes take the second or third place with the signification 'again:' e. g.—

*yíu* wí wéi pǐ k'ò 又未爲不可 'and it is not yet considered impossible.'

k'àng-p'á *yíu* shí chí - t'ung-hwá - sī  
恐怕又是指東話西

'I fear that he will again say one thing and mean another,' lit. 'point to the east and talk about the west.'

*yiú ché - shí sià, píng pǔ shuō - ch'í ch'áng-tuàn,*

又只是笑並不說出長短

'Again he only smiled, and uttered nothing for or against,' (lit. 'long or short.')

In the following example, which is purely idiomatic, *yiú* is repeated, and may be rendered 'then' or 'and then':

*má - liàù yiú tà, tà - liàù yiú má,*

罵了 | 打, 打了 | 罵

'Having scolded, then he beat; having beaten, then he scolded.'

This form of expression is admired by the Chinese. Cf. Chrest. litho. *Sān-kuò*,

II. c. 7, *fān-kiù pǐ hō, hō kiù pǐ fān.*

An intensifying form is *k'ān-liàù yiú k'ān* 看了 | 看 'having looked he looked again:' v. *Hau-k'íu chún*, II. f. 13.

427. *Yiú* 又 is also used where *yiú* 有 or *shí* 是 might be looked for, as in the two following examples:

*t'ū-chūng yiú k'í; sīn - hiá yiú k'í,*

肚中 | 饑心下 | 氣

'In his belly he had hunger; in his heart he had wrath.'

*t's'í, yiú t's'í - p'ū - t's'; ts'íu, yiú ts'íu - p'ū - t's',*

辭 | 辭不得, 就 | 就 | 得

'As for refusing, he could not refuse; as for accepting, he could not accept.'

*Yiú* must here be left untranslated, but it corresponds precisely with the colloquial usage of *shí* 'to be,' which means 'it was *this*' in such expressions.

*kuān yiú k'au, hiá yiú fú,*

官又高, 家 | 富

'His office was high, his family was wealthy.'

428. When *yiú* 又 is repeated thus in two parallel clauses, it may occasionally be construed by 'neither' and 'nor:' e. g.—

*tsó yiú p'ū gān, l'í yiú p'ū n'ing,*

坐又不安, 立 | | 寧

'He could neither sit nor stand with comfort.'

For several examples of the use of this particle the student may refer to the Chrestomathy: 9. i. 8; 9. k. 2; 10. j. 2; 10. h. 6; and elsewhere.

429. *Píng* 并 (also very commonly 並, and formerly 𪛗), which properly signifies 'two standing together,'—'together with, in union with,' is used as a simple copulative conjunction in the style immediately above the ordinary colloquial. In the *Sān-kuò chí*, for example, *píng* and *yiú* are used together: (see also the first example on this page, where *p'ū* follows *píng*.)

*yiú píng jì yǔ Hàn* 又 | 入于漢 'and together united in Han.'  
v. *Sān-kuò chí*, Chrest. litho. 11. d. 9.

And on the same page at c. 21. *píng* is used alone in a similar sense.

*Píng* is used as an intensifying particle before a negative; it then signifies 'even, indeed, forsooth' (cf. the use of *kai* in Greek): *píng-pǔ-shí* 'no, forsooth!'

*píng wú-wáng* 並無望 'utterly hopeless.'

430. *Píng* sometimes means 'both,' as in these two examples:

*tsiē-mí píng mei* 姐妹並美 'the (elder and younger) sisters were both alike beautiful.'

*lǎu - yiú píng-kiāi ná - hiá*

老幼並皆拿下

'The old and the young were both alike seized.'

Like many other words in the same category, *píng* enters into several phrases to signify the *whole*; e. g. *yí-píng* 'one and all.'

Phrase: *píng-kiēn* 並兼 'together with.'

431. *Kiēn* 兼 is commonly used in official papers for 'and, together with:' e. g.—

*Píng - pú, Sháng-shū; kiēn Tū-chā-yuén, yiú Tū - yú - shì,*

兵部尚書 | 都察院右都御史

'Of the Board of War, President; and of the Metropolitan College of Censors, an Imperial officer.'

The following belong to a higher style of composition:

*kiēn qī yǐu chā* 兼而有之 'altogether to have them.'

*kiēn tsā qī ì* | 此二義 'both these meanings.'

432. *K'í* 暨, 'together with,' is used like *kiēn* in the official style of composition for 'and,' and generally as a copulative conjunction: e. g.—

*Hién-ling k'í Hié-tai* 縣令 | 協臺 'the Worshipful the Mayor, and His Excellency the Commandant.'

433. *Tsiè* 且, 'moreover, and,' is used as a conjunction, and also means sometimes 'now' or 'anon,' and 'still, then,' &c. It also enters into several adverbial phrases. But it is not frequently found in the colloquial style.

*nì ché siè huá tsìè mán shuō*

你這些話 | 慢說

'If you say this, then speak deliberately.'



*tsiè k'ù tsiè tsèu* 且拒且走 'anon visiting and running.'

*yá, tsiè lau, mǎi tién* 余 | 老買田 'I, being then an old man, bought a field.'

434. *Tsiè* also seems to be a common prefix to the imperative sentence: e. g.—

*Siāng-kūng! tsiè pū yau k'ü!*

相公 | | 要哭

'Sirs! do not weep!'

*tsiè, tsiè fāng-hiá* 酒 | 放下 'as for the wine, do desist.'

*tsiè k'ān hiá-huūi fān-kiaì*

| 看下回分解

'Just look at the following chapter for explanation.'

435. *Tsiè* is frequently redundant at the beginning of a clause: e. g.—

*tsiè k'ān t'ā tsāng-ti* 且看他怎的 'behold, how he is.'

*tsiè mǒ shuō t'ā!* | 莫說他 'now, do not speak to him!'

*tsiè chē-p'á* | 只怕 'I only fear indeed.'

Phrases: *huáng-tsiè* 況 | 'so much the more;' *qī-tsiè* 而 | 'but yet, and besides;' *chē-tsiè* 只 |, at the end of sentences, 'only' or 'alone' (B.): *tsiè-shuō* is the regular phrase at the beginning of a new chapter in novels for, 'the story goes on to say' (cf. Chrest. 17. a. 6); and 却 | *kiō-shuō*, 'to return to the story' (cf. Chrest. 17. m. 22): 姑 | *kū-tsiè*, 權 | *kiuēn-tsiè*, both mean 'then, the case being so;' 苟 | *keū-tsiè* 苟 | 'carelessly;' *tsiè-fū* | 夫 'now, further;' *tsai-tsiè* 再 | 'again.'

436. *Kī* 及 and *lién* 連, which have been spoken of in Art. 407. 6, 7, as verbs acting the part of prepositions, also stand frequently as conjunctions. This might indeed be expected, inasmuch as *with* frequently stands for *and* in our own language: e. g.—

*lién jīn mà* 連人馬 'men and horses.'

*ngō lién nì* 我連你 'I and you' or 'I with you.'

*ngō kī jū* | 及汝 'I and you.' (B.)

*kī fūng Chai-siēn*.. 及封朝鮮 'and being appointed governor of Corea,'..

Other examples may be seen in page 139, Art. 407.

*Kúng* 共, 'together with,' is also used in the same sense and manner.

437. The particle *yě* 也, which will be more fully discussed in another place as a final particle of assertion, is used very frequently in the style of conversation for *and*, *also*, and stands at the beginning of the clause; or for *even*, *indeed*, as an intensifying particle, and then it stands immediately before the word which it affects: e. g.—

*ngò yě t'àng nà k'ú* 我也同你去 'I also will go with you.'

*tsiú yí-kě yě-pū-náng liú!* 就一刻也 | 能留 'then you could not even stay ten minutes!' Chrest. 10. o. 4. Comp. Art. 364.

438. The particle *fū* 夫 is used at the beginning of the sentence for *now*, as a particle of transition, like *then* (cf. *ἔν* in Greek): e. g.—

*fū Tsè chí k'ú-chí yě..* 夫子之求 | 也 'now the Master's seeking,'.

*fū jìn-chè, ts'è yě* | 仁者慈 | 'now benevolence is just kindness'

*fū hiáu-chè, t'ien chí k'ing, tì chí tì, mìn chí k'ing yě,*

夫孝 | 天之經地 | 義民 | 行也

'Now filial piety is (what accords with) the order of heaven, the sentiment of earth, and the conduct of the people.'

*fū jìn yíú qī hǐ chí, chuáng qī yǔ k'ing chí, ..*

夫人又 | 學之壯 | 欲行 |

'Now when a man has learnt any thing in his youth and being grown wishes to practise it,'.. (Cf. Chrest. 4. h. 25.)

439. At the end of a sentence *fū* is merely expletive, or a mark of exclamation: e. g.—

*mò ngò chí yě-fū!* 莫我知也夫 'no one knows me!'

*náng k'ái k'í mǐ qī hǐ k'í qī ché, fī t'ien yě-fū!*

能高其目 | 下其耳者非天也夫

'He who can exalt his eye and depress his ear is no other than heaven!'

### III. *Affirmative particles*, 是 *shí*, 然 *jèn*, 也 *yě*, 矣 *ì*, &c.

440. The common form of affirmation in Chinese is the repetition of the principal verb used in the question: e. g.—

Q. *nà lái mǐ?* 'are you coming?' A. *lai* 'I am coming.'

Q. *t'ing ngò tì shuō-huá mǐ?* 'do you hear what I say?' A. *t'ing-k'ien-liá* 'I have heard.'

The simple assertion or affirmation of any fact is generally expressed by *shí* 是 'it is so, it is the truth.'

441. But in the book style the particle of acquiescence or affirmation is *jèn* 然, which may stand at the beginning of a sentence or alone. At the beginning of a sentence *jèn* may mean 'it was thus:' e. g.—

*jèn Sung-jin yü mìn* 然宋人有閔 'it was thus that a man in the Sung dynasty was grieved.'

When *jèn* follows an adjective or a verb it is a formative particle, and helps to make an adverb. (Cf. Art. 238. β.)

Phrases: *jèn-hóu* | 後 'afterwards,—then.' (Chrest. 4. f. 30.)

*kā-jèn* 既 | 'since it is thus.' (Chrest. 9. b. 18.)

*tai-jèn* 自 | 'certainly.'

*sūi-jèn* 雖 | 'although it is so.'

*wi-pi-jèn* 未必 | 'not necessarily so.'

*tai-jèn qí-jèn* 自 | 而 | 'of itself,'—'sua sponte.'

442. *Yè* 也 is a very common particle of affirmation, and stands at the end of sentences with the sense of 'forsooth, it is true,' attached to it: e. g.—

*i - wai náng shíng k'í jín yè*

以爲能勝其任也

'Because you would consider it sufficient for the purpose.' (Chrest. 4. h. 2.)

*fí jín sò náng yè* 非人所能 | 'it is not indeed what man can do.' (Chrest. 4. l. 5.)

*Mèu lí wòn - ch'ü - chí, tsí ts'í yè!*

某力挽出之卽妻也

'M. with force dragged it out, and behold it was his wife!'

*wáng-yáng pá - láu, wí wéi chí yè,*

亡羊補牢未爲遲也

'Though the sheep is lost, it is never too late to mend the fold.'

*Yè* seems to be used in sentences conveying an assertion, whether affirmative or negative, and it helps to affirm the truth of each respectively.

443. Sometimes *yè* merely creates a pause in the sense of the passage, or makes a division of the members of the sentence itself: e. g.—

*k'í yén yè shén* 其言也善 'his words are good.'

*hiáu-tí - yè - ché k'í wéi jín chí p'ên yí!*

孝弟 | 者其爲仁之本與

'Filial piety and fraternal love,—these are the sources of benevolence!'

Phrases: *wí chī yìu yè* 未之有也 'there never was such a thing.'

*tsè chī wéi yè* 此之謂也 'this is the meaning.'

444. *Yè* is sometimes used after proper names, especially when the name consists of a monosyllable, and when it seems to require some expletive to support it. It also stands as an expletive at the end of an answer to a question: e. g.—

*Yíu yè* 由也, *K'íu yè* 求也, 'Yiu, K'iu (names of philosophers).'

*k'ò-há? p'ù-k'ò-yè!* 可乎, 不可也, 'May he? He may not!'

*yíu-há? wí-yíu-yè!* 有乎, 未有 |, 'Is there any? There is not!'

*Yè* is found as an adjunct with *chè* 者, *chè-yè* and *yè-chè* (cf. Arts. 415 and 416); also with *fū* 夫, *yè-fū* (cf. Art. 439); and with *tsai* 哉, *yè-tsai*; with *yú* 與, *yè-yú*; with *ì* 已, *yè-ì*; and with *yé* 耶, *yè-yé*.

445. *Yên* 焉 is found either at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of sentences. At the beginning it is an interrogative particle; in the middle it marks a pause in the sentence; and at the end it has an affirmative or assertive force, and has sometimes the value of a mark of admiration.

#### Examples.

*fū yèn yíu sò ì?* 夫焉有所倚 'now what was there to rest upon!'

*shá k'í yèn yíng niú tsau?* 殺雞焉用牛刀 'in killing a fowl why use an ox knife?'

*p'ü náng k'áng shên, yèn náng k'áng tsung?*

不能亢身焉能亢宗

'Not being able to screen myself, how can I screen my kinsmen?'

*kiün tsè chī kwó jū jī - yǐ chā shī yèn!*

君子之過如日月之食 |

'The good man's errors are like the eclipses of the sun and moon!' (i. e. they are but partial obscurations.)

446. The particle *ì* 矣 is commonly *final*, either at the end of a clause or of a sentence.

*siàng p'í jèn ì* 想必然 | 'I think it must be so.'

*jèn ì q'í-ì* 仁義而已 | 'humanity and justice, and nothing else.'

*wú wí chī-chī ì* 我未知之 | 'I do not yet know it.'

*tsü - chī pü - hīng yè wú chī - chī ì*

道之不行也吾知之矣

'That principles are not followed I know it,' (i. e. the reason) =

'I know why right principles are not acted upon.'

447. The particle *ì* closes the predicate of an affirmative or of a negative sentence, but it most commonly ends an affirmative clause or sentence.

*Pü* 卬 seems to be preferred for closing a negative sentence, though it is often found at the end of an affirmation. The following two examples will illustrate this: (1) *K'í wéi-jín yè hiaú-tí q̄r haú-fán-sháng-chè, siēn-ì*, 'those who, with respect to men, show themselves dutiful, both as sons and as younger brothers, and yet like to resist their superiors, are few.' (2) *Pü haú-fán-sháng q̄r haú tsò-hoán chè, wí-chī-yüè yè*, 'men who dislike resisting superiors, and yet like creating rebellion, are not to be found.' (v. Chrest. *Sí-shū*, *Lên-yü*, 3. d. 13. et seq.) This particle *ì* stands in the following affirmative sentences with the force of the Greek particle *τίς*, implying the reality of what is asserted:

*wú pī wéi chī hió ì* 吾必謂之學 | 'I must call him learned.'

(Chrest. 3. j. 24.)

*fú sz q̄r-ì* 弗思耳 | 'not merely to be aimed at.' (Chrest. 5. h. 13.)

*.. q̄r kwò wéi ì* 而國危 | '... and the country will be in danger.'

*yáng-chī wú tú q̄r tsai ò kwéi ì*

用之無度而財立匱 |

'Use them without measure and your means will soon be exhausted.'

*yí yüè jín - ì q̄r - ì - ì!*

亦有仁義而已 |

'Surely there are benevolence and justice, and they are sufficient!'

*wú wí chī hó yè - ì - ì*

吾未之何也 | |

'I have nothing more that I can do.'

448. The combinations of the particle *ì* 矣 with other particles are many, and the signification and force of each particular combination must be sought for in the passages where they occur. They will generally ass't in strengthening the assertion, or in intensifying the expression if it be an exclamation. Such are the following:

Combinations: *ì-há!* | 乎. *jén-ì* 然 |.

*ì-fū!* | 夫. *ì-ì* 已 |.

*q̄r-ì* 耳 |. *hó-ì* 何 |.

449. The two last examples in Art. 447 will serve to illustrate the use of 已 as a particle of affirmation, or rather of assertion. It properly signifies 'already done' (cf. Art. 194); and, as a particle, it adds to the force of the statement to which it is appended: e. g.—

*tsi yí qí-ì* 則一而 | 'just one and no more.'

*wí chī yè-ì* | 之也 | 'do not go there at all.'

*pū tsū kwoñ yè-ì* 不足觀 | | 'not at all worthy of notice.'

450. But in the following example 已 conveys its own proper meaning simply: e. g.—

*ì-há! ì-há!* | 乎 | 乎 'Have done! have done!' or

*ì-qí! ì-qí!* | 而 | 而 'Enough! enough!' or 'No more! no more!'

Combinations: *ì-ì* | 矣. Also *yè-ì* 也 |.

*ì-há* | 乎, and

*ì-ì-há* | | 乎, or

*ì-ì-fū* | | 夫.

451. Particles are accumulated with 已 in the two sentences following:

*wá wí chī hó yè - ì - ì*

吾未之何也 | |

'I have not indeed any thing left that I may do.'

*jì - yǐ chí yén qí ì ì*

日月至 | 而 | |

'They continue for a day or a month, and no more.'

*qí-ì* produces the equivalent for the English expression 'nothing else to do but,' in some sentences: e. g.—

*wéi fāng-sin qí-ì* 惟放心而已 'but only take courage' (lit. 'let go heart'), which might signify, 'you have nothing else to do but to banish sorrow from your heart,' &c.

*Chū-hì yí-jìn qí-ì!* 朱熹一人 | | 'Chu-hi, a man, and that's all!' (See Schott's *Chin. Sprach.* p. 132.)

452. The double negative forms of expression *mō-fí* 莫非, *mō-pé*, and *wá-fí* 無 |, each give the force of an affirmative particle, and therefore the examples to illustrate them may come fitly in this place. They usually bear the signification of 'surely.' Compare the following examples:

*mô-fî tsü-shí tà-jí yàng-hiën-t'ang tî Tî t'ing-säng mô!* 'Why, surely, it is the very Tî who forcibly entered the summer palace!' *Hau-k'ia chüên*, Chrest. 10. d. 12.

*ngò mô - fî shuô-huáng pü-ch'ing!*

我莫非說謊不成

'I surely do not lie at all!'

*mô-fî shí t'á kiën-liàu kwei!*

莫非是他見了鬼

'Surely he has seen a ghost!'

*t'ien-hia mô-pü chí k'í kiàu yè! M'ing-tsè.*

天下莫不知其姣也

'In the empire there was not one unconscious of his beauty!'

*wá - fî hiaü-chí t'ien-hia chí í*

無非孝治天下之意

'Filial piety alone he considered to be the means of ruling the empire.' Chrest. *Shing-yü*, 6. b. 17.

453. The expression *nân-tai* 難道, lit. 'hard to say,' has a force similar to the preceding. *Nân-tai* is however common only to the lower style, while *mô-fî*, *mô-pü*, and *wá-fî* belong especially to the higher class of compositions. In the *Hau-k'ia chüên* and the *Shuü-hü chüên* we find *nân-tai* frequently, and it is generally followed by a negative. The negative in *nân-tai*, with this negative particle, combine to form a strong affirmative: e. g. *nân-tai pü-já kù-jín!* 'Surely they are as good as the ancients!' Chrest. 9. l. 8.—*nân-tai tai-hüing huôn-pü-k'ing fù-tsüng!* 'Surely, Sir, you are not still unwilling to comply with my request!' Chrest. 9. e. 1.

*nân-tai tsüü pá-liàu!* 難道就罷了 'Surely this is not all though!'

454. *Pü-ch'ing* 不成 is added as a particle at the close of sentences which begin with any of the above combinations—*mô-fî*, *mô-pü*, *wá-fî*, and *nân-tai*. If *pü-ch'ing* were added to the last example, it would mean, 'Surely this will not be the end of it!' (See an example with *pü-ch'ing* in Art. 452.)

*nân-tai shí \*kiä-tî pü-ch'ing!* 'Surely it cannot be all false!'

*nân-tai shí ngò t'ing-ts'ò-liàu<sup>b</sup> pü-ch'ing!* 'Surely I did not hear incorrectly!'

*mô-pü k'í-liàu<sup>c</sup> ngò pü-ch'ing!* 'Surely he will not exactly eat me!'

*Ni-shuô* 你說 and *nà-tai* 你道 may be regarded as initial particles of the same kind, and may be construed in a similar way.

<sup>a</sup> 假

<sup>b</sup> 錯

<sup>c</sup> 吃

IV. *Negative particles*, 不 *pǔ*, 毋 *fǔ*, 勿 *wù*, 否 *feù*, &c.

455. Negative particles in Chinese are numerous and of distinct classes;—there are direct or absolute negatives, such as *pǔ* and *fǔ*, &c., ‘not;’ and there are prohibitive and conditional negatives, such as *wù*, *mò*, &c., ‘do not;’ and others, which *imply* a negation, such as *wú* and *mǔ*, &c., ‘without.’

456. The particle *pǔ* 不 stands before the word which it negatives. It may be placed before a verb, an adjective, or a noun. Before a verb it is a direct negative, but occasionally prohibitive, and often means ‘cannot;’ before an adjective it has the same effect as *un-*, *in-*, in *unkind*, *insincere*; before a noun it denies the existence of the object, or the amount of duration, if it be a noun of time. It also enters into several adverbial phrases. The force of two such negatives should also be noticed.

## Examples.

*pǔ ì páng-yiá wéi tsing* ‘you do not take friendship as a motive.’ Chrest. 9. b. 22.  
*siàù-tí yí pǔ jèn yén k’ú* ‘I cannot bring myself to speak of going.’ Chrest. 9. a. 26.

*pǔ k’ò pǔ hwú* 不可不會 ‘you could not dispense with meeting him,’ = *ought not to miss meeting him*. Chrest. 10. d. 6.

So also *pǔ-tí-pǔ* signifies ‘cannot be avoided,’ = *must*: e. g.—

*pǔ-tí-pǔ k’ú* 不得不去 ‘I cannot avoid going.’

*pǔ-yáng-pǔ jù-tsè* | 容 | 如此 ‘it cannot be otherwise.’

This force of two negatives exists only when an auxiliary verb accompanies the principal verb. When two different verbs are each affected by *pǔ*, the expression means ‘neither —,’ ‘nor —.’ e. g.—

*pǔ-kí pǔ-hán* 不飢不寒 ‘neither famished nor starved.’ *Móng-tsè*.

But *pǔ wéi pǔ-tó ì* | 爲 | 多 | signifies ‘cannot be considered few,’ *pǔ-tó*, ‘not many,’ forming an adjective, in one word,—*few*.

457. The position of *pǔ* in many colloquial expressions, in which it negatives the verbal notion, is between the principal verb and its auxiliary or the word which conveys the notion of its action having taken effect: e. g. *t’ing-pǔ-kién* ‘I do not hear’ (i. e. so as to understand); *mién-pǔ-liàn* (28. k. 27) ‘cannot avoid,’ lit. ‘avoid not finish;’ *pǔ-tí-tí* (29. l. 24) is a complete sentence, ‘it does not agree,’ = *it is not right*,—said of a time-piece.

458. After some words it enters into adverbial phrases, and may be occasionally construed by ‘without:’ e. g.—

*siāng fāng pǔ-yìn* . . 相逢不飲 ‘for good friends to meet without drinking . .’ Chrest. 8. l. 12.

*siàù-tí sūi pǔ-ts’at* . . 小弟雖 | 才 ‘although I am without talent..’ Chrest. 4. e. 5.



Phrases: *pü-siaü* 不消 'needless.'  
(10. i. 11.)

*pü-siaü* | 宵 'degenerate.'

*pü-chüing* | 忠 'insincere.'  
(3. g. 20; 6. j. 19.)

*pü-shi* | 時 'soon.'

*pü-k'i* | 期 'no great time'  
(before or after). (8. b. 20.)

*pü-j'i* | 日 'not a day,' or  
'not many days,'—soon.

*pü-fä* | 法 'lawless.'

*pü-kiö* 不覺 'unexpectedly.'  
(8. n. 1.)

*pü-wet* | 惟 'not only,' in op-  
position to *yí-tsüè*  
抑且 'but also.'

*pü-piën* | 便 'inconvenient.'  
(8. g. 20.)

*pü-kuó* | 過 'only.'

*pü-yaü* | 要 'do not' (*nóh*).

*shau-pü-ti* 少 | 得 'soon.'  
(9. o. 18.)

459. *Fü* 弗 is a synonym of *pü* 不, and, like that particle, precedes the word which it affects, but its use is less general than that of the latter. It occurs, however, frequently in classical writings. The following are two examples from the *Chüing-yáng*:

*fü wet chi i* | 弗爲之矣 'I will not do it!'

*shí chi q'r fü kiën; t'ing chi q'r fü wän,*

視之而弗見 聽之而弗聞

'To look at them and see them not; to listen to them and hear them not.'

*i fü muan k'i chi shí yü*

以弗滿其職是憂

'Because he had not fulfilled his duty he was grieved.'

460. *Wü* 勿 is a prohibitive negative, and stands generally at the head of the sentence. It is found less frequently in the colloquial style than in that of the books: e. g.—

*wü wü yën chi pü tsau yè!*

勿謂言之不早也

'Do not say that I did not speak early about it!'

*f'i lì; wü - shí, wü-t'ing, wü-yën, wü-tung! Lün-yü.*

非禮勿視勿聽 | 言 | 動

'If improper, do not look at, or listen to, or speak of, or do it!'

*wü wáng wü tsü chàng yè! Chrest. 4. m. 18.*

勿亡勿助長也

'Do not forget! do not help things to grow!'

*wū shé kǐ yún jīn* | 舍己芸人 ‘don’t neglect yourself and weed out other men’s faults.’ Canton Proverb. Cf. also Chrest. 22. n. 23.

461. *Fèu* 叵, which is also read *p’èi* and *p’i* with the significations ‘wicked, bad,’ and ‘to obstruct’ (cf. the meanings of *fī* 非), is a negative particle, equivalent to ‘no!’ ‘it is not so,’ and is sometimes used interrogatively as a final particle. It is undoubtedly allied to *fī* in the ancient language. The examples of its use and its occasional meanings prove this. Thus *shí-fī* 是 |, lit. ‘is, not is,’=‘truth—falsehood,’ or ‘good—bad,’ an expression which might also signify ‘is it so or not?’ But we find *shí-fèu* 是否 is also used in this latter sense, ‘is it true or false?’ Other examples of its use as a negative particle are the following:

*sò yēn wí chī shí fèu*

所言未知是否

‘What I say, I know not whether it be true or not.’

*kě, tsī chīng chī, yáng chī; fèu, tsī wéi chī. Shū-kīng.*

格則承之庸之 | 則威之

‘If they repent, recommend them and employ them; if not, overawe them.’ Chrest. 1. k. 1.

462. The word *fī* 非 ‘it is not’ (opp. to *shí* 是 ‘it is’) is a strong negative particle, and often stands, just as *p’i* 不, like inseparable prepositions in compound words, in which a negative is implied: e. g. *fī-hī* 非理 ‘unreasonable;’ *fī-hī* 非理 ‘irrational;’ *fī-cháng* 非常 ‘uncommon.’

*fī t’áng yǐng-tí* | 同容易 ‘not alike easy.’

*fī-fū mǒ tsò* | 法莫作 ‘do not unlawful things.’

(Cf. Art. 442; the second example. Compare also Chrest. 6. j. 5. *et seq.*; and 9. l. 22.)

463. *Fī* goes with *p’i* in the same sentence, and unites with *wéi* and *mǒ* to form strong affirmatives. (Cf. Art. 452; three examples.)

*fī t’ā p’i k’ò* | 他 | 可 ‘cannot do without him.’

464. *Wú* 無, which commonly means ‘without,’ is frequently used as a negative particle, and sometimes as a prohibitive—‘do not.’

*t’iēn-shàng yǐu, t’i-shàng wú* 天上有地上 | ‘in heaven there is, on earth there is not.’

*wú jū Sūng-jīn* | 若宋人 ‘do not like the man of Sung!’

*wú ò t’i yè* | 以異 | ‘there is no difference.’

Phrases: *wú-jì* 無日 'not for a day at a time.' *Máng-tsà.* = (*pü-jì*.)

*wú-í!* | 異 'wonder not! think it not strange!'

465. *Mò* 莫 'do not!' when it stands alone, is prohibitive, and when joined with adjectives and *yü* 於 it enters into several expressions for the superlative degree: e. g.—

*mò-siáu!* 'do not laugh!' *mò-shuō!* 'do not speak!'

*mò wàng mò-lái!* 莫往莫來 'have no intercourse with!'

*mò shān yü sè* | 甚於斯 'nothing could exceed this.'

*mò tá yü t'ien* | 大於天 'nothing greater than heaven.'

*mò tá chí kung* | 大之功 'excellent merit.'

466. *Wí* 未 'not yet, never yet,' supplies the place of the negative particle in many expressions: v. examples in Arts. 412 (*wí chí yü yè*), 426 (*yü wí wí pü-k'ò*), and 451 (*wú wí chí hō yè-l-ì*). And sometimes *wí* at the close of a sentence produces an interrogation: e. g.—

*shuō liào yè wí?* 說了也未 'have you spoken, or not yet?'

467. *Hiú* 休, 'to cease,' and *hiú-yaú* | 要 are prohibitives, as are also *pí* 別, 'to separate,' and *pí-yaú*. And *mà* 麼, a synonyme of *wú* 無, and *fī* 匪, a synonyme of *fī* 非, are direct or absolute negatives: e. g.—

*míng mà cháng-cháng* 命靡常常 'destiny is not constant.'

*kǐ tē mà cháng* 厥德靡常 'his virtue is not constant.'

*ngò sīn fī shí* 我心 | 石 'my heart is not stone.'

With *mò*, *fī* = *nisi*, unless, but: e. g.—

*mò chí fī hú* 莫赤匪狐 'nothing is a purple red, if not wolves.'

*mò hē fī wū* | 黑 | 烏 'nothing is black, if not crows.'

468. *Wú* 無 very commonly has the force of the preposition 'without' (*sine*): e. g. *wú-tē* 無妻 (*sine uxore*) = 'a widower;' *wú-tē* 無子 (*sine prole*) = 'childless;' *wú-fú* | 父 (*sine patre*) = 'fatherless.' These expressions are all classical, and are to be found in the "Four books." So also *wú-jin* 無人, which = 'nobody.'

469. Several other words are found which serve the purpose of the negative

particle. Such is *wú* 无 the negative of existence, which is a synonyme of *wú* 無: e. g.—

*k'í yí wú fāng* 其益一方 'the increase of it has no bounds.' *Yi-king*.

470. *Wáng* 亡, 'to lose,' is also occasionally used in opposition to *yü* 有, as the negative of existence, but this use of *wáng* is by no means common:

*hó yüè, hó wáng?* 何有何亡 'what had I, and what had I not?'  
*Shi-king*.

471. *Wáng* 罔 is more common as a negative, and it is frequently found as such in the *Shü-king*: e. g.—

*héu fī mīn, wáng shì; mīn fī héu, wáng sz.* *Shü-king*.

后非民罔使民非后罔事

'If the prince be without people, he has no service; if the people be without a prince, they have no duty to perform.'

*wáng yüè tsz sz* 罔有此事 'there is no such thing.'

*ch'í jú wáng wén!* 置若罔聞 'act as if you did not hear!'

472. In the following example it is followed by a negative, and then a strong affirmative is produced: e. g.—

*fān-mīn wáng p'ü tsü* 凡民罔不讖 'among all the people there is no one who hates him not,' = *every body hates him*.

V. *Adversative particles*, 而 *ér*, 但 *tán*, 只 *chē*, 尚 *sháng*, &c.

473. The adversative particles include all words which, being used as conjunctions, imply *opposition*, or the addition of something to the previous clause. The most common particle of this kind in the books is *ér* 而, which, however, has several other uses: (v. Art. 425.) Examples of its use as an adversative particle are very numerous. Thus in the *Chrestomathy*: *fī t'ü wá-yí, ér-yüé hái ch'í* (5. a. 11), 'not only is it profitless, *but* indeed it injures it.' Again, *hiáu-tí ér hái-fán-sháng-chè, sièn-tí* (3. e. 17), 'those who are dutiful and kind, *and yet* are fond of rebelling against superiors, are few.' And *pên lí, ér tsü säng* (3. f. 13), 'let the first principles be established, *and then* practical principles will arise.' In the *Epitaph of K'í-tsü*,—*huàn ér wú-sü, t'üü ér p'ü-sü* (2. k. 20), 'in obscurity, *yet* he was not depraved; in ruin, *yet* he sighed not in despair.'

The particle *ér*, as such, does not appear to have been used in the ancient books, but only in those in and after Confucius' time.

*shü ér p'ü tsü* 述而不作 'to compile, *but* not to compose.'

*tān qī pǔ yèn* 淡而不厭 'tasteless, *but* not loathsome.'

*pǔ sī qī tí* 不思而得 'he does not think, *and yet* he obtains it.'

*pǔ - shāng qī mǐn kiūn, pǔ nǔ qī mǐn wēi,*

不賞而民勸不怒而民威

'He gives no reward, *and yet* the people praise him; he shows no anger, *and yet* the people fear him.'

474. *Tán* 但 'but yet, but especially,' is a common adversative particle both in the books and in the higher style of conversation. In the latter it is often joined with *shì* 是, and it frequently stands at the beginning of an independent clause, like *but* in English, as an expletive. In this sense it is joined with *chē* 只 'only,' and it means 'simply.' It appears to be equivalent to *doch*, 'yet,' in German, in such phrases as, — *Setzen sie doch!* e. g. —

*tán tō pǔ fāng!* | 坐不妨 'but sit down! don't fear!' and

*tán shuō pǔ fāng!* 'but speak! there's no objection!'

In the Chrest. (9. b. 3), *tán chuāng tì-sū* 'but (or only) every thing is packed.' And again (9. c. 11), *tán-chē-shì*... stands for 'but' or 'but only:'

*tán chē wú pāng-yiù kě tì t'ing* 'but he had no friends whom he could invite.'

*Tán* 單 'only, single,' and *tān* 儻 are frequently used for the above *tán* 'but, only:' e. g. —

*tán chē kuàn hū-shuō* 單只管胡說 'but he only talks nonsense.'

475. *Chē* 只, 'only,' comes also into the category of adversative particles. It is often followed by *shì* 是 in the lower classes of composition, in which it is more commonly found than in the classics.

*Tí* 得, *p'á* 怕, *kuàn* 管, and *hài* 好 also follow *chē* and intensify it or add something of their own meaning to it.

#### Examples.

*shuō - lái chē - p'á nǐ pǔ sīn*

說來只怕你不信

'I would speak, *but* I fear that you would not believe.'

*qī - jīn mǔ - fǎ chē - tǐ kān t'ā*

二人沒法只得跟他

'The two men had no alternative *but* to follow him.'

*chē sān-jī t'íu lai* | 三日就來 'but in three days he will come.'

yèn - k'āi yèn - k'āi, chě tsó pū chī,

眼開眼開 | 做不知

'His eyes were open to it, *but* he feigned not to know.' Cf. Chrest. 8. k. 10; 9. c. 11.

476. *Chě-p'á* is the common phrase for 'I suppose, perhaps,' in certain clauses, and it is often used in ironical passages: e. g.—

t'ien - hiá chě - p'á pū sāng tsai-tsè!

天下 | 怕不生才子

'I suppose there never was a man of genius in the world!'

chě-p'á nì kién-liaù kwē-liaù! 'perhaps you have seen a ghost!'

477. *Chì* 止, 'to come to a point and stop,' is often used like *chě*, or perhaps for it, though sometimes *chì* is the more appropriate particle: e. g.—

gai chī jū shīn, pū chì jū tsè,

愛之如身不止如子

'He loves him as himself, and not merely as a son.'

478. *Wei* 惟 (variously written 唯 and 維) 'only, but,' and *naì* 乃 'then, but,' and *sháng* 尙 'yet,' are also used as adversative particles.

#### Examples.

*wei k'ài wei k'āng!* 惟幾惟康 'but be exact and firm!' (1. e. 7.)

In 2. n. 2. and 6. *wei* seems to be used in its original sense,—'to consider.'

*naì ch'ü tá-fá* 乃出大法 'then he issued his great law.' (2. l. 20.) And

*naì p'í k'ü-k'ü yü shí-sü* . . . (9. l. 15) 'but if one must needs scrupulously comply with the world's custom . . .'

*sháng yüè yuèn-k'è tsai tsè* (10. i. 23) 'but we have a guest here from a distance.'

*niên sūi làu - mai, sháng nāng ch'í - mǎ,*

年雖老邁, 尙能馳馬

'Though aged and infirm, *yet* he can ride on horseback.'

479. In addition to the above, many words are used as adversative particles in the various classes of composition, and each class often has its own peculiar words for this purpose. Examples of the uses of the following will be found in the Chrestomathy: *yīn* 因 for 'then' (8. e. 4; 10. e. 25); *tsai* 早 'then' (8. c. 11; 8. c. 29); *pién* 便 'then' (9. m. 18; 10. a. 21); *tsiú* 就 'then' (8. a. 16); *sūi* 遂 'forthwith, then' (17. g. 27; 17. n. 20); *tsí* 則 'then' (21. d. 8; 21. d. 14); also (3. k. 23; 4. a. 29); *k'ü* 却 'then, in the next place, but' (8. b. 1; 17. m. 22; 14. b. 3). Cf. also *qí-r-tsí* 而卽 'and then' (9. c. 18).

480. *Fāng* 方, *t'ái* 纔, and *siuen* 旋 (in official papers especially), with *ní* 逆, *k'ing* 竟, and *tau* 倒, are all found in the sense of 'then,' or 'but then,' and may be looked upon as adversative particles. The exact meanings of these words may be found in the Dictionary (Part IV); and reference be made to the following passages in the Chrestomathy: (8. h. 2.—6. e. 9.—11. k. 15.—12. o. 18.) Compare also the uses of *j'ing* 仍 and *j'en* 然, as adversative particles.

# VI. Causative particles, 以 *ì*, 故 *kú*, 因 *yin*, 由 *yiú*, &c.

481. The causative particles take different positions,—being either first or last in the sentence, according as they are in construction or not with the other words of the sentence; for sometimes the original signification of the word is considered, and then it is held in construction, though the rendering in English must be by a causative conjunction: e. g. in the Chrest. 9. b. 22. *p'ü* 以 *p'ang-yü* *wei* *t'ing* 'for that friendship is not your feeling,' or 'since you have no friendly feeling;' 以 commonly means 'to take, to use,' as it does in this passage.

482. The word 以 *ì* 'to use, to take,—by,' is less commonly employed alone as a causative particle than as a verb to stand for the preposition 'by, with.' As a causative particle it is often joined with some other word.

It also shows the *purpose* or *intention*, the *instrument*, the *means* or *cause by which*, and the *reason why*: e. g. in the Chrest. 2. h. 15. 以 *ì* *li yü shí* (2. h. 15) 'in order to establish them in the world.' Again, *tsin sz* 以 *ping-ming* (2. i. 23) 'to proceed to death by being regardless of life.' And *wei-shin* 以 *ts'än sz* (2. j. 10) 'to bow down in order to preserve the ancestral rites,' and *säng-jin* 以 *ching* (2. l. 16) 'that the living might become upright.' In the following example from the *Lün-yü*, 以 may be translated 'the reason why' or 'the cause wherefore;' e. g. 'our master's affability, good-nature, courtesy, moderation, and deference are the cause of his obtaining it' (以 *li-chi*): (v. 3. m. 7—14.)

*Hó-ì shí k'ì p'ü-t'ái?* (4. e. 1) 'by what means shall I know that they are without talent?' *Hó-ì* 何 以 (4. j. 21) means 'for what cause or reason?' = 'in how far?'

Coupled with *shí* 是 (v. 4. k. 28) it signifies 'for this reason.'

Followed by *wei* 爲 (v. 4. o. 20) it means 'because.'

In *yü* 以 *fí-ü* (19. b. 11) 'declared his intention of deposing and setting on the throne.' In 6. a. 7. and 8. j. 14. 以 signifies 'in order to;' in 6. c. 2. and 17. f. 4. it means 'with.' And numerous examples will be found of its use with the above meanings in different parts of the Chrestomathy.

483. *Yü* 由 'origin, source,' when it forms the equivalent for a causative particle, is found at the end of the clause: e. g. *chüi k'ì ching-tuán chü yü*

'if we examine into the causes of this disordered state of the government:' (v. Chrest. litho. 11. e. 19.) But at the beginning of a clause it often means simply 'from.'

## Examples.

*pū chī k'ī yīu* 不知其由 'I know not the reason.'

*yīu kīn ì-kī yuèn* 由近以及遠 'from the near even to the remote.'

*yīu Yau Shun chí-yū T'ang* | 堯舜至於湯 'from Yau and Shun down to T'ang.'

*ì-kī* and *chí-yū* are the regular phrases for 'up to, even to' (*usque ad*).

Phrases: *yīu-yīu* 緣由 or *ts'ing-yīu* 情 | 'the causes by which,'

*yīu-nì* 由你 'I permit you.'

484. *Yīn* 因 'a cause, a reason,' is variously used for 'because, therefore, when, and then:' e. g. *yīn jī-shān ts'at-yō* (litho. 12. b. 7) 'in consequence of that he went to the hills to collect medicinal herbs.' *Yīn p'ên-chú shí hat, t shí līng-jīn* (litho. 13. b. 20), 'as, in his native place, there was an influential military man, who, trusting in his great power, had ill-used people.' *Yīn kién shí-cháng-tsai māt kwān* (17. l. 30) 'when (or because) he saw that the ten Constant Attendants were selling the offices of state.' *Chē yīn lai t' tsau* (10. m. 16) 'only as I came early.'

485. When *yīn* 因, 'because,' stands at the beginning of the *protasis*, *sò-ì* 所以 or *kú* 故, 'therefore,' is the corresponding word to begin the *apodosis*: e. g. *yīn-wéi t'ā lai t'ī ch'ī, sò-ì māt t'ā*, 'because he came late, therefore he scolded him.' *Yīn t'ā pū lai, kú-tsè ngò pū-hwān-hì*, 'as he did not come, on account of this I was displeased.'

Phrases: *yīn hó yuèn-yīu?* 因何緣由 'for what reason and cause?'

*yīn tsè chī kú* | 此之故 'for this reason.'

*yīn-wéi* | 爲 'because.' *yīn-yuèn* | 緣 'cause or reason.'

*yīu-yīn yīu-yuèn* 有因有緣 'it is providential.'

It is joined with *sián* 循 'to revolve, to go in a circle,' and *jīng* 仍 'as before,' in the sense of 'to continue;' thus,—*yīn-sián* and *yīn-jīng* mean 'to act as before, to be remiss, to follow routine merely;' and are found in the Peking Gazette with these significations.

486. It will be seen by the articles just preceding that *yuèn* 緣 also performs the part of a causative particle. It is similar in use to *yuèn* 原 and the other causative particles, to which it is frequently united: e. g.—

*yuèn p'ên tsūi ô* | 本罪惡 'on account of our sin and wickedness.'



*yuên-tzè pû yǐ-sīn* | 此不悅心 'on this account he was unhappy.'

*yuên-lai jû-tzè* 原來如此 'and this was its original state.'

*yīn pû kú tsīn - tsī chī yuēn*

因不顧親戚之 |

'Because no regard was given to relatives.'

Phrase: *yuēn-kú* | 故 'reason, cause,' used as a noun.

487. *Kái* 蓋 or 盍 'for, because,' must also be placed in this category. It always begins the clause to which it belongs. It introduces something to confirm or explain a declaration, like *nam* in Latin.

*kai shāng-shí chāng-yuēn pû tsāng k'í tsīn chē*

| 上世嘗有不曾其親者

'For in ancient times they never buried their relatives.'

*kai p'ên lāng-sāng chí pû wāng*

| 本狼生志不忘

'For their origin, being born of a wolf, they never forgot.'

*Kai-i* | 以 is found as a phrase, 'for this reason.'

488. *Kí* 既, which is an auxiliary verb for the past tenses (cf. Arts. 194, 195), frequently marks the notion of causation, though the proper construing would be with *being* or *having*; and this may be turned into a clause beginning with *since* (*quoniam*, or *si quidem*) (cf. Chrest. 10. n. 21. and Art. 491): e. g.—

*kí mīng tsīè chē* 既明且哲 'since he is enlightened and become wise.' *Shī-k'ing*.

The absolute form of the sentence often necessitates this mode of construing: thus—*chē-tāng* 'this rank,' *chē-yāng* 'this sort,' when put absolutely, or as the *protasis* of a sentence, convey either the hypothetical or the causal notion, and must be construed by 'if this is the state of things,' or 'since this is the case.' (Cf. 21. l. 1—12.)

## VII. Conditional particles, 若 *jō*, 如 *já*, 假如 *kià-já*, &c.

489. Conditional or hypothetical particles are such as introduce a conditional or hypothetical clause; as, *jō* 若 'if, as,' *já* 如 'as,' *kià-já* | 如 'supposing:' e. g.—

*jō-shí kó chí-ch'ing lai-shí t'í jén* . . (14. a. 7—15) 'if he were an upright and honest man . .'

*jō tsai ts'ó wá* 若再錯悞 'if he again err.'

*jō t'á pû lai, ngò tsíu pû k'á*, 'if he does not come, then I shall not go.'

490. *Shí* 是 or *jèn* 然 is added to *jō* to strengthen it: e. g.—

*jèn jō-shí k'án-kién tsò-sing fī-kuò, kàn-chō pà k'ū-yaū-tai tà-ch'ing k'í-kó*  
*sà kō-tā, tsaiú k'ò-ì kià-ch'ū pū-siàng,* 'if when a man sees a shooting  
 star (lit. 'a rebel star') flying over, he quickly, with his girdle, ties  
 several sure (lit. 'dead') knots, he will destroy the evil omen.'  
 (v. Wade's Cat. of *t'ien*, No. 130.)

491. *Kí* 既 often has the same force as the conditional particle *jō*, and they are sometimes joined in one expression: e. g.—

*kí yaū hng, hò pū tsau k'ú* (10. n. 21), 'if he wanted to go, why didn't he go before?'

*jō-kí* 'it being so, if it is so,' implying that it really is so.

In the books *jō-chè* | 者 is employed for 'if,' when the conditional particle is placed prominently forward.

492. *Kià-já* 假如 is found most commonly in scientific works, on mathematics, &c. *Pí-já* 譬 | and *pí-fāng* | 方 or *pí-yū* | 喻 more commonly occur in the language of conversation. *Kià-já* generally introduces a case for comparison: e. g.—

*kià-já yuè jín, pū-sín lèng-huòq pū-mì,* 'suppose a man does not believe that the soul is indestructible.'

493. *Hwò* 或, which is used for *either* and *or*, and implies *doubt*, may also fill the place of a conditional particle, and be construed by 'if' or 'whether;' it corresponds in some respects to the particle *ἂν* of the Greek: e. g.—

*hwò yí - shí fūng - chō hiāng . .*

或一時逢着兇

'If once perchance you should meet with evil . .'

494. *Keù* 苟, *shì* 使, *t'àng* 倘, *t'àng-já* | 如, and several other conditional particles are employed in literary composition (cf. Art. 265, p. 94): e. g.—

*keù pū hiò, hò wèi jín? Sān-té k'ing.*

苟不學何爲人

'If he do not learn, how can he become a man?'

*shì mù fī shí wá yū kién. Siūn-tsé.*

使目非是無欲見

'If the eye be evil, it is useless to try to see with it.'

495. But the conditional notion is very often implied without any conditional particle being expressed. The absolute nature of the *protasis* of a sentence often implies a condition, the result of the carrying out of which is expressed in the *apodosis*: (cf. Wade's Cat. of *t'ien*, 68, 99, 183; but in 130, *jō-shí*, 'if,' is inserted.)

VIII. *Illative particles*, 故 *kú*, 就 *tsiú*, 乃 *naí*, 則 *tsei*, &c.

496. The illative particles correspond to the causative particles; the latter mark the *cause* or the *reason*, the former the *consequence* or the *inference* (cf. Arts. 484, 485): e. g.—

*yín t'á shí pū tsūng-míng, kú pū hiaú-tě*, 'because he is wanting in intelligence, therefore he does not understand.'

*yín-wei ngò sāng-píng, tsiú pū lai*, 'because I was taken ill, therefore I did not come.' (Cf. also *tsei* 2. j. 5. and 2. j. 20; 3. k. 6, 10, 23.)

Some causative particles indeed are used for both purposes; as, *yín* 因, 以. (Cf. *yín* for 'then, therefore,' in Arts. 479 and 484.)

Very frequently the illative particle is not expressed in the *apodosis*, but it must be supplied in translation: e. g.—

*t'á pū tsò Hwáng-tí, ngò pū tsò Shèu-siāng*, 'if he does not become Emperor, then I shall not become Prime Minister.'

497. It will be seen that the illative particles keep their illative force most clearly in those sentences in which the *protasis* may be construed as a *cause*. If the *protasis* begin with an equivalent for *when* or *if*, the illative particle is *then*, and simply marks the sequence or the result of the condition.

## Examples.

*hoú ts'ung hién tsè shíng* 后從諫則聖 'when the prince follows good counsels, then he will become wise and good.'

*wei shíng jén tsè chí kī* 惟聖人則知幾 'but being a sacred sage, then he will know how to time things.'

*hién-chè tsè nāng chí* 賢者則能之 'when a man is wise, then he can do it.'

*kí yíu tǎ, pī yíu sé* 既有塔必有寺 'as there is a pagoda, there must be a monastery.'

*keú pū hió, síng nai ts'ien* 苟不學性乃遷 'if one does not learn, then nature changes for the worse.'

IX. *Interrogative particles*, 乎 *hú*, 耶 *yé*, 何 *hó*, 孰 *shú*, &c.

498. The interrogative particles are very numerous. Some are *initial*, as regards position, as *hó* 何, *shú* 誰, *shú* 孰, etc.: others are *final*, as *hú* 乎, *yé* 耶, *tsai* 哉, etc. The former correspond to *what* and *who*; the latter to mere marks of interrogation which have a pronunciation (cf. Arts. 255, 256): e. g.—

*k'í k'ò hó tsai?* 其可 | | 'how will this do?'

ər chī-tsai hū? 尔知道乎 'do you know it?' (尔 contr. for 爾.)

yü jīn hū tsai? 由人乎 | 'does this come from men?'

499. Hó 何 'what, why,' is most common in phrases and expressions for *why?* or *how?* e. g.—

tsi jū-chī hó? (4. b. 5; 4. c. 5) 'then how will you act?' (B.)

tsi hó i i yü . . ? (4. j. 20) 'how is that different from . . ?' (B.)

hó-kú tsò tsè t'au (9. f. 24) 'why do you make this formal expression?'

k'an shí jū-hó? (11. h. 13) 'what do you think of it?'

ní jū-hó pū k'í (11. m. 13) 'why don't you take (eat or drink) it?'

ər huán hó píng yē? 尔患何病耶 'with what disease are you afflicted?'

jū ching jīn hó? 如正人 | 'how can he correct others?'

500. Some of these interrogative particles are indeed the same as interrogative pronouns (cf. Arts. 172—174), and, as such, are capable of standing for the correlative notions, which correspond to the several forms of interrogation; e. g. hó 'what?' may stand for 'any' or 'some,' so may shuí 'who?' or shū 'who?' e. g.—

shuí yau shuí lai? 誰要誰來 'who wishes any one to come?'

shū yuén shū chí? 孰願 | 至 'who wishes any one to come?'

In reply to the question t'ien-tsè hó-tsai (17. n. 3) 'where is the Emperor?' we have pū chī hó wáng (17. n. 15) 'I know not *where* he is gone.' And in the phrase wú-naí-hó 'without any other resource,' hó is used as the correlative of hó 'what?' (Cf. 11. j. 2. and often.)

Phrases: hó-kú?   故 'for what reason?'	wei-hó?   爲   'why?'
hó-kú?   居 'wherefore?'	yīn-hó?   因   'for what?'
hó-wei?   爲 'on what account?'	jū-hó?   如   'how?'
hó-jīn?   人 'who?' (18. h. 23.)	hó-tsai?   在 'where?'

501. The interrogative particles shuí 誰 and shū 孰, like hó, partake of the nature of pronouns rather than of particles, because they generally require pronouns for their equivalents in the translation; but they belong also to the class of particles, for they are often merely marks of interrogation, which is sometimes effected without them.

#### Examples.

shí shuí chī kuò yú? 是誰之過與 'whose fault is it?'

tsò t'ing chò shuí? 作亭者 | 'who made the pavilion?'

*shǐ wéi hǎo xué hǐ?* | 爲好學 'which of you love to study?'

*shǐ yuàn shǐ chí yē?* | 願至耶 'what does he desire which he does not obtain?'

502. The interrogative particle *tsai* 哉 is used as a final particle, and often one of the other interrogative particles, or a word used as such, is placed at the beginning of the same clause.

## Examples.

*hó yǐt yǐ tsè tsai?* | 有於此 | 'what is this to me?'

*k'í yǐt kiá yǐ tsè tsai?* 豈有加於此 | 'how can any thing be added to this?'

*hí k'ò tsai?* 奚可 | 'is it possible?' or 'how can it be?'

*wú tsí tsú tsai?* 烏足道 | 'how can we speak of it enough?'

503. The particle *hú* 乎 is joined with *tsai* at the end of clauses: e. g.—

*wéi jīn yǐt k'í q'í yǐt jīn hú-tsai?*

爲仁由己而由人乎 |

'As for virtue, is it a matter for myself or for others?'

*jīn yuàn hú-tsai?* 仁遠 | | 'is virtue so far away?'

504. The particle *hú* 乎 itself, when final, is interrogative, or a mark of exclamation or commiseration; but in other positions it generally stands for *yú* 於 'in, with respect to,' and 'than;' and sometimes it is a mere expletive.

## Examples.

*chí yǐ hú chí shé hú?* 執御乎執射 | 'shall I drive the chariot or wield the spear?'

*í hú fài hú?* 宜 | 否 | 'is it right or is it not?'

*hóu - shí chí shíng ché, mǒ shíng hú Hán yǐ T'áng,*

後世之盛者莫盛 | 漢與唐

'The glory of later times does not eclipse the glory of the *Han* and the *T'ang* (dynasties).'

*yáng-yáng hú!* 洋洋 | 'how vast!' (lit. 'ocean-like.')

505. *Yē* 耶 (sometimes written *yē* 耶) is another interrogative final particle, and, like *tsai* and *hú*, often has an auxiliary particle at the beginning of the clause: e. g.—

k'ì tai yü p'ing q'r heü t'au yê?  
 豈待有病而候禱耶

'Why wait until you are sick and then pray?'

tsè k'ì k'in yü jên ts'ing yê? Chuáng-tsà.  
 此豈近於人情邪

'How does this accord with human feelings?'

hò ì ch'ì k'ì jên yê?  
 何以知其然耶

'How can I know that it is thus?'

506. Some of the interrogative particles imply a negation. Such are, *hò* 盍 'why not?' (*quare non*); *mò-f'í* 莫非 'surely, not otherwise than...?' (*certe*); and *feü* 否 'or not?' (*nonne ita est*),—like a particle of doubt. *Hò* and *mò-f'í* are placed at the beginning, but *feü* at the end of sentences.

*hò hò yén q'r chí?* 盍各言爾志 'why do not you all speak your minds?'

*Hò* 害 (usu. pron. *hai* 'to injure') appears to be used for the above *hò*: e.g.—

*hò p'ü wei?* 害不違 'why do you not resist?'

*feü yü muàn nién?* 否與滿年 'is he indeed of full age?'

*tsü - hiá ch'ì wü s'in yü feü yê?*

足下知吾心 | | 也

'Do you, Sir, indeed know my intention?'

Several examples of *mò-f'í* will be found in Art. 452, and of *feü* in Art. 461.

507. *K'ì* 豈 'how?' is also an interrogative particle in common use in books and in some colloquial phrases: e. g. *k'ì-k'án* | 敢 'how dare I!' which is an equivalent for 'I thank you!' 'I do not deserve the honour!' *Wú* 惡, *hò* 曷, *hü* 胡, *h'í* 奚, *yén* 焉, and *g'an* 安, as well as *k'ì*, are interrogative particles when placed at the beginning of clauses.

#### Examples.

*k'ì wei k'èu - f'ü yü k'ì - k'è ch'ì hai?* (Cf. ex. in Art. 501.)  
 豈惟口腹有饑渴之害

'Do only the mouth and the stomach suffer from hunger and thirst?'

*süi tó yí h'í ì-wei?* 雖多亦奚以爲 'though many, yet what use are they?'

*wú hé k'ò?* 惡 | 可 'what can be done?'

*wú náng tāng chī?* 惡能當之 'how could I bear it?'

*wú hé ch'ing míng?* | | 成名 'how will he perfect his reputation?'

*hó chī yǐng?* 曷之用 'what use is it?' *Yi-k'ing.*

*wú-tai há p'ü k'í há?* 吾子胡不立 | 'why not establish yourself?'

*yên k'í ts'ung chī?* 焉其從之 'should he follow him?' (See also the first example in Art. 445.)

*yên k'í jín yù?* 焉離仁與義 'why forsake benevolence and justice?'

*ān tē tsū sūn hū?* 安得足心 | 'how can you be content?'

*ān náng tū yè?* 安能脫也 'how can we escape?'

508. There are various particles, or interrogative adverbs, used in the colloquial style for the question as *k'í* 幾 'how many?' *nà* 那 'which?' *ts'ung* 怎 'how?' (Cf. Arts. 255 and 256, and read pp. 27—30 in the Chrestomathy.)

509. The affirmative expressions *nán-tai* and *p'ü-ch'ing* (see Arts. 453 and 454), the former at the beginning, the latter at the end of the clause, also indicate a kind of question, which always expects the answer *yes* in reply to it. *Nán-tai*, lit. 'hard to say,' is in some respects similar to the German expression *viel-leicht, vielleicht* for *sehr leicht* 'probably, perhaps, doubtless;' and *p'ü-ch'ing*, lit. 'not perfect,' like *nicht wahr?* (See Schott's *Chin. Sprach.* p. 134. note.)

510. To the above *yü* 與 or *yü* 歟 must be added as an interrogative particle: e. g.—

*jén ts'í Shün p'ü k'ín yü?* 然則舜不禁 | 'if so, then why did not Shün resist?' (Cf. Chrest. 3. l. 29.)

#### X. Dubitative particles, 或 *huò*, 與 *yü*, &c.

511. By dubitative particles are meant such words as give a character of *doubt* to the clause or sentence in which they occur; and according to this definition several of the conditional and interrogative particles might come under the same category. Several adverbs of *doubt* have already been given in Art. 253. It remains to give a few examples of their use here.

##### Examples.

*huò p'ü chī k'ian-hai* 或不知叫號 'probably they knew not the cries out of doors.'

*huò yǒu jiāng-hú* 或有江湖 'perhaps you have rivers and lakes;'

*huò yǒu wáng hóu* | | 王侯 'perhaps you have kings and nobles;' which may be construed *either &c. or &c.*

*huò jēn huò pǔ-jēn* 或然或不然 'perhaps it is so, perhaps not' (Cf. Art. 493.)

*k'ieh chí yǒu yǐ yǐ chí chí yǒu?* 求之與抑 | 之 | 'does he ask for it or do they give it him (without asking)?' (Cf. Chrest. 3. l. 27.)

The following sentence from *Chuáng-tsə* is worth inserting here to illustrate the uses of dubitative and interrogative particles:

*Kia yǒu Yi shǔ shí qī shǔ fī hǎ?*  
甲與乙孰是而 | 非 |  
'Does Kia or Yi speak the truth?'

#### XI. Intensive particles, 太 *t'ái*, 忒 *tě*, 絕 *tsü*, &c.

512. The intensive particles are words which are used to strengthen the assertion or negation in respect of some particular quality. They are generally verbs according to their primary signification, but as intensifiers they retain only so much of the verbal notion as will serve the purpose of emphasising the word or sentence in which they occur. We shall take each separately, with one or two examples.

513. *T'ái* 太 and *tě* 忒 are very commonly used for *too*, *too much*.

##### Examples.

*ché k'í t'ái hién* 這計太險 'this project is too dangerous.'

*t'ái lǎng táng sǐ* 太冷靜些 'a little too cold' (of a person or a place).

*hiá shǒu tǐ hǎn-hǎu* 下手 | 狠了 'you struck me with too much violence.'

*hió tǐ tsau hiáu sǐ* 却 | 早了 | 'but too early rather.'

*ní yě tǐ tō sīn* 你也 | 多心 'to take it too much to heart.'

514. *Shin* 甚 'very,' *tsü* 絕 'decidedly,' *k'í* 極 'extremely,' are all used as intensive particles.

##### Examples.

*wén-lǐ pǔ-shin t'áng-t'óu* 文理不甚通透 'his scholarship is not very profound.'

*shin shí k'í-kwai* 甚是奇怪 'it is strange indeed.'



*tsū wá kī-hoat* 絕無機會 'decidedly unfortunate.'

*tsū wá jīn-kú* | 無人居 'utterly without inhabitants.'

*ché yè-k'ò siau-kī-lian* 這也可笑極了 'this is indeed extremely ridiculous.'

*kī mē kiaū tī huá* 極沒竅的話 'language quite unintelligible.'

*kī k'ian tī huá-kūng* | 巧的畫工 'a most clever artist.' (Cf. Arts. 331 and 334.)

Various other words are used as intensive particles, such as *hañ* 'good,' *shī-fān* 'the whole,' &c.

515. In literary compositions several words of intensifying power occur, which correspond to the expressions *much more*, *much less*, &c. Such are *yū* 愈, *yī* 益, *mī* 彌, and *huāng* 况.

#### Examples.

*tsū yī kīn pī yī yuèn* 此愈近彼愈遠 'the nearer this approaches, the farther that recedes.'

*k'ú shíng yī yuèn qī yī pō* 去聖益 | 而益薄 'the farther we depart from the sacred wisdom, the meaner we become.'

*yúng chí qī mī míng, sū - chí qī mī chuáng,*

用之而彌明 宿之而 | 壯

'Use it and the brighter it becomes, confine it and the greater it will grow.'

*chīn tē pū tai yī sá, huāng yī yèn há!*

真德不待於事 况於言 |

'True virtue does not expect great deeds, much less does it wait on great words!'

516. *Shīn* 矧 is used in a similar way to *huāng*, but it is far less common: e. g.—

*chī chīng kàn shīn, shīn tsā yuè Mian,*

至誠感神矧 茲有苗

'The highest integrity influences the gods, much more the *Mian* people.' (Cf. Prémare, *Not. Ling. Sin.* p. 215.)

#### XII. Exclamatory particles, 嗚 ya, 兮 hi, 哉 tsai, &c.

517. The particles of exclamation are very numerous in Chinese, and they vary according to the style of composition,—its antiquity and its peculiarities of literary and colloquial usage. In the books the exclamatory particles have

an important value. They serve to express in the language, with the written characters, those niceties of construction and expressions of feeling for which *sounds* and *gesticulations* are employed in oral communications.

518. *Yā* 呀 and *ā* 阿 are very common. They denote *wonder* or *astonishment*: e. g.—

*yā ché-shèu shí, p'ing p'ü-shí ngò-tsò-tí!* 'Ah! this ode was not of my composing!'

They are sometimes joined as one exclamation: e. g.—

*ā-yā k'ín-yè kiò m'ü-liàu t'ang!* 'Ah! to-night we are again without a lamp!'

519. *Hí* 兮 is a particle of exclamation, used most commonly in poetry, in the *Shi-k'ing*, and in all ancient poems.

*p'í méi j'ín hí!* 彼美人兮 'that beautiful person!'

520. *P'í* 匹 and *p'ü* 匹 are used to express *contempt* or *defiance*, and are often equivalent to 'begone!' e. g.—

*p'í! t'ü-shí n'í p'ei-heü l'ing-kwei!* 'Ah! all this confusion behind one's back was all through you!'

*p'í! n'í shí t'ó tá t'í kwán-qr!* 'Ah! you are indeed a very distinguished officer!'

521. In the plays of the *Yüan* dynasty, *ü* 兀 is used as an exclamation or call to an inferior: e. g.—

*ü-ná f'ü-j'ín p'ü-yau t'í-k'ü!* 'O woman! do not cry and weep!'

*wü-t'í p'ü-shí ngò hi'ing-t'í?* 'Ah! is it not my brother?'

*wü-ná k'í-shü-t'í!* 兀那寄書的 'Halloa! Postman!'

### XIII. Euphonic particles.

522. Particles which may be called *euphonic* are such as serve merely to make a clause sound well. It has been the practice however to denominate *euphonic* many of the particles which we have placed under different classes. It is seldom that a particle is purely euphonic, it generally denotes some *feeling* or *desire* in the mind of the speaker. Many of the words which we call interjections come under this class. In every dialect there are sounds of this kind peculiar to the locality, and when these sounds are expressed in writing, it must be done by some well-known character, which for the time is divested of its ordinary signification, and by the addition of *keü*, 'mouth,' it becomes an interjection or a euphonic particle. This usage has given rise to the euphonic particles of the books, for they were the interjections of ancient times, and indeed some of them remain in use, as such, unto the present hour.

523. Thus *ü* 矣, *yè* 也, and *hí* 兮 are said to be euphonic, while they also denote an affirmation (cf. Arts. 447, 448): e. g.—

*siàng pī-jén ì!* 想必然矣 'I imagine it must be so!'

*k'ò chī chī ì!* 可知之矣 'it may be known!'

*hè-hí! hiuēn-hí!* 赫兮咺兮 'how splendid! how glorious!'

*ān tòè hīng hí!* 安且幸 | 'happy and fortunate!'

*sín yīu yè chē, pū - k'ò tsū yè!* (Cf. Arts. 415, 416, and 442.)

信友也者不可絕也

'Faithful friendship may not be dispensed with!'

*tiēn-hiá k'ò - kiūn yè; tsū lū k'ò - ts'z yè;*

天下可均也, 爵祿可辭也

'One may tranquillize the empire; one may refuse titles and office;'

*pě jīn k'ò - tsū yè; chūng-yūng pū - k'ò nāng yè!*

白刃可蹈也, 中庸不可能也

'One may tread on a naked sword; and not be able to keep the "golden mean!"'

524. *Tsai* 哉 and *hū* 乎 are used as euphonic or exclamatory particles, besides being used as interrogative particles: e. g.—

*fú tsai yén yè!* 富 | 言也 'how rich the language!'

*hiēn tsai Hwūi yè!* 賢 | 回也 'how worthy is Hwūi!'

*kiūn-tsū tō hū tsai!* 君子多乎 | 'has the great man so many (wants)!'

525. The final particle *yè* 也 also frequently occurs in the classics of the Chinese as a euphonic particle, and it then serves the purpose of a comma, by separating the characters, which precede it, from the rest of the sentence, as the following examples will show:

*kīn yè tsī wāng* 今也則亡 'the present is,—then gone for ever.'

*wú sāng yè yīu yāi qīr chí yè wú yāi*

吾生也有涯而知也無涯

'My life has bounds, but knowledge, forsooth, is boundless.'

*sāng kī yè; — sè kwēi yè*

生寄也, 死歸也

'Life is a trust;—at death we resign it.'

△ △

*Fū* also sometimes goes with *yè*, when *yè* is simply euphonic:

*mǒ ngò chī yè fū!* 莫我知也夫 'no one understands me!'

526. *Lǐ* 哩 is used in novels and in the colloquial style as a euphonic particle or as a particle of exclamation; e. g.—

*mǒ shuō má, huàn yāu tà lǐ!*

莫說罵還要打哩

'Not to speak of scolding, I shall beat him as well!'

527. *Prémare* gives these other particles of exclamation: *nǐ* 呢, *pō* 波, *nā* 那; and the student will find others in the course of his reading, but they are seldom used, therefore they need not be given here.

*chē-kó nǐ?* 這個 | 'is it this?'

*k'ò pū-shí pō!* 可不是波 'is it not thus!'

*T'ien-nā!* 天 | 'O Heaven!'

528. *Lǐ* 噫 'Ah!' *tsā* 嗟 'O!' in calling the attention of persons, but sometimes to incite or encourage; and in the *Shī-kīng*, with other particles, as an exclamation arising from pain: *hū-hū!* 'oh! alas!' *shin-ì* 甚矣 'indeed!' *pū-híng* 不 | 'unfortunately!' *gō* 惡 'wretch!' or 'hold!' (*Lat. nefas!*) *yū* 於 'ah!' are all found in the classics at the beginning of sentences, but they are rarely to be met with elsewhere.

529. Words formed by the imitation of natural sounds are very numerous in Chinese; e. g. *kian-kian* 'the crowing of a cock,' *sian-sian* 'the noise of wind and rain.' (See Dr. Morrison's Dictionary, vol. I., under the radical *k'ou* 口 'mouth,' for many expressions of a similar kind.)

530. Among the particles which the Chinese denominate *hú-tsā* are included all words which do not come under the category of nouns, or under that of verbs,—but simply denote the relations which the nouns and the verbs of the sentence bear to each other,—or the feelings which exist in the mind of the speaker at the time the sentence is uttered. Some of these occur always at the beginning, some always at the end of the sentence; others are found in both positions in different sentences. Some particles affect nouns and single words, some affect the whole clause, others bind together the whole sentence. These facts have been noted under each particle, but there still remains much to be learnt, from careful observation, by the student himself. The following *résumé* of the particles may, however, be of service.

1. *Attributive* particles are 的 (411), 之 (412), 者 (415), 所 (421), because they make the words which they affect *attributive*.

2. *Connective*, 亦 (424), 而 (425), 又 (426), 并 (429), 並 (430), 兼 (431), 暨 (432), 且 (433), 及 (436), 連 (436), 也 (437), 夫 (438).
3. *Affirmative*, 是 (440), 然 (441), 也 (442), 焉 (445), 矣 (446), 已 (449), 莫非 and 無非 (452), 難道 (453), 不成 (454).
4. *Negative*, 不 (456), 弗 (459), 勿 (460), 否 (461), 非 (462), 無 (464), 莫 (465), 未 (466), 休, 別, 靡 (467), 无 (469), 亡 (470), 罔 (471).
5. *Adversative*, 而 (473), 但 (474), 只 (475), 止 (477), 惟, 乃 尙 (478).
6. *Causative*, 以 (482), 由 (483), 因 (484), 故, 所以 (485), 緣, 原 (486), 蓋 (487), 既 (488).
7. *Conditional*, 若, 如 (489), 既 (491), 假如 (492), 或 (493), 苟, 使, 倘 (494).
8. *Illative*, 故, 就 (496), 乃, 則 (497).
9. *Interrogative*, 哉, 乎 (498 and 502—4), 何 (499), 誰, 孰 (500), 耶, 邪 (505), 盍, 否, 莫非 (506), 豈, 惡, 曷, 胡, 奚, 焉, 安 (507), 幾, 那, 怎 (508), 與, 歟 (510).
10. *Dubitative*, 或, 與 (511).
11. *Intensive*, 太, 忒 (513), 甚, 絕, 極 (514), 愈, 益, 彌, 況 (515), 矧 (516).
12. *Exclamatory*, 呀, 阿 (518), 兮 (519), 哇, 唔 (520), 兀 (521).
13. *Euphonic*, 矣, 也, 兮 (523), 哉, 乎 (524), 哩 (525), 呢, 波, 那 (526), 噫, 惡 (527).

## SECT. II. ON SENTENCES.

§. 1. *Preliminary remarks.*

531. The first section of this chapter relates to the various forms and modifications of words and phrases, which enter into the composition of sentences, and these simple formations have been there designated *simple constructions*; but, beyond the occasional use of the terms *sentence*, *subject*, *predicate*, *attribute*, and *object*, nothing has been said of the form of Chinese sentences. And, before examples are given, it will be well to explain the meaning intended by the different terms which will be employed.

532. A sentence expresses by the words which it contains not merely a number of separate notions, but a *thought*, or an *assertion*, which is ascertained by the relations which those separate notions bear to each other; e. g. 'the wind blows cold to-day' indicates a *belief* on the part of the speaker; but the words of which this sentence is composed are only the materials with which the thought is expressed; and the same words in a different construction would mean a very different thing, e. g. (1) 'the son loves the father' is one thing, (2) 'the father loves the son' is another. *Tá-fūng* is a 'great wind,' but *fūng tá* means 'the wind is high.' It is important to bear this in mind, for in the structure of sentences we have no more to do with the words themselves, whether simple or compound, but with the relations which exist between them. Relations which, in some languages indeed, are regulated by the inflections of the words themselves, but in Chinese, and in some other languages, they are shown by the relative position of the words and clauses.

533. Every sentence consists of two members only; (1) the *subject*, or that thing about which something is said or predicated, and (2) the *predicate*, or that action or attribute which is asserted of the subject. These are indeed sometimes united by a small word, called the *copula*, which is one of the substantive verbs; but more frequently this is wanting: the principal verb, which contains the predicate, being sufficient of itself to show its relation to the subject. And in Chinese very often the copula is omitted; e. g. *t'ien lǎng* 'the weather is cold;' *ngò pù-hài* 'I am unwell.'

534. There are, moreover, three relations which may exist in the sentence. First, the *predicative* relation,—or the relation of *subject* and *predicate* simply; secondly, the *attributive* relation,—or the relation of some qualifying expression to the *subject* or *object* of the predicate; and thirdly, the *objective* relation,—or the relation of the object (or supplemental expression) to the predicate. These terms are used to distinguish clauses in sentences. Thus a clause which contains subject and predicate simply, is a *predicative clause*, and in this the verb is the principal word. An attribute appended to a subject forms an *attributive clause*, and in this the adjective or attribute is the chief word. A clause added as an object to the predicate is an *objective clause*, and in this the object is the principal word, and if it relate *directly* to the predicate, it is the chief word in the whole sentence. The *predicative* clause conveys a definite and independent thought, and so may

stand alone; e. g. 'the rose is red.' The *attributive* clause cannot stand alone, because it does not express a complete thought, but only one of the elements of the sentence; e. g. 'the red rose,' 'the benighted traveller.' And the *objective* clause too is incomplete when standing alone,—when the object is united to the predicate of a sentence;—e. g. 'black with smoke,' 'withered this morning.' But these three elements of the sentence may be united to form a complete sentence; e. g. 'the red rose withered this morning.'

535. The *attribute* may be, (1) an *adjective*, (2) the *genitive case* of a noun, (3) a *noun in apposition*, or (4) a *noun with a preposition*; e. g. (1) 'a cold day;' (2) 'the king's horse;' (3) 'William, the Conqueror;' (4) 'a man without bravery;' and (5) a *relative clause*, which is explanatory, may be regarded as an attribute of its antecedent\*.

536. The *object* may be (1) the *thing*, or *person*, which the principal verb of the sentence affects, or (2) it may be the *circumstances* of *time*, *place*, *manner* or *causality*, which serve to modify the action of the verb.

537. The *simple sentence* consists of only one clause, in which there is a subject and a predicate, but these may be enlarged and modified to a great extent. The subject in Chinese may consist of one word or of many; e. g. *T'í yǔ* (I. a. 11) 'the Emperor said:' *fàn tá-jín chī táu yü sán* 'the principles of great men generally are three:' (cf. Art. 541.)

538. But sentences in Chinese are seldom simple, they are most frequently complex or compound. A *complex sentence* is one in which there is a *principal* clause and one or more *subordinate*. The subordinate clause stands to the principal clause in one of the following relations, either (1) as its subject, (2) as an attribute of its subject or its object, or (3) as a modification of the whole principal clause. In each case respectively it is a noun sentence, an adjective sentence, or an adverbial sentence.

539. A *noun sentence* in English begins with such words as *that*, *what*, *who*, *when* or *where*; and in Chinese it is recognisable by certain marks and the presence of certain particles, as *sò* 所 and *chě* 者 and *í* 的: (cf. Arts. 411—422.)

540. An *adjective sentence*, which is also an attributive clause, or a relative sentence, is introduced in English by *who*, *which*, and words of that class, as *that*, *how*, *wherein*, *whither*, *why*, *wherefore*; and in Chinese it is distinguished by *í*, but very often no particle is present.

541. *Adverbial sentences* are such as specify the conditions of *time*, *place*, *manner* or *causality*. Adverbial sentences of *time* show (1) the *point of time*, (2) the *duration of time*, or (3) the *repetition of the circumstance*, and are introduced respectively by (1) *when*, (2) *whilst*, (3) *as often as*, &c. Adverbial sentences of *place* relate to (1) *rest in*, (2) *motion to*, or (3) *motion from a*

\* Since writing the above the author has seen an admirable little work on the "Analysis of Sentences" by Dr. Morell, one of Her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools, in which the subject is explained and applied to the English language with a clearness sought for in vain in grammatical treatises generally.

place, and in English they are introduced by (1) *where* or *wherever*, (2) *where* or *whither*, and (3) *whence*. Adverbial sentences of *manner* show (1) *similarity*, (2) *proportion*, or (3) *consequence*, and are introduced by (1) *as*, (2) the comparative degree of the adjective, or *as* after a negative in the principal clause, or by (3) *that*, or *so that*. Adverbial sentences of *cause* show (1) a *reason*, (2) a *condition*, (3) a *concession*, or (4) a *purpose*, and in English they are dependent upon the words (1) *because*, (2) *if* or *except*, *unless* (which=*if not*), (3) *although* or *however*, and (4) *that* or *in order that*. The infinitive mood alone is in English frequently used to express a purpose, and it then constitutes a distinct clause.

542. *Compound sentences* differ from complex sentences in that the clauses of which they consist are not mutually dependent, but are *co-ordinate*, and simply *connected*, with each other. This co-ordination may be considered as being under three relations. Thus when one clause is *supplemental* to the other, e. g. 'the ladder fell *and* the monkey ran away,' it may be called the *copulative* relation; when one clause is *opposed* to another, e. g. 'John is clever, *but* he is not profound,' it may be called the *adversative* relation; and when one clause contains the *reason* for the other, e. g. 'his army was disorganised, *hence* his despair,' it may be denominated the *causative* relation.

543. The *copulative* relation may exist in three degrees: (1) when equal stress is laid on both clauses,—each clause being distinct from the other; (2) when more stress lies on the second than on the first, as in clauses in English with *not only*,—*but*; (3) where the stress increases from clause to clause, as in the figure *climax*, each clause being introduced by some particle of sequence, *first*, *then*, *next*, *finally*, &c.

544. The *adversative* relation may exist in two forms: (1) where the second clause negatives the first (in English by *not*,—*but*), or (2) when the second clause limits the first; as, 'you may read it, *only* read it without stammering.'

545. The third, or *causative* relation in co-ordination, may have two divisions: (1) where the latter of two clauses expresses an effect, the former being the moral or physical cause, or (2) where the latter expresses a reason or motive, the former representing the result. This appears to be a simple inversion, which may be effected by the use of different particles of connection.

546. Compound sentences often suffer contraction by referring the same subject, the same predicate, and the same object to different co-ordinate clauses. Two or more subjects may go to one predicate; two or more predicates to one subject; two or more objects to one predicate; and several circumstances or limitations may be joined together in the same compound sentence, and may belong to the same word in that sentence.

547. Thus much has been said on the analysis of sentences, because without analysis of language in general, we can never arrive at the true analysis of the Chinese, and it is by a ready appreciation of the elementary forms and the scientific terms of grammar that clear, definite, and constant rules can be evolved from the study of Chinese. It is not the knowledge of a vast number of words which constitutes a real knowledge of any language, but it is the



right apprehension of its genius and idiomatic differences, (which is to be attained only by a careful analysis of its forms and constructions,) that will enable the student,—with a fair knowledge of words,—to read, speak, and translate correctly.

§. 2. *The forms of the simple sentence.*

548. A simple sentence may convey (1) a *command*, (2) a *wish*, (3) a *judgment*, i. e. an *assertion*, (4) a *question*, or (5) an *exclamation*. We have therefore to enquire what are the forms in Chinese for *imperative*, *optative*, *assertive*, *interrogative*, and *exclamatory* sentences. The imperative sentence will be dealt with first, because the simple force of the verb, without adjuncts, conveys this sense, and there is a close connexion between the imperative and the optative, at least in meaning. In the same way the root or crude form of the Latin verb expresses a *command*. (Cf. *es* 'be thou,' *ama* 'love thou,' and cf. Arts. 223 and 404.) Then after the assertion comes the question naturally, and these are often similar in form. The exclamation is often only to be distinguished from the question by the manner of its enunciation.

549. The form of the *imperative sentence* is simple and natural. The simple verb expresses the command, and the subject is generally understood; but when expressed, it stands before the verb and never, as a rule, after it, as it may in the English, 'come thou here;' e. g. *lái ché-là*, 'come here,' or *nì lái ché-là*, but not *lái nì ché-là*. *Jù yì chāng yén* (1. a. 16) 'do you also throw light on the subject;' *k'w'at kwān-mq̄n, p'ü yaū tseu-liaù* (12. d. 20), 'quickly shut the doors, and let none go forth:' (cf. 12. i. 22.)

550. When the subject of an imperative sentence is a proper name, or the designation of a person, and not a mere pronoun, it sometimes stands after the verb; e. g. *lái, Yü!* (1. a. 13) 'come, Yü!' but the verbs *ts'ing* 請 and *jāng* 饒 are used commonly before the subject, when that is expressed; e. g. *ts'ing-nì lái ché-là* 'please to come here;' *jāng t'ā k'ü pá* 'let him go away.'

551. The form of the *optative sentence* differs but little from that of the imperative. It is introduced by a verb which signifies to *desire* or to *wish*; e. g. *yuén nì ping-ān* 'may you be happy!' The expressions *pā-p'ü-tē* and *hqn-p'ü-tē* (cf. Arts. 273 and 395) should be remembered in this connexion. In the following passage in the *Sān-kuō* (litho. p. 13. c. 21—24) we have a noun governed by *hqn* as a verb; thus, *hqn lī p'ü nq̄ng!* 'would that my strength were adequate!' or 'would that I were able!' (lit. 'regret strength not able.')

552. Every *assertive sentence* in Chinese consists of a subject which stands first, and a predicate which follows it. Circumstances of time and place may stand before the subject, and circumstances of manner, of cause, and of effect generally stand before the predicate. The subject must be a noun or a word used as such, or it may consist of a sentence used as a noun: (cf. 7. a. 10, 11; 7. f. 15—18; 2. g. 12—16; 8. d. 13—18, which all form subjects.) The subject may be explained, parenthetically as it were, by a word or words in apposition, or by a participial phrase: (cf. 8. o. 16—19; 9. b. 22—27;

2. h. 22—24.) The subject may consist of two nouns, the former being in the genitive case, to express the *origin*, *cause*, or *relationship* of the latter: (cf. 2. g. 12—16; 7. b. 29—c. 1; 2. h. 20—26.) The same remarks refer to the predicate when that is a noun.

553. The predicate generally requires one object, and sometimes two, to complete it; the first is called the *direct* object, the other the *indirect* object; e. g. *ché yǐ-kān-shù lǒ-liào yě-tsè* 'this tree has shed its leaves;' *k'ò-ì yǐng t'ā tsai-kiā ch'ù-jǐ* (14. a. 16) 'I can employ him in the family to go in and out.'

554. *Interrogative sentences* have various forms in Chinese. Sometimes they are to be distinguished by the particles which are present in them, at other times the position of the clause, and of the words in it, shows the interrogative.

(1) When the particles are present, if they are final particles, the subject and predicate remain in the same position as they would in an assertive sentence; e. g. *nì yǐu tūng-tiēn* 'you have some cash;' *nì yǐu tiēn mō?* 'have you any cash?' *ché yǐ-chē-mà shí kǎn-ts'au* 'that horse eats hay;' *ché yǐ-chē-mà shí shímmō?* 'what does that horse eat?' (cf. Arts. 498—509.)

(2) When no interrogative particle is present, the form of the sentence may show that the sentence is interrogative. Two expressions are enunciated, one positive, the other negative, this leaves the mind in doubt, and shows that an enquiry is being made, just as *tō-shau*, lit. 'many-few,' give rise to the abstract notion of *quantity*, and also to a question *how many?* e. g. *t'ā tsai-kiā pū tsai-kiā*, lit. 'he is at home,—not at home?'='is he at home?' By a reference to the articles on the interrogative particles the student will obtain many examples of interrogative sentences.

555. The forms of the *exclamatory sentence* scarcely differ at all from those of the interrogative. They are generally introduced by an interrogative particle or some word clearly of the nature of an exclamation. (See the Arts. on the exclamatory particle; and cf. I. 1. 14—17; II. 1. 9—17.)

### §. 3. *The noun sentence.*

556. The noun sentence is one which occupies the place of a noun, and in Chinese may consist of a verb and its object; e. g. *hai jīn pū hau* 'to injure people is bad.' The particles *chē*, *tí*, and *sō* generally mark the noun sentence.

557. The verb alone, or with adjuncts of time, may constitute a noun sentence, and be the subject of a sentence; e. g. *k'ung yin fī k'í shí yē* (9. o. 5), lit. 'I fear, to drink is not this time;' *T'í siēn-sāng k'ú shí yau k'ú kiū-liào* (10. o. 25), lit. 'Mr. T'í's going is this, he wished to go long since.' Again, *hiō-qr shí sī chí* (3. d. 10) is a noun sentence, and the subject to the verb *yǎ*, which follows. Also *yǐu pāng tsé yuēn-fāng lai* (3. d. 19) and *jīn pū chí qr pū-wōn* (3. d. 29) are noun sentences: (cf. 9. b. 18—27.)

### §. 4. *The adjective sentence.*

558. The adjective sentence is any set of words which explains or qualifies

a noun. A relative clause in English (and in Chinese often a clause in apposition) does this; but generally some particle, as 的, 所, or 者, throws the whole into the form of an adjective clause, the subject of which is represented by the particle; this makes the adjective sentence often to assume the character of a noun (cf. 3. e. 13. etc.); e. g. *kāng-tāng-ti Ti kung-tsè tau-mān* (8. c. 18) is an adjective sentence or relative clause, as it were in apposition to *Kuó kung-tsè* its antecedent: it means literally, 'the one just waiting for Mr. *Ti* to arrive at the gate.'

### §. 5. The adverbial sentence.

559. Adverbial sentences are such as express the circumstances of *time*, *place*, *manner*, and *cause*. They are sometimes introduced by particles in Chinese, but frequently they are without any distinctive mark of this kind; e. g. *noàn-kí tīng-liàu* (8. a. 6—9), *tau tsè-jí* (8. a. 10—12), *jí wí-ch'ü* (8. a. 13) are three adverbial sentences of *time* to the principal sentence *k'í-lai* 'he arose:' *tsü*, 'then,' is really not wanted, but in Chinese it is idiomatic to insert it; it sums up, as it were, the three clauses just mentioned.

560. But adverbial sentences of *time* are often shown by some particle or phrase being present in the sentence; e. g. *yí-kién Ti kung-tsè lai-pai* (8. c. 4), 'as soon as &c.,' is marked by *yí-kién*; and clauses beginning with *yí* and a verb will always mark an adverbial sentence of time. Again, *hwü-kién* (8. e. 28), 'on suddenly seeing,' introduces a similar expression. Phrases beginning with *yí*, 'as soon as,' would sometimes, when followed by *then*, mark the *repetition* which is implied in expressions beginning with *whenever* in English; e. g. *yí shí hò ch'á, tsü kiàng Yīng huá*, lit. 'one time drink tea, then speak English,' i. e. 'whenever he drinks tea he talks English:' (cf. 8. i. 2; 16. d. 2.)

561. *Duration* of time is expressed by an adverbial sentence,—by putting *shí*, 'time,' or *shí-kién*, 'time-interval,' in construction with the sentence; e. g. *ní tīng tsat ché-tí tī shí-heú, ngò p'ü-yau tú*, 'while you are staying here, I will not read;' *Kau-k'ü k'án-shí* (16. a. 11) 'while *Kau-k'ü* was looking on:' (cf. Art. 337.)

562. Adverbial sentences of *place* may refer to *position in* or *motion to* or *from* a place; e. g. *süi-pián tau ná-tí, ngò-t'ung ní k'ü*, 'whenever you like to proceed, I will go with you;' *ngò p'ü k'àng tau ní tī-ti-fāng lai* 'I will not go to your place;' *t'ü-ung ché-tí tau ná-kó tī-fāng, ngò p'ü k'ò k'ü*, 'I cannot go from hence to that place;' *ngò k'ü-tí tī-fāng, ní p'ü k'ò-tí lai*, 'where I go you cannot come.' The student will observe that such adverbial clauses require certain words, as *t'ü-ung* 'from,' *tau* 'to,' and the word *tī-fāng*, 'place,' in construction, just as *shí* and *shí-heú* are generally necessary in adverbial sentences of time.

563. Adverbial sentences of *manner*, which relate to *likeness*, *proportion* or *effect*, are introduced by prepositions or appropriate particles, as *jú* 如, *siáng* 象, *shí* 似, *jín* 任, *cháu* 照, which mean 'as, like as, similar to,

according to,' &c.; or by verbs and particles combined, as *pí* 比 'to compare,' *yū* 於 'than,' &c.; or causative verbs, as *líng* 令 'to cause,' *pí* 俾 'to give,' &c.: (cf. the adverbs of manner, Arts. 246—251; also Arts. 211, 213, and 144—150.)

564. Adverbial sentences which refer to *likeness* are such as the following: *t'ā, siáng fú-tsin, tsò sâng-í*, 'he carries on trade, as his father did,' *nài pí k'ū-k'ū yū shí-sū jū-tsà, shīn fī-t yè* (9. l. 15), 'but, thus strictly to confine ourselves to the world's customs, would certainly not be right:' (cf. 4. m. 25; 8. k. 12; 9. b. 22; 21. e. 24.)

565. Adverbial sentences which relate to *proportion, intensity, equality* are such as *yī-niēn shāng-shēu, piēn tsin-tsin yūi wí* (10. a. 17), lit. 'one take raise hand, then relish it more and more,' which would seem to make the first clause an adverbial sentence of time (cf. Art. 560), but the sense of the passage would lean rather to the version 'as they drank (or 'the longer they drank') they relished it the more,' *t'ā, pū jū nī, tū-shū-tū*, 'he is not so learned, as you,' or 'he is not such a scholar, as you.'

566. Adverbial sentences which relate to *effect* are such as are introduced by *pà* 把 'to take,' *ì* 以 'to use,' *líng* 令 'to cause,' &c.; e. g. *ché-kó jīn sié-tsé, pà nī pū k'ò tū*, 'this man writes, so that you cannot read it,' *t'ā kiàng ché-yáng tō, líng ngò pū nāng kiàng*, 'he spoke so much, that I could not speak at all:' (cf. 1. j. 1—8.)

567. Adverbial sentences of *cause*, which relate to the *ground or reason, condition, concession, purpose or consequence*, require separate treatment, because they are generally dependent upon particles, or words used as such, as *yīn* 因 'because,' *ì* 以 'by,' *sūi* 雖 'although,' *jō* 若 'if,' *tsiū* 就 'then,' &c.

568. Adverbial sentences which express the *ground or reason* are sometimes without, and are sometimes accompanied by, distinctive particles; e. g. *yīn kién Kuó shīn ts'ing* . . (9. e. 15) 'as he saw Mr. Kuó's deep feeling . .,' *ché-kó jīn pū-hau, yīn-wei t'ā má ngò*, 'that is a bad man, because he abused me,' *nī tsò-jī pū-lai, ngò tsiū pū tū-shū*, 'I did not read yesterday, because you did not come' (cf. 4. h. 2. and 18). There should be a causative particle present in the *protasis*, or an illative particle in the *apodosis*.

569. Adverbial sentences which express a *condition* are sometimes, but not always, introduced by a conditional particle (cf. Art. 265); e. g. *pū sūng ngò yī kuoi yāng-ts'ien, ngò pū pà nī ch'ū-k'ú*, 'if you do not give me a dollar, I will not let you go,' *jō-shí t'ā pū-tseu, pī-tíng tà t'ā*, 'if he does not go away, I must beat him,' *pū tsò hau shū, tsiū pū-k'ò-ì kiau t'ā, tū-shū-tū*, 'if he had not made a good book, we could not call him a scholar:' (cf. 4. g. 24—28. and 4. h. 9—14.)

570. Adverbial sentences which express *concession* are nearly always introduced by a particle such as *sūi* 'although,' e. g. *sūi-jén jū-kín pū-k'ú, ho-*

lat t'ā k'ū tē tō, 'although now he does not cry, afterwards he will weep much;' kwei-kwō sūi tsai chung-yáng qī-wán-tī... (23. d. 11) 'although your honourable nation is in the vast ocean twenty thousand miles away;' nī shwō-hū sūi-piēn tō, ngō sīn-pū-tē nī, 'however much you promise, I cannot believe you.'

571. Adverbial sentences which express a *purpose* are sometimes introduced by a particle; e. g. tēn hiaú tī i chung jīn-lân (6. a. 4) 'give practical weight to filial piety and fraternal love, in order to strengthen the relative duties.' But when the purpose is contained in two or three syllables, it may be adjoined without a particle, like the English infinitive when it expresses a purpose.

572. Adverbial sentences which relate to *consequence* would seem to be similar to those under Art. 560, but these express rather the consequence which follows the principal sentence as a cause; e. g. 'he talks, so that he is unintelligible,' contains an adverbial sentence of *manner*; 'he runs so fast, that he will be sure to get there in time,' contains an adverbial sentence of *effect*. In this latter case, one clause contains the *cause*, the other the *effect*; but in the former case, the second clause simply qualifies the verb 'talks.' Examples of these distinctions in Chinese can hardly be given. So much is done by inference from the sense of a passage, that too subtle a distinction would only mislead. But a careful study of the causative and illative particles will be beneficial, and reference should be made to the exercises in Part III.

#### §. 6. The complex sentence.

573. The complex sentence differs from the compound sentence in this, that the clauses of which it is composed are mutually dependent. There is in a complex sentence one principal and one or more subordinate clauses, which come under one of the above-mentioned classes, viz. (1) the noun sentence, (2) the adjective sentence, or (3) the adverbial sentence.

##### Examples.

hū qī shī sī chí 'to learn and constantly to dwell on the subject,' (noun s.)  
pū yī yǐ hū? 'is it not a pleasure?' (principal s.) (3. d. 10,—19,—29.)  
i Kī-tsā kwōi tsō hūng-fān 'by Kī-tsā restoring the great plan,' (noun s.)  
fā shēu shíng yē 'he gave an example to the sacred sages,' (principal s.)  
(2. m. 13: cf. also 8. l. 12. and 9. l. 15—27.)

574. The adjective sentence is an accessory sentence, in apposition frequently to the word which it qualifies; and with the *person or thing*, for which that word is understood to stand, the adjective sentence may be said to be precisely similar to the noun sentence.

##### Examples.

yī-kien Tī kung-tsā lat-pai 'as soon as he saw Mr. Tī coming to call,' (an adverbial s. of time.)  
tsau fī pau yū Kwó kung-tsā 'he hastened to inform Mr. Kwó,' (principal s.)  
kūng-tāng-tī Tī kung-tsā tsau-mn 'who was just then waiting for Mr. Tī to arrive at the gate,' (adjective s. qualifying Kwó.)

§. 7. *The compound sentence.*

575. Compound sentences contain two or more co-ordinate clauses, each being independent of the other, though they are connected either actually by particles or virtually by the sense of the passage.

## Examples.

- t'ien wei chi tung pū nāng kiaí, shing-jin chi yén wá-sò-yung.* (2. i. 9.)  
*nai chí-ú tá-fú, yung wei shing-sz.* (2. l. 20.)  
*ní yí-péi ngó yí-chán, pién pū fú túi-ts'z.* (10. a. 26.)  
*sān jin chē-tē t'ing-péi tsí-kién, Kwó tsíú gān tsó tsáú.* (10. c. 4.)

576. The three states or relations which may subsist in the compound sentence are, (1) the *copulative*, (2) the *adversative*, (3) the *causative*.

## Examples.

- (1) *tí-sin yí yíu pū-gān, kīn yí pū kán kiú líú.* (9. c. 26.)  
*k'íú lió-t'ing ní-shí, shau túng yí ts'án.* (9. d. 9.)  
*kīn hīng yíu yuén, yíu tsé siāng péi.* (9. i. 4.)  
 (2) *k'í jī-yé chí sò sī &c.* (5. n. 29—0. 30.)  
*siáu-tí yí pū jin yén k'íú, tán choāng í-sū &c.* (9. a. 26.)  
 Again in 9. c. 11, where an adversative clause comes in parenthetically, but may be said to be co-ordinate with the previous sentence, which is complex.  
 (3) *tān hiáu-tí, í chāng jin-lán.* (6. a. 4.)  
*sāng-jin pū nāng yí-jí qī wú yung, tsí pū-k'ò yí-jí qī wú ts'ái.* (7. a. 10.)  
*shí kú tsz tsáú, í lí yí shí.* (2. h. 11.)  
*wú yí wú sz, kú pū wéi.* (2. j. 1.)

577. Under the copulative relation a subdivision may be said to exist, which relates to clauses presenting an alternative, as in English clauses beginning with the particles *either* and *or*. *Hwò* 或 or *hwò-chè* 或者 and *hwán* 還, repeated at the beginning of each clause, mark such sentences.

## Examples.

*hwán shí tāng chīn, hwán shí tāng shuā?*  
 還是當真 | 是當耍  
 'Are you in earnest, or are you joking?'

*hwò-chè t'ā-lai, hwò-chè t'ā sà-lián,* 'either he will come, or perhaps he is dead.' (Cf. 3. l. 27, where *yí* is used for *or*, as a connective.)

§. 8. *Figures of speech.*

578. Under this comprehensive expression much is included, but we purpose noticing only a few of those peculiar forms which in language take this denomination: such as *ellipsis*,—the leaving out of words; *pleonasm*,—

the redundant use of words; *antithesis*,—the appropriate use of words of opposite significations; and the *repetition* of a word or phrase to give emphasis to the expression.

579. By the figure *ellipsis* many expressions in Chinese become intelligible, which appear, at first sight, to be in accordance with no particular rule. Such are the terms *chī-lì* (9. f. 12) 'old friends;' *pai-shou* 'to make a visit on a person's birthday;' *pai-niën* 'to pay compliments at the new year;' *kau-lai* 'to plead age,' *kau-ping* 'to plead sickness' (as a reason for retirement from office).

580. It is a very common thing to leave out the personal pronouns when they are the subjects of sentences, and when no difficulty would arise in supplying them from the context or from the conversation. *Pü-yau* alone might be either 'do not!' i. e. *no!*, or 'I do not want,' but *pü-yau ché-kó tung-si* must be, 'I do not want this thing,' and *pü-yau tung-shou* must be, 'do not move!'='be quiet!' So also *sié-sié* 'thanks!' for 'I thank you;' but this expression is similar in the English, 'thank you.'

581. The obscurity which might sometimes veil the meaning of a sentence in Chinese is removed by the redundancy of repeating the same idea by negating its opposite term: thus, *ngò yau k'í, pü yau tàng*, 'I wish to go, and do not wish to stay;' *nì yau shuò chün, pü yau shuò huáng*, 'do you speak truly, and do not speak falsely;' *tsin-yên k'án-kién* 'I saw it with my own eyes.'

582. The Chinese delight in forming antitheses, for which their language affords great facility, every important attribute and object having its appropriate opposite term. A list of the most common of these will be found in Appendix I. Antithesis occurs frequently in proverbs and old sayings; e. g. *yiü t'ei wei, mò wí chün*, 'in front there is dignity, but behind no troops;' and *sháng yiü t'ien-t'ang, hiá yiü Sü Háng*, 'above there is heaven, and below *Su-(cheu)* and *Hang-(cheu)*:' (cf. 19. i. 11.)

583. Repetition has already been referred to as being a common method of forming words and phrases and for intensifying adjectives and adverbs (cf. Arts. 99 and 136), but it is often merely for the sake of the rhythm that words and syllables are repeated. A few select expressions of this kind may be seen in Appendix I.

584. Almost all the other figures of speech which are used in European tongues are to be found in Chinese. *Climax* is especially common in this language. But it is needless to multiply examples of these figures, for they will easily be recognised by the advanced student.

### §. 9. *The varieties of style.*

585. The differences of style in Chinese authors, and the marks of the period in literary works, are very great and distinct. The language of the most ancient authors is very brief and sententious, while the meaning is pregnant and expressive. There is a majesty and dignity of style, which have never been surpassed by later writers. The style of the *K'ing* (cf. Part II. pp. 5, 6)

stands foremost in antiquity and sublimity. The *Su-shū*, the *Lü-lü*, the *Tao-tê-k'ing*, the *T's'ü-t's'ü*, and the *Shän-hai-k'ing* come next in order (cf. Part II. pp. 6, 7), and to these may be added the great commentators and writers of elegant compositions, such as *Chao'ng-tsè* and the *Shi-tsè*, or 'Ten scholars,' mentioned in Part II. pp. 7, 8. To these must be added *M'ing-tsè*, who, though nearly equal to *K'ü'ng-tsè* in Chinese estimation as a philosopher, has a diffuse style of composition. *Tsö-shí*, the author of the *Tsö-chuén* and the *Kuò-yü*, *Sü-mà-tsién* and the *T's'at-tsè*, or 'men of talent,' come next, with the later authors, *Hán-yü* (who lived in the T'ang dynasty), *Gau-yäng Sü*, *Sü T'ing-pö*, *Chü-hi*, and many others, fragments of whose works are preserved in the *Kü-wän yüén kién* (cf. Part II. pp. 14, 36).

586. The distinctions drawn by the eminent writer *Yang-tsè* 楊子 (cf. Part II. p. 8) between the different varieties of style are as follows: *sé shing ts'è ts'è k'áng*; *ts'è shing sé ts'è fú*; *sé ts'è ching ts'è k'ing*. When the subject is greater than the power of expression, it is denominated *k'áng* 伉 'unevenly matched;' when the expression exceeds the subject, it is called *fú* 賦 'poetical style;' and when the subject and the expression are equally matched, it is called *k'ing* 經 'classic style.'

587. *Gau-yäng Sü* says: *Yén ì tsat sé, q' wän ì shí yén*; *sé sin yén wän, ts'è k'ü k'ing p'ü-yuén*, 'let the words contain the theme or subject, and let elegant style adorn the words; let there be the subject truthfully, and the words elegantly set down, and the style will not be far from that which is called *k'ing*.' In which passage the four characters 事 信 言 文 *sé sin yén wän* contain the marks of the highest style of literary composition.

588. No positive rules can be given for composition, but the length of the *k'ü*, or clauses, should be somewhat diversified. Though clauses of four characters, which form phrases, are frequent in the best authors, the style will be stiff and bald, unless occasionally a clause of five, six, or seven characters be introduced. It is usual to accumulate ideas in an opening sentence, and then to display them separately in the sequence. The admired style of Chinese compositions may be compared to the elegant style of Cicero rather than to the nervous argumentative style of Demosthenes. (Cf. Prémare's *Notitia Linguae Sinicæ*, where examples of style will be found.)



## APPENDIX I.

### *List of antithetical words.*

商 <i>shāng</i> 'a wholesale merchant.'	賈 <i>kù</i> 'a retail trader.'
賞 <i>shàng</i> 'to reward.'	罰 <i>fá</i> 'to punish.'
善 <i>shén</i> 'good, virtuous.'	惡 <i>ò</i> 'bad, vicious.'
收 <i>shōu</i> 'to collect together.'	散 <i>sǎn</i> 'to scatter abroad.'
首 <i>shǒu</i> 'the head.'	胫 <i>kiō</i> 'the foot.'
授 <i>shòu</i> 'to give.'	受 <i>shòu</i> 'to receive.'
獸 <i>shòu</i> 'a wild animal.'	畜 <i>chù</i> 'a tamed animal.'
始 <i>chǐ</i> 'the beginning.'	終 <i>chōng</i> 'the end.'
是 <i>shì</i> 'it is so,—true.'	非 <i>fēi</i> 'it is not so,—false.'
是 <i>shì</i> 'yea.'	否 <i>fěi</i> 'no.'
深 <i>shēn</i> 'deep (of water).'	淺 <i>shǎn</i> 'shallow.'
伸 <i>shēn</i> 'to extend the body.'	屈 <i>kū</i> 'to bend the body.'
身 <i>shēn</i> 'the body.'	神 <i>shén</i> 'the spirit.'
升 <i>shēng</i> 'to ascend.'	降 <i>kiáng</i> 'to descend.'
升 <i>shēng</i> 'to rise,' 浮 <i>fú</i> 'to float.'	沉 <i>chén</i> 'to sink.'
盛 <i>shéng</i> 'to flourish.'	衰 <i>shuāi</i> 'to decay.'
雙 <i>shuāng</i> 'a pair.'	隻 <i>chē</i> 'an individual.'
順 <i>shùn</i> 'to obey.'	逆 <i>nì</i> 'to disobey.'
放 <i>fàng</i> 'to let go.'	收 <i>shōu</i> 'to take up.'
福 <i>fú</i> 'happiness.'	禍 <i>hó</i> 'misery.'
豐 <i>fēng</i> 'abundant.'	荒 <i>huāng</i> 'sterile.'
富 <i>fú</i> 'rich.'	貧 <i>pín</i> 'poor.'

愛 <i>gai</i> 'to love.'	惡 <i>wú</i> 'to hate.'
傲 <i>gau</i> 'proud.'	謙 <i>kiên</i> 'humble.'
硬 <i>gáng</i> 'hard.'	軟 <i>juén</i> 'soft.'
寒 <i>hán</i> 'cold.'	暑 <i>shù</i> 'heat.'
好 <i>hau</i> 'good.'	歹 <i>tai</i> or 惡 <i>ô</i> 'bad.'
厚 <i>hou</i> 'thick,—generous.'	薄 <i>pô</i> 'thin,—mean.'
喜 <i>hi</i> 'to be glad.'	愁 <i>tsiú</i> 'to be sorrowful.'
賢 <i>hiên</i> 'a wise man.'	愚 <i>yü</i> 'a foolish man.'
虛 <i>hü</i> 'empty,—vain.'	實 <i>shí</i> 'solid,—true.'
形 <i>híng</i> 'the form,—substance.'	影 <i>yíng</i> 'the shadow.'
活 <i>huó</i> 'alive.'	死 <i>sì</i> 'dead.'
會 <i>huí</i> 'to meet together.'	別 <i>pí</i> 'to separate from.'
爺 <i>yé</i> 'the father.'	娘 <i>niáng</i> 'the mother.'
筵 <i>yén</i> 'the banquet.'	席 <i>sí</i> 'a common feast.'
友 <i>yiù</i> 'a friend.'	仇 <i>chóu</i> 'an enemy.'
因 <i>yín</i> 'good words and actions.'	果 <i>kô</i> 'the reward of them' (Budd.).
陰 <i>yín</i> 'the female principle in nature, —darkness,—obscure.'	陽 <i>yáng</i> 'the male principle in nature, —light,—clear.'
熱 <i>jì</i> 'hot.'	冷 <i>làng</i> 'cold.'
吉 <i>kí</i> 'fortunate.'	兇 <i>hiíng</i> 'unfortunate.'
高 <i>kau</i> 'high.'	低 <i>í</i> 'low.'
蓋 <i>kai</i> 'to cover.'	開 <i>k'ai</i> 'to open.'
甘 <i>kán</i> 'sweet.'	酸 <i>suán</i> 'sour.'
嫁 <i>kiá</i> 'to marry (of the woman).'	娶 <i>tsü</i> 'to marry (of the man).'
教 <i>kiaú</i> 'to teach.'	學 <i>hió</i> 'to learn.'
結 <i>kí</i> 'to bind fast.'	解 <i>kiaí</i> 'to loosen.'
古 <i>kù</i> 'ancient times.'	今 <i>kín</i> 'the present time.'
禽 <i>kín</i> 'birds.'	獸 <i>shéu</i> 'beasts.'

雄 <i>hiung</i> 'the male (of birds).'	雌 <i>tsz</i> 'the female (of birds).'
禁 <i>kín</i> 'to forbid.'	許 <i>hiù</i> 'to allow.'
曲 <i>k'ü</i> 'crooked.' ( <i>wān</i> 彎.)	直 <i>chí</i> 'straight.'
經 <i>kíng</i> 'classic text.'	傳 <i>chuén</i> 'the commentary.'
公 <i>kūng</i> 'public.'	私 <i>sī</i> 'private.'
功 <i>kūng</i> 'merit.'	報 <i>paú</i> 'reward.' 過 <i>kwó</i> 'fault.'
空 <i>k'ung</i> 'empty.'	滿 <i>muàn</i> 'full.'
饑 <i>kí</i> 'hungry.' ( <i>nüi</i> 餒.)	飽 <i>paù</i> 'satisfied.'
生 <i>sāng</i> 'raw, green.'	熟 <i>shü</i> 'cooked, ripe.'
遠 <i>yuèn</i> 'distant.'	近 <i>kín</i> 'near.'
去 <i>k'ü</i> 'to go away.'	來 <i>lat</i> 'to come near.'
君 <i>kiün</i> 'the prince.'	臣 <i>chín</i> 'the vassal.'
光 <i>kuäng</i> 'brightness.'	暗 <i>gán</i> 'darkness.'
理 <i>lǐ</i> 'the spiritual essence,—the principle which arranges.'	氣 <i>k'í</i> 'the material essence,—the matter which is arranged.'
利 <i>lǐ</i> 'profit or interest.'	本 <i>pên</i> 'the original capital.'
留 <i>liú</i> 'to detain, to keep.'	逐 <i>chü</i> 'to throw away.'
流 <i>liú</i> 'to flow, to roam.'	止 <i>chì</i> 'to stop, to rest in.'
樂 <i>lè</i> 'to manifest pleasure.'	悲 <i>pei</i> 'to express sorrow.'
猛 <i>mäng</i> 'fierce.'	良 <i>liáng</i> 'gentle, good.'
門 <i>mên</i> 'the outer door.'	戶 <i>hú</i> 'the inner door;' <i>mên-hú</i> = 'family.'
怒 <i>nü</i> 'anger.'	忍 <i>jìn</i> 'patience.'
賓 <i>pín</i> 'the guest.'	主 <i>chü</i> 'the host.'
僕 <i>pü</i> 'a man-servant.'	婢 <i>p'í</i> 'a maid-servant.'
本 <i>pên</i> 'the beginning.'	末 <i>mü</i> 'the end.'
虧 <i>kw'ei</i> 'to lose.'	益 <i>yí</i> 'to gain.'
鬼 <i>kwéi</i> 'ghost inferior,—the active principle of <i>yín</i> .'	神 <i>shín</i> 'spirit superior,—the active principle of <i>yáng</i> .'

貴 <i>kuoi</i> 'noble.'	賤 <i>tsien</i> 'mean.'
觀 <i>kuān</i> 'to look at from below, or from a distance.'	臨 <i>lin</i> 'to look at from above, or while approaching.'
燥 <i>sau</i> 'dry.'	濕 <i>shí</i> 'damp, humid.'
僧 <i>sāng</i> 'religious.'	俗 <i>sü</i> 'secular.'
笑 <i>siaü</i> 'to laugh.'	哭 <i>k'ü</i> 'to cry.'
先 <i>siēn</i> 'before.'	後 <i>heu</i> 'behind or after.'
新 <i>sīn</i> 'new.'	舊 <i>kiú</i> 'old.'
信 <i>sín</i> 'to believe.'	疑 <i>t</i> 'to doubt.'
姓 <i>síng</i> 'the name of the clan.'	氏 <i>shí</i> 'the name of the family.'
性 <i>síng</i> 'natural disposition.'	習 <i>sí</i> 'practice.'
送 <i>súng</i> 'to give.'	受 <i>shéu</i> 'to receive.'
送 <i>súng</i> 'to bid adieu.'	迎 <i>yíng</i> 'to welcome.'
師 <i>sí</i> 'a tutor.'	徒 <i>tú</i> 'a pupil,—a disciple.'
單 <i>tān</i> 'single.'	雙 <i>shuāng</i> 'double.'
貪 <i>t'ān</i> 'covetous.'	廉 <i>liēn</i> 'liberal,—not avaricious.'
淡 <i>tán</i> 'simple, moderate.'	濃 <i>náng</i> 'strong.'
刀 <i>tau</i> 'a sword with one edge.'	劍 <i>k'ien</i> 'a two-edged sword.'
問 <i>wən</i> 'to ask.'	答 <i>tá</i> 'to reply.'
未 <i>wéi</i> 'not yet.'	已 <i>ì</i> 'already.'
張 <i>chāng</i> 'to stretch the bow.'	弛 <i>shí</i> 'to relax the bow.'
章 <i>chāng</i> 'the art of counting.'	程 <i>chíng</i> 'the art of weighing and measuring.'
倡 <i>ch'āng</i> 'a female musician.'	優 <i>yiü</i> 'a male performer.'
長 <i>ch'āng</i> 'long.'	短 <i>tuān</i> 'short.'
常 <i>ch'āng</i> 'constant.'	變 <i>piēn</i> 'changeable.'
唱 <i>ch'āng</i> 'the leader in the song.'	和 <i>hó</i> 'the singer who replies.'
朝 <i>chau</i> 'morning.'	暮 <i>mú</i> 'evening.'

陟 <i>chě</i> 'to ascend.'	降 <i>kiáng</i> 'to descend.'
遲 <i>ch'í</i> 'slow.'	快 <i>kw'et</i> 'quick,' = 速 <i>sǔ</i> .
智 <i>chí</i> 'prudent.'	愚 <i>yü</i> 'foolish.'
眞 <i>chín</i> 'true.'	假 <i>kià</i> 'false.'
成 <i>ching</i> 'to perfect.'	敗 <i>pai</i> 'to ruin.'
誠 <i>ching</i> 'sincere.'	僞 <i>wei</i> 'deceitful.'
正 <i>ching</i> 'straight.'	歪 <i>wei</i> 'crooked, awry.'
正 <i>ching</i> 'upright.'	邪 <i>siè</i> 'depraved.'
忠 <i>chūng</i> 'faithful and truthful.'	佞 <i>ning</i> 'a flatterer.'
出 <i>ch'ü</i> 'to go out.'	入 <i>jǐ</i> 'to enter in.'
早 <i>tsau</i> 'early.'	晚 <i>wǎn</i> 'late.'
妻 <i>ts'í</i> 'wife.'	妾 <i>ts'í</i> 'concubine.'
焦 <i>tsiaü</i> 'sad.'	樂 <i>lò</i> 'joyful.'
借 <i>tsié</i> 'to borrow.'	還 <i>huan</i> 'to pay again.'
疾 <i>ts'í</i> 'hastily.'	遲 <i>ch'í</i> 'slow,' = 徐 <i>sü</i> 'leisurely.'
積 <i>tsí</i> 'to collect.'	散 <i>sán</i> 'to scatter.'
姐 <i>tsiè</i> 'elder sister.'	妹 <i>mei</i> 'younger sister.'
進 <i>tsín</i> 'to advance.'	退 <i>tsüi</i> 'to retreat.'
清 <i>ts'ing</i> 'clear.'	濁 <i>chü</i> 'muddy.' ( <i>huò'n</i> 混.)
晴 <i>ts'ing</i> 'serene weather.'	雨 <i>yü</i> 'rainy weather.'
左 <i>tsò</i> 'the left hand.'	右 <i>yiü</i> 'the right hand.'
坐 <i>tsó</i> 'to sit.'	立 <i>lǐ</i> 'to stand.' ( <i>k'í</i> 起.)
從 <i>ts'ung</i> 'to follow after.'	違 <i>wei</i> 'to oppose.'
粗 <i>tsü</i> 'coarse.'	細 <i>sí</i> 'fine.'
祖 <i>tsü</i> 'ancestor.'	孫 <i>sān</i> 'descendant.'
尊 <i>tsün</i> 'honourable.'	卑 <i>pí</i> 'mean.'
存 <i>tsün</i> 'to preserve.'	亡 <i>wáng</i> 'to lose.'
彼 <i>pí</i> 'that.'	此 <i>ts'í</i> 'this.'

*Examples of antithesis in sentences.*

yiù ts'ai wí - pī yiù maú, yiù maú wí - pī yiù ts'ai,  
有 才 未 必 有 貌 有 | 未 必 有 |

'There may be talent without beauty, and there may be beauty without talent.'

maú ch'ing k'í - ts'ai, ts'ai fú k'í maú,

貌 稱 其 才 | 副 其 |

'His beauty equals his ability, and his talents enhance his beauty.'

i pū chē shīn, shī pū ch'ung k'èu,

衣 不 遮 身, 食 不 充 口

'Not clothing to cover his body, nor food to fill his mouth.'

hó - chú pū - mī, shīn - chú pū - sīn?

何 處 不 覓, 甚 處 不 尋

'Where have I not looked, where have I not sought?'

yaú - k'í wú líu, yaú - yén wú - yù,

要 泣 無 淚, 要 言 | 語

'He wished to weep, but he had no tears,—to speak, but he had no words.'

t'ā wéi ngò sè, ngò pī wéi - t'ā wáng,

他 爲 我 死, | 必 爲 他 亡

'As he died for me, I must sacrifice myself for him.'

sháng-t'ien wú - lí, jī - tí wú mən,

上 天 無 路 人 地 | 門

'If he would rise to heaven there is no way, or enter earth there is no door,'  
= 'he cannot escape.'

nì yī - yén ngò yī - k'í.

nì yī - ch'ung ngò yī - ch'án.

你 一 言 我 | 句 你 一 鍾 | | 盞

'They are well matched at gossiping.' 'They are well matched at drinking.'

yī p'wán - qī ts'è, yī p'wán - qī k'ang,

一 半 兒 辭 一 | 兒 肯

'He half refuses, and is half willing.'

*Examples of repetition of characters.*

yuèn-yuèn ts'iaú kién 遠 | 瞧 見 'to look at from a long distance.'

gai-gai t'ang-k'ü 哀 | 慟 哭 'to weep bitterly.'

yí-kú-kú tū t'ing-tē liaù 一句 | 都聽的了 'I heard every word.'

yí-pú-pú mō shāng-shān lai 一步 | 摸上山來 'step by step,  
feeling his way, he ascended the mountain.'

kīng-kīng tī shuō 輕 | 的說 'to speak very softly.'

t'ing-t'ing tāng-tāng 停 | 當 | 'in a fixed and proper manner.'

ch'è-ch'è yē-yē 扯 | 拽 | 'to carry off by force.'

mīng-mīng pē-pē 明 | 白 | 'very clearly understood.'

huān-huān chīng-chīng 端 | 正 | 'elegant and correct.'

t'í-t'í chīng-chīng 齊 | 整 | 'precisely arranged.'

huān-huān mēi-mēi 昏 | 昧 | 'dull and bewildered.'

nù-nù t'au-t'au 絮 | 叨 | 'to reiterate vociferously.'

*Phrases formed upon a similar principle.*

pū-chī pū-khō 不知 | 覺 'he knows not nor perceives.'

pū-mīng pū-pē 不明 | 白 'quite unintelligible.'

yuán-sāng yuán-sè 願生 | 死 'ready to live or die.'

k'í-sāng k'í-sè 氣生 | 死 'desperately angry.'

k'ò-hàn k'ò-naù 可恨 | 惱 'extremely annoying.'

sè k'í sè k'iaù 似奇 | 巧 'apparently very clever.'

puán k'āi puán yèn 半開 | 掩 'half revealed and half concealed.'

puán jìn puán kwei 半人 | 鬼 'half man and half ghost.'

láng-shín láng kwei 弄神 | 鬼 'to play the ghost.'

láng-lai láng k'í 弄來 | 去 'to be eager at business.'

hā-yén hā-yù 胡言 | 語 'to talk very foolishly.'

má-tá má-siàu 罵大 | 小 'to abuse all alike.'

tá-tui tá-jū 大湑 | 肉 'a great feast.'

k'iaù-má k'iaù-yáng 番模 | 樣 'in a haughty manner.'

k'ò-mən k'ò hā 各門 | 戶 'each in his own way.'

*kí-sin k'í-k'ù* 吃辛 | 若 'greatly afflicted.'

*yiù-p'ing yiù-kú* 有憑 | 據 'there is full proof of it.'

*mù-yuén mù-kú* 沒原 | 故 'there is no ground at all for it.'

*mù-tsung mù-ying* 沒踪 | 影 'without trace or shadow.'

*Examples of synonyms used in phrases.*

*hau-k'í gai-ts'ing* 好潔愛清 'to love cleanliness.'

*t'ang kán kung k'ù* 同甘共若 'alike happy and troubled.'

*tsan pin k'ing k'í* 尊賓敬客 'to honour and respect guests.'

*huān-t'ien h'í-tí* 歡天喜地 'to rejoice exceedingly.'

*shí-t'ien ming-tí* 誓天盟地 'to swear by heaven and earth.'

*shí-pang tsui-yiù* 詩朋酒友 'friends of the Muse and the wine.'

*paú ch'êú s'í yuén* 報讎雪怨 'to revenge an insult.'

*ling yá lí ch'í* 伶牙俐齒 'clever at speaking.'

*hú s'í huán siàng* 糊思亂想 'to think confusedly.'

*jú k'í s'í h'ò* 如饑似渴 'like hunger and thirst.'

*Select idiomatic phrases.*

*tsang t'êú lí wèi* 藏頭露尾 'to hide the head and expose the tail.'

*niên mai lí shuái* 年邁力衰 'years increased, strength decayed.'

*shān chin hai tsó* 山珍海錯 'sumptuous fare.'

*ts'ü ch'á t'ān fán* 齷茶淡飯 'tasteless tea and rice,—poor fare.'

*méi-lai yén-k'ü* 眉來眼去 'glancing now and again.'

*méi-huā yén-siáu* 眉花眼笑 'arched eyebrows and laughing eyes.'

*huai-ts'at paú-hiò* 懷才抱學 'devoted to learning.'

*ts'ing-t'ien p'è-jí* 青天白日 'in open day.'

*ní-shāng ngò-liáng* 你商我量 'let us mutually advise.'

*ní-tung ngò-sí* 你東 | 西 'we are mutually opposed.'



pě-jí hī yè 白日黑夜 'from noon to midnight,—day and night.'

tai-sè pǎ-huò 七死八活 'more dead than alive.'

tai-pên pǎ-lì 七本八利 'the profit just saves the capital.'

pě-ling pě-lì 百伶百俐 'very shrewd and clever.'

*Elegant phrases, idiomatic and poetic.*

Shī-yún 詩云 'the Shī-kīng says,' or Shī-yún 書 | 'the Shī-kīng says.'

Tzē yǐ 子曰 'for K'ūng-tsā (Confucius) says.'

jún-pǐ 潤筆, lit. 'to moisten the pencil,—to commit to writing.'

fàng-fū 捧腹 'to laugh immoderately,' like "Se tenir les côtés de rire,"  
or "Laughter holding both his sides." Milton.

kōu-míng 鉤名, lit. 'to fish for a name,—to hunt for a reputation.'

mù-sǎng 目送, lit. 'with the eye to accompany,—to watch until out  
of sight.'

yìn-kī 飲泣, lit. 'to drink tears,—to weep bitterly.'

shí-yén 食言, lit. 'to eat words,—to break a promise.'

Confucius denied himself in respect of four things, which are referred to in the following expressions:

wú-í 毋意 'he did not bind himself to his own opinion.'

wú-pí | 必 'he did not hold any thing to be of necessity absolute.'

wú-kú | 固 'he was not perverse and obstinate in his views.'

wú-ngò | 我 'he held no feelings of private interest.'

T'ái-yuén 泰元, lit. 'the exalted origin of things,—heaven.'

Tūng-kiūn 東君, lit. 'the prince of the east,—the sun.'

T'ái-yáng 太陽 'the great light,—the sun.'—Sol.

Pě-k'ū 白駒, lit. 'the white colt,—the morning.'—Aurora.

I-hò 羲和 'the charioteer of the sun.'—Phaethon.

T'ien-hén 天狼 'a star of evil omen.'

Siên-hò 纖呵 'the charioteer of the moon,' also called Chāng-ngò.

*T'í-k'ung* 帝弓 'the rainbow,' also called *T'í-t'ung* 蜺蜺.

*Nü-t'í* 女夷 'the Spirit presiding over flowers.'

*Wáng-huā* 王化 'the royal flower,'—the *Maì-tán* 牡丹.

*Ts'ang-yü* 淨友 'the water-lily,' *Lung-yá* 龍牙 'the *li-chi* 荔枝'

*Li-chi-ná* | | 奴, lit. 'slave of the *li-chi*' = the *lung-yé* ('fruit').

*chü-fung* 追風 'pursuer of the wind,' or *chü-t'ien* 追電 'a pursuer of the lightning,'—a name for a fine horse.

*shān-kiün* 山君, lit. 'prince of the mountains,—the tiger.'

The 'sheep' is called *Jea-mau* 柔毛; the 'goat,' *jèn-láng* 羴郎; the 'swallow,' *t'ien-nü* 天女; the 'parrot,' *yên-nià* 言鳥; the 'tortoise,' *hüan-fü* 玄夫; the 'ant,' *hüan-k'ü*; the 'vine,' *Hüng-yü* 紅友, *Hwān-pé* 歡伯, *Sāng-láng* 桑 | or *Lán-sāng* 蘭生. *T'só-tsü* 佐酒 is 'the wine for a journey.' *Chung-tsü* 中 | 'half drunk.' *Chün-hüan* 陳玄 'ink.' *Fung-wí* 鳳味 or *lung-wí* 龍尾 'an inkstone.' *Li-wí* 栗 | 'the pencil.' *Yü-pán* 玉版 'paper.' *Shü-t'ing* 殊廷 'palace of the immortals.' *Shí-kia* 世家 'a man of rank.' *Yü-shí* 玉食 'choice food.' *Niēn-shü* 黔首 a term for 'men.' *Yü-t'í* 玉體 'a very fair person.' *Kau-tai* 高些 'passing rich.' *Kau-sāng* 高生 or *t'ang-sāng* 登 | 'an old man.' *T'á-ts'iang* 大匠 or *chí-chó* 執斲 'a worker in wood.' *T's'iang-kwei* 翔貴 'to fly after honours.' *T's'üēn-tai* 泉臺 'a sepulchral mound,—a tomb.' *Shēn-p'ang* 禪旁 'a bier.' *Wéi-hé* 物故 'dead.' *Wáng-yáng* 亡恙 'free from disease.' *T'ien-t'í* 千里駒 is 'a fine young horse.' *Shí-chung-hü* 詩中虎 is 'a poet.' *Jin-chung-lung* 人中龍 is 'an illustrious man.' *Kiai-yü-huó* 解語花 and *huó-kiēn-sü* 花見羞 and *yáng-lí-chí* 楊柳枝 mean 'a beautiful woman.' *Sz-tsò-tsó* 獅子座 'the seat of Buddha.' *Kiang-fü* 窮髮 is 'a barren soil.' *Kwei-sing* 貴鼎 'something very precious.' *Wü-t'ing-shí* 五鼎食 'the five kinds of flesh.'

## APPENDIX II.

*A list of Chinese family names (Pě-kiā sīng) arranged according to the Radical characters.*

(Rad. I—44.)

1 丁 Tīng	21 侯 Sé	41 包 Pāu	61 唐 T'áng	81 安 Gān
2 万 Wán	22 倪 Ní	42 匡 Kuāng	62 喻 Yú	82 宋 Súng
3 上 Sháng	23 傅 Fú	43 卓 Chō	63 喬 Kiáo	83 宓 Mí
4 丘 Kiū	24 儲 Chū	44 卜 Pǔ	64 單 Chén	84 宗 Tsung
5 乚 Mí	25 元 Yuén	45 卞 Pién	65 嚴 Yén	85 官 Kuān
6 于 Yü	26 充 Ch'ung	46 印 Yin	66 國 Kuó	86 宣 Siuén
7 井 Tsing	27 党 Tàng	47 危 Wéi	67 堵 Tù	87 宦 Huán
8 人 Jín	28 全 Tsiuén	48 厘 Shé	68 壽 Shéu	88 宮 Kung
9 仇 Kiú	29 公 Kung	49 厲 Lí	69 夏 Hiá	89 宰 Tsai
10 令 Ling	30 眞 Kí	50 叔 Chō	70 大 Tá	90 家 Kiá
11 仰 Yáng	31 冉 Jín	51 古 Kù	71 奚 Hí	91 容 Yáng
12 仲 Chóng	32 冶 Yé	52 史 Sà	72 姚 Yáo	92 宿 Sù
13 任 Jín	33 冷 Lèng	53 司 Sī	73 姜 Kiáng	93 寇 Kéu
14 伊 Í	34 凌 Ling	54 吉 Kí	74 姬 Kí	94 富 Fú
15 伍 Wú	35 刁 Tiāu	55 向 Hiáng	75 婁 Léu	95 封 Fung
16 伏 Fú	36 別 Pié	56 吳 Wú	76 孔 K'ung	96 尉 Wéi
17 何 Hó	37 利 Lí	57 呂 Lú	77 孟 M'ung	97 尙 Sháng
18 余 Yá	38 劉 Liú	58 周 Chéu	78 季 Kí	98 尤 Yí
19 候 Héu	39 勞 Láu	59 和 Hó	79 孫 Sān	99 尹 Yin
20 俞 Yü	40 勾 Keu	60 咸 Hién	80 宇 Yü	100 居 Kí

101 屈 <i>K'ü</i>	128 徒 <i>T'ü</i>	155 晁 <i>Ch'au</i>	182 樂 <i>Yü</i>	209 滑 <i>Huá</i>
102 屠 <i>T'ü</i>	129 從 <i>T'ung</i>	156 時 <i>Shí</i>	183 樊 <i>Fán</i>	210 膝 <i>T'ing</i>
103 山 <i>Shān</i>	130 德 <i>Té</i>	157 宴 <i>Yán</i>	184 權 <i>K'üan</i>	211 滿 <i>Muán</i>
104 岑 <i>T's'in</i>	131 惠 <i>Huái</i>	158 景 <i>King</i>	185 樂 <i>Luán</i>	212 潘 <i>P'an</i>
105 崔 <i>T's'ui</i>	132 憤 <i>Shín</i>	159 暴 <i>Paó</i>	186 歐 <i>Gau</i>	213 澹 <i>T'an</i>
106 嵇 <i>Kí</i>	133 慕 <i>Mú</i>	160 暨 <i>Kí</i>	187 步 <i>Pú</i>	214 濮 <i>Pú</i>
107 巢 <i>Ch'au</i>	134 應 <i>Ying</i>	161 曹 <i>T's'au</i>	188 武 <i>Wú</i>	215 烏 <i>Wú</i>
108 左 <i>Tso</i>	135 懷 <i>Huái</i>	162 曾 <i>T'ung</i>	189 父 <i>Ch'ü</i>	216 焦 <i>Tsiao</i>
109 巫 <i>Wü</i>	136 戈 <i>Kó</i>	163 朱 <i>Chü</i>	190 段 <i>Tsuan</i>	217 熊 <i>Hsiung</i>
110 巴 <i>Pá</i>	137 戎 <i>Jung</i>	164 李 <i>Lí</i>	191 殷 <i>Yin</i>	218 燕 <i>Yen</i>
111 師 <i>Shí</i>	138 戚 <i>Ch'ing</i>	165 杜 <i>Tü</i>	192 母 <i>Mü</i>	219 牛 <i>Niú</i>
112 席 <i>Sí</i>	139 戚 <i>T'sí</i>	166 杭 <i>Háng</i>	193 毛 <i>Mau</i>	220 牧 <i>Mü</i>
113 常 <i>Ch'ang</i>	140 戴 <i>Tai</i>	167 東 <i>Tung</i>	194 水 <i>Shuäi</i>	221 狄 <i>Tí</i>
114 干 <i>Kān</i>	141 房 <i>Fang</i>	168 松 <i>Sung</i>	195 江 <i>Kiang</i>	222 狐 <i>Há</i>
115 平 <i>P'ing</i>	142 邑 <i>Hü</i>	169 林 <i>Lin</i>	196 池 <i>Chí</i>	223 王 <i>Wáng</i>
116 康 <i>K'ang</i>	143 扶 <i>Fü</i>	170 柏 <i>Pé</i>	197 汪 <i>Wáng</i>	224 班 <i>Pān</i>
117 庾 <i>Yü</i>	144 支 <i>Chí</i>	171 查 <i>Chá</i>	198 汲 <i>Kí</i>	225 璩 <i>K'ü</i>
118 廉 <i>Lián</i>	145 政 <i>Ching</i>	172 柯 <i>Kó</i>	199 沃 <i>Wü</i>	226 甄 <i>Chien</i>
119 廖 <i>Liao</i>	146 敖 <i>Gau</i>	173 柳 <i>Liu</i>	200 沈 <i>Chén</i>	227 甘 <i>Kān</i>
120 廣 <i>Kuáng</i>	147 文 <i>Wán</i>	174 柴 <i>Ch'ái</i>	201 沙 <i>Shā</i>	228 甫 <i>Fü</i>
121 弓 <i>Kung</i>	148 方 <i>Fang</i>	175 桂 <i>Kwei</i>	202 洪 <i>Háng</i>	229 寧 <i>Ning</i>
122 弘 <i>Háng</i>	149 於 <i>Yü</i>	176 桑 <i>Sang</i>	203 浦 <i>Pü</i>	230 田 <i>T'ien</i>
123 張 <i>Chang</i>	150 施 <i>Shí</i>	177 桓 <i>Wán</i>	204 淳 <i>Shün</i>	231 申 <i>Shin</i>
124 強 <i>K'iang</i>	151 昌 <i>Ch'ang</i>	178 梁 <i>Liáng</i>	205 溫 <i>Wán</i>	232 畢 <i>Pí</i>
125 彭 <i>P'ung</i>	152 明 <i>Ming</i>	179 梅 <i>Mei</i>	206 游 <i>Yü</i>	233 白 <i>Pí</i>
126 後 <i>Hé</i>	153 易 <i>Í</i>	180 楊 <i>Yang</i>	207 湛 <i>Chán</i>	234 皇 <i>Huáng</i>
127 徐 <i>Sü</i>	154 咎 <i>Tsüan</i>	181 榮 <i>Yang</i>	208 湯 <i>T'ang</i>	235 皮 <i>Pí</i>

236 益 <i>Yi</i>	263 紅 <i>Hung</i>	290 荀 <i>Sên</i>	317 虞 <i>Yá</i>	344 越 <i>Yuè</i>
237 盛 <i>Shéng</i>	264 索 <i>Sò</i>	291 荆 <i>Kíng</i>	318 蝠 <i>Yáng</i>	345 趙 <i>Chào</i>
238 盧 <i>Lú</i>	265 終 <i>Chung</i>	292 莊 <i>Chuang</i>	319 衛 <i>Wéi</i>	346 路 <i>Lú</i>
239 相 <i>Siáng</i>	266 經 <i>Kíng</i>	293 莘 <i>Sîn</i>	320 衡 <i>Héng</i>	347 車 <i>Chē</i>
240 瞿 <i>K'ü</i>	267 繆 <i>Miú</i>	294 莫 <i>Má</i>	321 袁 <i>Yuén</i>	348 軒 <i>Hiên</i>
241 石 <i>Shí</i>	268 羅 <i>Ló</i>	295 華 <i>Huá</i>	322 裘 <i>K'ü</i>	349 轅 <i>Yuén</i>
242 祁 <i>K'í</i>	269 羊 <i>Yáng</i>	296 萬 <i>Wán</i>	323 裴 <i>P'ei</i>	350 辛 <i>Sîn</i>
243 祖 <i>Tsü</i>	270 羿 <i>I</i>	297 葉 <i>Yè</i>	324 褚 <i>Ch'ü</i>	351 農 <i>Náng</i>
244 祝 <i>Chò</i>	271 翁 <i>Ung</i>	298 葛 <i>Kó</i>	325 解 <i>Kiä</i>	352 通 <i>T'ung</i>
245 祿 <i>Lü</i>	272 習 <i>Sí</i>	299 董 <i>T'ung</i>	326 計 <i>Kí</i>	353 逢 <i>Fáng</i>
246 禹 <i>Yü</i>	273 瞿 <i>Tí</i>	300 蒙 <i>Máng</i>	327 許 <i>Hä</i>	354 連 <i>Liên</i>
247 秋 <i>T'sü</i>	274 耿 <i>K'eng</i>	301 崩 <i>Kw'ot</i>	328 訾 <i>Tsü</i>	355 途 <i>Lü</i>
248 秦 <i>T'sín</i>	275 聞 <i>Wén</i>	302 蒲 <i>P'ü</i>	329 詹 <i>Chên</i>	356 遲 <i>Ch'í</i>
249 程 <i>Ch'ing</i>	276 聶 <i>Niè</i>	303 蒼 <i>T's'ang</i>	330 談 <i>T'an</i>	357 邊 <i>Piên</i>
250 穆 <i>Mü</i>	277 胡 <i>Hü</i>	304 蓋 <i>Kai</i>	331 諸 <i>Chü</i>	358 邢 <i>Hing</i>
251 空 <i>K'ung</i>	278 胥 <i>Sü</i>	305 逢 <i>P'ang</i>	332 謝 <i>Siè</i>	359 那 <i>Nó</i>
252 竇 <i>Tsü</i>	279 能 <i>Néng</i>	306 蔚 <i>Wéi</i>	333 譚 <i>T'an</i>	360 邵 <i>T'sü</i>
253 章 <i>Chang</i>	280 臧 <i>T's'ang</i>	307 蔡 <i>T's'ai</i>	334 谷 <i>Kü</i>	361 邴 <i>Ping</i>
254 童 <i>T'ang</i>	281 臺 <i>Tai</i>	308 蔣 <i>Tsiang</i>	335 豐 <i>Fung</i>	362 邵 <i>Shau</i>
255 竺 <i>Chü</i>	282 舒 <i>Shü</i>	309 蕭 <i>Siau</i>	336 貝 <i>Pei</i>	363 郁 <i>Yü</i>
256 符 <i>Fü</i>	283 艾 <i>Gai</i>	310 薄 <i>Pö</i>	337 貢 <i>Káng</i>	364 郝 <i>Hü</i>
257 管 <i>Kwán</i>	284 芮 <i>Jü</i>	311 薊 <i>Kí</i>	338 費 <i>Féi</i>	365 郛 <i>Kau</i>
258 簡 <i>Kièn</i>	285 花 <i>Huá</i>	312 薛 <i>Sié</i>	339 賀 <i>Hé</i>	366 郝 <i>Hü</i>
259 藉 <i>Tsü</i>	286 苗 <i>Miäu</i>	313 藍 <i>Lán</i>	340 賁 <i>Pé</i>	367 郎 <i>Láng</i>
260 米 <i>Mí</i>	287 范 <i>Fán</i>	314 隹 <i>Lín</i>	341 賈 <i>Kiä</i>	368 邴 <i>Kiä</i>
261 糜 <i>Mí</i>	288 茅 <i>Maü</i>	315 變 <i>Kw'ot</i>	342 賴 <i>Lai</i>	369 郈 <i>Hü</i>
262 紀 <i>Kí</i>	289 茹 <i>Jü</i>	316 蘇 <i>Sü</i>	343 赫 <i>Hé</i>	370 郭 <i>Kw'ot</i>

371 都 <i>Tū</i>	385 閔 <i>Mín</i>	399 雙 <i>Shuāng</i>	413 顧 <i>Kú</i>	427 麻 <i>Má</i>
372 鄂 <i>Gě</i>	386 閻 <i>Yán</i>	400 離 <i>Lí, Hí</i>	414 養 <i>Yǎng</i>	428 黃 <i>Huáng</i>
373 鄒 <i>Zōu</i>	387 闕 <i>Kuè</i>	401 雲 <i>Yún</i>	415 饒 <i>Jiāo</i>	429 黎 <i>Lí</i>
374 鄔 <i>Wū</i>	388 關 <i>Kuān</i>	402 雷 <i>Léi</i>	416 馬 <i>Mǎ</i>	430 黑 <i>Hēi</i>
375 鄧 <i>Tóng</i>	389 敢 <i>Hàn</i>	403 霍 <i>Huò</i>	417 馮 <i>Féng</i>	431 黽 <i>Mǐn</i>
376 鄭 <i>Zhèng</i>	390 阮 <i>Yuǎn</i>	404 韋 <i>Kēn</i>	418 駱 <i>Lù</i>	432 鼓 <i>Gǔ</i>
377 豐 <i>Fēng</i>	391 陰 <i>Yīn</i>	405 輦 <i>Kùn</i>	419 高 <i>Kāo</i>	433 齊 <i>Qí</i>
378 鄺 <i>Lǐ</i>	392 陳 <i>Chén</i>	406 鞠 <i>Jū</i>	420 鬱 <i>Yù</i>	434 齒 <i>Chǐ</i>
379 金 <i>Jīn</i>	393 陶 <i>Táo</i>	407 韋 <i>Wéi</i>	421 魏 <i>Wèi</i>	435 綺 <i>Qǐ</i>
380 斜 <i>Tuó</i>	394 陸 <i>Lù</i>	408 韓 <i>Hán</i>	422 魚 <i>Yú</i>	436 龍 <i>Lóng</i>
381 鈕 <i>Niǔ</i>	395 陽 <i>Yáng</i>	409 韶 <i>Sháo</i>	423 魯 <i>Lǔ</i>	437 龐 <i>Páng</i>
382 錢 <i>Qián</i>	396 隆 <i>Lóng</i>	410 頂 <i>Hǐng</i>	424 鮑 <i>Pào</i>	438 龔 <i>Gōng</i>
383 鍾 <i>Chōng</i>	397 隗 <i>Wèi</i>	411 須 <i>Sū</i>	425 鳳 <i>Féng</i>	
384 長 <i>Cháng</i>	398 雍 <i>Yōng</i>	412 顏 <i>Yán</i>	426 麴 <i>Kū</i>	

Note—64 is also called *shen*. 305 should have 'grass' above it. 314 should have 'door' with 'grass' above it. 389 should have 'a door' over it.

*The following are family names of two syllables.*

*Ch'ang-sān* (384, 79).  
*Chên-yü* (64, 6).  
*Ch'ü-kö* (331, 298).  
*Ch'ung-lí* (383, 400).  
*Ch'ung-sān* (12, 79).  
*Gau-yáng* (186, 395).  
*Hia-heü* (69, 19).  
*Hé-lién* (343, 354).  
*Hiên-yuén* (348, 349).  
*Hwáng-fü* (214, 228).  
*K'ung-yé* (29, 32).  
*K'ung-sān* (29, 79).  
*K'ung-yáng* (29, 269).  
*Ling-hü* (34, 222).  
*Mü-yung* (133, 91).

*Pü-yáng* (214, 395).  
*Shin-t'ü* (231, 102).  
*Shang-kwán* (3, 85).  
*Shên-yü* (204, 6).  
*Sz-k'ung* (53, 251).  
*Sz-má* (53, 416).  
*Sz-t'ü* (53, 128).  
*Tá-chö* (70, 50).  
*T'án-t'ü* (213, 281).  
*Ts'ung-ching* (84, 145).  
*T'ung-fang* (167, 148).  
*Yü-wün* (80, 147).  
*Wün-jin* (275, 8).  
*Wán-sé* (2, 21).  
*Wéi-ch'ü* (96, 356).

The numbers refer to the previous list.

## APPENDIX III.

*A list of the dynasties, the emperors, and the nién-haú.*

### I. *Sān-huáng* 三皇 'the Three emperors.'

Under this title are included the names of six persons, whose history is pure myth, but whose names ought to be known to the Chinese student.

1. *Pu'án-kù* 盤古 (v. Part II. p. 104).
2. *T'ien-huáng* 天 | \*.
3. *Ti-huáng* 地 |.
4. *Jin-huáng* 人 |.
5. *Yü-ch'au* 有巢.
6. *Sui-jin* 燧人.

These rulers are said to have reigned myriads of years, and to have invented all the ordinary arts of life.

### II. *Wu-ti* 五帝 'the Five emperors.' [B. C. 2852—2204.]

1. *Fü-hi* 伏羲 (115).
2. *Shin-nung* 神農 (140).
3. *Huang-ti* 黃帝 (100).
4. *Shao-hau* 少昊 (84).
5. *Chuen-hi* 顓頊 (78).
6. *Ti-kü* 帝嚳 or 佁 (78).
7. *T'ang-ti* 唐 | 堯 (102).
8. *Yü-ti* 虞 | 舜 (50).

Of this early period tradition alone renders an account. Eight sovereigns ruled, and instituted many useful methods of providing for the wants and comforts of their subjects. Ploughing, fishing, writing, keeping records of events, and the best modes of governing mankind formed the subjects of their invention. During these times *K'ü-fung fü*, on the *Huang-hó* in *Hó-nán*, was the metropolis. The first cycle began in the 61st year of *Huang-ti*.

### III. *Hsia-chau* 夏朝 'the Hia dynasty.' [B. C. 2205—1767.]

1. *Tá Yü* 大禹 (2205—8).
2. *Ti K'ü* | 啟 (2197—9).
3. *T'at*

\* The characters *huáng*<sup>a</sup>, *wáng*<sup>b</sup>, *ti*<sup>c</sup>, *t'at*<sup>d</sup>, *tsü*<sup>e</sup>, *tsung*<sup>f</sup>, and some others will not be repeated frequently in this list. The numbers in brackets give the date of the commencement and the length of each reign.

<sup>a</sup> 皇   <sup>b</sup> 王   <sup>c</sup> 帝   <sup>d</sup> 太   <sup>e</sup> 祖   <sup>f</sup> 宗

*Kāng* 太康 (2188. 29). 4. *Chūng Kāng* 仲 | (2159. 13). 5. *Ti siāng* | 相 (2146. 28). 6. *Shau Kāng* 少 | (2118. 61). 7. *Ti Chu* | 杼 (2057. 17). 8. *Ti Huot* | 槐 (2040. 26). 9. *Ti Máng* | 芒 (2014. 18). 10. *Ti Sē* | 池 (1996. 16). 11. *Ti Pū-kiáng* | 不降 (1980. 59). 12. *Ti Kiūng* | 局 (1921. 21). 13. *Ti Kín* | 廩 (1900. 21). 14. *Ti K'àng-kiá* | 孔甲 (1879. 31). 15. *Ti Kai* | 皐 (1848. 11). 16. *Ti Fā* | 發 (1837. 19). 17. *Ki Kwei* 桀癸 (1818. 52). (Cf. Part II. p. 22, note for a notice of Yü.)

IV. *Shāng-chau* 商朝 'the Shang dynasty.' [B. C. 1766—1122.]

1. *Ch'ing-t'ang* 成湯 (1766. 13). 2. *T'ai-kiá* 太甲 (1753. 33). 3. *Wu-sing* 沃丁 (1720. 29). 4. *T'ai-kāng* | 庚 (1691. 25). 5. *Siàu-kiá* 小 | (1666. 17). 6. *Yung-ki* 雍己 (1649. 12). 7. *T'ai-mou* | 戊 (1637. 75). 8. *Chung-sing* 仲丁 (1562. 13). 9. *Wai-jin* 外壬 (1549. 15). 10. *Hó-tán-kiá* 河亶 | (1534. 9). 11. *Tou-yi* 祖乙 (1525. 19). 12. *Tou-sin* | 辛 (1506. 16). 13. *Wu-kiá* 沃甲 (1490. 25). 14. *Tou-sing* | 丁 (1465. 14). 15. *Nán-kāng* 南 | (1433. 25). 16. *Yang-kiá* 陽 | (1408. 7). 17. *P'wán-kāng* 盤 | (1401. 28). 18. *Siàu-sin* 小 | (1373). 19. *Siàu-yi* | 乙 (1352. 28). 20. *Wu-sing* 武丁 (1324. 59). 21. *Tou-kāng* | 庚 (1265. 7). 22. *Tou-kiá* | 甲 (1258. 33). 23. *Lín-sin* 廩 | (1225. 6). 24. *Kāng-sing* | 丁 (1219. 21). 25. *Wu-yi* 武 | (1198. 4). 26. *T'ai-sing* 太丁 (1194. 3). 27. *Ti-yi* 帝 | (1191. 37). 28. *Chou-sin* 紂 | (1154. 32).

V. *Chou-chau* 周朝 'the Chou dynasty.' [B. C. 1122—249.]

1. *Wu-wáng* 武王 (1122. 7). 2. *Ch'ing-wáng* 成 | (1115. 37). 3. *Kāng-wáng* 康 | (1078. 26). 4. *Chau-wáng* 昭 | (1052. 51). 5. *Mu-wáng* 穆 | (1001. 55). 6. *K'ung-wáng* 共 | (946. 12). 7. *I-wáng* 懿 | (934. 7). 8. *Hiau-wáng* 孝 | (909. 15). 9. *I-wáng* 夷 | (894. 16). 10. *Li-wáng* 厲 | (878. 51). 11. *Siuen-wáng* 宣 |



- (827. 46). 12. *Yü-wáng* 幽 | (781. 11). 13. *P'ing-wáng* 平 |  
 (770. 51). 14. *Huán-wáng* 桓 | (719. 23). 15. *Chow-wáng* 莊 |  
 (696. 15). 16. *Lü-wáng* 釐 | (681. 5). 17. *Hwü-wáng* 惠 | (676.  
 25). 18. *Siang-wáng* 襄 | (651. 33). 19. *K'ing-wáng* 頃 | (618. 6).  
 20. *Kwáng-wáng* 匡 | (612. 6). 21. *T'ing-wáng* 定 | (606. 21).  
 22. *K'ien-wáng* 簡 | (585. 14). 23. *Ling-wáng* 靈 | (571. 27). 24.  
*King-wáng* 景 | (544. 25). 25. *K'ing-wáng* 敬 | (519. 44). 26.  
*Yüán-wáng* 元 | (475. 7). 27. *Ching-ting-wáng* 貞定 | (468. 28).  
 28. *K'au-wáng* 考 | (440. 15). 29. *Wei-li-wáng* 威烈 | (425. 24).  
 30. *Gün-wáng* 安 | (401. 26). 31. *Lü-wáng* 烈 | (375. 7). 32.  
*Hién-wáng* 顯 | (368. 48). 33. *Shün-tsing-wáng* 慎靚 | (320. 6).  
 34. *Nän-wáng* 赧 | (314. 59). 35. *T'ung-chou-kiün* 東周君  
 (255. 6).

During this period several great men flourished, whose names and works have come down to the present time. Such was *Wên-wáng*, 'the prince of letters,' who at the end of the *Shang* dynasty had been imprisoned for his upright conduct. In confinement he wrote the *Yü-k'ing* or 'Book of changes,' and was afterwards liberated through the intercession of a lady whom his son (afterwards *Wü-wáng*, the first monarch of the *Chou* dynasty) had sent to the emperor. *Wü-wáng* and his brother *Chou-k'ung* were both eminent men of letters. *Lau-tsz*, the founder of the Taoist sect, *K'ung-tsz* (Confucius) (B. C. 519), and *Meng-tsz* (Mencius) were all born during the *Chou* dynasty. The doctrines taught by these worthies of antiquity were called *wáng-tai*, 'the royal doctrines,' a term which is equivalent to the term "philosophy" in Europe. The country was divided into many petty states in these times. At one time there were 125, at another they were reduced to 41. The terms *Chên-koó* 戰國 and *Lü-koó* 列國 were the designations of these 'contending' or 'confederate' states.

# VI. *Tsin-chau* 秦朝 'the Tsin dynasty.' [B. C. 249—246.]

1. *Chow-wáng* 莊襄王 (249. 3).

# VII. *Hou Tsin chau* 後 | | 'the Latter Tsin dynasty.' [B. C. 246—202.]

1. *Chü Hwang-ti* 始 | | (246. 37). 2. *Ar-shü Hwang-ti* (209. 7).

*Ch'ü Hwang-ti* was the most celebrated ruler China ever had. He built the great wall, and destroyed all existing records, as far as he could do so, and put many of the learned to death, because he feared their influence to incite the people to rebellion. He was undoubtedly a great monarch, his power extended throughout China, and he called himself the 'First emperor.'

VIII. *Hán-chau* 漢朝 'the Han dynasty.' [B. C. 202—A. D. 25.]

1. *K'ü-tzu* 高 | (202. 8).
2. *Hwü-ti* 惠 | (194. 7).
3. *Lü-hoé* 呂后 | (187. 8).
4. *Wên-ti* 文 | (179. 23).
5. *K'ing-ti* 景 | (156. 16).
6. *Wu-ti* 武 | (140. 54).
7. *Chau-ti* 昭 | (B. C. 86. 13).
8. *Siuên-ti* 宣 | (B. C. 73. 25).
9. *Yuên-ti* 元 | (B. C. 48. 16).
10. *Ch'ing-ti* 成 | (B. C. 32. 26).
11. *Gai-ti* 哀 | (B. C. 6. 6).
12. *P'ing-ti* 平 | (A. D. 1. 5).
13. *Jü-tz' ying* 孺子嬰 | (A. D. 6. 17).
14. *Hwai-yáng-wáng* 淮陽 | (A. D. 23. 2).

IX. *Tung Hán* 東漢 'the Eastern Han dynasty.' [A. D. 25—221.]

1. *Kwáng-wü* 光武 | (25. 33).
2. *Ming-ti* 明 | (58. 18).
3. *Ch'ang-ti* 章 | (76. 13).
4. *Hé-ti* 和 | (89. 17).
5. *Shang-ti* 殤 | (106. 1).
6. *Gān-ti* 安 | (107. 19).
7. *Shün-ti* 順 | (126. 19).
8. *Chung-ti* 沖 | (145. 1).
9. *Ch'ê-ti* 質 | (146. 1).
10. *Hwán-ti* 桓 | (147. 21).
11. *Ling-ti* 靈 | (168. 22).
12. *Hiên-ti* 獻 | (190. 31).

At the end of this dynasty the empire was divided into 'Three kingdoms,' *Shü*, *Wéi*, and *Wú*.

X. *Hóu Hán* 後漢 'the Latter Han.' [A. D. 221—265.]

1. *Chau-ti* 昭烈 | (221. 2).
2. *Hóu-ti* 後 | (223. 42).

XI. *Tsin-chau* 晉朝 'the Tsin dynasty.' [A. D. 265—317.]

1. *Wu-ti* 武 | (265. 26).
2. *Hwü-ti* 惠 | (290. 17).
3. *Hwai-ti* 懷 | (307. 6).
4. *Mín-ti* 愍 | (313. 4).

XII. *Tung Tsin* 東晉 'the Eastern Tsin.' [A. D. 317—420.]

1. *Yuên-ti* 元 | (317. 6).
2. *Ming-ti* 明 | (323. 3).
3. *Ch'ing-ti* 成 | (326. 17).
4. *K'ang-ti* 康 | (343. 2).
5. *Mü-ti* 穆 | (345. 17).

6. *Gai-ti* 哀帝 (362. 4). 7. *Ti-yi* 帝奕 (366. 6). 8. *Kien-wên* 簡文 (371. 2). 9. *Hiaú-wù* 孝武 (373. 24). 10. *Gān-ti* 安 | (397. 22). 11. *Kùng-ti* 恭 | (419. 1).

The literary degree of *Siu-ts'at* was introduced A. D. 286.

XIII. *Pè Sung* 北宋 'the Northern Sung.' [A. D. 420—479.]

1. *Kau-tsù* 高 | (420. 3). 2. *Shau-ti* 少 | (423. 1). 3. *Wên-ti* 文 | (424. 30). 4. *Wù-ti* 武 | (454. 10). 5. *Pi-ti* 廢 | (464. 1). 6. *Ming-ti* 明 | (465. 8). 7. *Tsāng-wù-wáng* 蒼武王 (473. 4). 8. *Shên-ti* 順 | (477. 2).

XIV. *Ts'i-chau* 齊朝 'the Tsi dynasty.' [A. D. 479—502.]

1. *Kau-ti* 高 | (479. 4). 2. *Wù-ti* 武 | (483. 11). 3. *Ming-ti* 明 | (494. 5). 4. *Tung-huān-hou* 東昏侯 (499. 2). 5. *Hó-ti* 和 | (501. 1).

XV. *Liáng-chau* 梁朝 'the Liang dynasty.' [A. D. 502—557.]

1. *Wù-ti* 武 | (502. 48). 2. *Kien-wên* 簡文 (550. 2). 3. *Yuán-ti* 元 | (552. 3). 4. *King-ti* 敬 | (555. 2).

About this time the people began to use chairs for seats. *Wù-ti* became a Buddhist monk, and observed the rules of the order.

XVI. *Chín-chau* 陳朝 'the Chin dynasty.' [A. D. 557—589.]

1. *Kau-tsù* 高 | (557. 3). 2. *Wên-ti* 文 | (560. 7). 3. *Pi-ti* 廢 | (567. 2). 4. *Siuén-ti* 宣 | (569. 14). 5. *Heú-chù* 後主 (583. 6).

XVII. *Süt-chau* 隋朝 'the Süy dynasty.' [A. D. 589—620.]

1. *Kau-tsù* 高 | (589. 16). 2. *Yáng-ti* 煬 | (605. 13). 3. *Kùng-ti-yi* 恭 | 侑 (618. 1). 4. *Kùng-ti-t'ung* | | 侗 (619. 1).

XVIII. *T'áng-chau* 唐朝 'the T'áng dynasty.' [A. D. 620—907.]

1. *Kau-tsù* 高 | (620. 7). 2. *T'at-tsung* 太 | (627. 23). 3. *Kau-*

tsung 高 | (650. 34). 4. Chung-tsung 中 | (684. 26). 5. Jü-tsung 睿 | (710. 3). 6. Hiên-tsung 宣 | (713. 43). 7. Sü-tsung 肅 | (756. 7). 8. Tai-tsung 代 | (763. 8). 9. Tê-tsung 德 | (780. 25). 10. Shen-tsung 順 | (805. 1). 11. Hiên-tsung 憲 | (806. 15). 12. Mui-tsung 穆 | (821. 4). 13. K'ing-tsung 敬 | (825. 2). 14. Wen-tsung 文 | (827. 14). 15. Wu-tsung 武 | (841. 6). 16. Siuen-tsung 宣 | (847. 13). 17. I-tsung 懿 | (860. 14). 18. Hi-tsung 僖 | (874. 15). 19. Chau-tsung 昭 | (889. 15). 20. Chau-siuen-ti 昭宣 | (904. 3).

XIX. Heü Liang 後梁 'the Latter Liang dynasty.' [A. D. 907—923.]

1. T'ai-tsü 太 | (907. 6). 2. Liang-chü-tien 梁主璵 (913. 10).

XX. Heü T'ang 後唐 'the Latter T'ang dynasty.' [A. D. 923—936.]

1. Chuang-tsung 莊 | (923. 3). 2. Ming-tsung 明 | (926. 8). 3. Min-ti 閔 | (934). 4. Pi-ti 廢 | (934. 2).

XXI. Heü Tsin 後晉 'the Latter Tsin dynasty.' [A. D. 936—947.]

1. Kai-tsü 高 | (936. 8). 2. Ch'ü-ti 出 | (944. 3).

XXII. Heü Han 後漢 'the Latter Han dynasty.' [A. D. 947—951.]

1. Kai-tsü 高 | (947. 1). 2. Yin-ti 隱 | (948. 3).

XXIII. Heü Cheü 後周 'the Latter Cheü dynasty.' [A. D. 951—960.]

1. T'ai-tsü 太 | (951. 3). 2. Shi-tsung 世 | (954. 6). 3. K'ung-ti 恭 | (960).

XXIV. Sung-chau 宋朝 'the Sung dynasty.' [A. D. 960—1127.]

1. T'ai-tsü 太 | (960. 16). 2. T'ai-tsung 太 | (976. 22). 3. Chin-tsung 眞 | (998. 25). 4. Jen-tsung 仁 | (1023. 41). 5. Ying-tsung 英 | (1064. 4). 6. Shin-tsung 神 | (1068. 18). 7. Chê-tsung 哲 | (1086. 15). 8. Hwü-tsung 徽 | (1101. 25). 9. K'in-tsung 欽 | (1126. 1).

XXV. *Nán Sung* 南宋 'the Southern Sung.' [A. D. 1127—1280.]

1. *Kau-tsung* 高 | (1127. 36). 2. *Hiaü-tsung* 孝 | (1163. 27). 3. *Kwäng-tsung* 光 | (1190. 5). 4. *Ning-tsung* | (1195. 30). 5. *Li-tsung* 理 | (1225. 40). 6. *Tü-tsung* 度 | (1265. 10). 7. *Kung-tsung* 恭 | (1275. 1). 8. *Tuán-tsung* 端 | (1276. 2). 9. *Ti-ping* 帝昞 (1278. 2).

XXVI. *Yuén-chau* 元朝 'the Yuén dynasty.' [A. D. 1280—1368.]

1. *Shi-tsü* 世 | (1280. 15). 2. *Ch'ing-tsung* 成 | (1295. 13). 3. *Wü-tsung* 武 | (1308. 4). 4. *Jin-tsung* 仁 | (1312. 9). 5. *Ying-tsung* 英 | (1321. 3). 6. *T'ai-tung-ti* 泰定 | (1324. 5). 7. *Ming-tsung* 明 | (1329. 1). 8. *Wên-tsung* 文 | (1330. 3). 9. *Shên-tsung* 順 | (1333. 35).

XXVII. *Ming-chau* 明朝 'the Ming dynasty.' [A. D. 1368—1644.]

1. *T'ai-tsü* 太 | (1368. 30). 2. *Kien-wên-ti* 建文 | (1398. 5). 3. *T'ai-tsung* 太 | (1403. 22). 4. *Jin-tsung* 仁 | (1425. 1). 5. *Süên-tsung* 宣 | (1426. 10). 6. *Ying-tsung* 英 | (1436. 21). 7. *K'ing-ti* 景 | (1457. 8). 8. *Hiên-tsung* 憲 | (1465. 23). 9. *Hiaü-tsung* 孝 | (1488. 18). 10. *Wü-tsung* 武 | (1506. 16). 11. *Shi-tsung* 世 | (1522. 45). 12. *Mü-tsung* 穆 | (1567. 6). 13. *Shên-tsung* 神 | (1573. 47). 14. *Kwäng-tsung* 光 | (1620. 1). 15. *Hü-tsung* 熹 | (1621. 7). 16. *Hwaü-tsung* 懷 | (1628. 16).

XXVIII. *Tá-ts'ing-chau* 大清朝 'the Tá-ts'ing dynasty.'

[A. D. 1644—1862.]

1. *Shi-tsü-ch'ang* 世 | 章 (1644. 18). 2. *Shing-tsü-jin* 聖 | 仁 (1662. 61). 3. *Shi-tsung-hiën* | | 憲 (1723. 13). 4. *Kau-tsung-shên* 高 | 純 (1736. 60). 5. *Jin-tsung-jüi* 仁 | 睿 (1796. 25). 6. *Tau-kwäng* 道光 (1821. 30). 7. *Hiên-fung* 咸豐 (1851. 9). 8. *Tung-chi* 通治 (1860).

# APPENDIX IV.

## THE NIEN-HAU.

(1.) *List of the characters occurring in the nien-hau, arranged alphabetically.*

章 <i>chāng</i> 'luminous.'	淳 <i>chūn</i> 'pleasant.'	咸 <i>hién</i> 'complete.'
目 <i>chāng</i> 'splendid.'	中 <i>chūng</i> 'middle' or 'second.'	顯 <i>hién</i> 'illustrious.'
常 <i>ch'ang</i> 'constant.'	重 <i>chūng</i> 'renewed.'	興 <i>hīng</i> 'flourishing.'
長 <i>ch'ang</i> 'extensive.'	符 <i>fú</i> 'charm.'	訓 <i>hiún</i> 'instruction.'
昭 <i>chāi</i> 'bright.'	輔 <i>fú</i> 'assistance.'	禾 <i>hó</i> 'peace.'
靜 <i>chè</i> 'large, wide.'	福 <i>fú</i> 'happiness.'	和 <i>hó</i> 'harmony.'
始 <i>chì</i> 'beginning.'	豐 <i>fūng</i> 'affluent.'	河 <i>hó</i> 'the river.'
至 <i>chí</i> 'extreme.'	鳳 <i>fúng</i> 'omen of good.'	鴻 <i>háng</i> 'vast.'
治 <i>chí</i> 'ruling.'	封 <i>fúng</i> 'affluent.'	弘 <i>háng</i> 'vast.'
致 <i>chí</i> 'the utmost.'	安 <i>gān</i> 'peace.'	洪 <i>háng</i> 'vast.'
赤 <i>chì</i> 'carnation.'	漢 <i>hón</i> 'milky-way.'	化 <i>huá</i> 'reforming.'
真 <i>chīn</i> 'true.'	衡 <i>hāng</i> 'adjusting.'	黃 <i>huáng</i> 'yellow.'
征 <i>chīng</i> 'conquering.'	亨 <i>hāng</i> 'success.'	皇 <i>huáng</i> 'emperor.'
貞 <i>chīng</i> 'virtuous.'	後 <i>heú</i> 'second.'	儼 <i>huí</i> 'excellent.'
承 <i>chīng</i> 'aiding.'	狩 <i>heú</i> 'hunting.'	會 <i>huí</i> 'united.'
成 <i>chīng</i> 'perfect.'	喜 <i>hī</i> 'pervading.'	義 <i>í</i> 'justice.'
正 <i>chīng</i> 'upright.'	僖 <i>hī</i> 'rejoicing.'	儀 <i>í</i> 'correct.'
政 <i>chīng</i> 'regulating.'	熙 <i>hī</i> 'prosperity.'	仁 <i>jín</i> 'humane.'
禎 <i>chīng</i> 'pure.'	禧 <i>hī</i> 'bliss.'	人 <i>jín</i> 'man.'
垂 <i>chuí</i> 'extending.'	孝 <i>hiáu</i> 'pious.'	開 <i>k'ai</i> 'opening.'

甘 <i>kān</i> 'sweet.'	露 <i>lú</i> 'manifest.'	瑞 <i>shuài</i> 'good omen.'
康 <i>kāng</i> 'firm.'	祿 <i>lù</i> 'happiness.'	璽 <i>sì</i> 'royal seal.'
更 <i>kāng</i> 'more.'	龍 <i>lóng</i> 'dragon.'	象 <i>xiàng</i> 'elephant.'
紀 <i>kì</i> 'arranging.'	隆 <i>lóng</i> 'glorious.'	先 <i>xiān</i> 'first.'
啟 <i>kì</i> 'instructing.'	民 <i>mín</i> 'people.'	宣 <i>xiūn</i> 'extending.'
極 <i>kí</i> 'extreme.'	明 <i>míng</i> 'bright.'	朔 <i>shuò</i> 'restoration.'
嘉 <i>jiā</i> 'increasing.'	業 <i>niè</i> 'inheritance.'	綏 <i>suí</i> 'tranquil.'
鼎 <i>jiǎ</i> 'stag.'	年 <i>nián</i> 'year.'	歲 <i>sùì</i> 'year.'
乾 <i>qián</i> 'firm.'	寧 <i>níng</i> 'peace.'	嗣 <i>sù</i> 'succession.'
監 <i>jiān</i> 'controlling.'	本 <i>pèn</i> 'origin.'	大 <i>dà</i> 'great.'
建 <i>jiàn</i> 'establishing.'	寶 <i>pào</i> 'precious.'	太 <i>tai</i> 'at' 'extreme.'
景 <i>jǐng</i> 'illuminated.'	保 <i>pào</i> 'protecting.'	泰 <i>tai</i> 'at' 'vast.'
竟 <i>jǐng</i> 'investigating.'	平 <i>píng</i> 'peace.'	登 <i>tāng</i> 'ascending.'
慶 <i>kíng</i> 'good.'	普 <i>pù</i> 'general.'	道 <i>dào</i> 'reason.'
君 <i>jiūn</i> 'princes.'	順 <i>shùn</i> 'obedient.'	德 <i>dé</i> 'virtue.'
居 <i>jū</i> 'residing.'	紹 <i>shào</i> 'continuing.'	地 <i>dì</i> 'earth.'
恭 <i>kùng</i> 'honouring.'	上 <i>shàng</i> 'superior.'	帝 <i>dì</i> 'ruler.'
拱 <i>kùng</i> 'uniting.'	攝 <i>shè</i> 'directing.'	調 <i>tiào</i> 'regulating.'
觀 <i>guān</i> 'to see.'	取 <i>qǔ</i> 'taking.'	天 <i>tiān</i> 'heaven.'
光 <i>guāng</i> 'brightness.'	授 <i>shòu</i> 'receiving.'	鼎 <i>dǐng</i> 'security.'
廣 <i>guǎng</i> 'vast.'	壽 <i>shòu</i> 'aged.'	定 <i>dìng</i> 'fixed.'
龜 <i>guī</i> 'tortoise.'	視 <i>shì</i> 'behold.'	冊 <i>cè</i> 'plan.'
國 <i>guó</i> 'kingdom.'	神 <i>shén</i> 'divine.'	載 <i>zài</i> 'containing.'
禮 <i>lǐ</i> 'ceremony.'	昇 <i>shēng</i> 'ascending.'	贊 <i>zàn</i> 'praising.'
曆 <i>lì</i> 'heavenly signs.'	升 <i>shēng</i> 'ascending.'	宅 <i>zhái</i> 'dwelling.'
麟 <i>lín</i> 'stag.'	聖 <i>shèng</i> 'sacred.'	詳 <i>xiáng</i> 'felicitous.'
樂 <i>lè</i> 'joy.'	盛 <i>shèng</i> 'abundant.'	節 <i>jié</i> 'partition.'

爵 <i>tsiō</i> 'noble.'	賜 <i>ts'z</i> 'bestowing.'	耀 <i>yaù</i> 'glory.'
青 <i>tsing</i> 'azure.'	通 <i>t'ung</i> 'thorough.'	延 <i>yén</i> 'spread.'
清 <i>tsing</i> 'pure.'	同 <i>t'ung</i> 'same.'	炎 <i>yén</i> 'luminous.'
靖 <i>tsing</i> 'quiet.'	統 <i>t'ung</i> 'complete.'	應 <i>ying</i> 'replying.'
初 <i>tsü</i> 'beginning.'	端 <i>tuān</i> 'upright.'	祐 <i>yiü</i> 'assistance.'
祚 <i>tsü</i> 'blessings.'	烏 <i>ü</i> 'a crow.'	豫 <i>yü</i> 'prepared.'
聰 <i>tsung</i> 'general.'	萬 <i>wān</i> 'myriad.'	雲 <i>yün</i> 'clouds.'
宗 <i>tsung</i> 'ancestor.'	文 <i>wen</i> 'literary.'	運 <i>yün</i> 'revolving.'
崇 <i>tsung</i> 'revered.'	五 <i>wü</i> 'five.'	元 <i>yuén</i> 'beginning.'
總 <i>tsung</i> 'general.'	武 <i>wü</i> 'military.'	雍 <i>yung</i> 'harmony.'
渚 <i>tü</i> 'all.'	陽 <i>yáng</i> 'vast.'	永 <i>yung</i> 'eternal.'

Note.—All these characters are significant when they are present in the designation of a year or a reign, and the meanings here attached to them are intended to guide the student in rendering such designations into English. In some cases the translation of the character will not suit the English expression, and some words are used figuratively, or they refer to a well-known story. The expression generally runs in the usual grandiloquent phraseology of the Chinese, and intimates that "Peace and prosperity have arisen;" that "Blessings are going to be universally diffused;" or that "All things are beginning again to prosper."

The following list of the *niên-haiü*, in which they are arranged according to the English alphabet, will be of immense service to the student of Chinese history. The absence of the native characters will be of little consequence, as the names of the emperors, the dynasties, and the years of the cycle are given, and one of these is generally mentioned by native authors who use the *niên-haiü*.



(2.) *List of the niên-hai arranged alphabetically.*

Niên-hai.	Dura- tion.	Emperor.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B.C.	A.D.
Chang-ho	2	Chang-ti	Hán	tung-hai		87
Chang-wu	2	Chau-li-ti	Shu-Hán	kang-tzè		221
Ch'ang-shui	2	T'ien-heu	T'ang	jin-shin		692
Ch'ang-gan	4	T'ien-heu	T'ang	sin-ch'eu		701
Ch'ang-k'ing	4	Mu-tsung	T'ang	sin-ch'eu		821
Ch'ang-hing	4	Ming-tsung	Heu-T'ang	kang-yin		930
Chè-tu	6	Ying-tsung	Hia	tung-yiu		1057
Chi-yuen	6	Chau-ti	Hán	yi-wi	86	
Chi-kién-kwo	5	Wang-mang	Hán	ki-é		9
Chi-kao	4	T'ái-wu-ti	Wei	ki-tzè		424
Chi-tè	4	Ch'ang-ching-kung	Chin	kwei-mau		583
Chi-tè	2	Si-tsung	T'ang	ping-shin		756
Chi-tai	3	Ching-tsung	Sung	yi-wi		995
Chi-ho	2	Lin-tsung	Sung	ki-t'wù		1054
Chi-p'ing	4	Ying-tsung	Sung	ki-t'chin		1064
Chi-ning	1	Chü-yung-tai	Kin	kwei-yiu		1213
Chi-yuen	31	Shi-tai	Yuen	ki-tzè		1264
Chi-yuen	6	Shen-ti	Yuen	yi-kwei		1335
Chi-tá	4	Wu-tsung	Yuen	wu-shin		1308
Chi-chi	3	Ying-tsung	Yuen	sin-yiu		1321
Chi-ho	1	T'ái-ting-ti	Yuen	wu-shin		1328
Chi-shen	3	Wan-tsung	Yuen	kang-wu		1330
Chi-ching	28	Shen-ti	Yuen	sin-é		1341
Chi-ü	13	Tá-ti	Wu	wu-wu		238
Chin-yuen	3	T'í-liang	Kin	kwei-yiu	92	1153
Ching-ho	4	Wu-ti	Hán	ki-ch'eu		
Ching-kwan	23	T'ái-tsung	T'ang	tung-hai		627
Ching-yuen	20	Tzè-tsung	T'ang	yi-ch'eu		785
Ching-yiu	4	Suen-tsung	Kin	kwei-yiu		1213
Ching-ming	6	Chü-t'ien	Heu-Liang	yi-hai		915
Ching-kwan	13	Tsung-tsung	Hia	jin-wu		1102
Ching-shing	3	Yuen-ti	Liang	jin-shin		552
Ching-ming	1	Hiaü-wan-ti	Wei	ping-shin		476
Ching-kwo	1	Yü-chü-liang	Pé-Tsi	tung-yiu		577
Ching-gan	5	Chang-tsung	Kin	ping-shin		1196
Ching-ho	23	Hien-tsung	Ming	yi-ping		1465
Ching-chi	9	Chü-fang	Wei	kang-shin		240
Ching-yuen	2	Chü-mau	Wei	ki-t'ü		254
Ching-ming	2	Ch'ang-ching-kung	Chin	tung-wu		587
Ching-p'ing	1	T'ái-wu-ti	Wei	sin-mau		451
Ching-chi	4	Suen-wu-ti	Wei	ki-t'chin		504
Ching-kwo	5	Hiaü-ming-ti	Wei	kang-tzè		520
Ching-t'ang	14	Ying-tsung	Ming	ping-shin		1436
Ching-ho	7	Hwü-tsung	Sung	sin-mau		1111
Ching-tá	8	Gai-tsung	Kin	ki-t'chin		1224

Niên-haá.	Dura- tion.	Emperor.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B.C.	A.D.
Chéng-tê	8	Tông-tông	Hia	tíng-wí		1127
Chéng-tê	16	Wú-tông	Ming	píng-yín		1506
Chéng-láng	6	Ti-láng	Kín	yíu-tsà		1156
Cháu-kùng	4	T'ien-heù	T'áng	yí-yíu		685
Chung-yuén	6	King-ti	Hán	jín-shín	149	
Chung-yuén	2	Huáng-wú-ti	Hán	píng-shín		56
Chung-p'ing	6	Ling-ti	Hán	kiá-tsà		184
Chung-hing	1	Hó-ti	Tet	sín-sé		501
Chung-tá-t'ung	6	Wú-ti	Liáng	kí-yíu		529
Chung-tá-t'ung	1	Wú-ti	Liáng	píng-yín		546
Chung-hing	1	Cháu-láng	Wei	sín-hai		531
Chung-hó	4	Hí-tsung	T'áng	sín-ch'èu		881
Chung-t'ung	4	Shí-tsü	Yüén	käng-shín		1260
Chung-hó	1	Hwü-tsung	Sing	wú-sü		1118
Chung-hí	24	Hing-tsung	Liaü	jín-shín		1032
Fü-shing-ching-tsü	4	Ying-tsung	Hia	kwet-sé		1053
Fung-huáng	3	Chü-kaü	Wú	jín-shín		272
Hán-gân	2	Shên-ti	Hán	jí-wú		142
Heá-yuén	7	Wên-ti	Hán	wú-yín	163	
Heá-yuén	3	King-ti	Hán	wú-sü	143	
Heá-yuén	2	Wú-ti	Hán	kwet-sé	88	
Hí-p'ing	6	Ling-ti	Hán	jín-tsà		172
Hí-p'ing	2	Hiaü-ming-ti	Wei	píng-shín		516
Hí-ning	10	Shín-tsung	Sung	wú-shín		1068
Hiaü-kién	3	Hiaü-wú-ti	Pé-Sung	kiá-wú		454
Hiaü-chäng	4	Hiaü-ming-ti	Wei	yí-sé		525
Hién-fung	10	Tá-ts'ing		käng-sü		1850
Hién-hí	2	Yüén-ti	Wei	kiá-shín		264
Hién-ning	5	Hwü-ti	Tsin	yí-wí		275
Hién-hó	9	Ching-ti	Tsin	píng-sü		326
Hién-k'áng	8	Ching-ti	Tsin	yí-wí		335
Hién-gân	2	Hién-wên-ti	Tsin	sín-wí		371
Hién-häng	4	Kau-tsung	T'áng	käng-wú		670
Hién-t'ung	14	Yí-tsung	T'áng	käng-shín		860
Hién-p'ing	6	Ching-tsung	Sung	wú-sü		998
Hién-shên	10	Tá-tsung	Sung	yí-ch'èu		1265
Hién-yüing	10	Tá-tsung	Liaü	yí-sé		1065
Hién-tsung	6	Jín-tsung	Lí-Liaü	píng-shín		1136
Hién-k'ing	5	Kau-tsung	T'áng	píng-shín		656
Hién-tê	6	Shí-tsung	Heü-cheü	kiá-yín		954
Hing-p'ing	2	Hién-ti	Hán	kiá-sü		194
Hing-ning	3	Gai-ti	Tsin	kwet-hai		363
Hing-gân	2	Wên-ching-ti	Wei	jín-shín		452
Hing-kuáng	1	Wên-ching-ti	Wei	kiá-wú		454
Hing-hó	4	Hiaü-tsing-ti	T'ung-wei	kí-wí		539
Hing-yuén	1	Tê-tsung	T'áng	kiá-tsà		784
Hing-ting	5	Süên-tsung	Kín	tíng-ch'èu		1217
Hó-tsing	3	Wú-ching-ti	Pé-Tet	jín-wú		562
Hó-p'ing	6	Wên-ching-ti	Wei	käng-tsà		460
Hó-p'ing	4	Ching-ti	Hán	kwet-sé	28	
Hó-p'ing	1	Hwân-ti	Hán	käng-yín		150

Niên-haú.	Dura- tion.	Emperor.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B. C.	A. D.
Háng-kiā	4	Ching-ti	Hán	sin-ch'èu	20	
Háng-tau	1	Kau-tsung	T'ang	kuet-wi		683
Háng-wù	31	T'ái-tsù	Ming	wù-shin		1368
Háng-hi	1	Jin-tsung	Ming	yi-si		1425
Háng-chi	18	Hiaú-tsung	Ming	wù-shin		1488
Háng-kuang	1½	Fü-wang	Ming	kiá-shin		1644
Huang-lung	1	Siuên-ti	Hán	jín-shin	49	
Huang-ts'ü	7	Wên-ti	Wei	kang-tsè		220
Huang-wù	7	Tá-ti	Wú	jín-yin		222
Huang-lung	3	Tá-ti	Wú	kì-yü		229
Huang-chi	2	Tau-wù-ti	Wei	píng-shin		396
Huang-hing	4	Hien-wên-ti	Wei	tíng-wi		467
Huang-kiên	2	Chau-ti	P'è-Tsi	kang-shin		560
Huang-yü	5	Jin-tsung	Sung	kì-ch'èu		1049
Huang-kiên	2	Siang-tsung	Hia	kang-wù		1210
Huang-t'ung	9	Hì-tsung	Kin	sin-yü		1141
Huang-k'ing	2	Jin-tsung	Yuen	jín-tsè		1312
Hwü-chang	6	Wü-tsung	T'ang	sin-yü		841
Hwü-t'ung	10	T'ái-tsung	Liaú	wù-sü		938
I-hi	14	Gân-ti	Tsin	yi-si		405
I-ning	1	Kung-ti	Tsi	tíng-ch'èu		617
I-fung	3	Kau-tsung	T'ang	píng-tsè		676
Jin-sheu	4	Wên-ti	Süi	sin-yü		601
Jin-k'ing	5	Jin-tsung	Hia	kiá-tsè		1144
K'ái-huang	20	Wên-ti	Süi	sin-ch'èu		581
K'ái-yau	1	Kau-tsung	T'ang	sin-si		681
K'ái-yuen	29	Huên-tsung	T'ang	kuet-ch'èu		713
K'ái-ching	5	Wên-tsung	T'ang	píng-shin		836
K'ái-p'ing	4	T'ái-tsü	Heü-Liang	tíng-mau		907
K'ái-yün	3	T'ái-wang	Heü-Tsin	kiá-shin		944
K'ái-pau	9	T'ái-tsü	Sung	wù-shin		968
K'ái-hi	3	Ning-tsung	Sung	yi-ch'èu		1205
K'ái-k'ing	1	Lì-tsung	Sung	kì-wi		1259
K'ái-t'ái	9	Shing-tsung	Liaú	jín-tsè		1012
K'án-lá	4	Siuên-ti	Hán	wù-shin	53	
K'án-lá	4	Chü-mau	Wei	píng-tsè		256
K'ang-tíng	1	Jin-tsung	Sung	kang-shin		1040
K'ang-hi	61	Shing-tsü	Tsing	jín-yin		1662
K'ang-chi	2	Hwai-yang-wang	Hán	kuet-wi		23
K'ia-p'ing	5	Chü-fang	Wei	kì-si		249
K'ia-hó	6	Tá-ti	Wú	jín-tsè		232
K'ia-hing	4	Mün-ti	Tsin	kuet-yü		313
K'ia-yü	8	Jin-tsung	Sung	píng-shin		1056
K'ia-t'ái	4	Ning-tsung	Sung	sin-yü		1201
K'ia-tíng	17	Ning-tsung	Sung	wù-shin		1208
K'ia-hi	4	Lì-tsung	Sung	tíng-yü		1237
K'ia-tung	45	Shi-tung	Ming	jín-wù		1522
K'ia-k'ing	24	Tá-ts'ing	T'ang	píng-shin		1796
K'ien-yuen	6	Wü-ti	Hán	sin-ch'èu	140	
K'ien-ming	1	Chü-yin	P'è-Tsi	kang-shin		560
K'ien-fung	2	Kau-tsung	T'ang	píng-yin		666

Niên-huá.	Dura- tion.	Emperor.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B.C.	A.D.
Kiên-yuên	2	Sĩ-tsung	T'ang	wù-sĩ		758
Kiên-fá	6	Hĩ-tsung	T'ang	kiá-wù		874
Kiên-năng	4	Châu-tsung	T'ang	kiá-yín		894
Kiên-huá	4	Châu-tiên	Hou-Liang	kuet-yü		913
Kiên-yü	3	Yin-ti	Hou-Hán	wù-shín		948
Kiên-tê	5	T'ái-ts'ü	Sung	kuet-hai		963
Kiên-hing	1	Ching-tsung	Sung	jín-sĩ		1022
Kiên-tái	9	Hiaü-tsung	Sung	yi-yü		1165
Kiên-hang	4	King-tsung	Liaü	kì-mau		979
Kiên-t'ung	10	T'ien-tsü-ti	Liaü	sin-sé		1101
Kiên-tai	2	Hwüi-tsung	Hia	wù-shín		1068
Kiên-yü	24	Jin-tsung	Hia	käng-yín		1170
Kiên-ting	4	Hien-tsung	Hia	kuet-wi		1223
Kiên-lung	60	Kau-tsung	T'á-ts'ing	píng-shín		1736
Kiên-chau	5	Yüên-ti	Hán	kuet-wi	38	
Kiên-chí	4	Ching-ti	Hán	kì-ch'ou	32	
Kiên-p'ing	4	Gai-ti	Hán	yi-mau	6	
Kiên-wü	31	Kuang-wü-ti	Hán	yi-yü		25
Kiên-ts'ü	8	Chang-ti	Hán	píng-tsé		76
Kiên-kuang	1	Gan-ti	Hán	sin-yü		121
Kiên-k'ang	1	Shan-ti	Hán	kiá-shín		144
Kiên-hó	3	Huán-ti	Hán	tíng-hai		147
Kiên-ning	4	Ling-ti	Hán	wù-shín		168
Kiên-gan	25	Hien-ti	Hán	píng-tsé		196
Kiên-hing	15	Hou-chü	Shü-Hán	kuet-mau		223
Kiên-hing	2	Chü-liang	Wá	jín-shín		252
Kiên-hung	3	Chü-kau	Wá	kì-ch'ou		269
Kiên-wü	1	Mün-ti	Tsin	tíng-ch'ou		317
Kiên-yuên	2	K'ang-ti	Tsin	kuet-mau		343
Kiên-yuên	4	Kau-ti	Tai	kì-wi		479
Kiên-wü	4	Ming-ti	Tai	kiá-sĩ		494
Kiên-ming	1	Chü-yé	Wei	käng-sĩ		530
Kiên-tê	6	Wü-ti	Chou	käng-yín		572
Kiên-chung	4	Tê-tsung	T'ang	käng-shín		780
Kiên-lung	3	T'ái-ts'ü	Sung	käng-shín		960
Kiên-chung t'ing-kuo	1	Hwüi-tsung	Sung	sin-sé		1101
Kiên-yên	4	Kau-tsung	Sung	tíng-wi		1127
Kiên-wên	5	Hwüi-ti	Ming	kì-mau		1399
King-ts'ü	2	Ming-ti	Wei	tíng-sé		237
King-yuên	4	Yüên-ti	Wei	käng-shín		260
King-p'ing	1	Yang-yang-wang	Pê-Sung	kuet-hai		423
King-hó	1	Fü-ti	Pê-Sung	yi-sé		465
King-ming	4	Süên-wü-ti	Wei	käng-shín		500
King-lung	3	Chung-tsung	T'ang	tíng-wi		707
King-yín	2	Süi-tsung	T'ang	käng-sĩ		710
King-fü	2	Chau-tsung	T'ang	jín-tsé		892
King-tê	4	Ching-tsung	Sung	kiá-shín		1004
King-yü	4	Jin-tsung	Sung	kiá-sĩ		1034
King-ting	5	Lü-tsung	Sung	käng-shín		1260
King-yên	2	Tuán-tsung	Sung	píng-sé		1276
King-t'ái	7	King-tsung	Ming	käng-wü		1450

Niên-haí.	Duration.	Emperor.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B.C.	A.D.
K'ing-n'ing	1	Yu'ên-tí	Hán	wù-tzè	33	
K'ing-yau	5	Heu-chü	Shü-Hán	wù-yín		258
K'ing-lí	8	Jin-tsung	Sung	sín-sé		1041
K'ing-yuén	5	Ning-tsung	Sung	yí-mau		1195
K'ui-shí	1	T'ien-heü	T'ang	k'ang-tzè		700
K'ü-shiè	2	Shü-tzè-y'ing	Hán	p'ing-yín		6
K'ung-tí	4	K'ung-tí	Wéi	kiá-sü		554
K'ung-huó	5	Y'ing-tsung	Hia	kuo-mau		1063
K'uang-hó	6	Ling-tí	Hán	wù-wù		178
K'uang-hí	1	Hwü-tí	Tsin	p'ing-yín		306
K'uang-tá	2	Lín-hai-wáng	Chán	t'ing-hai		567
K'uang-tzè	1	T'ien-heü	T'ang	kiá-shín		684
K'uang-k'í	3	Hí-tsung	T'ang	yí-sé		885
K'uang-huó	3	Chau-tsung	T'ang	wù-wù		898
K'uang-t'ing	13	Shín-tsung	Hia	sín-wí		1211
K'uang-tzè	2	Tai-tsung	T'ang	kuo-mau		763
K'uang-m'ing	1	Hí-tsung	T'ang	k'ang-tzè		880
K'uang-shén	3	T'ái-ts'ü	Heü-Cheü	sín-hai		951
K'uang-yün	2	K'ing-tsung	Hia	kiá-sü		1034
Lín-tzè	2	K'ü-tsung	T'ang	kiá-tzè		664
Láng-hó	1	Gai-tí	Tsin	jín-sü	73	362
Láng-gán	5	Gán-tí	Tsin	t'ing-yü		397
Láng-huó	1	Heü-chü-wéi	Pé-Tsè	p'ing-shín		576
Láng-só	2	K'ü-tsung	T'ang	sín-yü		661
Láng-k'í	1	Hí-tsung	T'ang	k'í-yü		889
Láng-tzè	2	Chü-t'ien	Heü-Liang	sín-sé		921
Láng-h'ing	2	Hiaü-tsung	Sung	kuo-wí		1163
Láng-k'ing	6	Mü-tsung	Ming	t'ing-mau		1567
Láng-wù	1	T'ang-wáng	Ming	p'ing-sü		1646
Ming-tí	2	Ming-tí	Cheü	t'ing-ch'èu		557
Ming-tai	2	Jin-tsung	Sung	jín-shín		1032
Ming-ch'ang	6	Ch'ang-tsung	Kín	k'ang-sü		1190
Ning-k'ang	3	Wü-tí	Tsin	kuo-yü		373
P'ên-chí	4	Siu'ên-tí	Hán	wù-shín		
P'ên-ts'ü	1	Chü-tí	Hán	p'ing-sü		146
P'au-t'ing	5	Wü-tí	Cheü	sín-sé		561
P'au-y'ing	1	Sí-tsung	T'ang	jín-yín		762
P'au-lí	2	K'ing-tsung	T'ang	yí-sé		825
P'au-yuén	2	Jin-tsung	Sung	wù-yín		1038
P'au-k'ing	3	Lí-tsung	Sung	yí-yü		1225
P'au-yü	6	Lí-tsung	Sung	kuo-ch'èu		1253
P'au-tá	5	T'ien-tsü-tí	Liaü	sín-ch'èu		1121
P'au-n'ing	10	K'ing-tsung	Liaü	k'í-sé		969
P'au-t'ing	3	Chü-kau	Wú	p'ing-sü		266
P'ü-t'ung	7	Wü-tí	Liang	k'ang-tzè		520
Shén-chí	18	Shí-tsü	Tá-ts'ing	kiá-shín		1644
Shén-yü	12	Lí-tsung	Sung	sín-ch'èu		1241
Shén-huó	5	T'ái-tsung	Sung	k'ang-yín		990
Shén-hí	16	Hiaü-tsung	Sung	kiá-wü		1174
Sháng-yuén	2	K'ü-tsung	T'ang	kiá-sü		674
Sháng-yuén	2	Sí-tsung	T'ang	k'ang-tzè		760

Niên-huất.	Duration.	Emperor.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B.C.	A.D.
<i>Shaü-t'ái</i>	1	<i>K'ing-tí</i>	<i>Liáng</i>	<i>yí-hai</i>		555
<i>Shaü-shíng</i>	4	<i>Chê-tsüing</i>	<i>Súng</i>	<i>kiá-sü</i>		1094
<i>Shaü-híng</i>	32	<i>Kau-tsüing</i>	<i>Súng</i>	<i>sín-hai</i>		1131
<i>Shaü-hí</i>	5	<i>Kwáng-tsüing</i>	<i>Súng</i>	<i>káng-sü</i>		1190
<i>Shaü-tíng</i>	6	<i>Lí-tsüing</i>	<i>Súng</i>	<i>wù-tsè</i>		1228
<i>Shaü-híng</i>	12	<i>Chíng-t'ien t'ái-hoi</i>	<i>Sí-Liáu</i>	<i>jín-sü</i>		1142
<i>Shaü-wù</i>	1	<i>Fú-wáng</i>	<i>Míng</i>	<i>píng-sü</i>		1646
<i>Sheü-kwo</i>	2	<i>T'ái-tai</i>	<i>Kín</i>	<i>yí-wí</i>		1115
<i>Sheü-láng</i>	6	<i>Tau-tsüing</i>	<i>Liáu</i>	<i>yí-hai</i>		1095
<i>Shín-tsü</i>	4	<i>Süen-tí</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>káng-shín</i>	61	
<i>Shín-shwü</i>	2	<i>Míng-yüen-tí</i>	<i>Wéi</i>	<i>kiá-yín</i>		414
<i>Shín-kiá</i>	4	<i>T'ái-wù-tí</i>	<i>Wéi</i>	<i>wù-shín</i>		428
<i>Shín-kwo</i>	2	<i>Míng-tí</i>	<i>Wéi</i>	<i>wù-sü</i>		518
<i>Shín-küing</i>	1	<i>T'ien-hoi</i>	<i>T'áng</i>	<i>tíng-yü</i>		697
<i>Shín-láng</i>	2	<i>Chüing-tsüing</i>	<i>T'áng</i>	<i>yí-sé</i>		705
<i>Shín-tsé</i>	6	<i>T'ái-tsüing</i>	<i>Liáu</i>	<i>píng-tsè</i>		916
<i>Shíng-míng</i>	2	<i>Shén-tí</i>	<i>Pé-Súng</i>	<i>tíng-sé</i>		477
<i>Shíng-p'íng</i>	5	<i>Mü-tí</i>	<i>Tsin</i>	<i>tíng-sé</i>		357
<i>Shíng-tí</i>	2	<i>T'ien-hoi</i>	<i>T'áng</i>	<i>wù-sü</i>		698
<i>Sien-t'ien</i>	1	<i>Huén-tsüing</i>	<i>T'áng</i>	<i>kwéi-ch'èu</i>		713
<i>Süen-chíng</i>	1	<i>Süen-tí</i>	<i>Chou</i>	<i>wù-sü</i>		578
<i>Süen-hó</i>	7	<i>Hwü-tsüing</i>	<i>Súng</i>	<i>kiá-hai</i>		1119
<i>Süen-té</i>	10	<i>Süen-tsüing</i>	<i>Míng</i>	<i>píng-jín</i>		1426
<i>Süi-hó</i>	2	<i>Chíng-tí</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>kwéi-ch'èu</i>	8	
<i>Sá-shíng</i>	21	<i>Chüing-tsüing</i>	<i>T'áng</i>	<i>kiá-shín</i>		684
<i>Tá-míng</i>	8	<i>Wü-tí</i>	<i>Pé-Súng</i>	<i>tíng-yü</i>		457
<i>Tá-t'üing</i>	2	<i>Wü-tí</i>	<i>Liáng</i>	<i>tíng-wí</i>		527
<i>Tá-t'áng</i>	11	<i>Wü-tí</i>	<i>Liáng</i>	<i>yí-mau</i>		535
<i>Tá-pau</i>	2	<i>Kiên-wón-tí</i>	<i>Liáng</i>	<i>káng-wù</i>		550
<i>Tá-siáng</i>	3	<i>Téng-tí</i>	<i>Chou</i>	<i>kiá-hai</i>		579
<i>Tá-té</i>	12	<i>Yáng-tí</i>	<i>Süi</i>	<i>yí-ch'èu</i>		605
<i>Tá-lí</i>	14	<i>Tat-tsüing</i>	<i>T'áng</i>	<i>píng-wù</i>		766
<i>Tá-chüing</i>	13	<i>Süen-tsüing</i>	<i>T'áng</i>	<i>tíng-mau</i>		847
<i>Tá-shén</i>	2	<i>Chau-tsüing</i>	<i>T'áng</i>	<i>kiá-yín</i>		890
<i>Tá-chüing tsüing-fú</i>	9	<i>Chíng-tsüing</i>	<i>Súng</i>	<i>wù-shín</i>		1008
<i>Tá-kwán</i>	4	<i>Hwü-tsüing</i>	<i>Súng</i>	<i>tíng-hai</i>		1107
<i>Tá-k'áng</i>	10	<i>Tau-tsüing</i>	<i>Liáu</i>	<i>yí-mau</i>		1075
<i>Tá-gán</i>	10	<i>Tau-tsüing</i>	<i>Liáu</i>	<i>yí-ch'èu</i>		1085
<i>Tá-k'ing</i>	2	<i>Kíng-tsüing</i>	<i>Hía</i>	<i>píng-tsè</i>		1036
<i>Tá-gán</i>	10	<i>Hwü-tsüing</i>	<i>Hía</i>	<i>píng-shín</i>		1076
<i>Tá-té</i>	5	<i>Téng-tsüing</i>	<i>Hía</i>	<i>yí-mau</i>		1135
<i>Tá-k'ing</i>	4	<i>Jín-tsüing</i>	<i>Hía</i>	<i>káng-shín</i>		1140
<i>Tá-tíng</i>	29	<i>Shí-tsüing</i>	<i>Kín</i>	<i>sín-sé</i>		1161
<i>Tá-gán</i>	3	<i>Chü-yüing-tai</i>	<i>Kín</i>	<i>kiá-sé</i>		1209
<i>Tá-té</i>	11	<i>Chíng-tsüing</i>	<i>Yüen</i>	<i>tíng-yü</i>		1297
<i>T'ái-cháng</i>	1	<i>Kwáng-tsüing</i>	<i>Míng</i>	<i>káng-shín</i>		1620
<i>T'ái-tíng</i>	4	<i>T'ái-tíng-tí</i>	<i>Yüen</i>	<i>kiá-tsè</i>		1324
<i>T'ái-p'íng híng-kwo</i>	8	<i>T'ái-tsüing</i>	<i>Súng</i>	<i>píng-tsè</i>		976
<i>T'ái-ts'ü</i>	4	<i>Wü-tí</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>tíng-ch'èu</i>	104	
<i>T'ái-chí</i>	4	<i>Wü-tí</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>yí-yü</i>	96	
<i>T'ái-hó</i>	6	<i>Míng-tí</i>	<i>Wéi</i>	<i>tíng-wí</i>		227

Niên-haú.	Duration.	Emperor.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B.C.	A.D.
T'ai-yüên	1	T'á-tí	Wú	sîn-wí		251
T'ai-p'ing	2	Chü-liáng	Wú	p'ing-tsà		256
T'ai-shí	10	Wù-tí	Tsin	yí-yü		265
T'ai-k'ang	10	Hwü-tí	Tsin	k'ang-tsà		280
T'ai-gân	2	Hwü-tí	Tsin	jín-sü		302
T'ai-hing	4	Mên-tí	Tsin	wù-yín		318
T'ai-hó	8	Ch'ang-tsung	Kín	sîn-yü		1201
T'ai-kí	1	Süi-tsung	T'ang	jín-tsà		712
T'ai-ning	3	Ming-tí	Tsin	kwei-wí		323
T'ai-p'ing	9	Hwü-tí	Tsin	sîn-hai		291
T'ai-hó	5	Hai-si-kung	Tsin	p'ing-yín		366
T'ai-yüên	21	Wù-tí	Tsin	p'ing-tsà		376
T'ai-yüên	1	Kung-tí	Süi	wù-yín		618
T'ai-chí	7	Ming-tí	Pé-Sung			475
T'ai-yü	1	Ming-tí	Pé-Sung	jín-tsà		472
T'ai-tsing	3	Wù-tí	Liáng	t'ing-mau		547
T'ai-hó	9	Wên-tsung	T'ang	t'ing-wí		827
T'ai-p'ing	1	King-tí	Liáng	p'ing-tsà		556
T'ai-p'ing	11	Shing-tsung	Liáng	sîn-yü		1021
T'ai-kiên	14	Süên-tí	Chín	kí-ch'ü		569
T'ai-ch'ang	8	Ming-yüên-tí	Wei	p'ing-shín		416
T'ai-yên	5	T'ái-wù-tí	Wei	yí-hai		435
T'ai-p'ing ch'ang-kiün	12	T'ái-wù-tí	Wei	k'ang-shín		440
T'ai-gân	5	Wên-ching-tí	Wei	yí-wí		455
T'ai-hó	23	Wên-tí	Wei	t'ing-sé		477
T'ai-t'ung	17	Wên-tí	Wei	yí-mau		535
T'ai-ning	1	Wù-ching-tí	Pé-Tsi	sîn-sé		561
T'ang-kao	10	T'ai-wù-tí	Wei	p'ing-sü		386
T'ai-kuang	30		T'á-ts'ing	k'ang-shín		1820
T'ê-yü	1	Kung-tsung	Sung	yí-hai		1275
Ti-tsai	4	Süên-tí	Hán	jín-tsà	96	
Ti-hoang	3	Wang-mang	Hán	k'ang-shín		20
T'ai-hí	1	Kau-tsung	T'ang	kí-mau		679
T'ien-hán	4	Wù-tí	Hán	sîn-sé	100	
T'ien-fung	6	Wang-mang	Hán	k'ái-sü		14
T'ien-tsé	1	Chü-kau	Wú	yí-wí		275
T'ien-si	1	Chü-kau	Wú	p'ing-shín		276
T'ien-kí	1	Chü-kau	Wú	t'ing-yü		277
T'ien-kiên	18	Wù-tí	Liáng	jín-wù		502
T'ien-kiá	6	Wên-tí	Chín	k'ang-shín		560
T'ien-k'ang	1	Wên-tí	Chín	p'ing-sü		566
T'ien-hing	6	T'ai-wù-tí	Wei	wù-sü		398
T'ien-sé	5	T'ai-wù-tí	Wei	k'ái-shín		404
T'ien-gân	1	Hien-wên-tí	Wei	p'ing-wù		466
T'ien-p'ing	4	T'ing-tí	T'ung-Wei	k'ái-yín		534
T'ien-pau	10	Wên-süên-tí	Pé-Tsi	k'ang-wù		550
T'ien-t'ung	5	Heu-chü wei	Pé-Tsi	yí-yü		565
T'ien-hó	6	Wù-tí	Chau	p'ing-sü		566
T'ien-shou	2	T'ien-heu	T'ang	k'ang-yín		690
T'ien-tsé-wán-süi	1	T'ien-heu	T'ang	yí-wí		695
T'ien-pau	14	Hüên-tsung	T'ang	jín-wù		742

Niên-haú.	Dura- tion.	Emperur.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B.C.	A.D.
T'ien-fü	3	Chau-tsung	T'ang	sin-yü		901
T'ien-yü	4	Chau-siuen-ti	T'ang	kiä-tsä		904
T'ien-ching	4	Ming-tsung	Heü-T'ang	ping-sü		926
T'ien-fü	8	Kau-tsü	Heü-Tsin	ping-shin		936
T'ien-fü	1	Kau-tsü	Heü-Han	ting-wi		947
T'ien-hü	5	Ching-tsung	Sung	ting-sä		1011
T'ien-shing	9	Jin-tsung	Sung	kwet-hai		1021
T'ien-teün	4	T'at-tsung	Liaü	jün-wü		922
T'ien-hien	12	T'at-tsung	Liaü	ping-sü		926
T'ien-lü	4	Shi-tsung	Liaü	ting-wi		947
T'ien-k'ing	10	T'ien-tsü-ti	Liaü	sin-mau		1111
T'ien-hü	34	Chi-lü-kü	Si-Liaü	wü-tsä		1166
T'ien-yü-chüi-shing	3	Ying-tsung	Hia	käng-yin		1056
T'ien-sä-lü-shing-kwö-k'ing	6	Hwüi-tsung	Hia	käng-sü		1076
T'ien-gän-lü-ting	1	Tsung-tsung	Hia	ping-yin		1086
T'ien-i-chi-p'ing	4	Tsung-tsung	Hia	ting-mau		1087
T'ien-yü-mün-gän	8	Tsung-tsung	Hia	sin-wi		1091
T'ien-shing	21	Jin-tsung	Hia	kiä-sä		1149
T'ien-k'ing	13	Hwän-tsung	Hia	kiä-yin		1194
T'ien-fü	7	T'at-tsü	Kin	ting-yü		1117
T'ien-hwüi	15	T'at-tsung	Kin	kwet-mau		1123
T'ien-kien	3	Hü-tsung	Kin	wü-wü		1138
T'ien-tä	4	Ti-liang	Kin	kiä-sä		1149
T'ien-hing	3	Gai-tsung	Kin	jün-shin		1232
T'ien-ti	2	Wän-tsung	Yüen	wü-shin		1328
T'ien-shän	8	Ying-tsung	Ming	ting-ch'ü		1457
T'ien-k'ü	7	Hü-tsung	Ming	sin-yü		1621
T'ien-ming	11	T'at-tsü	Tsing	ping-shin		1616
T'ien-tsung	9	T'at-tsung	Tsing	ting-mau		1627
Tsiang-hing	2	Ti-ping	Sung	wü-yin		1278
Tsing-lang	4	Ming-ti	Wei	kwet-ch'ü		233
Tsing-t'at	3	Lü-wang	Heü-T'ang	kiä-wü		934
Tsing-k'ang	1	K'in-tsung	Sung	ping-wü		1126
Tsing-ning	9	Tau-tsung	Liaü	yü-wi		1055
T'ü-yüen	5	Yüen-ti	Han	kwet-yü	48	
T'ü-chi	1	Shü-tsä-ying	Han	wü-shin	8	
T'ü-p'ing	4	Hien-ti	Han	käng-wü	190	
Tsung-hüin	1	Kung-ti	Heü-Cheü	käng-shin	960	
Tsung-ning	5	Hwüi-tsung	Sung	jün-wü	1102	
Tsung-fü	14	Ching-t'ien-t'at-heü	Si-Liaü	kiä-sü	1154	
Tsung-k'ing	1	Chü-yüing-tsü	Kin	jün-shin	1212	
Tsung-tä	8	T'at-tsung	T'at-tsung	ping-tsä	1636	
Tsung-ching	17	Sä-tsung	Ming	wü-shin	1628	
Tsung-chang	2	Kau-tsung	T'ang	wü-yin	668	
T'ang-kwäng	3	Chwäng-tsung	Heü-T'ang	kwet-wi	924	
T'ang-chi			T'at-tsung	sin-yü	1861	
T'ang-hö	29	Shing-tsung	Liaü	kwet-wü	983	
Twan-kung	2	T'at-tsung	Sung	wü-tsä	988	
Twan-p'ing	3	Lü-tsung	Sung	kiä-wü	1234	
Wän-süi t'ung-t'ien	1	T'ien-heü	T'ang	ping-shin	696	
Wän-lü	47	Shin-tsung	Ming	kwet-yü	1573	



Niên-had.	Duration.	Emperor.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B.C.	A.D.
Wên-tê	1	Hî-tsung	T'ang	wù-shên		888
Wu-fung	2	Chü-liáng	Wu	kiá-sü		254
Wu-tung	8	Tsing-ti	Tung-Wei	kwet-hai		543
Wu-fung	4	Siuên-ti	Hán	kiá-tsä	57	
Wu-p'ing	6	Heü-chü-wai	Pè-Tsi	käng-yin		570
Wu-ching	2	Ming-ti	Chau	kí-mau		559
Wu-tê	9	Kau-tsung	T'ang	wù-yin		618
Yang-sö	4	Ching-ti	Hán	täng-yü	24	
Yang-kiä	4	Shên-ti	Hán	jín-shin		132
Yên-p'ing	1	Shang-ti	Hán	p'ing-wù		106
Yên-kuang	4	Gân-ti	Hán	kí-wi		122
Yên-hi	9	Huân-ti	Hán	wù-sü		158
Yên-hi	20	Heü-chü	Shü-Hán	wù-wù		238
Yên-hing	1	Heü-chü	Shü-Hán	kwet-wi		263
Yên-hö	3	T'at-wü-ti	Wei	jín-shin		432
Yên-hing	5	Wên-ti	Wei	sín-hai		471
Yên-chang	4	Siuên-wü-ti	Wei	jín-shin		512
Yên-tsai	1	T'ien-heü	T'ang	kiá-wü		694
Yên-k'ing	11	Tê-tsung	Sü-Liaü	yi-sä		1125
Yên-tsü	11	King-tsung	Hia	wü-yin		1038
Yên-sé-ning-kwo	1	Ying-tsung	Hia	kí-ch'èü		1049
Yên-yü	7	Jin-tsung	Yüên	kiá-yin		1314
Ying-shên	1	Mên-ti	Heü-T'ang	kiá-wü		934
Ying-li	18	Mü-tsung	Liaü	sín-hai		951
Ying-i'ien	4	Siang-tsung	Hia	täng-mau		1207
Yüên-nien	7	King-ti	Hán	yi-yü	156	
Yüên-kuang	6	Wü-ti	Hán	täng-wi	134	
Yüên-sö	6	Wü-ti	Hán	kwet-ch'èü	128	
Yüên-hou	6	Wü-ti	Hán	jín-sü	122	
Yüên-ting	6	Wü-ti	Hán	yi-ch'èü	116	
Yüên-fung	6	Wü-ti	Hán	sín-wi	110	
Yüên-fung	6	Chau-ti	Hán	sín-ch'èü	80	
Yüên-p'ing	1	Chau-ti	Hán	täng-wi	74	
Yüên-k'ang	4	Siuên-ti	Hán	p'ing-shin	65	
Yüên-yên	4	Ching-ti	Hán	kí-yü	12	
Yüên-sheü	2	Gai-ti	Hán	kí-wi	2	
Yüên-chi	5	P'ing-ti	Hán	sín-yü		1
Yüên-hö	3	Chang-ti	Hán	kiá-shin		84
Yüên-hing	1	Hö-ti	Hán	yi-sä		105
Yüên-ts'ü	6	Gân-ti	Hán	kiá-yin		114
Yüên-kiä	2	Huân-ti	Hán	sín-mau		151
Yüên-hing	1	Chü-kau	Wü	kiá-shin		264
Yüên-hing	3	Gân-ti	Tsin	jín-yin		402
Yüên-hi	1	Kung-ti	Tsin	kí-wi		419
Yüên-kiä	30	Wên-ti	Pè-Sung	kiá-tsä		424
Yüên-huüi	4	Tsang-yü-wang	Pè-Sung	kwet-ch'èü		473
Yüên-tsüang	1	Tsing-ti	Tung-Wei	wü-wü		538
Yüên-hö	15	Hien-tsung	T'ang	p'ing-sü		806
Yüên-fung	8	Shin-tsung	Sung	wü-wü		1078
Yüên-yüü	8	Chê-tsung	Sung	p'ing-yin		1086
Yüên-fü	3	Chê-tsung	Sung	wü-yin		1098

Niên-haí.	Duration.	Emperor.	Dynasty.	Year of the cycle.	B.C.	A.D.
<i>Yuên-tê</i>	7	<i>Tsung-tsung</i>	<i>Hia</i>	<i>kang-tsè</i>		1120
<i>Yuên-kuang</i>	2	<i>Suên-tsung</i>	<i>Kin</i>	<i>jín-wù</i>		1222
<i>Yuên-ching</i>	2	<i>Ching-tsung</i>	<i>Yuên</i>	<i>yí-wí</i>		1295
<i>Yuên-t'ung</i>	2	<i>Shên-ti</i>	<i>Yuên</i>	<i>kuoi-yü</i>		1333
<i>Yung-hi</i>	4	<i>T'ai-tsung</i>	<i>Sung</i>	<i>kié-shên</i>		984
<i>Yung-ning</i>	5	<i>Tsung-tsung</i>	<i>Hia</i>	<i>yí-wí</i>		1115
<i>Yung-ching</i>	13	<i>Shi-tsung</i>	<i>Tá-tsing</i>	<i>kuoi-mau</i>		1723
<i>Yung-kuang</i>	5	<i>Yuên-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>wú-yín</i>	43	
<i>Yung-shi</i>	4	<i>Ching-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>yí-sé</i>	16	
<i>Yung-p'ing</i>	18	<i>Ming-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>wú-wú</i>		58
<i>Yung-yuên</i>	16	<i>Hó-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>kí-ch'èu</i>		89
<i>Yung-ts'ü</i>	7	<i>Gân-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>t'ing-wí</i>		107
<i>Yung-ning</i>	1	<i>Gân-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>kang-shên</i>		120
<i>Yung-kién</i>	6	<i>Shên-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>p'ing-yín</i>		126
<i>Yung-hó</i>	6	<i>Shên-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>p'ing-tsè</i>		136
<i>Yung-kiä</i>	1	<i>Chung-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>yí-yü</i>		145
<i>Yung-hing</i>	2	<i>Huân-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>kuoi-sé</i>		153
<i>Yung-sheu</i>	3	<i>Huân-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>yí-wí</i>		155
<i>Yung-k'ang</i>	1	<i>Huân-ti</i>	<i>Hán</i>	<i>t'ing-wí</i>		167
<i>Yung-gân</i>	7	<i>K'ing-ti</i>	<i>Wá</i>	<i>wú-yín</i>		258
<i>Yung-hi</i>	1	<i>Hwüi-ti</i>	<i>Tsin</i>	<i>kang-sü</i>		290
<i>Yung-k'ang</i>	1	<i>Hwüi-ti</i>	<i>Tsin</i>	<i>kang-shên</i>		300
<i>Yung-ning</i>	1	<i>Hwüi-ti</i>	<i>Tsin</i>	<i>sín-yü</i>		301
<i>Yung-hing</i>	2	<i>Hwüi-ti</i>	<i>Tsin</i>	<i>kié-tsè</i>		304
<i>Yung-kiä</i>	6	<i>Hwai-ti</i>	<i>Tsin</i>	<i>t'ing-mau</i>		307
<i>Yung-chang</i>	1	<i>Mín-ti</i>	<i>Tsin</i>	<i>jín-wú</i>		322
<i>Yung-hó</i>	12	<i>Mü-ti</i>	<i>Tsin</i>	<i>yí-sé</i>		345
<i>Yung-t'eu</i>	3	<i>Wü-ti</i>	<i>Pé-Sung</i>	<i>kuoi-shên</i>		420
<i>Yung-ming</i>	11	<i>Wü-ti</i>	<i>Tsi</i>	<i>kuoi-hai</i>		483
<i>Yung-t'ai</i>	1	<i>Ming-ti</i>	<i>Tsi</i>	<i>wú-yín</i>		498
<i>Yung-yuên</i>	2	<i>Tung-huân-heü</i>	<i>Tsi</i>	<i>kí-mau</i>		499
<i>Yung-t'ing</i>	3	<i>Wü-ti</i>	<i>Chín</i>	<i>t'ing-ch'èu</i>		557
<i>Yung-hing</i>	5	<i>Ming-yuên-ti</i>	<i>Wei</i>	<i>kí-ping</i>		409
<i>Yung-p'ing</i>	4	<i>Suên-wú-ti</i>	<i>Wei</i>	<i>wú-tsè</i>		508
<i>Yung-gân</i>	2	<i>Chwang-ti</i>	<i>Wei</i>	<i>wú-shên</i>		528
<i>Yung-hi</i>	3	<i>Wü-ti</i>	<i>Wei</i>	<i>jín-tsè</i>		532
<i>Yung-p'ing</i>	2	<i>Fí-ti</i>	<i>Wei</i>	<i>jín-shên</i>		552
<i>Yung-hwüi</i>	6	<i>Kau-tsung</i>	<i>T'ang</i>	<i>kang-sü</i>		650
<i>Yung-lung</i>	1	<i>Kau-tsung</i>	<i>T'ang</i>	<i>kang-shên</i>		680
<i>Yung-shên</i>	1	<i>Kau-tsung</i>	<i>T'ang</i>	<i>jín-wú</i>		682
<i>Yung-chang</i>	1	<i>T'ien-heü</i>	<i>T'ang</i>	<i>kí-ch'èu</i>		689
<i>Yung-t'ai</i>	1	<i>Tai-tsung</i>	<i>T'ang</i>	<i>yí-sé</i>		765
<i>Yung-ching</i>	1	<i>Shên-tsung</i>	<i>T'ang</i>	<i>yí-yü</i>		805
<i>Yung-gân</i>	3	<i>Tsung-tsung</i>	<i>Hia</i>	<i>kí-mau</i>		1099
<i>Yung-ló</i>	22	<i>Ching-tsü</i>	<i>Ming</i>	<i>kuoi-wí</i>		1403
<i>Yung-ti</i>	15	<i>Kwei-wang</i>	<i>Ming</i>	<i>t'ing-hai</i>		1647

## APPENDIX V.

---

### *A comparison of some Chinese dialects with reference to their pronunciation.*

The Chinese divide their syllables into two parts,—the *initial* and the *final*. They do not understand how to analyse the syllable into its component letters, and therefore it often happens that they are unable to distinguish slight changes in the pronunciation of certain words. Hence arises a difficulty to the student, who is frequently unable to catch the articulations of his Chinese tutor. And if the Chinese tutor is unable to discern the difference between certain letters, much less is he able to say how or why changes in various dialects have taken place, and he is also less expert at speaking various dialects of his own country than a well practised foreigner.

The want of an alphabetic system, by which articulations may be accurately expressed, is the cause of this. And the foreigner has this advantage over the untutored Chinese, who has nothing to guide his pronunciation but the ear, while the European has the sound written down for his eye, and the letters are the symbols of an analytic process. We have only to call to mind the vulgar provincialisms of our own country, and the transformation of words, produced by the unlettered rustic, to understand the value of our alphabet, in aiding us to escape the most chaotic differences of pronunciation, which would make English a Babel of dialects, were they allowed to pass from one to another by the ear alone without being written down.

Now although we cannot start a theory as to which dialect represents the original and true pronunciation of Chinese with much chance of proving it, we may for the sake of convenience assume that that which presents us with the clearest and most definite pronunciation is the nearest to that original, and to what Chinese pronunciation should be. It is an undoubted fact that changes have taken place in some syllables, but the great mass of Chinese sounds is most ancient and simple. If then we could ascertain exactly what this ancient pronunciation was, we should be in a better position to show how or why the subsequent changes have occurred.

The Chinese, as was said, do not write down the sounds of their syllables; but we do so to assist our memory, and to define clearly what those sounds are. What we value in our own language, among other things, is the orthography which shows the etymology in many words; and we obstinately refuse to entertain the new principles of the "*Fonetik Nuz*;" and we persist in keeping our ancient spelling of words, because we delight to see the remains which exist of their parentage and origin.

China has numerous dialects with a common origin; these ought all to be represented by the Roman alphabet, and they ought to follow in a certain degree the primary and the purest pronunciation. Slight changes should be explained with the old spelling, instead of a new orthography being invented for each dialect.

Dialectic changes affect either the consonantal sounds, or the vowel sounds, or both, there is the elision of a letter, the addition of a letter to the syllable, or a change of tone. The regular changes which we find in European languages occur in Chinese. (Cf. Art. 3. Part I.) The Mandarin dialect (i. e. the *Kwān-hwā*), spoken in the central provinces, preserves the primary vowel sounds (*a, i, u*) and the simple combinations of these (*ai, au, iu, ia, ui, ua*), while the provincial dialects modify these latter considerably, and produce such sounds as those which are represented in this work by *e* (*ā*), *o* (*ō*), *q* (*aw*), *ö* (German), *ü* (French), and the primary vowels *a, i, u* are pure, and with the Italian sounds.

It is well known that the vowel sounds affect the consonantal sounds with which they are united. In Spanish, in Italian, in Swedish, and in Polish what are called the hard vowels (*a, o, u*) and the soft vowels (*i, e, ä, ü*) affect the pronunciation of the preceding gutturals *g, k, c, ch*.

Thus in Polish *c* is generally pronounced *ts*, but before the vowel *i*, which is occasionally written above the letter (*ċ*), it is like the Germ. *tach*, but somewhat softer, as in the Italian *ci* or the Spanish *ch* in *chupa*. In this language consonants are said to have a hard or a soft pronunciation, according as they are followed by *y* or *i* respectively. The vowel *i* is the regular indication of a soft pronunciation for the preceding consonant. Thus in *śmierć* (*shmierch*) 'death,' and *siano* (*shiano*) 'hay,' *s* is pronounced like *sh* nearly, only softer. The *hs* of Mr. Wade's orthography is evidently this sound.

In Swedish *k* before *i, e, y, ä, and ö*, is softened in the same way; thus, *kärlek* (*chärlek*) 'love,' *kif* (*chif*) 'strife:' so also *sk* before *a, o, u* is hard, but before *i, j, e*, soft; thus, *skjuta* (*shiuta*) 'to shoot:' *t* is hard excepting when followed by *j*; thus, *tjena* (*chena*) 'to serve,' like the Germ. *dienen*; but the spelling is not changed, or this relationship would be well-nigh lost sight of.

Thus much has been said in anticipation of the time when the Chinese dialects or languages will be written by means of the Roman alphabet alone. It will then be easy to observe the connexion between the dialects, to see the radical syllable in each word, and to learn to read, if but one system of spelling be used for all the vernacular dialects.

Dialectic differences of pronunciation relate to the changes and modifications of single letters. In Chinese the initial letter in Roman type is modified or entirely changed,—the final letter is changed (as *n* to *m* or *ng*),—or a letter is added either before the initial or after the final (as *n* before *y* or *j* in the dialects about Shanghai, and before *g* in some Canton varieties); *k, p, or t* is added after the syllables affected by the "entering tone" in the Canton and the Hakka dialects, and *n* is not unfrequently transformed into

*ng*. The regular compounds (*ai*, *au*, *iu*) of the Mandarin are modified in the provincial dialects;—*ai* becoming *e* (i. e. *ä* or *ā*), *au* becoming *ō* or *o* (i. e. *aw* in *law*), *iu* becoming *iau* or *ip*. The Mandarin keeps the pure and sharp sounds of the consonants—*k*, *p*, *t*—the flat and heavy sounds of these letters (*g*, *b*, *d*) are not found in its pure pronunciation, but in the Peking and in some local *patois* they creep out.

The letters *k*, *p*, *t* are however aspirated, and hence arise *k'*, *p'*, and *t'*. When *k* is very strongly aspirated it approximates to *ch*, and *ch* is often confounded with *ts*, especially in syllables in which an *i* follows the initial sound of *ch* or *ts*. The liquids *l*, *m*, *n* are very often interchanged in Chinese, but in southern Mandarin they are kept comparatively without alteration. In the south of China the initial *s* is used for *sh* in some vulgar dialects.

In treating of dialectic changes, the open syllables—those ending with a vowel—must be chiefly considered, for the short vowels which are produced by the closing of a syllable are very undefined, and are really very unimportant, being hardly distinguishable by a native. They may be compared to the Hebrew *sheva* and its compounds.

#### *General changes in vowel and consonantal sounds.*

1. The primary vowels—*a*, *i*, *u*—remain in open syllables in almost all the dialects of China. The Hokkien or Amoy dialect presents a few exceptions to this rule, and in some dialects the syllables made up with a consonant and one of these vowels admit another vowel between the two letters; e. g. *ka* changes to *kia*, *ku* to *kiu*, and *ta* to *tqa*; but as a rule these letters are constant. And even in many closed syllables they remain in the different dialects. This is especially the case with the vowels *i* and *u*, *king* in one dialect never changes to *kung* or *kang* in another, but being in a closed syllable it is shortened, and from the imperfect articulation it is difficult to determine its exact quality,—in the Hokkien dialect it would seem to be like a short *e*. So also in the Peking dialect, *ching* of southern Mandarin becomes *cheng*; the difference however is hardly perceptible to a native. If the phrase and tone be idiomatic the slight variation in the quantity of a vowel is overlooked.

2. But although these vowels (*a*, *i*, *u*) in their simple state are unchanged in the various dialects, they are generally altered when in Mandarin they are found together in the same syllable, thus *kiang* of the Mandarin becomes *keung*, and *kiung* becomes *kung* in the Canton dialect. Their regular compounds—*ai*, *au*, and *iu*—in open syllables are almost always changed into their proper modifications—*e*, *o* (*o* or *q*), and *ü*—in the dialects. The closed syllables in *ang* in Mandarin change it into *eung* in Canton, and those in *ien* change into *in*. Sometimes a nasal *ng* is added where only *n* existed, e. g. *jin*, 'man,' in Mandarin is *yan* in Canton and *nyang* in Shanghai. The *y* is dropped and the *n* changed to *l* in Fucheu, and it then makes *lang*. The *jin* is changed to *nyin* in Ningpo, and in Japanese the *y* is dropped and *nin* becomes the word for 'man.'

These principal changes serve to show the uniformity which exists in Chinese dialects; the diversity being always in accordance with some well established law of euphonic change.

The following simple system of finals in Chinese may serve as the standard of comparison. They are nearly all found in Mandarin. The vowels *i* and *u* may precede any of these finals and coalesce with them, forming often the initials *y* and *w*.

(1) a,	(2) i,	(3) u,	(4) ai, ei, e, and ə,	(5) au, eu,	(6) iu,	
ā	ī	ū	ē	ē	o and ɔ, ɔ̄	ü
an	in	un (oon)	en	ən	oi	ün
ang	ing	ung	eng	əng		ün
					ong	ün

Hence by prefixing *i* and *u* (*y* and *w*)—*ia*, *id*, *ian*, *iang*, *ua*, *ud*, *uan*, *uang*, *iai*, *ieü*, *ien*, *io*, *iö*, &c. &c. are produced. Some dialects employ these vowels between the proper initial and the final, others omit them. *Sien* in Mand. becomes *sin* in Canton. The presence of such additional vowels in Mandarin may lead the student to expect considerable variation in the provincial dialects in those particular syllables.

*Comparative table of changes in some finals.*

Mand. D.	Cant. D.	Shang. D.	Amoy D.
a	ā	o	ɔa, ɛ
ā	at, ap	ā	
an	am, an, ɔn, un	a <sup>n</sup> , o <sup>n</sup>	ɤa <sup>n</sup> , am
ang	eung, ong, ang	ang, ong	a <sup>n</sup> , ieng, ong, u <sup>n</sup> , ieng
i	ai	i and yi	ɤe, e, ui, oa, i
ī	op, ik		ü, ip, ek
in	am	ang, eng, ing	im
ing	ang, ing	ing	ieng, in, ia <sup>n</sup>
u	o	ɔ	iu, ɔ
ū	ak	ü	ok, ut
ung	ung	ung	ieng, eng, iong, ong
ai	oi, ai	e, i, a	ai, oe
ei	ei, i	ei	
ē	ak	ē	ap
en	in, im, ün	ā <sup>n</sup> , ɔ <sup>n</sup> , e <sup>n</sup>	am
an	ɔn	a <sup>n</sup>	ng
ang		ang	in
au	iu, o, u	o, ɔ	ɔ, o, a
o		ɔ	e
eu	eu	ɔ	ō
ɔ		ɔ	
ō	ok	ɔ	ɔ, ap
iu		ɔ	
ü		yü	o
ü	üt		ē
ün		ün	
üi		e	

3. The modifications of the consonants are similar in character. Mutes change into their corresponding letters,—a *t* may change to *d*, a *p* to *b*, a *k* to *ch* or *g*, a *ch* to *ts*, and occasionally to *sh*, a *chang* may become a *tsiang* or a *shang* in different dialects.

*Comparative table of changes in some initials.*

Mand. D.	Cant. D.	Shang. D.	Amoy D.
<i>h</i>	<i>f</i>	<i>h</i>	<i>h, k, or dropped</i>
<i>hw</i>	<i>w</i>	<i>w</i>	<i>h</i>
<i>s</i>	<i>s or sh</i>	<i>s or z</i>	<i>ch</i>
<i>sh</i>	<i>sh or s</i>	<i>s, z, or l</i>	<i>ti</i>
<i>shw</i>		<i>s</i>	
<i>ts</i>	<i>sh and ts</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>ch or k</i>
<i>ch</i>	<i>ts occ.</i>	<i>ts</i>	<i>ti or s</i>
<i>chw</i>	<i>ch</i>	<i>ts</i>	<i>chi</i>
<i>k</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>g</i>
<i>kwo</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>k</i>
<i>j</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>ny</i>	<i>j</i>
<i>y</i>	<i>y or dropped</i>	dropped	<i>h, g, or dropped</i>
<i>f</i>	<i>f</i>		<i>h, p, or b</i>
<i>m</i>	<i>m</i>		<i>b</i>
<i>n</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>n or l</i>	<i>l or g</i>
<i>p</i>	<i>p</i>	<i>p or b</i>	<i>b</i>
<i>w</i>	<i>v, m, or ng</i>	<i>w</i>	<i>b or g</i>
<i>qr</i> (ear)	<i>ni</i>	<i>nyi</i>	<i>hi</i>
<i>mü</i> (eye)	<i>muk</i>	<i>mü</i>	<i>bak</i>
<i>yí</i> (one)	<i>yat</i>	<i>nyi</i>	<i>chit</i>
<i>chü</i> (bamboo)	<i>chuk</i>	<i>chü</i>	<i>tiék</i>
<i>kwang</i> (light)		<i>kwong</i>	<i>kng</i>
<i>mien</i> (face)	<i>min</i>	<i>mi<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>bien</i>
<i>yü</i> (in)	<i>ü</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>h<sup>q</sup></i>
<i>shan</i> (hill)	<i>san</i>	<i>sa<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>soa<sup>n</sup></i>
<i>shin</i> (spirit, body)	<i>sqn, shqn</i>	<i>zang, sqn</i>	<i>sin, sieng</i>
<i>shang</i> (upper)	<i>sheung</i>	<i>lang or zong</i>	<i>tieng</i>
<i>nan</i> (south)	<i>nam</i>	<i>na<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>lam</i>

These attempts to compare the dialects of Chinese may serve to lead the way for an extensive comparison of them, which the author hopes some one in China may undertake and carry out more completely than he has done here.

## APPENDIX VI.

### *On the weights, monies, measures, and times.*

The Chinese weigh every thing that can be weighed,—money, wood, and liquids. Their chief circulating medium is Spanish dollars, which go by weight. The *Ferdinand* dollar is at a premium of 1—1½ per cent. The *Carolus* dollar at a premium of 7—8 per cent. Those bearing the stamp *G* are only received at a discount. Mexican and U. S. A. dollars are taken *at par* by foreigners.

The highest weight in money is a *tael* (*liàng*); then come the *mace* (*ts'ien*), the *candareen* (*fān*), and the *cash* (*li*). 3 taels=4.16 dol., but the equivalents vary; about 720 taels make 1000 dollars.

<i>tael.</i>	<i>mace.</i>	<i>cand.</i>	<i>cash.</i>	<i>oz. troy.</i>	<i>gr. troy.</i>	<i>sterg.</i>	<i>dollars.</i>
1	10	100	1000	1.208	579.84	6s. 8d.	1.389—1.398
	1	10	100		57.984	8d.	.138— .139
		1	10		5.7984	.8d.	

The common coin—the cash—of China is composed of 6 parts of copper and 4 of lead. Bullion is rated by its fineness, by dividing it into 100 parts called “touches.” Sycee is cast into ingots, by the Chinese called “shoes,” and these are stamped with the mark of the office that issues them, and the date of their issue. They are of different sizes, from ½ a tael to 100 taels. Gold ingots of 10 taels=cir. 22—23.

In measures for dry and liquid goods, the *pecul* (*tan*), the *catty* (*kin*), and the *tael* (*liàng*) are used.

<i>pecul.</i>	<i>catty.</i>	<i>tael.</i>	<i>lbs. av.</i>	<i>cwt.</i>	<i>lbs. troy.</i>
1	100	1600	133½	1.0.21½	162.0.8.1.
	1	16	1½		

1 ton=16 pec. and 80 catt. 1 cwt.=84 catt. 1 lb. av.=¾ catt. In long measure the *covid* (*chē*), the *punt* (*tsān*) are used. The covid varies in the measurement of clothes, distances, and vessels; by the Mathematical Board in Peking it was 13.125 Eng. inches; in the Canton trade, 14.625 Eng. in.; by engineers of public works, 12.7 Eng. in.; and for distances, 12.1 Eng. in. nearly.

The *li* or Chinese mile=316½ fathoms=1897½ Eng. feet: 192½ *li*=1 deg. of lat. or long., according to the Chinese, but the Jesuits made 250 *li*=1 deg., each *li* being=1826 ft. or ⅓ of a French league.



In land measure 1200 covids = 1 acre or *mou*, which contains 6600 sq. feet.

The Chinese measure time by dividing the 24 hours of the day and night into twelve watches, and they begin to reckon from midnight. The twelve horary characters *tsz*, *chou*, *yin*, *mou*, &c. (see Part I. p. 61) are employed for the purpose of indicating their watches. *Tze* being used for the two hours from 11 p. m. to 1 a. m.; *chou* from 1—3.

The character *ching* 正 prefixed to any horary character makes it signify the even number between the two hours; e. g. *ching-tsz* would be 12 o'clock at midnight, and *kiau* 交 being prefixed would make it mean 11 p. m.

But foreigners speak generally of *yì-tiēn-chung* 'one stroke on the bell,' for 'one o'clock,' *qī-tiēn-chung* 'two o'clock,' and the Chinese understand these expressions. *Kē* 刻 means 'a quarter of an hour,' and *puán* 半 *tiēn-chung* 'half an hour.'



**PART II.**

**A CHINESE CHRESTOMATHY.**

**PART II.**

**B**



# A SHORT INTRODUCTION

## TO

# CHINESE LITERATURE.

---

THE literary works of the Chinese are very extensive, and relate to very many of the subjects on which the mind of man has been engaged at all periods of his history; the higher subjects, however, of mental science, logic and philology, have met with but little attention among them. The writers of China have drawn less from the works of foreigners than the writers of almost any nation; and this has arisen from the very nature of their position, cut off as they were at an early period from the great nations of the west of Asia, surrounded by wild tribes, who were unacquainted with letters, and proud of their superior cultivation, they rejected improvements of every kind from abroad. But if the mania for foreign notions and theories was unknown among them, the imitation of ancient models of their own became so morbid as to prevent the proper development of their mental strength and the improvement of the natural growth of their minds. The power of mental production consequently became limited to their own narrow sphere of experience; and although the rules of their ancient sages inculcated no such contracted maxims, their minds narrowed by continual imitation of old models (well enough suited to the periods in which they had their origin) began to look upon these models as simple embodiments of truth. Facts, however, compel the admission that great diversities of style in the prose, and of metre in the poetry of the Chinese have characterised different periods of their history. Their works have been remarkable rather for their extent than for the originality of thought or the acuteness of judgment displayed in them.

The Chinese themselves divide their literature under four general heads; viz. I. *K'ing* 經, II. *S'hi* 史, III. *T'sz* 子, IV. *T'ai* 集.

I. The works placed under the first head we may call *classic*. They come under the following divisions: a) All sacred writings and the commentaries on them; b) All ritualistic writings and music; c) All works of a philological nature, as dictionaries and tone-books.

II. The *historical* writings of all kinds come under the head of *S'z*, and also *narrative* and *descriptive* works, but not works on natural history.

III. Under the head *T'sz* come, a) The writings of the ten sages of antiquity; b) All religious and moral works of the Tauists or Buddhists; c) All scientific works, and those upon the fine arts and trades; d) All encyclopædic works.

IV. The character *Ts'i* signifies 'collection,' and under this head are collected works of the imagination and poems, but not novels.

This classification is that given in the Catalogue of the Imperial Library of Peking, but for the benefit of the student who will wish to be directed in his reading, the following arrangement of the different Chinese styles of composition will be found useful.

The most ancient and most concise style is that called,

I. *Kù-wén* 古文 'ancient literature,' and this includes

1. *K'ing-shū* 經書 'ancient classica, and works composed after their model;'
2. *Kù-shī* 古詩 'ancient poetry, and modern poetry after that model.'

II. *Shī-wén* 時文 'modern literature,' and this includes

1. *Wén-chāng* 文章 'fine writing' or 'elegant essays;'
2. *Shī-fù* 詩賦 'odes and epics;'
3. *Yù-k'i* 諭契 'edicts and official papers;'
4. *Shū-chā* 書札 'epistles and letters of every kind;'
5. *Chuán-chí* 傳志 'stories and romances;'
6. *Tsā-lù* 雜錄 'miscellanies, plays, &c.'

The spoken language, the *Kwān-huá* 官話 'mandarin language,' is also divided into

1. *P'ě kwān-huá* 北官話 or *K'ing-huá* 京 | 'the language of Peking' or 'the northern mandarin;'
2. *Nán kwān-huá* 南官 | 'the southern mandarin,' which is also called the *Ch'ing-yin* 正音 'correct sound; and the 通行的 | *T'ung-hing-ti huá*, i. e. 'the language of universal circulation.'

The student will find in the following extracts passages to exemplify nearly all these different styles of composition, and in the study of them with the notes he will find much that differs, and very much to admire, in the rhythm that pervades each piece.

In the *Wù-k'ing*, 'the five classics,' are contained the most ancient monuments of Chinese poetry, history, philosophy, and jurisprudence; and portions of these are probably among the most early records of history extant. Confucius, in the sixth century before Christ, collected them from different sources, and edited them without diminishing their correctness or originality. They usually stand in the following order:

1. The *Yi-king* 易經, or *Classic of Changes*, is a work on Cosmogony, based upon a theory of the combination and transmutation of certain figures formed by straight lines, sometimes entire and sometimes broken. Beginning with two figures, a broken straight line, and an unbroken one, the author, *Fu-hi* 伏羲, proceeded to form a number of combinations, until he made eight diagrams. They are thus given with their names:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
☰	☷	☲	☵	☴	☶	☱	☳
乾	兌	離	震	巽	坎	艮	坤
kiên	t'ui	li	chên	sîn	kàn	k'ên	ku'ân

These are commonly called the *p'ā-k'uo*, and represent some of the primary objects of nature, as *heaven, earth, fire, water, &c.* From these eight figures, sixty-four were constructed; and so by a regular system of combination and ever varying mutation, representative diagrams or figures have been formed for all the objects of nature\*. The Chinese cannot give a very definite and clear account of the subject of this book †.

2. The *Shū-king* 書 |, of which pages 1 and 2 of the *Chrestomathy* afford a specimen, is the *Historical Classic*, being fragments of ancient history. It contains many excellent maxims on moral philosophy and political economy; as well as lessons of practical wisdom, based upon truth and humanity ‡.

3. The *Shi-king* 詩 |, or *Classic of Odes*, is a collection of ancient hymns and odes or ballads. They were collected by Confucius, and commented on by various writers §.

4. The *Lì-k'ì* 禮記, *Book of Ceremonies*, is a compilation of laws relating to the manners and customs of life in the most ancient times, from which the Chinese of the present day derive many of their rules of conduct.

5. The *Chün-tsiú* 春秋, or *Spring and Autumn Annals*, is a work by Confucius himself. It contains the history of his native country, *Lù-kuo* 魯國.

\* A Latin translation of this work, "ex lat. P. Regis interpretatione," was edited by Dr. Mohl, Stuttgart, in two vols. in 1832.

† V. *Entwurf einer Beschreibung der Chinesischen Literatur*, Schott: read in the Academy of Sciences in Berlin, 1850, and published in the "Abhandlungen" of the Academy, p. 302.

‡ The following translations of this work have appeared. In French by Gaubil *Le Chou-king*. Paris, 1770. This was revised by De Guignes. It is said to be too free, and in many respects faulty. Another translation exists in Pauthier's *Livres sacrés de l'Orient*. Paris, 1841. And a good English translation by Dr. Medhurst with the native text interspersed. Shanghai, 1846. 80.

§ There is a Latin translation of the *Shi-king*, "ex lat. P. Lacharme interpretatione," edited by Dr. Mohl. Stuttgart, 1830. And also a German translation into verse by F. Rückert. *Chi-king, Chinesischen Liederbuch*. Altona, 1833.

These are the five classics. The style in which they are written is broken and rude, unlike the compositions of later times, and this is internal evidence of their antiquity.

Next in estimation are the following:

1. The *Sz-shū* 四書, or *Four Books*, a collection of writings, by various persons, on moral and political subjects. The names of the separate works comprised under this title are, 1. The *Tá-hiō* 大學, or *the Study for the Adult*,—the *Great Study*, is a short work on political science by *Tsang-tzē* 曾子\*. 2. The *Chūng-yūng* 中庸, or *the Due Medium*, is a work on avoiding extremes in life by means of philosophy and virtue, like the doctrines of the great Greek philosopher of old,—Aristotle. This portion was written by *Tsz-sē* 子思, a grandson of Confucius†. 3. The *Lún-yü* 論語 or *Dialogues and Discourses* of *Kūng-fū-tzē* 孔夫子 (Confucius), written down by two of his disciples after the philosopher's death‡. 4. *Shāng-māng* 上孟 and *Hia-māng* 下孟. The first and second portions of the works of the philosopher *Māng* (Mencius), who lived B. C. 350. The subject of this work is of a moral and political nature, and in the form of dialogue and exhortation§. Passages from the *Four Books* are given in the *Chrestomathy*, pp. 3, 4, 5 ||.

All the above works are largely annotated and commented on by native writers, and by some of them with excellent style and ability. Among the chief commentators was *Chū-fū-tzē* 朱夫子, who lived in the thirteenth century. His writings are held in great estimation.

In the next rank comes the *Cheū-lī* 周禮 or *Ceremonies of the Cheu Dynasty*; then the *Hiaū-kīng* 孝經 or *Book of Filial Piety*; *Ts'ü-tzē* 楚辭 a Collection of *Poems*; and the *Shān-hai-kīng* 山海經 or *Book of Poetical Fictions*, a sort of mythology, from which the poets of China draw some of their allusions.

\* An English translation of the *Tá-hiō* was appended, with the native text, to Dr. Marshman's *Clavis Sinica*. Serampore, 1814. 4<sup>o</sup>. A Latin and French translation exists by Pauthier, with the native text, Paris, 1837; and an English translation by G. B. Hillier, Hongkong, 1850.

† The *Chūng-yūng* was translated into Latin and French, accompanied by the native text, by Abel-Rémusat, in the *Notices et Extraits*: (vol. X.) Paris, 1817. 4<sup>o</sup>.

‡ The *Lún-yü* was translated by Dr. Marshman into English, and published with the native text, under the title of, *Works of Confucius* at Serampore, 1809. 4<sup>o</sup>.

§ The writings of Mencius were translated literally into Latin by M. Stanislaus Julien, and published with the native text at Paris, in 3 vols. 1824.

|| The *Sz-shū* have been frequently translated;—into Latin by *Intorcetta*; Paris, 1687; and by *Noël* also into Latin; Prague, 1711;—into English by *Collie*; Malacca, 1828. 8<sup>o</sup>.;—into German by *Schott*; 2 vols. Halle, 1828;—into French by *Pauthier*; Paris, 1841.



In addition to these there are three ancient commentaries upon the *Chün-tsiü*, which belong to the style of the *Kü-wän*; and the works of *Sz-mä-tiën* 司馬遷, the celebrated historian (B. C. 100), and those of several other noted writers in a similar style.

Contemporary with Confucius was *Laü-tsè* 老子 or *Laü-kiün* 老君, B. C. 604. \* He was the founder of a school of philosophy, and took *taü* 道 'reason,' 'lógos,' as the foundation of his system; he discoursed about *li* 理, the 'principle of order' in the universe, and was the originator of the Tauist sect. He composed a work called *Taü-tè-k'ing* 道德 | 'Book of Reason and Virtue,' which has been translated into French, under the title of, "Le livre de la voie et de la vertu," by Professor Julien. Paris, 1842. 8°. For an account of his miraculous birth, &c., see Morrison's Dictionary, part I. vol. I. p. 707.

There were ten eminent writers of antiquity, who are associated together by the title *Shi-tsè* 十子. *Laü-tsè* was the first of these. The second was *Chüang-tsè* 莊子 *Chüang-tsè*, also a Tauist, and the most celebrated disciple of *Laü-tsè*. He flourished about B. C. 368, in the reign of the Emperor Hien-wang. He was the author of the work *Nän-hoä-k'ing*, and two satirical pieces against the Confucianists. His originality and independence of character are shown in his works and in the following anecdote: A powerful Chinese prince wished him to take office in his government, and offered him rich gifts, but *Chüang-tsè* replied: "I would rather be a solitary pig and wallow in my own sty, than be a decorated sacrifice and be led by the guiding strings of the great." According to the *Sz-ki* 吏記 of *Sz-mä-tiën* there was nothing that he had not looked into, *wü sò pü kw'ei* 無所不窺, though his maxim seems to have been: "Our life has limits, but knowledge is without limits."

The third philosopher was *Siün-tsè* 荀子, who belonged to the *Jü-kiä* 儒家, 'the Confucian school.' He lived about B. C. 230, and was counted worthy of having his name associated with that of *M'ing-tsè* 孟子 for a long period. His style is perspicuous and his knowledge correct, but he differed from *M'ing-tsè* (Mencius) in his ethics. *M'ing-tsè* held that the natural disposition of man is towards virtue; *Siün-tsè*, that it is towards vice. His writings were of a politico-moral nature.

The fourth philosopher was *Li-tsè* 列子, a Tauist, who was contemporary with *Laü-kiün* (B. C. 585). His style is lucid and sublime, but he

\* The proper name of this philosopher was *Li-pi-jang* 李伯陽.

prefers the lofty to the true. *Chuōng-tsè* is said to have written out a complete copy of his works.

The fifth philosopher was *Kuàn-tsè* 管子, who belonged to the *Ping-kiā* 兵家, 'the military school.' He flourished in the third century B. C. His works are on the subjects of war and government.

The sixth philosopher was *Hān-fī-tsè* 韓非子, called *Han-tsè*, who lived about B. C. 200. He belonged to the *Fā-kiā* 法家, 'the law school.' Jurisprudence was the subject which he chiefly considered. His works commence with the aphorism: *pū chī q̄r yèn, pū chí; chī q̄r pū yèn, pū chūng*, 不知而言不智, 知而不言不忠, 'not to know and yet to speak is imprudent; to know and yet not to speak is unfaithful.'

The seventh philosopher was *Hwaī-nān-tsè* 淮南子, who belonged to the *Tsā-kiā* 雜家, 'writers on various subjects.' He was the grandson of 高帝 *Kau-ti* of the Han dynasty, B. C. 189. He wrote upon the origin of things.

The eighth philosopher was *Yáng-tsè* 楊子, a Confucianist, who lived in the reign of *Chīng-ti* 成帝, B. C. 1. He is said to have spoken little, for he had an impediment in his speech, but he was a great thinker and reader. He did not write much, but his works have received the commendation of a great authority, for *Mā-tuān-lín*, when comparing him with *Siūn-tsè*, says: "Siūn-king had great talents, but many failings; Yáng-hiung was a man of limited abilities, but made few mistakes." The names of his two principal works are; *Fā-yén* 法言 'on laws,' and *T'ái-hiuen-king* 太玄經 which is devoted to an explanation of the *Yi-king*.

The ninth philosopher was *Wān-chūng-tsè* 文中子, one of the best ancient writers of the Confucian school. His proper name appears to have been *Wāng-t'ung* 王通.

The tenth philosopher, *Hō-kw'ān-tsè* 鶡冠子, was a Taoist. He obtained this name, the *Hō-capped philosopher*, from the fact of his wandering about the mountains with the feathers of this bird in his cap or in his hair. His writings were first brought to light during the T'ang dynasty.

The works of these ten scholars, who are commonly called the *Shi-tsè*, are collected in a work called *Shi tsè ts'ung-mù* 十子總目 'General Index of the Ten Philosophers.' Cf. Dr. Morrison's Dictionary, part I. vol. I. pp. 707, 708.

In addition to these general remarks on the higher class of Chinese literature we may content ourselves with a list of some of the principal works in the several departments which are likely to be more especially interesting to Europeans. The Chinese language is very rich in Buddhistic literature, as well as in works on jurisprudence, topography, history, and statistics. It possesses large encyclopædias and anthologies; researches in natural history, the healing art, and the fine arts; treatises on language and the meanings of words; on mathematics and the various applications of numbers, with works on the art of war. Poetry and the drama occupy a large place too, as do also works of fiction in the various grades of the romance and novel style. The industrial arts and trades, and the processes of manufacture extant among the Chinese are explained in detail in separate works\*.

I. *Ethics, politics, and mental science* †.

1. 三字經 *Sān-tsz-kīng*, 'The three-character classic,' by Wang Pi-heu, a Confucianist of the Sung dynasty (13th cent.). Annotated by Wang Tsai-shing: "The language is simple, the principles important, the style perspicuous, the reasoning clear."
2. 千字文 *Ts'ien-tsz-wên*, 'The book of 1000 characters,' by Cheu Hing-tsz, A. D. 550. This is a common school-book. The 1000 characters were collected by Wang he-che, by command of an emperor of the Liang dynasty. The emperor gave them to Cheu Hing-tsz, and asked him to form them into an ode. He did so in a single night, and his hair turned gray in consequence. Various translations of this work exist in European languages; also in Japanese, Manchu, and Korean.
3. 幼學詩 *Yü-hiò-shí*, 'Odes for the young.' A translation of this by Dr. Bridgman appeared in the Chinese Repository for Oct. 1835.
4. 小學 *Siaù-hiò*, 'The learning for children,' was composed by 朱子 *Chü-tsz*, who is held in estimation second only to Confucius himself. The opening sentence of the work shows its subject and tendency: "In ancient times the Siaù-hiò taught children every thing which concerned their daily life and conduct to parents, elders, superiors, teachers, and friends; in order to a due consideration of the fundamental laws which govern the person, the family, the state, and the universe."
5. 家寶全集 *Kiā-pai-ts'üên-tsi*, 'A complete collection of family jewels.' Miscellaneous moralities, instructions, and advice, in 32 vols., by

\* Large collections of Chinese books are deposited in the Libraries of the British Museum, the Royal Asiatic Society, the University College, London, the Bodleian Library, Oxford, the East India House, and King's College, London. The magnitude of these collections is in the order here given; from the British Museum, which contains upwards of 30,000 vols., to King's College, which possesses about 1200 vols. Almost all good works in ordinary Chinese literature will be found in one or another of these institutions.

† To these may be added several works already mentioned among the classics.

- T'ien-kí-shí* 天基石, published in the time of K'ang-hi. An extract from this work was given by Thom in his *Chinese Speaker*, with a translation.
6. 聖諭廣訓 *Shing-yü kwang-hiün*, 'Amplification of the sacred edict.' Sixteen maxims by the emperor K'ang-hi, amplified by his son, the emperor Yüing-ching, and paraphrased by a mandarin. The Rev. Dr. Milne made a translation of this work.
  7. 家庭講話 *Kia-t'ing-kiang-hwa*, 'Discourses for the family hall.' These are in good mandarin style, and are very suitable for practice in reading. (King's Coll.)\*
  8. 太上感應編 *T'ái-sháng kán-ying-piën*†, 'The book of rewards and punishments.' This is a very celebrated Taoist tract. *T'ái-sháng*, 'the sublime,' is an epithet of *Lau-kiün*; see p. 7. of this Introduction. The work consists of a number of sayings on the duties of man, with a list of the rewards and the punishments connected therewith.
  9. 金剛經 *Kin-kang-k'ing*, 'The diamond classic.' A Buddhist work in 1 vol.
  10. 敬信錄 *K'ing-sin-lü*, 'The book of the revered faith.' A collection of sayings and exhortations of the chiefs of the Taoist and Buddhist religions. The praises of *Kwán-yin* 觀音, the merciful goddess, are given in rhyme to be sung by the faithful. Its precepts are said to act on the human mind like a clock at midnight, they awaken the devout soul, and its doctrines enlighten the darkened eye of the mind.
  11. 明心寶鑑 *Ming-sin-pai-kiên*, 'The precious mirror for enlightening the heart.' This work consists of elegant extracts from the moral writings of the Chinese. A translation appeared in Spanish by P. Navarrete; Madrid, 1676. A notice of the work may be seen in the *Chinese Repository*.
  12. 華嚴經 *Hwa-yên-k'ing*. A noted Buddhist work on the holy books or *sutras*. A copy is preserved in St. Petersburg in 81 books, which is said to have been printed in 1419. The translator was a monk from Turkistan, according to Dr. Schott: see "Entwurf, &c.," p. 333.
  13. 性理大全 *Sing-li tá-ts'üên*, 'A complete exposition of the principles of nature.' A metaphysical work, in 20 vols. The subject of it is the Chinese philosophy respecting the dual powers, which enters into all works of this nature.

\* When the name of a Library is noted, it is not to be inferred that the work is to be found in that collection alone.

† A translation of this work was made by Prof. Julien, and published under the title of, "Le livre des Récompenses et des Peines" par Julien, 1841.

II. *Mathematics and astronomy.*

14. 幾何原本 *Ki-hô yuen-pên*, 'The first principles of quantity,' is a translation of Euclid's *Elements of Geometry*, by Paul Seu, a high mandarin, and P. Ricci, the Jesuit missionary, in 4 or 6 vols. The original work is very scarce, but copies exist in manuscript, and a new edition has recently been printed by the Protestant missionaries at Shanghai. (Bodleian.) (King's Coll.)
15. 曆象考成 *Liè-siàng k'ài-ch'ing*, 'Mathematical tables for astronomical purposes.' (Bodleian.)
16. 數理精蘊 *Sú-lí t'ing-yün*. A treatise on mathematics, containing the science of Europe in the 18th century. (Bodleian.)
17. 律歷淵源 *Lü-lí yuên-yuên*, 'The original sources of music and number,' in 100 vols. This is a work by the first Jesuits who resided in China. In it are explained the theory of music and the European system of notation; mathematics, including trigonometry, and the method of calculating eclipses, with all the necessary tables of logarithms, &c. A list of ninety-two stars is given in vol. 31, with their right ascension and declination, which are measured upon the equator. (Bodleian.)

III. *Language and the meanings of words.*

18. 說文 *Shuō-wên*. A dictionary of the ancient characters, arranged under 540 elementary characters, which was published during the Hsán 漢 dynasty, B.C. 150. The author's name was Hsü-shün 許慎, 'official government.' (Brit. Mus.)
19. 玉篇 *Yü-pien*. A dictionary of the characters, arranged according to 542 radicals, in 30 books, by Ku ye-wang. It was published in the Liang dynasty, A.D. 530. It is the basis of the Chinese-Japanese Dictionary used in Japan. The pronunciation of characters is according to the *fán-tsí* system.
20. 五車韻瑞 *Wü-kü yün-sui*, 'The tonic dictionary, called the *Wü-kü*,' in 32 vols., by Chin Siên-säng. This is one of the best dictionaries on the "tones" which exist in Chinese. Dr. Morrison made it the basis of his Syllabic Dictionary, and gives some particulars respecting it in the preface to Part II. of his dictionary, q. v.
21. 正字通 *Ching-ts'í-t'ang*, 'Explanation of the correct characters.' A dictionary according to the radicals. (King's Coll.)
22. 佩文韻府 *Péi-wên-yün-fü*, 'Thesaurus of literary phrases,' compiled by order of the emperor K'ang-hi. Seventy-six of the *literati* were engaged in preparing it, and it took them seven years to complete it. It was published in 1711, in 131 vols. This Thesaurus is perhaps the

most extensive collection which exists of the words and phrases of any language. M. Callery commenced working this mine in 1842, and published the first part of an encyclopædia of the Chinese language in 1846. The work was to consist of about ten large volumes, and it was expected that sixteen years would be occupied in the execution of his project, which he was unfortunately obliged to relinquish. (Brit. Mus.)

23. 康熙字典 *K'ang-hi-tsi-tien*, 'The dictionary of K'ang-hi,' the first emperor of the present dynasty. It is generally in 32 vols. The meanings are very good. The work is universally used in China, and constitutes the great national work of reference for the language. Dr. Morrison commenced his dictionary by translating K'ang-hi's lexicon.
24. 清文鑑 *Ts'ing-wên-kiên*, 'Mirror of the Manchu-Tartar language,' in 26 vols. (Several works of this kind are in the Brit. Mus.)
25. 回教俗語 *Huii-kiaü-sü-yü*, 'Mahommedan Proverbs (in Arabic and Chinese).'
26. 江湖尺牘分韻 *Kiāng-hú chí-tù fân-yün*, 'The rivers and lakes, papers and rhymes \*.' This is the title of a popular work on letter writing &c. for travellers; and it is a sort of dictionary of phrases proper to be used in epistolary correspondence. It is in 6 vols. 12°.
27. 初集啟蒙 *Ch'ü-tsi k'í-mung*, 'Explanations for beginners,' in 20 vols. It contains definitions of the terms employed by the student of *Wên-chāng* ('elegant essays').

#### IV. Jurisprudence.

28. 大清律例 *Tá-ts'ing lü-lí*, 'The laws of the Tá-ts'ing dynasty,' i. e. the penal code of the present or Tartar dynasty of China, in 40 vols. A translation of this work was made by Sir George T. Staunton, Bart., F. R. S. 4°. London, 1810.
29. 科場條例 *K'ó-chāng-t'iaü-lí*, 'The laws and regulations of the Examination Hall,' in 18 vols. It is published every ten years, and its contents will supply the best phrases which are employed with reference to the *literati*.
30. 大清會典 *Tá-ts'ing huii-tien*, 'Official details relating to the civil code and the statistics of the Tá-ts'ing dynasty,' in 260 vols. An interesting account of this work is given in Sir John Davis' work on the Chinese. See Knight's edition of 1836, vol. II. pp. 180, 181.

#### V. Medicine and materia medica.

31. 本草綱目 *Pên-tsau k'ang-mü*, 'General outline of natural his-

\* The term 'rivers and lakes' means the 'provinces' of Kiang-si, Kiang-nan, Hu-pi, and Hu-nan, which are noted for beautiful scenery and commerce.

tory' with a view to medical practice. The author of this work was *Lì-shí-chên* 李時珍. It was published under the supervision of his son, and for the benefit of his family, in 1596. It contains very concise accounts of various animals, plants, and minerals; in a word, the *material medica* derived from the animal, vegetable, and mineral kingdoms.

There are many other works on medicine, but their contents are uninteresting to Europeans, because they are wanting in science.

#### VI. *History and statistics.*

The affairs of each dynasty have been recorded by the imperial historiographers, and these state papers are the sources whence the various histories of China have been derived.

32. 通典 *T'ung-tièn*, 'A complete directory to history and politics,' in 200 chapters, by *Tò-yü* 杜佑 of the *T'ung* 唐 dynasty. It was this work that Ma Twan-lin proposed to complete in his *Wên-hièn-s'ung-kiaü*, which may be looked upon as a continuation of the *T'ung-tièn*.
33. 通鑑 | 目 *T'ung-kièn-käng-mü*, 'The comprehensive mirror with a complete index,' in 120 vols. The history of China, edited by Chu-hi, the philosopher and annotator of the Canonical Books, who lived about the middle of the 13th century. This work is not so much an independent production as a convenient form of the *T'ung-kièn*, which appeared above a century before, by the renowned Sz-ma-kwang. The emperor *Ying-tsung* 英宗 (A.D. 1064-67) had commanded the royal historiographer Sz-ma-kwang to compose a succinct history of China with correct chronology, making use of the historical works extant, and especially the annals. Sz-ma-kwang finished his work in 1084, and laid it at the feet of Ying-tsung's successor, *Shin-tsung* 神宗, who gave it the title of *T'ung-kièn*, 'comprehensive mirror' (of events). It begins with the earliest historical period, and comes down to the beginning of the 2nd Sung dynasty, including a period of 1362 years. Facts only are related, the reader is left to form his own judgment upon them. Impressed with the worth of the *T'ung-kièn*, and wishing to increase its usefulness, Chu-hi prefaced the accounts given in detail with a summary, but without altering the sense. These summaries, which are printed in large characters, are followed by the detailed account and a commentary; thus the work is, as it were, enclosed in a network, and on this account it obtains the name of *Käng-mü* (v. 31).
34. 二十一史 *Ar-shí-yí-shí*, 'The twenty-one historiana.' A complete history of China, in 282 vols., from the highest antiquity down to the end of the *Yuên* 元 dynasty. This is the work of twenty-one imperial historiographers, whose duty it was to note down the events of each reign as they occurred, preparatory to publication in the succeeding reign.

35. 史記 *Shi-lì*, 'Records of history,' in 130 chapters, by Sz-ma-t sien, who flourished B. C. 104. This book contains the history of about 3000 years. It begins with *Huáng-ti* 黃帝, 'The yellow emperor,' and ends in the year B. C. 122, in the Han dynasty.
36. 古文析義 *Kù-wên sì-ì*, 'The meanings of ancient literature discriminated,' in 16 vols. 8°. This work consists of historical fragments in an elegant and much admired style, with explanatory notes.
37. 綱目會纂 *Kāng-kiên-huì-suàn*, 'Mirror of history,' by *Fung-chou siên-sāng* 鳳洲 (surnamed *Wáng*), in 34 vols. (v. 2994).
38. 易知 *Kāng-kiên i-chi*, 'History made easy,' is an abridgment of the *T'ang-kiên-kāng-mù* (33). It was the work of three scholars of the present dynasty, and was finished in 1711, in 36 vols.
39. 歷代史 *Lì-tai kiên-shi*, 'Mirror of history through successive ages.'
40. 東花錄 *Tung-hua-lù*, 'Chronicles of the flower of the east.' The official history of the Imperial house at present reigning in China. The last edition was published in 1820, in 16 vols.

#### VII. Biographical notices.

41. 歷代名臣奏議 *Lì-tai míng-chin tsai-ti*, 'Memorials of the celebrated statesmen of successive dynasties,' in 350 chapters.
42. 古列女傳 *Kù lì-nü chüan*, 'An account of distinguished women of ancient times,' in 7 chapters, by Liu-hiang of the Han dynasty.
43. 唐才子傳 *T'ang tsai-tsè ch'üan*, 'An account of the men of genius of the T'ang dynasty,' by Sin Wan-fang, in 8 vols. M. Prof. Bazin says of this author, that he has a very good style of composition; that he adds to each biographical notice proper observations and criticisms; and that when he examines the qualities and the faults of the poets, he is always in the right\*.
44. 學統 *Hsü-t'ung*, 'A general view of learning,' in 12 vols. It contains memoirs of the leading members of the sect of Confucius and extracts from their works, with a view to combating the errors of the Tanists and Buddhists.
45. 百家姓 *Pai-kia-sing*, 'All the family names.' 1068 characters are

\* V. *Siècle des Youn*, p. 58.

† Although the word *pě*, '100,' is used, it stands for 'all,' just as *pě-kwān* means 'all the officials.' This work contains 454 surnames.



contained in it, of which 510 are different. This work contains the ancient surnames of the Chinese, many of which are still in use. In some editions the origin of these names is given in notes. It is a school-book, and uninteresting to foreigners.

#### VIII. Geography, topography, and statistics.

46. 大清一統志 *Tá-ts'ing yí-t'ung-chí*, 'A complete account of the T'á-ts'ing (the present) empire.' A geographical work of great importance and value. It consists of 500 chapters in 240 vols. It contains various matters connected with topography and statistics. Each province has its own descriptive work of this kind. (Brit. Mus.)
47. 海國圖誌 *Hai-kuó t'ü-chí*, 'Geography of the world,' in 24 vols., by the late Commissioner Lin, who caused the "Opium War" by burning all that drug then in port at Canton.
48. 瀛海志畧 *Ying-huán chí-lüè*, 'A compendious description of the world,' in 6 vols. imp. 8°, by the Lieutenant-Governor of the province of Fú-kien. It contains very good maps of the various countries of the world, and the descriptions are tolerably correct. His Excellency was assisted by a European in making the compilation. (King's Coll.)
49. 廣輿圖記 *Kwáng-yü-t'ü-kí*, 'Geographical descriptions with maps,' by Lü-ying-yáng 陸應陽, in 24 *kiuen* or books. It was composed during the 明 *Ming* dynasty, when China was divided into 15 provinces, not into 18 as at present. The 25th book contains some account of the 'outside barbarians,' *waí-i* 外夷, and these include Japan, Korea, Liu-kiu, Si-fan or Tangutia, Mongolia, Tonquin, Cochinchina, and Siam.
50. 佛國記 *Fú-kuó kí*, 'An account of Buddhist countries,' by 法顯 *Fá-hsien*, a Buddhist of the earlier Sung dynasty (A. D. 422). He set out from Ch'ang-an 長安 in the year 405, during the Tsin 晉 dynasty, and traversed thirty countries on his way to India: (v. Imperial Catalogue, large copy, *kiuen* 71. p. 4.)

#### IX. Mythology.

51. 神仙鏡 *Shên-siën-kiên*, 'Mirror of the divine immortals.' It contains the myths relating to the Taoist deities and deified saints. The story of Shakyamuni is told in the 5th chapter, and the work contains other matter which is interesting on account of the bold independence with which the stories are related.

## X. Poetry.

52. 全唐詩 *Ts'üen T'ang shi*, 'The poetry of the T'ang dynasty,' in 900 chapters. (Brit. Mus.)
53. 李太白集 *Lì T'ai-pi tsai*, 'Lì-t'ai-pi's collection of poetry,' by Lì-t'ai-pi of the T'ang dynasty \*.
54. 東坡全集 *T'ung-pō ts'üen-tsai*, 'A complete collection of Tung-po's odes,' in 15 chapters, by Su-shi of the Sung dynasty \*.

## XI. Painting, engraving, &amp;c.

55. 博古圖錄 *Pō-kù-t'ü-lü*, 'Investigation of antiques with plates,' in 16 vols. This work affords valuable assistance in deciphering the inscriptions upon metal and earthenware vases, some of which date from very high antiquity. The Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society contains specimens and translations taken from this work.

## XII. The drama.

56. 元人百種 *Yüan-jin pē-chung*, 'The hundred plays of the Yuen dynasty.' A celebrated collection of dramas. The style is antiquated colloquial, but clear. Several of these have been translated by Prof. Bazin, Prof. Julien, and Sir John Davis. See *Théâtre Chinois* by Prof. Bazin.
57. 綴白裘 *Chui-pi-k'iu*, 'A collection of dramas,' in 43 vols. (Brit. Mus. and R. A. S.) (For *k'iu*, v. sheet, 1263.)

## XIII. Works of fiction.

The following names of novels are worth inserting. It is by reading such works that the student will form a more lively conception of the genius of the Chinese people, their customs, manners, and principles of action. The romances are classified by the Chinese according to the quality of the composition and the nature of the story. They distinguish especially between *siàu-shuo* 小說, lit. 'small talk,' = novels of the lower order, pure fictions; and *hiên-shū* 閒書, lit. 'leisure book,' = romances founded on stories from real life and history. These they classify under the ten grades of talent (*tsai* 才) exhibited in their composition. The first or *Ti-yi-tsai shū* is the

58. 三國志 *Sān-kuò-chi*, 'History of the three kingdoms,' a work in 20 small volumes. The style, which is terse, is very much admired for its classic elegance. The story is founded upon the history of the three

\* *Lì T'ai-pi* and *Sa T'ung-pō* are the two great and popular poets of China. Their surnames are *Lì* and *Sa*; *T'ai-pi* and *T'ung-pō* are their names.

kingdoms and the civil wars in China, which lasted nearly a century, from A. D. 168—265. The author's name was Lo Kwan-chung, who founded it upon a real history by Chin-sheu of the Tsin dynasty. See pp. 17—20, of the native text, for a specimen of this work. A translation of a portion of it has been made into French by M. Theod. Pavie, from the Tartar version.

59. 水滸傳 *Shwü-hü chüén*, 'History of the shores' or 'History of the robbers,' by Shi Nai-gan, in 20 vols. 12°. This appeared originally in the time of the Mongol emperors, and was reprinted in 1650. It is a romance of the comic kind, and a good specimen of the style of language used two or three centuries ago; it is therefore somewhat antiquated, and the style is very prolix, a proof probably of its being in the colloquial idiom. A specimen is to be found in the native text of the Chrestomathy, pp. 13—16.
60. 好逑傳 *Hau-k'ü chüén*, 'The story of the fortunate union,' in 4 vols. 12°. The style and contents of this work are admirable. A translation of it was published in England, edited by Bishop Percy in 1761, under the title of "The Pleasing History." But in the elegant translation of it by Sir John F. Davis in 1829, the English reader may find a really pleasing and instructive story, and on the accuracy of the translation he may rely: pp. 8—12, of the native text, afford a specimen of its style, which abounds in good colloquial expressions, though some of them are perhaps antiquated.
61. 紅樓夢 *Hung-löu mung*, 'Dreams of the red chamber,' in 20 vols. 12°. This is a popular work in the Peking dialect. A portion of it was published in Thom's Chinese Speaker in 1846.
62. 玉嬌梨 *Yü-kiaü-lí*, 'The two cousins,' in 4 vols. 12°. This was translated by M. Abel-Rémusat in 1826. Like the *Hau-k'ü chüén*, it is very good reading for the beginner and the general student of Chinese.
63. 列國志 *Lí-kwó-chí*. A history of the kingdoms into which China was divided in the *Cheü* 周 dynasty, worked up into the form of a romance. It begins in the year B. C. 1148, under the last emperor of the *Shāng* 商 dynasty, and ends B. C. 258, about the beginning of the *Ts'in* 秦 dynasty. It consists of 8 books. (B. M., R. A. S., Bod.)

#### XIV. Agriculture and weaving.

64. 農政全書 *Nung-ching ts'üén-shü*, 'A complete work on agriculture,' in 60 chapters, by Shü Kwang-hí of the *Ming* 明 dynasty. (Brit. Mus.)

65. 耕織圖詩 *Kāng-chi t'ü-shi*, 'Plates and odes on agriculture and weaving,' by Leu-chau of the *Sung* 宋 dynasty.

XV. *Encyclopædias and compilations.*

66. 三才圖會 *Sān-tsai tú huì*, 'Plates and explanations on the three powers' (i. e. heaven, earth, and man), in 60 vols. An encyclopædia illustrated with woodcuts. It was composed under the *Ming* 明 dynasty, after the arrival of Europeans in China. The author's name was *Wáng-kí* 王圻. He finished the work in 1607. (Brit. Mus.)
67. 文獻通考 *Wên-hsien t'ung-k'ao*, 'Thorough examination into antiquity,' by *Mà Twán-lín* 馬端臨, who lived A. D. 1275. It consists of 348 chapters; about 110 vols.; and includes articles upon ancient government and tenures, ancient literature and writing, and many subjects not even noticed in other works. A large amount of discrimination is displayed in the book, and it will well repay the patient student's toil\*. (Brit. Mus.)
68. 淵鑑類函 *Yuên-kiên-lúi-hán*, in 139 vols., compiled by order of the emperor K'ang-hi. This is an encyclopædia, and contains a very full account of subjects which come within the sphere of Chinese experience. It would afford a very large number of phrases for a good dictionary of the Chinese language. (E. I. Comp.)
69. 潛確類書 *Ts'ien-k'üé-lúi-shü*. This is an encyclopædia, like the preceding. It contains a full account of various matters connected with the antiquities of China. (E. I. Comp.)
70. 永樂大典 *Yung-lö tá-tien*, 'The great classic of Yung-lö,' the 3rd emperor of the *Ming* dynasty, whose reign commenced A. D. 1403. He was the reviver of literature. It consists of 22,877 chapters, and contains many entire works, the original editions of which are lost.
71. 商賈便覽 *Shāng-kü pién-lán*, 'A convenient index for merchants,' in 6 vols. This small work is calculated to prove of use to the merchant and the traveller.
72. 四庫全書總目 *Ss-kü ts'üên-shü tsung-mü*, 'A general catalogue of all the books in the four departments,' published by imperial authority, in 112 vols. 12°. There is an abridgment of this in 8 vols., which was published in 1774. (Both in Brit. Mus.)

\* M. Rémusat calls this work, in the Appendix to his *Grammaire*, "Le plus beau monument de la littérature chinoise, vaste collection de mémoires sur toutes sortes de sujets, trésor d'érudition et de critique, où tout ce que l'antiquité chinoise nous a laissé de matériaux sur les religions, la législation, l'économie morale et politique, le commerce, &c. &c. &c., vaut à lui seul toute une bibliothèque."

The above list will guide the student in his purchase of books and in his study of Chinese literature. It remains for us to notice the different styles of composition which will be met with, and to say a few words on the metres of Chinese verse.

The style of the *kù-wên* requires a separate study; there is a massive grandeur about it, which is wanting in the lower orders of prose composition. The term itself,—‘ancient literature,’—is peculiarly appropriate, for the character of this style bears the stamp of antiquity.

The modern style of elegant essay writing,—*wên-chāng*,—by expertness in which the government officials attain their position and their literary rank, may be characterised as the antithesis of the *kù-wên*; the latter being terse and expressive, pregnant in meaning and swelling with the thought, while the former is diffuse and expansive, rhythmical and smooth, but barren of fresh ideas, and elaborate only in the mode of expression. The *kù-wên* labours to exhibit the idea succinctly in a few words; the *wên-chāng* repeats the idea, and shows it under many forms of expression; the former is the sterling gold, the latter is the same changed into the cumbrous equivalents of copper and brass; and the genuine pearl is often hidden among the spurious imitations which accompany it. Specimens of the *wên-chāng*, as well as of the other styles, are given in Gonçalves’ *Arte China*. Of the *kù-wên*, the extracts given in the Chrestomathy, from the *Shū-kīng* and the *Sz-shū*, will afford specimens.

The style of ordinary books on history, topography, &c., is a medium between the *kù-wên* and the *wên-chāng*. Less desire for elegant composition prevails in this style; and it approaches what has been called the *business* style, which is the idiom of the government papers, edicts, and official documents. There is a simplicity, but at the same time a stiffness and precision about it. The Letter of the Commissioner Lin to the Queen of England and several other papers will be found in the text of the Chrestomathy to exemplify this style.

The literary composition in novels varies very much; some novels, such as the *Sān-koǒ chí*, are classical. The style of this work, however, is less terse than the *kù-wên*, and dispenses in a great measure with the particles employed in that style, while it approaches the *kù-wên* in vigour of expression, although the subjects treated of are very different. The romance style thus varies from the high classical novel, down to the common story expressed in every day colloquial. The extracts from the *Sān-koǒ chí*, the *Hau-k’iú chuén*, and the *Shouit-hù chuén* will exemplify these remarks. But the language of conversation will form the first object of attention, for it is by this that the student will communicate with his learned *siên-sāng*. This style it is which it has been our object to elucidate. The pages of mandarin dialogues and phrases display a great number of specimens of the mandarin or *kwān-huá*, in which, with all its variations, (and it has many distinct phases,) great simplicity of style and construction will be found to prevail.

The style and metre of modern verse among the Chinese differ materially

from those of ancient poetry. The common metre of the *Shi-k'ing*, 'Book of Odes,' is *four* syllables, and the style is cognate with that of the *kü-wên*. Chinese verse consists sometimes of *four*, sometimes of *five*, and sometimes of *seven* or *eight* syllables; they are regulated by the *tones*, which, when in this connection, are divided into *even* and *deflected*. If we suppose *a* to represent the *even* tone, *b* the *deflected* tone, and *c* the one or the other (common), the verse of four lines and seven or eight syllables would run thus:

<i>c-a-c-b-b-a-a</i>	<i>c-b-c-a-b-b-a</i>
<i>c-b-c-a-a-b-b</i>	<i>c-a-c-b-a-a-b</i>
<i>c-b-c-a-b-b-a</i>	<i>c-a-c-b-b-a-a</i>
<i>c-a-c-b-b-a-a.</i>	<i>c-b-c-a-b-b-a.</i>

"There are six different sorts of poetry: 1st, *Fung* 風, which contains the principles of ancient sages for the promotion of social order. 2nd, *Fa* 賦, which contains a plain statement of virtues and vices. 3rd, *Pi* 比, which satirizes by allusions, when the poet is afraid to speak plainly. 4th, *Hing* 興, figurative allusion to encourage those who dislike flattery. 5th, *Ya* 雅, which contains correct rules and sentiments for posterity. 6th, *Sung* 頌, which contains direct praise of virtuous deeds \*."

On the subject of the various styles of prose and metrical compositions, the student may refer to Mr. Consul Meadows' "Desultory Notes on China," Allen, London, 1847; and "The Poetry of the Chinese" by Sir John Davis, Bart., &c. &c., which appeared in the Transactions of the Royal Asiatic Society.

The passages printed in native character may now be read by the help of the dictionary, notes, and translations.

The sounds of the characters and all the other aids have been given separate from the text, because we think that, while all needful help should be given, the *textus nudus* should be distinct, to enable the student to test his acquirements; and, as a College text-book, it is necessary that the text, without notes, should be read in class.

---

\* See Dr. Morrison's Dict., Part III. p. 324.

The following is a list of the passages in native character in the *Chrestomathy*, which are also given in Roman type, with translations and notes.

Index to the native text.

1. Extract from the <i>Shū-k'ing</i> (1) and (2) . . . . .	Pages 1 and 2
2. Epitaph of <i>K'í-tsz</i> . . . . .	2
3. Extract from the <i>Sz-shū</i> (1), (2), and (3) . . . . .	3—5
4. Extract from the <i>Shing-yü</i> (1) and (2) . . . . .	6 and 7
5. Extract from the <i>Hau-k'ia chuen</i> (1), (2), (3), (4), and (5) . . . . .	8—12
6. Extract from the <i>Shuü-hü chuen</i> (1), (2), (3), and (4) . . . . .	13—16
7. Extract from the <i>Sün-kuó chí</i> (1), (2), (3), and (4) . . . . .	17—20
8. Selections from <i>Æsop's Fables</i> , translated (1) and (2) . . . . .	21 and 22
9. Official Papers (Lin's Letter to Queen Victoria) . . . . .	23 and 24
10. Official Papers (a Notice and a Petition) . . . . .	25
11. Official Papers (Supplementary Treaty, 1844) . . . . .	26
12. Dialogues and Phrases in Mandarin (1), (2), (3), and (4) . . . . .	27—30
13. Extract from the <i>Ching-yin tsü-yau</i> . . . . .	31
14. Epistolary Style . . . . .	32
15. Poetical Extracts (Ancient and Modern) . . . . .	33
16. Proverbs . . . . .	34
17. Six pages lithographed come under the above heads thus:—	
pp. 9 and 10 under 13; pp. 11, 12, and 13 under 7; p. 14 under 8.	

---

Note—The translations of the passages are in some parts free, because it was impossible to make them literal; in other parts the English may have suffered from a literal rendering. In every case the wants of the young students have been kept in view; and the author hopes that, with the aid here given and the assistance which may be derived from the dictionary, all the passages in Chinese text will be rendered clear to his intelligence.

1. Extract from the *Shū-king* (1), v. native text, page 1.

- a. 2. *Shū-king. Yü-shü. Yü Tsi. Tsi yü:* "Lat Yü! jü yü ch'ang yén."  
 a. 19. *Yü paí, yü:* "Tü Tsi! yü hó yén? yü é jü tsz-tsä." *Kau-yau yü:*  
 b. 5. "Hü! jü-hó?" *Yü yü:* "Häng-shuüi t'au t'ien hau-hau, huat-shän  
 b. 18. siäng-ling, hiä-män huän-tien, yü shing é-tsai, out-shän kän-mä; k  
 c. 3. *Yü tsau shü sien shi, yü kiü kiü-ch'uen, k'ü é-hä, siün k'uen kwei k'ü*  
 c. 19. *ch'uen; k'ü Tsi pö tsau shü kiün-shi sien shi, mau ts'ien yüü wä, huä*  
 d. 4. *kü; ching mën nai li, wän päng tö t."* *Kau-yau yü:* "Yü! é jü  
 d. 19. ch'ang yén." *Yü yü:* "Tü Tsi! shün nai tsai wei." *Tsi yü:* "Yü!" *Yü*  
 e. 3. *yü:* "Gän jü chü, wet k'ü wet kang, k'ü p'ü chí; wet tung p'ü ying t chí,  
 e. 20. ä shau shou Shäng-ti, t'ien k'ü shün ming yung hiä." *Tsi yü:* "Hü!  
 f. 4. *Chün-tsai! Lün-tsai! Lün-tsai! Chün-tsai!"* *Yü yü:* "Yü!" *Tsi yü:*  
 f. 17. "Chün tö chün kü-kuäng q'r-mä: yü yü tö-yü yü män, jü yü; yü  
 g. 3. yü siuen-li é-fäng, jü wet; yü yü kuän kü-jin chi siäng, jü, yü, siäng,  
 g. 20. shün, shün, lüng, huä, ch'ung tö huüi tsung-t, tsau-hö fän-mä fü-fü

The Shu-king is the most ancient record possessed by the Chinese, and is consequently very fragmentary. It is said to have consisted originally of 100 §§., forty-two of which are lost; and some of those which remain are considered to be spurious. All the copies which could be found were burnt by the Emperor Chi of the Tsin dynasty (B.C. 220), because this work kept alive the desire to return to the ancient régime. But on the revival of literature under Wän-ti of the Han dynasty (B.C. 178), the text was recovered from an old blind man who could repeat it from memory and understood its meaning. This imperfect restoration was afterwards improved on Kung-wang finding in the ruins of the house of K'ung-tsz (Confucius) a copy of the original, written in the ancient (tadpole) character. These are the sources of the present editions. The style is very quaint, and the meaning compressed into few words. This renders the sense obscure in many passages; the commentators are at a loss to explain it sometimes, and few of the Chinese care to understand its meaning, though the book itself is held in great veneration by them.—The first book is called "the Book of Yu," because it contains some account of the affairs of the Emperor Shun, who took the designation *Yu* on coming to the throne.

This section is called *Yü-Tsi*, because Yu mentions the names of these two men as having helped him in his great works.

*Tsi* (a. 12) 'the Emperor,' i.e. *Shun* (B.C. 2200?). The commentary from which these notes are derived was written during the Sung dynasty (A.D. 1200). This passage is evidently a continuation of the last section. Kau-yau had been counselling the Emperor on the knowledge of mankind and on giving peace to the people, and then the Emperor asked Yu to speak. Yu replies: "What can I say more! I always strive to do my duty to the utmost." Kau-yau asks how he does that. *Häng-shuüi* (b. 10) 'the flood.' This has led some to think the Flood of Noah was intended, but there is no evidence to prove it; great inundations have at different times devastated China. *Sz-tsai* (b. 27) 'the four vehicles,' by which is meant *boats, carriages, sledges, and spiked-shoes*. *Sien-shi* (c. 6) 'fresh food' or 'fish and flesh to eat.' This includes fish and fowl, and the flesh of the tortoise and of other animals. The term *kiü-ch'uen* (c. 10), 'the nine streams,' means 'all the rivers.'

Yu exemplified the meaning of *daily exertion* by showing how he had persevered to



*Translation of the Extract from the Shū-king (1), v. native text, page 1.*

The Shu-king or *Classic of History* \*. The book of Yü. The section called *Yi and Tsai*. The Emperor said: "Come Yu! You also throw light on the subject!" Yu bowed and said: "Good, my liege! what can I say in addition? but I aim daily to do the utmost." Kau-yau exclaimed: "Well, how is that?" Yu replied: "When the mighty waters rose to the skies with a swelling inundation, encompassing the mountains and overtopping the hills, and the poor people were sinking in despair, I adapted for the occasion the four methods of conveyance, and all along the mountains I cut down wood, and, with Yi, I introduced the various kinds of fish and flesh to eat; I formed the nine streams, and led away the waters to the four seas; I deepened the ditches and brooks, and led away their waters to the streams. With Tsai I sowed seed, and brought all this into notice; as it was difficult to get food, fresh food of animals was given to eat. I exerted myself to promote the exchange of goods and to convert things into money. All the people then had food to eat, and all the nations were well governed." Kau-yau said: "Very good! Instructive are your excellent words!" Yu proceeded: "Yes! my liege! Cautious should those on the throne be!" The Emperor replied: "Right!" Yu continued: "Rest in the judgment your mind comes to; only be exact, tranquil, and firm; the ministers should be upright, then whenever any action of state arises, the result will fully answer to your expectations and schemes, and so it will be clearly shown that you are receiving God's command, and Heaven, in making known its will, will employ great blessings." The Emperor said: "Right! Ah! ministers and attendants! How important they are!" Yu remarked again: "Quite right!" The Emperor proceeded: "You ministers are my legs and arms, my ears and eyes: when I desire to assist my people, you help me; when I wish to extend my power every where, you act for me; when I wish to behold the models descended from the ancients,—the sun, the moon, the stars, the mountains, the dragon, the variegated insects, which were painted, the sacred vases (with the monkey depicted upon them), the water-plant, the fire, the white rice, the hatchet, the double-hook, which were all embroidered with the five colours upon the five kinds of silk to make the clothing,—you

---

carry off the waters of the deluge, and so he communicated the admonition to care and industry, as pre-requisites to success in government. *Gên jü cät* (1. e. 4) 'rest where you arrive,' i. e. 'be satisfied with the judgment your mind naturally comes to, and let it not be affected by sinister motives afterwards.' *Jü, yü, &c.* (1. g. 17), 'sun, moon, &c.' These figures were worked in colours upon the court dresses, as symbols of the deities, and of the qualities of filial piety, cleanliness, decision, and discrimination. The first six were painted on the robe, the second six embroidered on the skirts of the dress; the mountains were the representations of the gods of the country, the dragon was employed as an emblem of change, and the 'variegated insect' or animal, which was a beautiful bird, was an example of variety in colour. The five colours were all used on each kind of silk. For pictures of these objects, the reader may refer to the Shu-king by Dr. Medhurst, p. 71.

\* The words in Italics are not translations from the text.

- h. 5. *chí-siú, ì wù ts'ài cháng shí yǐ wù sì tsò fū, jù mǐng; yǔ yǐ wǎn lǐ*  
 h. 23. *liǎ, wù-shǐng, pǔ-yīn, tsai chí huǐ, ì ch'ü nǎ, wù yén, jù t'ing; yǔ wéi,*  
 i. 10. *jù pǐ; jù wù mién ts'áng, t'üi yüu hoü-yén, kün sè-tün! shüi huón chán*  
 i. 26. *shuò, jǒ pǐ tsai shí, hoü ì mǐng chí; tǎ ì k'í chā. Shü yǎng shí tsai! yǐ*  
 j. 14. *píng sǎng tsai! kǔng ì nǎ yén, shí q' yáng chí; kǎ tsí chǎng chí, yáng*  
 j. 30. *chí; fèu, tsí wéi chí." Yü yü: "Yü-tsai? T'í-kuáng t'ien chí hiá,*  
 k. 14. *chí yǐ hoü yǔ ts'äng-sǎng; wán pāng lǐ hién, kǔng wéi T'í chǎn; wéi*  
 k. 29. *T'í shí kǎ, fū-nǎ ì-yén, mǐng-shí ì-kǔng, kǐ-fü ì-yǐng; shai kün pǔ*  
 l. 17. *jáng, kàn pǔ-kǐng-yǐng? T'í pǔ shí, fū t'áng jì tsai kǎng-kǔng; wéi*  
 m. 2. *já Tán-chü gaü, wéi mán yüu shí hoü, gaü-nü shí-tsò, kǎng chéu yé*  
 m. 18. *gě-gě; kǎng shuüi hǐng chéu, pāng yǐn yǐ kiá, yǎng t'ien kiü shí; yǐ*  
 n. 3. *chuwáng jǎ-shí, tsui yǐ T'ü-shān hǐng jín kwai kiá; K'í kǐ-kü q' k'í, yǐ*  
 n. 20. *fū tsé, wéi huóng tǒ t'ü kǔng; pǐ chǐng wù fū, chí yǐ wù ts'ien; chéu*  
 o. 6. *shí yüü q' sǎ, wai pǒ sè-hai; hán kién wù cháng, kǒ tǐ yüü kǔng;*  
 o. 22. *Miau huón fū tsí kǔng, T'í k'í nién tsai."*

2. Extract from the *Shü-king* (2), v. native text, page 2.

- a. 1. *T'í yü: "T'í chǎn tsé, shí nǎi kǔng wéi sǐ; Kau-yau fāng k'í*  
 a. 15. *kǐ sǐ, fāng shí siáng hǐng wéi mǐng." Ku'ei yü: "kiá-k'í mǐng-*  
 a. 28. *k'íü, ts'üan-fü k'ín-sè ì yǐng; tsü k'au lai kǎ, yǐ pín tsai wéi,*  
 b. 13. *kiün hoü tsé jáng; hiá kwán t'au-kü, hǒ chà chü-yü, sǎng yǐng ì kién;*  
 b. 29. *niäu-shéu ts'iang-ts'iang; siäu shau kiü chǐng, fúng-huóng lai t'."*

... *Ch'ü-nǎ* (1. i. 2, 3) 'odes and ballads.' *Ch'ü* 'odes' from superiors; *nǎ* 'songs' from inferiors. Their respective characters were displayed in their compositions. *Héi* (1. j. 1) 'the target.' This relates to a custom mentioned in the *Chéu-t'ü* 'the ceremonies of the Chéu dynasty.' This and the other modes of trial were probably similar in spirit to the ancient ordeal practised in other countries. The *T'ü-shān* 'the mountain Tu' was situated in Lat. 32°. 34' N. Long. 0°. 16' E. of Peking. The scene of these events was in the country now known by the name of *Shān-tǔng*<sup>c</sup>, a province in the north of China.

The five tenures here mentioned are the divisions of land made in those early times; their names were *Tien*<sup>d</sup>, *Heu*<sup>e</sup>, *Sut*<sup>f</sup>, *Yau*<sup>g</sup>, *Huang*<sup>h</sup>. The people here called *Miau* are the *Miau-tsz*, a distinct tribe, supposed to be the aborigines of China. They still exist as a clan in the west-central provinces, and lead a wild life in the mountains. An account of forty-one tribes of these people is given in the Chinese Repository, vol. XIV. p. 105.

*Míng-k'íü* (2. a. 27, 28), 'the sounding stone,' means the sonorous gem which was formed of a piece of jade stone, which, being suspended in a frame, emitted a pleasant sound when struck. *T'au-kü* (2. b. 19), 'the tambour,' was like a drum, but smaller; it was furnished with a handle, and, on being shook, the balls which were attached struck the instrument. *Chü-yü* (2. b. 23, 24), 'the rattle,' was a tub, two cubits and four inches in diameter, and two cubits and eight inches deep. A hammer was fitted to it, by which it was struck. 'The stopper' was in form like a crouching tiger, on the back of which were twenty-seven indentations. When the music was to begin they shook the rattle, and when it was to stop they drew a style made of wood along the tiger's back.

<sup>b</sup>周禮 <sup>c</sup>山東 <sup>d</sup>甸 <sup>e</sup>候 <sup>f</sup>綏 <sup>g</sup>要 <sup>h</sup>荒

clearly set them *before me*. When I wish to hear the six notes, the five sounds and the eight tones of music, in what consists—right government or the contrary, as concerns the odes of the *higher classes* and the ballads of the *lower classes*, each of five syllables, you listen *for me*. When I depart from the right way, you help me to return. You do not in my presence be complaisant, and on retiring have a different expression. Thoughtful should the four attendants be! All those who rudely misrepresent things, if they do not alter in time, test them by archery, in order to enlighten them; punish them with whips, so as to remind them of their duty. The Record, how useful to know it\*! We wish, too, to preserve their lives! The chief musician will receive the words *appointed*, and constantly inspire these *men with them*. If they repent, recommend them and employ them; if not, overawe them." *Yu* said: "Is that right? Your majesty's glory should be *spread* through all the empire, even to the corners of the ocean, and the blue *distance* that arises, the myriads of nations, and the virtuous of your own people, would then become your subjects. But let your majesty ever raise *these men*; when they report, receive their words, and declare each according to his merits, by giving chariots and robes to render them constant. Who then would presume not to yield, and reverently to comply? If your majesty do not so, they will all be *corrupt* alike, and there will be daily reports of unworthy proceedings. Do not, as *Tan-chu*, be proud, who, while only rambling about, delighted to insult and oppress, doing evil day and night continually. Where no water was, he *wished* to sail, and he corrupted those at home; and so he caused his succession to be cut off. I was admonished by this, and having married at *Tu-shan*, only four days I remained there. When my *child Ki* fretted and wept, I did not caress him, but I considered the important duty of levelling the land. I assisted in completing the five *laws* of tenure, to the distance of five thousand li. In every district I appointed twelve officers. Beyond these districts, even to the four seas, I established the five elders, each of whom has some merit; but the *Miau* people are stubborn and will not go to work. May your majesty bear this in mind!"

*Translation of the Extract from the Shü-king (2), native text, page 2.*

The Emperor said: "As respects walking after my virtuous rules, it is ever to your merit alone that the arrangement of it is due. *Kau-yau* then took with respect that arrangement of yours, and thereupon added the forms of punishment, being very discerning." *Kw'ei* said: "When they struck the sonorous stone, and swept across the harp and lyre to make their chord with the chant, then the *manes* of our ancestors and progenitors came near; the guest of *Yu* was presiding, and the multitude of nobles bravely gave homage. Below were pipes and tambours, which accompanied or ceased in accordance with the rattle and the stopper; the organ and the bell were used for the interludes. The birds and beasts were set in motion, and when they played the nine airs of *Shun* music, the *Fung* birds came and acted the rites."

\* A book was kept in which the conduct of officials was noted down.

- c. 11. *Kw'ei-yü*: "Yü yá kî-shí fù-shí, pà-shau sù wù, shéi yün yün hiá!"  
 c. 27. *Ti yung tsò kô, yü*: "Chê t'ien chî ming, wei shí, wei kî," nai kô  
 d. 12. *yü*: "Kù-kwáng hî tsai! yuen-sheu kî tsai! pò-kung hî tsai!"  
 d. 25. *Kau-yau pai-sheu kî-sheu yang-yen yü*: "Niên tsai! sù-tsò kung é,  
 e. 10. shín nai hién! Kín-tsai! lú sàng nai ching; kîn-tsai!" Nai kang tsai  
 e. 24. kô yü: "Yuen-sheu ming tsai! kù-kwáng liáng tsai! shéi é kung  
 f. 7. tsai!" *Yü kô yü*: "Yuen-sheu ts'ang-ts'ó tsai; kù-kwáng tò tsai!  
 f. 20. wán-sé tò tsai!" *Ti pai yü*: "Yü! wáng kîn-tsai!"

2. Epitaph of *Kî-tsz*, v. native text, pages 2 and 3.

- g. 2. *Kî-tsz pî. Liú Tsung-yuen*.—*Fân tá-jîn chî tau yüi sán*: yí yü,  
 g. 21. ching mung nán; qí yü, fà sheu shing; sán yü, huá kî mên. Yín yü  
 h. 6. jîn jîn, yü: *Kî-tsz*. Shí kú tsz tau, i lí yü shí. Kú K'ung-tsz shí lú-king  
 h. 25. chî chî, yü yín-kín yén. Táng Cheu chî shí, tá tau péi-huán, t'ien-wei  
 i. 11. chî túng pù-náng kiát, shing jîn chî yén wú-sò-yung; tsín-sé i ping  
 i. 27. ming, ching jîn i. Wú-yí wú-sé, kú pù-wei; wei-shín i tsün-sé, ching  
 j. 14. jîn i. Yü-wáng wú-kwò, kú pù-jîn; tsid shí qí tau, yüi kung-chî-chè-yé.  
 k. 2. Shí yung pau k'í ming-ché, yü chî fù-yáng; huó shí má-fán, jü yü  
 k. 18. ts'á ná; huán qí wú sié, t'üi qí pù si: kú tsai Yí yü: "*Kî-tsz chî*  
 l. 5. ming i,"—ching mung nán yé. *Kî t'ien-ming kî-tsai, sàng-jîn i ching*,  
 l. 20. nai ch'ü tá-fá, yung wei shing sé. Cheu jîn i i sù i-lên qí lí tá-tien, kú  
 m. 10. tsai Shü yü: "i *Kî-tsz kwei tsò häng-fán, fà sheu shing yü*," kî fung  
 m. 26. Cháu-sien, t'üi tau hiün-sü; wei tí wú leú, wei jín wú yuen; yung  
 n. 11. kwáng yín sé, pî i wei huó;—huá kî mên yé. Sù shí tá-tai, tsü yü  
 n. 28. kú kung; t'ien-t'í pién-huá, ngò tí k'í ching, k'í tá-jîn yü!

*Kî-tsz* was a relative of the tyrant *Cheü-sin*<sup>b</sup> (B. C. 1112), and was obliged to save his life from the Emperor's anger, on being reproved, by feigning madness. The greatest enormities were perpetrated by this monarch and his queen *Tán-kí*<sup>c</sup>, who had been taken captive by him after a victory. To please her he invented the most extravagant methods of torture, immoral songs and dances, with the worst abominations of heathen lands. *Pi-kua* (1. o. 24) was the first martyr for reproving the king. *Wú-wáng* (3. a. 11), 'the martial king,' at last rid the world of this monster. He made a solemn appeal to heaven, imposed an oath on his nobles, and proceeded to battle. *Cheü* sent 700,000 men against him, but they had no will to fight; and *Cheü's* army being routed, he himself retired to the stage, which he had erected for other purposes, and burnt himself in sumptuous robes and jewels. *Tán-kí* was slain by *Wú-wáng*, the victorious general.

The style of this passage is very classical and elegant; for the arrangement of the words, and the antithesis to be observed in some sentences, the original text must be studied. See *Medhurst's Shoo-king*, p. 363, and *Morrison's View of China for Philological Purposes*, *Chronology*, p. 53.

*Shing*<sup>d</sup> (2. g. 28), which means the highest qualities of goodness and wisdom, may often be translated 'saint' or 'sacred,' and is frequently translated 'sage.' As it can apply only to those who stand apart from the rest of mankind, either on account of their virtues or their wisdom, and generally for both reasons, the rendering 'sacred sages' seems appropriate in this epitaph.

<sup>a</sup> 也 <sup>b</sup> 紂 辛 <sup>c</sup> 妲 己 <sup>d</sup> 聖

*Kw'et* went on to say: "While I was striking and jingling the *sonorous* stones, all the beasts came forth to play, and all the officials were sincerely cordial." The Emperor composed an original ode, to wit: "that men should be careful about heaven's commands, be constant, and be exact." Then he sang, saying: "When statesmen (arms and legs) are glad to serve, the head of the state arises to action, and all public undertakings flourish." *Kau-yau* bowed with his hands and bent his head, and murmured out, saying: "Bear in mind this! *The sovereign* begins the affair, let him be careful about his regulations! Be careful, and often search into the end of affairs! Be careful!" Then he joined and completed the ode, saying: "When the head of the state is intelligent, the statesmen will be virtuous, and all affairs will be prosperous." Again he sang, saying: "If the head of the state be very stringent in his demands, the ministers will be careless, and every thing will fall into ruin." The Emperor bowed and said: "Very right! Go! and be careful!"

*Translation of the Epitaph of K'i-tsz, v. native text, pages 2 and 3.*

*Ki-tsz's* epitaph, by *Liu Tsung-yuen*.—Great men generally have three principles of action; first, they act correctly in adversity; secondly, they give an example to the sacred sages; thirdly, they reform the people. In *Yin* there was a pious man named *Ki-tsz*; he was fully furnished with these principles for an example to the world. For this reason *K'ung-tsz*, in compiling the six classics, took care diligently to notice these points. In the time of *Cheu*, these great principles were so utterly perverted, that the power and majesty of heaven was not sufficient to restore them to order. The words of the sacred sages were without good effect; to rush into death and to be regardless of life was then true piety. There being no profit in keeping the sacred rites, they kept them not; but to bow and reverently to preserve those rites was true piety. To give himself up to die for his country, he had not the courage; but he had two virtues;—by the preservation of his intelligence he bestowed it upon all ranks, through concealing his counsels and plans he was disgraced to imprisonment and bondage;—in obscurity he was without depravity, and when ruined he did not sigh in despair. Therefore in the *Yi-(king)* it is said: *Ki-tsz's* illustrious quality was contentment,—he acted correctly in adversity. The decree of heaven being changed, that the living might turn to righteousness, he issued his great law, as a model to the sacred sages. The men of *Cheu* succeeded, by arranging in order the invariable law of the human relations, in establishing the great civil code. Therefore in the *Shü-(king)* it is said: *Ki-tsz* restored the great plan, and thus he gave an example to the sacred sages. And being appointed to *Chau-sien* (Corea), he promoted virtue and taught good manners. He considered virtuous principles without reference to rank, and he regarded men without reference to distance of abode. By using widely and diligently sacrificial rites, he made the barbarians to become civilized Chinese;—thus he proceeded to reform the people. He followed these great laws, and united them in himself. Amid the changes and transmutations of the universe, if one succeed in upholding the right, that will be to act the great man indeed!

- o. 12. *Yü hū! Tāng k'í Cheu-shí wí chí, Yín sá wí t'ien, Pí-kān í sá,*  
 o. 28. *Wet-tsz í k'ú, hiáng shí Cheu ó wí jín q'í tsz pī; Wú k'ang nién luón*  
 a. 22. *í t'ú tsān, kwó wá k'í jín shiūt yú h'ing-lí, shí kú jín sá chí huó-jén-*  
 b. 10. *chè yè, jén tsí siēn-sāng yín-jín q'í wéi tsz. K'í yuè chí yú sá hū!*  
 b. 26. *T'áng meū nién, meū yǐ, meū jǐ tsó miaú k'í kiún súi shí chí sá.*

3. Extract from the *Sz-shū* (1), *Lan-yü*, v. native text, page 3.

- d. 2. *Sz-shū. Lan-yü. Tsz yǐ: "Híó q'í shí s'í chí, pū yǐ yǐ hū! Yü*  
 d. 20. *páng tsz yuén-fāng lāi, pū yǐ ló hū! Jín pū chí q'í pū wón, pū yǐ*  
 e. 7. *kiún-tsz hū!" Yü-tsz yǐ: "K'í wéi jín yè hiaú tí q'í hau-fán-sháng-*  
 e. 23. *chè, siēn í. Pū-hau fán-sháng q'í hau-tsó-huán-chè, wí-chí-yü yè.*  
 f. 9. *Kiún-tsz wá pān, pān lí q'í tau sāng. Hiaú-tí-yè-chè,—k'í wéi jín chí*  
 f. 26. *pān yǐ!" Tsz yǐ: "Kiaú yén líng s'í, siēn í jín." Tsang-tsz yǐ:*  
 g. 10. *"wá jǐ sán sāng, wú-shūn wéi-jín meú q'í pū-chūng hū? yǐ páng-yü*  
 g. 26. *kiaú q'í pū-sín hū? chí-uén pū-sí hū?" Tsz yǐ: "Tau ts'ien shing chí*  
 h. 11. *kwó, k'ing sá q'í sín, tsí yúng q'í ngat jín, shí-mén í shí." Tsz yǐ:*  
 h. 27. *"Tí tsz jǐ, tsí hiaú; chí'ú, tsí tí; k'ín q'í sín, fán ngat chūng, q'í tsín jín:*  
 i. 14. *h'ing yü yǐ lí, tsí í híó-wón." Tsz-hia yǐ: "Hién hién yí shí; sá*  
 i. 30. *fú-mù, náng k'í k'í lí; sá kiún, náng chí k'í shín; yǐ páng-yü kiaú,*  
 j. 16. *yén q'í yü sín; suí yǐ: 'wí híó, wá pí wéi chí híó í."*

The character *jín*<sup>a</sup> (2. h. 6), which is commonly translated 'benevolence, humanity,' &c., might be rendered 'piety' or 'virtue.' It signifies the practice of those virtues which constitute a good citizen, a kind father, a dutiful son, an affectionate husband, a loving brother and a faithful friend;—characters which are involved in the five human relations (*wá-lán*), according to the Chinese. In the first case here *jín* (2. i. 29) would stand for 'patriotism,' in the second (2. j. 14) for 'filial piety.'

The following notices of *Pi-kān*, *Wei-tsz*, and *Tán-kí*, which are given in Gonçalves' *Artu China*, translated by Sir John Bowring, may interest the reader: v. *Chinese Repository*, vol. XX. p. 96. 1. *Pi-kān*<sup>b</sup>, 'the living one without a heart' (B. C. 1140), was the elder brother of *Cheú-sín*, by a concubine. He was a saint, and esteemed so by his brother, but being hated by his sister-in-law *Tán-kí*, on account of his admonitions, she said to *Cheú* it would be easy to ascertain whether he was a saint or not, for if so he would have seven holes in his heart. Moved by curiosity, *Cheú* ordered his heart to be extracted, and seven holes were found in it; but as the saint had secured himself against death, he went to another country. Here meeting a man who was selling onions, he asked him what vegetable it was, and the man answering that it was a vegetable without a heart, he remembered that he himself had none, and died in a swoon. 2. *Wei-tsz*<sup>c</sup>, 'the astronomer' (B. C. 1150), brother of *Pi-kān*, seeing the tyrannical acts of *Cheú*, fled in alarm, and carrying with him the astronomical books in which he was well versed, went to the west, to whose inhabitants he communicated his knowledge; hence it is that Europeans obtained treasures of science which China lost. 3. *Tán-kí*<sup>d</sup>, 'the lovely sporter' (B. C. 1130), one of the four beautiful wives of tyrant *Cheú*<sup>e</sup>. She was fond of lighting the alarm watch-houses, to see the soldiers in movement, but when the enemy really came, and the watch-house was lighted, the soldiers did not appear; so the tyrant lost his head, and she being burned, was transformed,—some say into a guitar, which she had been before, others say into a fox.

<sup>a</sup>仁 <sup>b</sup>比干 <sup>c</sup>微子 <sup>d</sup>妲己 <sup>e</sup>紂

Alas! The time of the *Cheü* (dynasty) not yet being come, the sacrificial rites of *Yin* not yet being done away, *Pi-kan* being dead, *Wei-tsz* having departed; all tended towards the fall of *Cheü* (the tyrant) in death before his wickedness reached its height. While *Wu* was thinking on revolution as a means for the kingdom's preservation, had this man been absent, who would have assisted in restoring order? It was assuredly this man's work doubtless! Yea! this scholar, concealing himself patiently, worked thus; he had intended this very thing!

In the *T'ang* (dynasty) in a certain year, in a certain month, on a certain day this temple was raised to lead the city annually to perform the sacrifice.

*Translation of the Extract from the Sz-shü (1), Lün-yü, v. native text, page 3.*

The Master \* said: “To learn, and constantly to dwell on the subject, is it not a pleasure! To have friends, come from a distance, is it not enlivening! The man *who is* misunderstood, and *who is* yet free from indignation, is he not a superior man!” *Yü-tsz* said: “Those who, as men, show themselves dutiful, both as sons and as younger brothers, and yet like to resist their superiors, are few; men who dislike resisting superiors and yet like creating rebellion are not to be found! The superior man busies himself with fundamentals; the foundation being laid, then, *as a consequence*, good principles of action are produced. The duties of sons and younger brothers! these surely form the foundation of *all* reciprocal virtues.” The Master said: “Crafty words and a specious exterior are seldom found with virtue!” *Tsang-tsz* said: “I daily on three points examine; viz. Have I, in acting for others, devised any thing unfaithfully? Have I, in my intercourse with friends, been insincere? Have I delivered instruction which I have not practised?” The Master said: “In ruling a country of a thousand chariots, *let there be* respect for industry and honesty; let frugality be coupled with benevolence; and, in engaging the people, let the seasons be considered.” The Master said: “As for young men, while they remain at home, let them be obedient to their parents; when they go out, let them act in submission to their elders. Let them be diligent and sincere, show love to all, and make friends of the virtuous. If, after business is done, there is any surplus strength, then let them use it in the cultivation of learning.” *Tsz-hü* said: “By giving the virtuous their due, and so obtaining an equivalent for vicious desires; in serving parents, to be able to use the whole strength; in serving the prince, to be able to devote the life; in communicating with friends, to be sincere in word; although a person who does this may be deemed unlearned, I must call him learned indeed.”

\* The term ‘master,’ which is here adopted from Dr. Legge’s translation, seems very appropriate as the translation of *tsz’*, which in this passage, and often, means ‘the great teacher,’—Confucius himself. It accords with the use of the word in our translations of the Gospels for *διδάσκαλος*, excepting that this term *tsz’* is used by itself to mean ‘the master,’ *par excellence*, and is never so used for any other of the philosophers.

- j. 30. *Tsz yü*: “*Kiün-tsz pŭ chung, tsŭ pŭ wet; hŭ, tsŭ pŭ kú; chü chung*  
 k. 15. *sín, wŭ yü pŭ jü ì ché; kwŏ, tsŭ wŭ tán kai.*” *Tsz-tsz yü*: “*Shin-*  
 l. 1. *chung chün-yuén, mŭn tē kwŏi héu ì.*” *Tsz-k’ín wŭn yü Tsz-kung yü*:  
 l. 16. “*Fü-tsz chí yü shí päng yé, pŭ wŭn k’i ching; k’iú chí yü, yŭ yé chí*  
 m. 3. *yü?*” *Tsz-kung yü*: “*Fü-tsz wŭn, liáng, kung, kién, jóng, ì tē chí; fŭ-tsz*  
 m. 19. *chí k’iú chí yé, k’i chü-í hŭ jŭn chí k’iú chí yü!*” *Tsz yü*: “*Fü tsai,*  
 n. 6. *kwŭn k’i chí; fŭ mŭ, kwŭn k’i hŭng: sŭn nién wŭ kai yü fŭ chí tsai,*  
 n. 23. *k’ò wŏi hŭiú ì.*” *Yü-tsz yü*: “*Lì-chí yung hŭ wŏi kwŏi; sién wŭng*  
 o. 7. *chí tsai, sz wŏi mei: siáu tá yü chí, yü sò pŭ hŭng. Chí-hŭ qŕ hŭ pŭ ì*  
 o. 26. *lì tsŭ chí, yŭ pŭ-k’ò hŭng yé.*”

4. Extract from the *Sz-shü* (2), *Shang-mang*, v. native text, page 4.

- a. 2. *Mang-tsz wŏi Tsŭ Siuén-wŭng yü*: “*Wáng chí chin yü t’ò k’i tsŭ-*  
 a. 16. *tsz yü k’i yü, qŕ chí Ts’ü yü ché; pŭ k’i fŭn yé, tsŭ tŭng-nŭi k’i tsŭ-tsz,*  
 b. 5. *tsŭ jü chí hŭ?*” *Wáng yü*: “*K’i chí.*” *Yü*: “*Sz-sz pŭ nŭng chí sz, tsŭ*  
 b. 21. *jü chí hŭ?*” *Wáng yü*: “*ì chí.*” *Yü*: “*Sz-kŭng chí nŭi pŭ chí, tsŭ jü*  
 c. 7. *chí hŭ?*” *Wáng kú tsò-yü qŕ yén t’á.*—*Mang-tsz yü*: “*Sò wŏi kú-*  
 c. 26. *kwŏ ché, fŭ wŏi yü k’iáú-mŭ chí wŏi yé, yü shí-chŭn chí wŏi yé. Wáng*  
 d. 13. *wŭ tsŭn-chŭn ì; sz ché sò tsŭn, kŭn-jŭ pŭ chí k’i wŭng yé*” *Wáng yü*:  
 d. 30. “*Wŭ hŭ ì shŭ k’i pŭ tsai qŕ shé chí?*” *Yü*: “*Kwŏ kiün tsŭn hién jü*  
 e. 16. *pŭ-tē-ì, tsŭng-shŭ pŭ yü tsŭn, sŭ yü tsŭ, k’ò pŭ shŭn yü! Tsò-yü kŭi*  
 f. 4. *yü: ‘hién,’ wŭ-k’ò yé; chü tá-fŭ kŭi yü: ‘hién,’ wŭ-k’ò yé; kwŏ-jŭn*  
 f. 20. *kŭi yü: ‘hién,’ jèn-heú ch’á chí kién: hién yén, jèn-heú yung chí.*”

*Sz-shü* (3. d. 2), ‘the Four Books,’ may be looked upon (like the Pentateuch with the Jews), as containing the moral and political principles of the Chinese. This passage is taken from the *Lün-yü*, ‘the Dialogues’ or discourses of Confucius and his disciples. *Yü*<sup>a</sup> (3. d. 17) is here represented by the character *shwŭ*<sup>b</sup>. It expresses the internal feeling of pleasure induced by thinking over something in which the mind delights. In opposition to *lŭ*<sup>c</sup> (3. d. 27), which means the external manifestation of pleasure,—*cheerfulness, gladness*. *Ché*<sup>d</sup> might have been looked for after *chí* (e. 1) or *hŭn* (e. 4); but the form of the sentence agrees with that of the two previous clauses, in which *chŭ* is omitted. Observe the change of tone in *hŭiú* (e. 20), which here means ‘to like,—to love.’ *Sién-ì jŭn*<sup>e</sup> (3. g. 4), ‘few pious,’ is an unusual construction. *Jŭn* is in *opposition* here, as frequently, and this will explain the form of expression. *Sién-ì* is the predicate of the sentence, and *jŭn* is added, as it were by apposition, and makes a relative clause like an attributive, ‘who are pious.’ For a critical history of the text the student may refer to Dr. Legge’s *Chinese Classics*, vol. I. *Prolegomena*, p. 12. Dr. Legge translates *Lün-yü* by ‘Confucian Analects.’

The subjects of the work are very various; filial piety is held to be the prime duty and the foundation of all virtue. The fragmentary nature of the work precludes any analysis of its contents. The Chinese have made two great divisions of it into *Shang-lün*, ‘upper or first lün,’ and *Hia-lün*, ‘lower or second lün.’ From the terseness of the style and the necessity, in translations of this kind, of giving the meaning as literally as possible, the entire sense cannot well be conveyed, it would indeed need a paraphrase to make the full idea clear to the English reader. The first passage here given, for example, would be represented in a paraphrase in some such phrase as this: ‘What agreeable sensations arise in our minds when we think again on that which, by constant reiteration and practice, we have

<sup>a</sup> 悅 <sup>b</sup> 說 <sup>c</sup> 樂 <sup>d</sup> 者 <sup>e</sup> 鮮 矣 仁



The Master said: “If the superior man \* be not grave, then he will not command respect; let him study and then he will not be vulgar, let him estimate in the highest degree fidelity and truth, let him be without friends excepting those like himself; when in error then let him not be afraid to change.” *Tsang-tsz* said: “If care be taken about the last rites for parents, and they be repeated for the departed souls, the virtuous principle of the people will return to its original goodness.” *Tsz-k'in* asked *Tsz-k'ung*, saying: “When our Master comes to this or that country, he needs must get information about its government;—does he ask for it, or is it given to him?” *Tsz-k'ung* replied: “Our Master, by affability and goodheartedness, by courtesy and moderation, coupled with a polite yielding to others, obtains it. Our Master's mode of asking it is all different from other men's modes.” The Master said: “While the father is alive, look at the son's intentions; when the father is dead, look at his actions. If in three years he be without change as respects his father's principles, he may be called ‘filial.’” *Yiu-tsz* said: “In acting with propriety †, to use cordiality is of importance. In the principles of the kings of days gone by, this was considered excellent. As respects following them in little things and in great, there are some which cannot be done. If any one know cordiality and do not moderate that cordiality with propriety, it should not be done.”

*Translation of the Extract from the Sz-shū (2), Sh'ang-m'ang, v. native text, page 4.*

*M'ang-tsz*, talking with *Siu'en*, the king of *Tsi*, said: “Should one of your majesty's ministers, who had committed his wife and children in trust to a friend, while he made an excursion into *Tsu*, on his return find that he had starved them both outwardly and inwardly, then what should be done?” The king replied: “Cast him off.” *M'ang-tsz* said: “Should the chief of the officers of justice not be able to govern his subordinates, then what should be done?” The king said: “Deprive him of office.” *M'ang-tsz* said: “Should the interior of the four boundaries (i. e. the kingdom) not be governed aright, what should be done then?” The king looked left and right and spoke of another matter.—*M'ang-tsz*, at an interview with king *Siu'en* of *Tsi*, said: “The reason why a country is said to be ancient, is not because it is said to have tall trees, but because it is said to have patriotic ministers. Your majesty is without the affection of your ministers. Those who formerly entered your service, to-day you know nothing of their loss.” The king replied: “How shall I know of those without talent, and reject them?” *M'ang-tsz* answered: “When the ruler of a kingdom advances the prudent, he cannot be too cautious in employing mean men more than the honourable, or strangers more than relatives. When the attendants all say, ‘he is prudent,’ that is not sufficient; when the chief officers all say, ‘he is prudent,’ that is not sufficient; when the people of your kingdom all say, ‘he is prudent,’ then examine into the opinion of his prudence, if correct then employ him.”

\* Here *K'ün-tsz* means rather *he who studies to be a superior man*.

† The *chi* after *li* shows that the word *li* is used as a verb, i. e. to act according to *li*,—fitness, propriety, ceremony, etiquette.

- g. 7. *Mang-tsz* kiến *Tsi Siuên-wáng* yǔ: "Wei kǐ shì, tsi pǐ shí kǐng-sǐ  
g. 23. *k'ia tá mǔ*; *kǐng-sǐ* tǐ tá-mǔ, tsi wáng hì, ì-wei náng shǐng k'í jìn yè.  
h. 10. *Tsiang-jin* chǒ q̄r siáu chī, tsi wáng nú, ì-wei pǐ shǐng k'í jìn ì. *Fú-jin*  
h. 28. *yiú q̄r* hió chī chuáng q̄r yǔ hǐng chī. *Wáng* yǔ: "Kǐ shè jù sǒ hió q̄r  
i. 14. *té áng ngò*, tsi hǒ?" *Já kǐn* yǐu p'ò-yǔ yǔ tǎi, siú wán-yí, pǐ shí yǔ-jin  
j. 2. *tiáu-chǒ chī*. *Chí-yǔ* chī kuò-kia tsi yǔ: "kǐ shè jù sǒ hió q̄r t'áng ngò,"  
j. 20. *tsi hǒ* ì t' yǔ *kiáu yǔ-jin* *tiáu-chǒ* yǔ tsaí!—*Lǒ-ching-tsz* kiến *Mang-tsz*  
k. 10. yǔ: "K'è-kau yǔ kiün, wei lai kiến yè; pǐ-jin yǐu *Tóng-tá* áng chē tǎi  
k. 26. *kiün*; *kiün shí-ì* pǐ kuò lai yè." *Yǔ*: "hǐng, huó shí-chī; chī, huó nì-  
l. 12. *chī*:—hǐng, chī, fǐ jìn sǒ náng yè. *Wá chī* pǐ yǔ *Lù-het*, t'ien yè. *Tóng-*  
l. 29. *shí chī* tǎi, yén náng shí yǔ pǐ yǔ tsaí!"—*Pǐ* yǐu sǐ yén q̄r wǔ chǐng  
m. 17. *sǐn wǔ wáng*, wǔ tsù cháng yè, wá jǔ *Sǔng jin*. *Jén Sǔng jin* yǐu mǎn  
n. 3. *k'í* *miáu-chī* pǐ cháng q̄r yá-chī chē; *máng-máng-jén* *kuéi* wei k'í jin,  
n. 19. yǔ: "K'ín-jǐ pǐng ì, yá tsù *miáu* cháng ì." *K'í* tǎi tsú q̄r wáng shí chī  
o. 6. *miáu* tsi kau ì. *T'ien-hia* chī pǐ tsù *miáu* cháng chē kuò-ì, ì-wei wá yí  
o. 24. q̄r shè chī chē, pǐ yǐn *miáu* chē yè, tsù chī cháng chē, yá *miáu* chē yè;  
a. 11. *fǐ t'á* wá yí q̄r yǐu hai chī.

5. Extract from the *Sz-shū* (3), *Hia-máng*, v. native text, page 5.

- b. 2. *Mang-tsz* yǔ: "Pǐ-ì shǐng chī tsǐng chē yè. *I-yǐn* shǐng chī jǐn  
b. 17. *chē-yè*. *Liú Hia-huó* shǐng chī hǒ chē yè. *K'ung-tsz* shǐng chī shí  
c. 2. *chē-yè*. *K'ung-tsz* chī wei tsi tá chǐng, tsi tá chǐng yè-chē. *Kín* shǐng  
c. 18. q̄r yǔ chín chī yè *kín* shǐng yè-chē, ch'ì t'iaú-lì yè; *Yú* chín chī yè chē,  
d. 6. *chǐng* t'iaú-lì yè. *Ch'ì* t'iaú-lì-chē, chī chī sǐ yè. *Chǐng* t'iaú-lì-chē,

once thoroughly learnt!—the present thought associates itself with the past, and produces pleasure in the mind; but only the scholar can experience this. Again, what cheerful joy arises when a friend comes from a distance to visit us again! The former joy is subjective, it is enkindled by our mental associations; the latter is objective, it dwells with pleasure on the external object which comes from afar.

*Shin-chung chü-yüen* (3. k. 29). This sentence refers to the practice of reverencing the *manes* of ancestors and attending to the funeral rites of parents. *Ti* (3. l. 5), commonly translated 'virtue,' is rather the 'natural conscience.' The Chinese teachers say it is the good principle implanted in the heart of man by heaven. *Het* (1. 7), 'thick,' is here put for 'original goodness,' and it is often used for 'generous,' in opposition to *p'ò*, 'thin,' which is used for 'meanness.' *Shí* (3. l. 20) is here put for 'the, this, any' (3. m. 7—16). Observe the character of Confucius here given; by doing his duty to others, he obtains from them what he wants. Gentleness, goodness (or sincerity), meekness, moderation, and courtesy were his characteristics. *Ch'ì* (3. n. 8), the 'intention' or 'inclination' not yet brought into action, but only sufficiently to show a tendency:—after his parents' death, then he will act (*hǐng*, n. 13).

*Máng-tsz* (4. a. 2). This celebrated philosopher was born in the kingdom of *Ts'ü*<sup>b</sup> (now the province of *Shān-tung*<sup>c</sup>), where he lived about B. C. 350. He was left fatherless at an early age, but his mother took great care of his education and the choice of his youthful companions. He first studied under *Tsz-sz*<sup>d</sup>, one of Confucius' descendants, and finally obtained a post under the king of *Tsi*,—*Siuên-wáng*. But as the king did not conform to *Máng-tsz*'s doctrines, he entered the service of the king of *Liáng*<sup>e</sup>,—*Huü-wáng*.

<sup>a</sup> 薄 <sup>b</sup> 鄒 <sup>c</sup> 山東 <sup>d</sup> 子思 <sup>e</sup> 梁

*Meng-tsz*, at an interview with king *Siuen of Tsi*, said: “To make a great palace, you must employ a master-builder to seek out great trees. If he find large trees, then your majesty will rejoice, because you will consider them quite fit for the purpose. But if the workman in hewing them down make them small, then your majesty will be angry, because you will consider them unfit for the purpose. Now, if a man in his youth learn manly principles, and wish in manhood to practice them, and your majesty say, ‘Just abandon what you have learnt and follow me,’—how is that? Suppose now your majesty had an unpolished gem here? Although it is only twenty taels in weight, you must employ a lapidary to cut and polish it. And when, with reference to the government of a country, you say, ‘Just abandon what you have learnt and follow me,’—then how does this differ from instructing a lapidary how to cut and polish precious stones?”—*Lü-ching-tsz*, at an interview with *Meng-tsz*, said: “I have represented it to our prince, who was about to call upon you, but his favourite *Tsang-tsang* prevented him, on this account our prince is not come.” *Meng-tsz* said: “When one is promoted to office, it is some one who causes it; when one is not promoted, it is some one who prevents it. Promotion and non-promotion are not in the power of man. If I do not meet the prince of *Lu*, heaven prevents it; how could a son of the *Tsang* family prevent my meeting him\*!”—You must labour at your business and not forget to regulate the heart, and do not assist growing things. Be not like the man of the *Sung* dynasty! There was a man of *Sung* who when he grieved at his grain not growing, pulled it up a little to assist its growth, and hurrying home fatigued, he said to his people: “I am unwell to-day, I have helped the corn to grow.” His sons hastened to go and look at the corn, and behold it was withered away! There are few in this world who do not assist the corn to grow. Because there is little profit arising, those who abandon it, and do not weed their corn, but help it to grow by pulling it up a little, do not only no good, but positive harm.

*Translation of the Extract from the Ss-shü (3), Hia-ming, v. native text, page 5.*

*Meng-tsz* said: “*Pi-i* was the pure one among the sages; *I-yün* was the trusty statesman among the sages; *Liu Hia-hvüi* was the peaceful one among the sages; and *K’ung-tsz* was the seasonable one among the sages. *K’ung-tsz* is called completely perfect. This being completely perfect, is like the sound of gold and the jingling of precious stones. The sound of gold is the commencement of harmony, the jingling of precious stones is the termination thereof. To begin harmonious arrangement is the work of wisdom,—the completion of the same is the work of sanctity. Wisdom may be likened

Afterwards he performed various services at the courts of the petty princes of those times. He attained the age of 94. Divine honours are paid to his memory, and twice every year sacrifices are offered at his tomb.

\* This *Ping*, prince of *Lu*, had been prejudiced against *Meng-tsz* by his favourite, who said that he was a bad man because he had attended more carefully to the funeral ceremonies of his mother than to those of his father. Though the fact was, he was in affluence when he buried his mother, but at an earlier period when his father died he was in poverty.

- d. 22. *shing chi sz ye. Chi pi toi kiaù ye; shing pi toi li ye. Yiu she yü*  
 e. 9. *pá pú chi wai ye, k'í chi q'í lí ye, k'í chung fí q'í lí ye."*  
 f. 2. *Ts'í-yin chi sin, jin-kiaí yü-chí; siú-ú chi sin, jin-kiaí yü-chí;*  
 f. 18. *kung-king chi sin, jin-kiaí yü-chí; shí-fí chi sin, jin-kiaí yü-chí.*  
 g. 4. *Ts'í-yin chi sin, jin ye; siú-ú chi sin, í ye; kung-king chi sin, lí ye;*  
 g. 22. *shí-fí chi sin, chí ye. Jin, í, lí, chí, fí yiu wai lí ngò ye. Ngò ku*  
 h. 10. *yüü chí ye fú sz q'í z. Kú yü: 'k'íú, tsí lí chí; shé, tsí shí chí.' Huó*  
 h. 28. *siang p'ei sz q'í wú wán ché, p'ü nung tsín k'í tsai ché ye. Shí yü:*  
 i. 14. *"T'ien sang ching min,—Yüü wú yüü tsí,—Min-chí í,—Hau shí í-té."*  
 i. 30. *K'ung-tsz yü: Wei tsz-shí ché, k'í chí tsai há? kú yüü wú pí yüü tsí*  
 j. 17. *min chí ping í ye. Kú hau shí í-té.*  
 k. 2. *Mang-tsz yü: "Niü shán chí mü cháng mèi í; í k'í kiaü yü tá kwó*  
 k. 18. *ye, fú-kín fá chí, k'ò-í wéi mèi há? Shí k'í jí-yé chí sò sz, yü-lí chí*  
 l. 8. *sò jún, fí-wú ming-ní chí sang yén! Niü-yang yüü ts'ung q'í mü chí,*  
 l. 24. *shí-í jü p'í ch'ò-ch'ò ye. Jin kién k'í ch'ò-ch'ò ye, í-wéi wí-cháng yüü*  
 m. 12. *ts'ái yén! Tsz k'í shán chí s'ing ye tsai? Siü tsen há jin ché, k'í wú*  
 m. 28. *jin-í chí sin tsai? K'í sò-í fáng k'í liang-sin ché, yí yüü fú-kín chí*  
 n. 16. *yü mü ye: tán-tán q'í fá chí, k'ò-í wéi mèi há? K'í jí-yé chí sò sz,*  
 o. 5. *ping tán chí k'í, k'í hau-wú yüü jin siang-kín ye-ché, k'í hí tsí k'í tán*  
 o. 23. *chéu chí sò wéi yüü kü-wáng chí."*

*Shí-chín* (4. d. 7). The commentator *Chü-hí* explains this expression by *lái-shí hiá-kiaú chí chin* 'statesmen who are loyal and patriotic when affairs are in a confused state.' *Ts'ín-chín* (4. d. 14) 'ministers who are attached to,—have an affection for, their prince.' *Mang-tsz* was arguing, that if a country was to be considered ancient (that is, worthy of respect on account of its venerable and well-tried institutions) by reason of the loyalty and patriotism of its statesmen, then, where affection for the prince was wanting, such ministers could not exist long, but would depart, and consequently the kingdom would lose this mark of honour. The commentator adds: "Being without attached ministers (i. e. *ts'ín-chín*), much more would the state be without those patriotic men who are equal to troublous times" (i. e. *shí-chín*). The king's idea is, that such ministers go away because they have not ability equal to the work. His majesty assumes, that he cannot tell their capacities before he engages them, and so he may make a mistake; he therefore asks how he may guard against error in this point, and so reject them. The excellent reply of *Mang-tsz* needs perhaps a little explanation. He cautions the king against promoting relations and honourable men who are without prudence, and neglecting the mean man and the foreigner who may have this quality. He then proceeds to supply the case in which the man of reputed prudence may be tested in order to employment. He warns the prince against the peculiar bias of particular classes, and points to the *vox populi* as worthy of his regard, on account of its comparative freedom from party feeling and prejudice.

(4. g. 7—i. 17). In this passage *Mang-tsz* insinuates that the learning of the sages is great, and that the king seeks to reduce their principles to his own practice. *Fa-shí*, an eminent scholar and commentator, says on this passage: "The ancient sages ever grieved that princes could not follow their doctrines, and the princes lamented that the sages could not conform to their desires, wherefore the agreement of prince and minister was ever a matter of difficulty. *K'ung-tsz* and *Mang-tsz* seldom agreed with the princes of their times." In (4. l. 5) *Mang-tsz* recognises a Supreme Ruler, whom he calls *Heaven*, as the governor of human affairs. *Mang-mang* (4. n. 12) is explained to mean 'the appearance of stupidity'; *Mang-mang* signifies 'much fatigued,' according to Dr. Williams' Dictionary.

\* 累世勲舊之臣

unto ingenuity in its practice, and sanctity may be compared to strength. Thus, the archer, who shoots at upwards of a hundred paces, reaches the target merely by his strength,—should he strike the centre it will not be merely by his strength.”

All men possess compassionate hearts; all men have hearts open to shame; all men have hearts inclined to reverence; all men have hearts to distinguish between truth and falsehood. A compassionate heart leads to benevolence; a heart ashamed of vice acts with justice; a reverent heart produces propriety of manners; a heart which knows truth from falsehood gives wisdom. Now, we are not imbued with benevolence, justice, propriety, and wisdom by things external; we assuredly possess them innately; they are not to be aimed at only. Therefore it is said: “Seek them and you obtain them, forsake them and you lose them.” Some lose manifold, times without number, and are unable to perfect the capacity they possess. The *Shī-king* says: “Heaven produced all people,—they have things to do and ways to do them,—the people are ever constant in loving this beautiful virtue.” *K’üng-tsè* has said that he who made this ode knew right principles! For if there is business to do, there must be a method of doing it, and that which the people constantly maintain is esteem for this beautiful virtue\*.

*Mêng-tsè* said: “The forest of the *Niu* mountain† was once beautiful; but since its borders verge on a great state, the axe has felled it:—can it be called beautiful still? Yet with the silent growth by day and night, and the genial influence of rain and dew, surely the tender sprouts will shoot again! Nay! but the oxen and the sheep have been there, and have eaten them up; so that now it is a wilderness! When people see its naked barrenness, they will think it never supported a forest. But was this the natural state of the mountain? Supposing the preservation of it in man, is there not a heart of kindness and justice there? But the means by which man loses his uprightness is like the operation of the axe on the forest. If you fell wood every morning, can it appear beautiful? By the daily and nightly growth of virtue, the spirit which each dawn revives, makes all men similar in their love and hate; but the deeds which each day brings to pass, wither and destroy it.”

---

*Pi-t* (5. b. 5); *I-yün* (5. b. 12); *Liú Hiá-hwü* (5. b. 19). The virtues of these three worthies of antiquity are mentioned in order that the chief, *K’üng-tsè*, might be mentioned as combining the whole united in his character. *Shing* (5. b. 7) is explained by the commentator as being *ti chí sò tsüü yé* ‘that which proceeds from the virtuous principle,’ it corresponds therefore with sanctity among us.

(5. g. 16. 17) *k’üng-king*. The commentator has explained this, which is a colloquial expression, and means ‘to reverence,’ by saying that *k’ung* is the external expression of *king*, and *king* is the principle in the heart from which *k’ung* arises. Here we have an example of the scientific form of some Chinese words; the objective and the subjective being united to form a general term.

\* This ‘beautiful virtue’ (*shí t-ti*, 5. j. 25) is called in the *Tá-hiö*, *míng-ti*, ‘bright virtue,’ and explained in the commentary to be the virtuous principle implanted in the heart by heaven, by which man may direct both his spirit and his conduct.

† The *Niu* mountain was on the south-east frontier of the kingdom of *Tsi*, the domain of the king to whom *Mêng-tsè* was speaking.

6. Extract from the *Shing-yü* (1), v. native text, page 6.

- a. 1. *Shing-yü*. (1.) *Tân hiaú-tí ì cháng jîn-lân*.  
 a. 11. *Ngò Shing-tòu Jîn Hwang-tí lín-yü lû-shí-yí niên, fû-tòu tâu-tân*  
 a. 27. *hiaú sê pû kwet, kîn tîng Hiaú-kîng yèn-í yî-shû; yèn-shí kîng-*  
 b. 12. *wân, í-lí ts'áng-kwân; wû-fî hiaú chí t'ien-hiaú chí í. Kú Shing-yü*  
 b. 28. *shí lû t'iaú sheú ì hiaú-tí k'á k'í twân*.  
 c. 8. *Chín pèi ching hûng niê chûi wêi wàng hián ch'ûi kwóng lí kiáu*  
 c. 21. *chí sê siên shîn hiaú-tí chí í, yúng shí yü q̄r pîng-mîn-jîn tâng, siuen*  
 d. 8. *shí chí. Fû hiaú ché; t'ien chí kîng, tí chí í, mîn chí hîng yé. Jîn*  
 d. 24. *pû chí hiaú fú-meù, tú pû sê fú-meù gai-tsê chí sîn há! Fâng k'í wí*  
 e. 12. *lí hwaí-paù; kî pû nêng tsé-pû; hân pû nêng tsé-í. Wêi fú-meù ché*  
 e. 29. *shîn yîn-shing, chā hîng-sí siaù, tsí wêi chí hí; tí, tsí wêi chí yú;*  
 f. 15. *hîng-túg, tsí kwet-pú pû lí; tsé-t'úng, tsí ts'ín-shí k'û-fí ì yàng ì kiáu*  
 g. 3. *chí yü ch'ing jîn fû wêi sheú kiá-shí meù sâng-lí pā kí kîng yîng sîn*  
 g. 20. *lí k'í tsüi. Fú-meù chí tsé shí t'áng hau-t'ien-kang-kí; jîn-tsé yü*  
 h. 6. *paù-tsin gân yü wán yí, tâng nûi tsín k'í sîn wai kié k'í lí kîn shîn*  
 h. 24. *tsé-yúng ì kîn fû lau ì lûng hiaú yàng; wû pō piên yîn tsüi; wû hau*  
 i. 11. *yúng tsüi hân; wû hau hó-tsai sê ts'í-tsé tsung shí í wân wí pí q̄r*  
 i. 28. *ching k'í yü yü ch'ûi q̄r kwóng chí. Jú Tsóng-tsé sô wêi k'í-chú*  
 j. 13. *pû-chwáng fî hiaú sê; kiün pû ching fî hiaú; lí kwân pû kîng fî*  
 j. 28. *hiaú; pâng-yüü pû sîn fî hiaú; chên chín wû yúng fî hiaú: kiáu*  
 k. 12. *hiaú tsé fân nûi chí sê yé.*  
 k. 20. *Ché tí sán twán shí tân shwò hiaú tí tsüi-lí, nî-mân t'ing-chó!*  
 l. 5. *Hiaú-shan tiê-niáng, ché yí kiên sê shí t'ien-tí kiên cháng-tsün tí tsüi-*  
 l. 21. *lí, pā-sing-mân tsüi-tá tí tî-hîng.*

The *Shing-yü*, 'Sacred Edict,' was issued by the emperor *K'ang-hi*, the first great emperor after the Tartar invasion and conquest of China in A. D. 1644. It consisted of sixteen maxims, bearing upon social and political duties. They include admonitions to filial and fraternal duties (1); to regard for kindred and neighbours (2, 3); to husbandry and economy (4, 5); to honour learning and preserve orthodoxy (6, 7); to understand the laws and cultivate politeness (8, 9); to form a habit of determination in your calling (10); to instruct youth (11); to refrain from false accusations and from hiding deserters (12, 13); to pay up taxes (14); to form corporate bodies in order to suppress theft (15); and to settle animosities in order to avoid bloodshed (16). These maxims, each of seven characters, were written on slips of wood, and are still exposed in the public offices. They were amplified by *Yung-ching*, *K'ang-hi's* son and successor. This he ordered to be read in public on the 1st and 15th of each month, a custom which is still continued. The style is classical, and difficult for the lower classes to understand. But *Wang Yu-po*, an officer of government, paraphrased the whole in colloquial style of composition.

Laws in China were first explained to the people in the *Chew*<sup>a</sup> dynasty (cir. B. C. 1000), on the 1st day of the month. At the present readings, the civil and military officers in uniform meet in a public hall. The *Li-sung* exclaims: "Stand forth in file!" which they do according to rank: then he says; "Kneel thrice and bow nine times!" They all kneel and bow towards a platform, where a board stands with the emperor's name on it. Then he exclaims: "Rise and retire!" They then proceed to a hall where the law

<sup>a</sup> 周

*Translation of the Extract from the Shêng-yü (1), v. native text, page 6.*

The Sacred Edict. (1.) Give practical weight to filial piety and fraternal love in order to strengthen the relative duties.

Our canonized ancestor, the emperor *Jin*, reigned sixty-one years, and followed the ways of his fathers in honouring his parents and in aiming unremittingly to observe the duty of filial piety. His majesty himself revised and amplified the meaning of the *Hsiü-king* (“Book of filial piety”). He amplified and explained the text of the work, arranging consecutively the arguments which it contained; considering filial piety alone, and nothing else, to be the means of governing the empire. For this reason the sixteen articles of the Sacred Edict start with filial and fraternal duties as their leading principles.

We, having succeeded to this vast inheritance, have investigated thoroughly his former instructions; and, having studied the object he had in view in establishing the doctrine every where, we have, in the first place, reiterated the meaning of filial piety and fraternal affection, in order that you soldiers and people all may know it. Now filial piety exists in the law of heaven, in the sentiment of the earth, and in the conduct of the people. If a man does not know how to obey his parents, he does not bear in mind their heart of affection! For before he was separated from their parental arms: when hungry, he could not feed himself; when cold, he could not clothe himself. To act as parents do, is to judge by the sound of the voice, to notice the appearance of the face; if the child laugh, then to be pleased; if he cry, then to be grieved; when he moves about to support his footsteps and not leave him; when he is in pain, through sickness, then to be regardless of sleep and food, in order to rear him and to teach him until he arrive at man's estate\*.

And then they give him a home, they plan about his livelihood by a hundred schemes, they deliberate for him until their whole heart and strength are both expended. The good principles of parents are like the vastness of high heaven! The son who would fain requite his parents' kindness only in a ten-thousandth degree, must, whether at home or abroad, exercise to the utmost his whole heart and strength;—be careful about himself, be frugal, serve them with diligence, and dutifully provide for them. Let him not gamble nor drink,—neither be fond of feats of daring and trials of strength,—nor hanker after riches to expend secretly on his wife and children. Although to perform outward ceremonies he may not be prepared with means to accomplish all that he might intend, sincerity of purpose should abound, and increase it. As *Tseng-tsz* has said: Unseemly conduct is not filial; in serving the prince to be traitorous is not filial; in the office of magistrate to act in an undignified manner is not filial; with friends to be insincere is not filial; in battle to be cowardly is not filial. All these belong to the duty of an obedient son.—(Paraphrase.)—These three sections treat on the doctrine of filial piety alone. Do you listen! This one article of obedience to parents is the principle which is constantly preserved in the universe, and is the greatest act of virtuous practice amongst mankind.

\* Cf. Xenophon's *Memorabilia* of Socrates, Bk. II. 2, 5, 6.

- l. 30. *Ni-mạn ts'ung-pũ-chĩ hiáu-shên tiê-niàng, tsá-mô, pũ-pà nã tiê*  
 m. 15. *niàng gãi-qr-tsè tĩ sìn-chàng, siàng sháng yĩ siàng? Tãng nã-mạn*  
 tsò hãt-tsè tĩ shĩ-heũ, tiê-niàng huai-pau-chô; lãng-liàu, pũ huũ tsè-  
 n. 15. *kĩ ch'wên-t; kĩ-liàu, pũ-huũ tsè-kĩ k'ĩ-fán; k'ãn-chô nã-mạn yên-sĩ,*  
 n. 24. *nĩ siàu-liàu, t'ã piên hĩ: nĩ tĩ-liàu, t'ã piên ts'ĩ; nĩ hĩng-tung-liàu,*  
 o. 10. *t'ã ts'ũ kãn-tĩng-liàu nĩ pũ pũ lĩ. Nĩ jô yũ-liàu tsè-pĩng, t'ã piên*  
 o. 27. *shũ pũ nãng ăn.*

7. Extract from the *Shing-yũ* (2), v. native text, page 7.

- a. 2. (5.) *Sháng tsĩ-kiên ì sĩ tsat-yũng.*  
 a. 10. *Sãng-jĩn pũ-nãng yĩ jĩ qr wũ yũng, tsĩ pũ-k'ò yĩ jĩ qr wũ tsat.*  
 a. 27. *Jên pĩ liũ yũ chĩ tsat qr heũ k'ò kũng pũ shĩ chĩ yũng. Kũ tsĩ.*  
 b. 14. *kiên sháng yên! Fũ tsat yũ shuũ yê; tsĩ-kiên yũ shuũ chĩ ch'ũ*  
 b. 28. *yê. Shuũ chĩ liũ pũ ch'ũ, tsĩ yĩ-sĩ wũ yũ qr shuũ tĩ hũ ì. Tsat*  
 c. 15. *chĩ liũ pũ tsĩ, tsĩ yũng-chĩ wũ tũ qr tsat tĩ kweĩ ì. Ngò Shing-tsũ,*  
 d. 2. *Jĩn Huáng-tĩ, kũng hĩng tsĩ-kiên, wẽ t'ĩen-hĩa siên, hiũ yàng-sãng sĩ*  
 d. 17. *hãt-nũ. Yĩn fũ yũ kũng kĩng ì sĩ tsat, yũng shĩ hiũn kãi. Tsè kũ*  
 e. 3. *mĩn fũng kiai kweĩ hũ kĩn kiên. Jên kĩn qr pũ kiên, tsĩ shĩ fũ chĩ*  
 e. 19. *tĩ pũ-tsũ kũng yĩ fũ chĩ yũng. Tsĩ sũ sũ ts'ang pũ-tsũ kũng yĩ jĩ*  
 f. 6. *chĩ sũ. K'ĩ hãt nã kãng shĩn yê.—Chẽ t'eu yĩ twán shĩ shuũ.*  
 f. 21. *Shing-tsũ, Jĩn Huáng-tĩ, yĩn-yĩn chũt-hiũn tĩ yuên-yũ. Tá fũn jĩn*  
 g. 6. *sãng shĩ-sháng pũ nãng yĩ-jĩ mũ-yũ fĩ, ts'ũ pũ k'ò yĩ-jĩ mũ-yũ yên-*  
 g. 24. *ts'ĩen. Jên pĩ tĩng tsĩ-ch'ũ-hĩa siẽ yên-ts'ĩen, tsũ nã huũ-jên shĩ t'ã*  
 h. 10. *tĩ shĩ-heũ, ts'at tĩ tsĩ-kĩ; sũ-ì shuũ tsĩ-kiên yĩ-chô. Shĩ-kô tsũ-miũ-*  
 h. 28. *tĩ fũ-tsẽ! Tsĩ chẽ yên-ts'ĩen, tsũ jũ shuũ yĩ-pãn; jĩn tsĩ-kiên t'ã,*  
 i. 14. *tsũ siãng tsũ-shuũ-tĩ yĩ-pãn. Liũ tĩ shuũ pũ tsũ-chũ siẽ yũ tũ*  
 i. 30. *shuũ liũ tũ-shuũ, tsũ yũ kãn-hũ-liàu. Yũng tsat jũ liũ shuũ jũ pũ*  
 j. 16. *tsat-sĩ-chô-siẽ, jĩn ts'ũng tũ-shuũ yên-ts'ĩen chũn yên yê-tsũ k'ĩng-*  
 k. 1. *liàu.—Fũ pĩng-tĩng ts'ĩen-liàng yũ yĩ tĩng chĩ sũ, nã pũ-chĩ toĩn*

is usually read. Here the people are assembled to listen. The *Li-sãng* then calls out: "Respectfully begin!" The *Sz-kiàng-sãng*, or orator, kneels before an altar of incense, takes a board with a maxim, and ascends a pulpit or platform. An old man then presents the board to the people, calls for silence with a rattle, and, kneeling, reads the maxim. The *Li-sãng* next demands the explanation from the *Sz-kiàng-sãng*, who stands up and gives the meaning. See Dr. Milne's *Preface* to his *Translation of the Sacred Edict*.

The original preface by *Yung-ching* is in elegant classical style, and worthy of careful perusal. We will give a version of a portion, which may be of assistance to the young student. "The *Shu*-(king) says: 'Every year, in the 1st month of spring, a herald with a bell went round on the roads.' The *Li*-(king) says: 'The *Sz-tu* prepared the six ceremonies to chasten the dispositions of the people; and illustrated the seven doctrines in order to exalt their virtue!' All these, by giving proper weight to first principles, and reverence for realities, became the means of enlightening the people and awakening the age. A plan the very best! An idea the most noble! Our canonized father, the emperor *Jin*, for a long time taught the doctrine of complete renovation. His virtue was wide as the ocean, and his favour extended every where. His benevolence nourished every thing, and his justice regulated all people. For sixty years, morning



If you do not at all understand obedience to your parents, how can you, unless you consider your parents' heart of affection towards their child, give it a thought? At that time when you were a little fellow, and in your parents' embrace,—being cold, you knew not how to clothe yourself; being hungry, you could not feed yourself\*. They beheld the colour of your countenance. When you smiled, they were pleased; when you wept, they were sorrowful. When you moved about, they, at your heels, supported your steps and remained with you. If you were sickly, they could not sleep in peace.

*Translation of the Extract from the Shing-yü (2), v. native text, page 7.*

(5.) Attend carefully to frugality so as to spare the waste of your means.

Mortals cannot exist for a day without expending something, and consequently they may not exist for a day without the means of doing so. Well then, they must lay up their superfluous money, so that by and by they may apply it to future necessities. For this reason let frugality be exercised! Now money is like water, and frugality is like the accumulation of water. If the flowing away of water be not stopped, then the water will leak out and be completely exhausted. And if the flowing forth of money be not limited, then the expenditure of it will be lavish and your means will fail. Our canonized ancestor, the emperor *Jin*, himself practised a frugal economy, for a leading example to the empire; while he aimed at making provision for the people and giving prosperity to the state†. In times of abundance he was so careful to spare the wealth of the country, that he used to issue proclamations to instruct the people to lay up store. From olden time all the feelings of the people were in favour of industry and frugality. But *if we suppose* industry without frugality, then ten men's labour would not suffice to supply one man's wants. The store which comes of a year's hoarding is insufficient for one day's need. The harm which arises is greater still *than the loss*.—(Paraphrase.)—This first section tells the reason why our canonized ancestor, the emperor *Jin*, gave us such careful instructions. All men in general born into the world are unable to live for a day without expense. Therefore they cannot exist for a day without money, so they must determine to store up and accumulate a little money, to meet sudden emergencies. Then they will be able to relieve the embarrassed; on this account he speaks of frugality. It is an uncommonly good plan of his! Now as for money, it is just like water; and if people take care of their money, it is just as if one collected a quantity of water together. Now, if flowing water be not confined and stopped, a good deal will escape, and then all will be dried up. Using money is like letting water flow, if you do not employ a little care as to the quantity, then your money will by little and little be exhausted.—Now the amount of the soldier's pay is fixed, but he does not know how to be frugal. As to his

\* It will be observed that several characters, which are wanting in the native text, have been supplied in the Roman character.

† This passage is rather obscure, but the translation given above appears to convey the meaning intended. The expressions 'within the seas' and 'below the skies' are translated by 'the state' and 'the empire.'

- k. 17. *tai*; í haú sién-kí, shí k'íú kám-met. Yí yǐ fí, sú yǐ chí liáng shén,  
 l. 4. chí ching t'ái, í súi k'í yǐ. Tsz-mù siáng kiuen; jǐ fǔ yǐ jǐ, chái  
 l. 20. shén lú-cháng, kí hán pǔ mién.—Ché tí-qr-tuán shé shuò ping pǔ-chí  
 m. 7. tsí-kién-tí; nà-mén ping-ting tí ts'ien-liáng, yuén yǐú yǐ-ting chí sù-  
 m. 23. mǐ, jǐ-shí pǔ chí-tau tsqñ-tai; í-fú yau huò-lí, fán-shí yau mèi-k'è,  
 n. 11. kwó yǐ-kó yǐ jǐ-tsè, tau huò fí kǐ-kó yǐ ts'ien-liáng, ché ts'ien-liáng  
 n. 28. tsang-tí keú fí. Shín-tsie yǐú pǔ gān-sang-tí. Huón yau kié sié  
 o. 13. chái jǐn í huǐ-shà, ché kú yǐ-shí kw'ái-huò.

8. Extract from the *Hau-k'iu chuen* (1), v. native text, page 8.

- a. 2. *Hau-k'iu chuen*. Swán-kí ting-liáu, tau tsé-jǐ, jǐ wí-ch'í, tsíú k'í  
 a. 18. lá, kíu Siàu-tám sheú-shí hǐng-lí, tà-tien k'í-shín; tsé-kió chuen-yáng  
 b. 4. tién-sháng yǐ-kó-siàu-sé, ná-liáu tí-tsè lá, huǐ-pai Kwó kung-tsé  
 b. 20. Pǔ-k'í Kwó kung-tsé í-fú hiá-jín tsai hiá-chú tà-t'ing; yǐ-kién Tí  
 c. 7. kung-tsé lá-pai, tsau fí páu-yú Kwó kung-tsé káng-tàng-tí Tí kung-  
 c. 23. tsé tau mǎn. Kwó kung-tsé tsau í-kwán tsí-ts'ú siàu-há-há tí yǐng-  
 d. 9. tsiang-ch'í-lá tau: "Siàu-tí tsò-jǐ tsín-yé, pǔ-kwó liáu-piáu-yáng-  
 d. 24. mǐ chí ching; Tí hàn láu tai-hǐng tsé-kú;" yǐn lién-lién tà-kung-  
 e. 9. kung ts'ing tsín-k'í. Tí kung-tsé yuén tà-cháng, ché tau mǎn t'eu yǐ-  
 e. 24. ming-tí, pién tsou. Huǐ-kién Kwó kung-tsé chí chí-ú-mén yǐng-tsé,  
 f. 8. shí-fán yǐn-kín, yǐ-tu'án-hó-k'í, pién-fáng pǔ-hiá làng-lién lá, ché-tí  
 f. 25. t'eu liáu ming-tí, liàng-siang-yǐ-jáng tau t'ing. Tí kung-tsé tsíú yau  
 g. 10. shí-lá. Kwó kung-tsé chí-chú tau: "Tsz-kién pǔ-pián ts'ing kiáu."  
 g. 24. Súi tsiang Tí chí-yau tau héu-t'ing; fang-ts'at shí-lí sú-tsó. Yí-mián  
 h. 10. hién-sháng-ch'í-lá, Kwó kung-tsé yǐn shuò-tau: "Kíú wón tai-hǐng,  
 h. 24. yǐng-hǐng chí ming, kí-sé yǐ-huǐ; ts'ien mǎng-jǐ lín pí-yǐ shí, tsí  
 i. 10. meú tsín-yé qr yǐú ts'ung-ts'ung fǎ-kiá, páu-hán chí-kín; kǐn-hǐng  
 i. 25. tsai-lín, yǐú ching chǐú-kú, ching yǐú kw'ái-sé! Kán pán-tsó ping-  
 j. 9. yuén shí-jǐ chí yǐn, í wéi kí-ké chí huat?" Tí-kung-tsé chí pá, tsíú  
 j. 26. lí-k'í-shín-lá, tau: "Ching chàng-hǐng héu-gai, pán tàng ling-kiáu;

and evening, even while eating and dressing, his only concern was to excite all, both within and without the empire, to exalt humanity; to speak with deference to each other; to put away meanness and keep faith with one another perfectly; that by cultivating the spirit of kindness and humility, they might for ever enjoy a reign of universal peace. Therefore with this intention he gave these superior instructions, consisting of sixteen articles, to acquaint the Bannermen (i. e. the Tartars), together with all descriptions of men and soldiers throughout the provinces, of the bounds of their common and uncommon duties, of the culture of the ground and of the mulberry tree, of working and resting, principles and results, of fine and coarse, public and private, great and small, and whatsoever else the circumstances of the people called on them to practice,—these are the things which his sublime intelligence aimed at. He affectionately treated you, his subjects just as his own children; he issued his sacred instructions, clearly aiming at your certain protection, every age should observe them, they cannot be changed."

*Shing* (6. a. 12) here means 'canonized' or 'sacred.' It is the custom in China to place the names of great men in the temple of ancestors, they thus become canonized and receive the prefix *shing*. The temple of Confucius is called the *Shing-miá*. (Cf. note on page 26, Part II.)

clothes, he likes to have them fine; as to his food, he seeks for what is nice and good. One month's expenditure amounts to several months' pay, until he borrows to follow out his wishes. The child and the mother become of equal size. Every day adds to the burden of debt, and hunger and starvation become inevitable.—(Paraphrase.)—This second section speaks about the soldier's ignorance of frugal economy. The pay of you soldiers is a regularly fixed amount. If you don't know how to be economical, but as far as your clothes are concerned you wish for finery, and as respects your food you have a dainty mouth; when a month is passed, you find that you have spent several months' wages; how can your pay be sufficient? Moreover you cannot live happily, but you must run into debt, in order to carry out your habits of dissipation, and you regard only the pleasures of the moment.

*Translation of the Extract from the Hai-k'ü chüén (1), v. native text, page 8.*

### The Story of the Fortunate Union.

His plans being determined on; the next day, before the sun was up, he arose and called *Siau-tan* to collect the luggage, and to prepare himself for departure: while he himself, on the other hand, having solicited the services of a boy from the inn, took his card to return the visit of Mr. *Kwo*. Without intimation Mr. *Kwo* had set a menial to play the spy in the lower room. Directly this man saw Mr. *Ti* going to visit, he hastened to give information to Mr. *Kwo*, who was just waiting for Mr. *Ti* to arrive at the gate. Mr. *Kwo*, ready dressed, came out to receive him, smiling, and with a respectful but cordial ‘Ha! ha!’ he said: “I, your humble servant, in waiting upon you yesterday, intended merely to show a slight mark of the sincerity of my respect. You Mr. *Ti*, I fear, have troubled yourself, Sir, to take notice of it.” Then repeatedly he bowed respectfully and invited him to enter in. Mr. *Ti* at first intended only to go to the door and present a card, and then to walk away. But on seeing all at once Mr. *Kwo* straightway coming out to receive him, very urgent and full of cordiality, (then) he did not lay aside his reserve, but merely presented his card, and the two gentlemen kept bowing to each other until they reached the reception room. Mr. *Ti* was then about to perform the salutations, but Mr. *Kwo* stopped him, saying: “This place is inconvenient to invite your commands;” and forthwith he invited *Ti* into the inner hall, where they saluted each other, and sat down in due form. Tea having been served up, Mr. *Kwo* then said: “I have long heard of you, Sir, you have a hero's name, ardently have I looked forward to an interview. When, on a former occasion, you condescended to come to our poor place, I then planned to wait upon you, and in a hurried manner to pay my compliments; but you were absent, and I have felt the annoyance up to the present time. Now that happily you are again come, and have once more condescended to regard us, it is assuredly a significant circumstance; may I presume to engage you in a ten days' entertainment to make even my original plan, and to gratify our feelings of hunger and thirst?” Mr. *Ti*, however, having finished his tea, then arose and said: “In return, Sir,

- k. 10. *chê-shí* 'kwei-sin-sè-tsién,' *kín-jí* lí-kè *tsiú-yaú* *híng-liàu*, *pà pí chí*  
 k. 27. *huân, liú-tai í-jí, k'ò-yè!* "Wàng-wai *tsiú tseù*. Kwó lán-chú *tsá:*  
 l. 12. "*Siáng-fúng pū-yín, chin líng 'fúng-yú* *siaú-jín.*" *Jín shí híng-kí, yè*  
 l. 27. *yaú kú-liú sán-jí.*" *Tí tau:* "*Siaú-tí shí-shí yaú-híng, pū-shí kú-té,*  
 m. 14. *kí chàng-hiung siáng-liáng.*" *Shwò-pá, yíu wàng wai tseù.* Kwó yí  
 m. 27. *shéu chí-chú, tsá:* "*Siaú-tí súi pū-té-ai, yè t'ien wéi huân-kia tsé-tí;*  
 n. 13. *t'ái-hiung pū-yaú k'án-té shí-fán k'ing-liàu jò kò k'án-k'ing, tsíu pū-*  
 n. 29. *kaí lai tsé-kú-liàu; kí-máng tsé-kú, pién yaú wàn tsò pín-chú; siáu-*  
 o. 15. *tí k'ù-k'ù siáng-liú, pū-kwò yú shaú tsín pín-chú chí t'qr, fí*

9. Extract from the *Háu-k'iu chuen* (2), v. native text, page 9.

- a. 1. *yíu sò k'iu yè; pū-shí tai-hiung hó kién k'ù-chí shín yé.*" *Tí k'ung-*  
 a. 17. *tsé tau:* "*Múng chàng-hiung yín-yín yá-ngai, siáu-tí yí pū jín yén*  
 b. 2. *k'ú; tán chuông-í-sú; híng-sí k'ung-ts'ung, shí pū yung huân qr.*"  
 b. 16. *Kwó tau:* "*Kí-shí, t'ái-hiung, pū í páng-yíu wéi ts'ing, kw'ái-í yaú-*  
 c. 1. *híng; siáu-tí k'áng-liú, yè tsé-kíó huóng-kwéi; tán ché-shí ts'ing-*  
 c. 15. *shín ngò-fú qr lai, yíu líng ngò-fú qr k'ú, tí-sín shí yíu pū-gán:*  
 d. 2. *kín yí pū kán kiú liú, ché k'iu líó-t'ing-ní shí, shaú táng yí-ts'án, qr*  
 d. 19. *tsé t'ing k'ú-ché tsíu tau, shú-kí jín-ts'ing liàng tsín. Nán-tau t'ái-*  
 e. 4. *hiung huân pū-k'ang fú-ts'ung!"* *Tí pán pū-yí liú, yín kién Kwó*  
 e. 18. *shín-ts'ing héu-máú, k'án-k'án kw'án-liú, chí-tsé-chú-hia tau:* "*Tá-*  
 f. 2. *ts'ái tsín-pai ts'ang-pián hau siáng-jau!"* *Kwó tau:* "*Chí-í siáng-fáng,*  
 f. 16. *táng wáng pū-ngò; t'ái-hiung kw'ái-sé, hó-kú tsò tsé t'ái-yén!"* *Ching*  
 g. 1. *shwò pū-hiáu, ché-kién Shwú-yún huá tseù-liáu tsín-lai. K'án-kién*  
 g. 15. *Tí, máng-shí-kwò-í, wuán-lién t'ái siáu, tau:* "*Tsò-jí shé-chí-nú*  
 g. 30. *kán Tí sién-sang yuén lai kái-í, tsé tò ngò-hiò-sang kú-kién, fúng-kú*  
 h. 17. *shaú-piáu wéi shín, pū shí Tí sién-sang hó-kú kién wai k'ù-k'ù tsé-hiáu.*  
 i. 4. *Kín híng yíu yuén, yíu tsé siáng-peí.*" *Tí tau:* "*Ngò-hiò-sang lai*

The *Hiaú-king* (6. b. 3) 'the Classic of Filial Piety,' is a collection, in sixteen chapters, of sentences by Confucius and his disciple *Tsang-tsz*, upon duty to parents and superiors. The author's name is unknown. A translation by Dr. Bridgman appeared in the *Chinese Repository*, vol. V.

*Wá-fí* . . . . . (6. b. 17—25). Here are two negatives to intensify an assertion. The whole may be construed: 'By nothing else but filial piety he considered that the empire could be governed.' (See Art. 450 of Part I.) *Chí t'ien-hia chí t'í* = 'the idea (or thought, or purpose) for governing the empire,' i. e. 'he considered that the empire could be governed,' *wá-fí hiaú*, 'only by filial piety being inculcated.'

*Fú hiaú-ché* . . . . . yé (6. d. 10—22) is an elegant passage, which cannot be literally translated; it contains an allusion to the three great powers of the universe, *sán-ts'at* as the Chinese call heaven, earth, and man. It is intended to convey the idea that filial piety is that duty which contains the germ of all good principles and virtuous conduct, and the fulfilment of which produces harmony in the universe.

*Ché t'í-sán-tw'án* (6. k. 20). This annotation might have referred to an earlier portion, but here begins the subject of filial piety, and the author having but a limited space, he deemed it right to omit the first two sections of notes.

for your generosity and kindness, I ought to receive your commands, but the fact is this,—‘My heart returns like arrow fleet,’—to-day, and at once, I am about to proceed on my journey; as regards the enjoyment of your hospitality I will remain to receive it another day, that will do.” Going towards the outer door he was about to depart, when Mr. Kwo stopped him, saying: “For good friends to meet without drinking, would truly cause the wind and the moon to smile (at men)! Admitting that you are in haste to travel, still you ought to yield, and remain three days.” T’i said: “I am really about to travel, it is not a mere refusal, I beg of you, Sir, to excuse me.” Having spoken, he again turned to the door; but Kwo with one hand took hold of him and said: “I, although I, your humble servant, am without talent, yet you should consider that I am the son of an official family, you, Sir, should not look upon me very lightly, if indeed you do despise me, then you ought not to have come to take notice of me. Having obliged me with your kind regard, then you should look upon me as your host; and I, in thus urging you to remain, only wish in a slight degree to fulfil a host’s friendliness and nothing more.

*Translation of the Extract from the Hsü-k’ü chuen (2), v. native text, page 9.*

I have nothing else to ask. I do not know what you can see to oppose so much.” Mr. T’i said: “Being under obligation, Sir, for your extreme kindness, I, for my part, can hardly allow myself to speak of going; but as every thing is packed, and my face is set (homewards) like a running stream in haste, the circumstances will not permit me to delay at all.” Kwo said: “It being so, Sir, that you take not friendly feeling as your disposition, but are in a hurry to depart; if I were to urge your stay, I should be ashamed of myself. But the fact is just this, early in the morning you come fasting, and if I were to allow you to depart without breakfast, my mind would be truly ill at ease. As it is I would not presume to detain you for long, only a very little time, to take a slight meal, and then we may hear of your departure, and it may be said that all those human feelings of ours are mutually satisfied. You cannot, Sir, still be unwilling to remain.” T’i, who as far as he was concerned did not wish to stay, when he saw the deep feeling and generous behaviour (of his host) entreating him to wait, abode where he was, and said, “In a mere visit why should I trouble you so much?” Kwo said: “When good friends meet, then they forget personal feelings; you, Sir, are a shrewd man of learning, why do you make use of this formal expression?” Just as he was speaking and before he had finished, who should they see but Shwüi-yün walking up and coming in. On seeing T’i, he rapidly went through the salutations, and with his face all smiling he addressed him and said: “Yesterday my little niece being moved by your coming so far Mr. T’i to honour us with your compliments, deputed me to present a card, and to offer an invitation, as a slight indication of our cordial feelings. We could not understand what reason you had Mr. T’i for objecting and so decidedly refusing. Now happily we have had the good fortune to meet again to-day.” T’i said: “I came in great haste,

- i. 18. *shū tsau-tsau, k'í fū ts'ung-ts'ung; yǐ lǐ yuèn-wá ch'eu-to̍, kú kǐng t̍*  
j. 4. *shí-chè ts'z-siè; tsí kīn-jí chī lai, yǐ pū-kwo̍ yuèn yǐ shí-kǐng, yè q̍*  
j. 22. *mǔng Kwó-hiung, tsí chān-chān t'eu-hiá; yǐ-liá, k'ung fī lǐ; yú k'í,*  
k. 2. *yú k'ung fī ts'ing; ching tsai-tsè fī ch'eu-ch'á, kǐng lau-ung yú lǐ kiá-*  
k. 18. *chī." Shwüi-yün tau: "Kū-chī hau páng-yü, kǐng kat jú kú; Tí sién-*  
l. 3. *sǎng yǐ Kwó shé-ts'ín, nán-tau tsíu pū-jú kú jín! nài pī k'ú-k'ú yǐ*  
l. 20. *shí-sū jú-tsè, shīn fī-i yè!" Kwó siáu tau: "Hwán-shí lau-tò-jín*  
m. 6. *shwò-ts'í t'ung-kw'á!" Tí kién q̍ jín hú-siāng kw'án-liá, kǐng pū k̍*  
m. 21. *ts'ien tsing, chē jín-tsò hau-i, pién siáu-yí-siáu tsò-hiá, pū fū yén k'í.*  
n. 8. *Pū-tō-shí pēi-sháng tsüi lai. Kwó tsíu sǔng tsò. Tí tau: "Yuèn*  
n. 22. *mǔng lién chāi-kī q̍ shéu ts'án, wéi-hò yú lau tsè-tsüi? k'ung yén fī*  
o. 8. *k'í shí yè!" Kwó siáu tau: "Mán-mán yén k'í, shau-pū-ts'í yú-chò*  
o. 23. *yén-shí." Sǎn-jín kú-kò tá-siáu tsüi tsò q̍ yén.*

10. Extract from the *Hau-k'iu chuen* (3), v. native text, page 10.

- a. 5. *Yuèn-lai sǎn-jín yǐ kiú-pí-sǎng, k'ú shí hau-yü; yǐ-nièn sháng*  
a. 20. *shéu, pién tsín-tsín yüi wí;—'nǐ yǐ-pēi, ngò yǐ-chān,' pién pū fū tūi-tsé.*  
b. 7. *Yín-liáu wán-sháng, Tí ching-yüi kó chú-shéu chī i, huó-jén tsò-yü*  
b. 22. *paü Wáng, Píng-pú t̍, sǎn kǐng-tsè lai-liáu. Sǎn-jín chē-tí t'ing-pēi*  
c. 8. *tsí-kién. Kwó tsíu gān-tsò tau: "Wáng-hiung lai t̍ shīn-miáu!"*  
c. 21. *Yín yǔng shéu chī-chò Tí tau: "Tsè wéi Tí-hiung, hau-kí sè yè!*  
d. 6. *Pū-k'ò pū-huó!" Wáng tau: "Mò-fī tsíu-shí tà-jí Tá-gān-huó yáng-*  
d. 22. *hién-táng t̍ Tí T'ung-sǎng mó?" Shwüi-yün mǔng tá-tau: "Ching-*  
e. 5. *shí! ching-shí!" Wáng yín ching-fū kú shéu-tsü kǐng-tau: "Kiú-*  
e. 18. *yàng! kiú-yàng! Shí-kǐng! shí-kǐng!" Yín wán Chīn yǐ-kú-sháng,*  
f. 1. *sǔng-yü Tí tau: "Tsí Kwó-hiung chī tsüi, lai-piáu siáu-tí yáng-*  
f. 15. *mú chī s̍." Tí tsí-liáu yè chīn yǐ-sháng huó-kǐng tau: "Siáu-tí*  
f. 30. *ts'ü hau, hò-tsü tau tai-hiung, jú kīn, jú jú." Fāng-tí wán-pín chī*  
g. 16. *ching, pī-tsè kiáu-tsán. Yǐ-lién tsíu-shí sǎn-kú-sháng; Tí ching*  
g. 30. *yaú kau chī, huó tsò-yüi yú paü Lì, Hán-lín t̍ q̍ kǐng-tsè lai-liáu.*

The maxim on page 7 is the 5th of the sixteen original maxims.

The pages 8—12 of the *Chrestomathy* contain a passage from the *Hau-k'iu chuen*, a notice of which will be found on page 17 of Part II. In this work, a perusal of the whole of which we would recommend to the student of Chinese, we see, as Sir John Davis aptly says, "portrayed by a native hand this most singular people in almost every variety and condition of human life.

"Quicquid agunt homines—votum, timor, ira, voluptas,  
Gaudia, discursus—nostri est farrago libelli."

See the Preface to his admirable translation, "The Fortunate Union."

The student will observe that the absolute clause, which may be translated by a clause beginning with *having* or *being*, is of very frequent occurrence in Chinese composition. The first thing to do is to unite the characters and syllables which form phrases or grammatical words,—nouns, verbs, or attributive expressions. Such are *swén-kí* (8. a. 6, 7), which, though verbs generally, are here united to form a noun,—'plans.' Then *itang-liá* is a verb, 'being fixed;' *tsz-jí* (a. 11, 12) is a phrase, 'the next day,' just as in English, 'he came next day' for 'he came on the next day,' the word *on* being omitted in Chinese, as in

and I am going again without delay;—with respect to greetings, for my own part, I have no politeness, therefore respectfully relying upon you Sir, the messenger, I must decline with thanks; for my coming to-day was only to acknowledge a visit and to render my obligations to Mr. *Kwo*, who most assiduously invited me to stay. Should I wish to stay, I fear it would be improper; should I wish to go, I also fear lest it might not be kind: just at this troublesome juncture of my embarrassment, fortunately you, respected Sir, are come to direct me." *Shwüi-yün* said: "Good friends of the olden time were inclined to conceal such reasons; you Mr. *Ti* and my relation Mr. *Kwo* are forsooth as good as the ancients!—but to confine yourselves strictly to the world's customs in this manner, would certainly not be right." *Kwo* laughed and said: "Of a surety my old friend speaks with an acute shrewdness." *Ti* seeing that they both were alike wishing to detain him as a guest, now forgot his earlier dispositions, and feeling well disposed in mind, (then) he smiled, sat down, and spoke no more of going. Soon after this, wine was served up; Mr. *Kwo* then showed him a seat. But Mr. *Ti* said: "I am much obliged indeed for your consideration of my morning fast, and for giving me refreshment, *but* why do you also trouble yourself to bestow wine *on me*; I suspect this is not a time to drink." *Kwo*, laughing, said: "Go on drinking a little, and presently we shall find it is drinking time." All three laughed outright, and sat down to their cups.

*Translation of the Extract from the Hsü-k'ü chüan* (3), v. native text, page 10.

Now the three happened to be good friends with the wine, and directly they raised their hands *to drink*, (then) they felt an increasing relish for it; and when they had once *pledged* each other, (then) they did not again decline drinking. After drinking three horns, and just as Mr. *Ti* thought of stopping, all at once the attendants announced that the third son of *Wang*, of the Board of War, had arrived. The three gentlemen had merely put down their glasses to receive him, when *Kwo* proceeded to seat him comfortably, saying: "Mr. *Wang* it is a good thing that you are come." Then with his hand he pointed to *Ti*, saying: "This gentleman, Mr. *Ti*, is a hero and a scholar, you ought to make his acquaintance." *Wang* replied: "Surely it is no other than that *Ti t'ing-sang*, who forcibly entered the Pleasure palace of *Tá-gän-heü*?" *Shwüi-yün*, hastily replying, said: "Quite so! quite so!" *Wang* then renewing his salutations with respect said: "I have looked forward to this pleasure! I was ignorant of the honour!" Then, filling a large wine-cup, he presented it to *Ti*, saying: "I borrow Mr. *Kwo*'s wine to show in a small degree my private feelings of respect." *Ti* received it, and having poured out a cup in return, politely said: "I am a common person, what have I worthy of mention; *but* your qualities, Sir, may be compared to gold and jewels." Then after reciprocal praises on degree of scholarship and rank had been passed between them, and three cups had been drunk in succession, just as *Ti* was about to say he must stop, on a sudden the attendants again made an announcement that the second son of

- h. 17. *Sá-jín ching yau k'í shín siang-yíng; ná Lì k'ung-tsè ì-tseù tau sì*  
 i. 3. *ts'ien ch'í-chú tau: "Siang-shú hiung-tí, p'í siáu t'ung-shín, siáu-tí*  
 i. 17. *k'ing tsíu tsó pá!" Kwó tau: "Sháng yíu yuèn-k'è tsai-tsè." T'í t'ing*  
 j. 1. *shwò, yíu t'í lí sì yau tsò lí. Ná Lì tsèi p'í tsò yè, sién k'án-chò Tí*  
 j. 19. *wón tau: "Hau yíng tsíuín jín-wú!" Tsèi ts'ing-kiaú chàng-hiung-tí*  
 k. 2. *síng tai-hau? T'í tau: "Siáu-tí nài tá-míng, Tí Ch'ing-yú." Lí tau*  
 k. 17. *ché-t'eng shwò shí, Tí T'ü-hièn tí chàng kiün-tsè; liên-liên tsò-yí tau:*  
 l. 3. *"Kiù-wón tá-míng, k'ín-jí yíu yuèn-híng hwiú!" Kwó-tsíu yau j'í-tsò.*  
 l. 18. *T'í tsè-shí tsíu-ì-proán-hán, yíu siàng yau-híng; yín ts'è shwò-tau:*  
 m. 4. *"Lì hiung ts'ái lai, siáu-tí p'én-p'ü-kai tsíu yau k'ú, ch'è yín lai tí tsau,*  
 m. 21. *t'au yín kwó tò, huóng híng sì k'ung-tsung, p'í n'ng kiù-chú; ch'è-tí*  
 n. 6. *yau sién p'í-liáu." Lí yín tsò-sí tau: "T'í-hiung yè t'ái-k'í jín! k'í*  
 n. 22. *yau-híng, hò p'í tsau k'ú? Wéi-hò siáu-tí k'ang tau, tsíu yí-k'è yè p'í*  
 o. 9. *n'ng líu? ch'è-shí míng k'í siáu-tí! P'í tsò yíu yín-liáu!" Shwò-yín*  
 o. 24. *tau: "T'í sién-s'ang k'ú, shí yau k'ú-kiù-liáu!"*

11. Extract from the *Hau-k'iu chuen* (4), v. native text, page 11.

- a. 5. *T'í wú-nai ch'è-tí yíu f'í tsò-híá, yíu Lì tsíu yín-liáu s'án-k'í-sh'ang.*  
 a. 22. *Yín-ts'ái-wán, hwiú tsò-yíu yíu p'au-tau Ch'ang k'ang-k'í ts'í tá k'ung-tsè*  
 b. 8. *lai-liáu. Ch'ung-jín huán wí k'í ts'í-yíng, ch'è-kién ná Ch'ang k'ung-tsè*  
 b. 23. *wai-ts'ái-ch'ò yí-t'ing f'ang-kín yè sié-ch'ò liàng-ch'è sì-yèn, tsau-p'au-ch'ò*  
 c. 10. *yí-kó mà-lién, tsau k'í-ts'í tsíu hiün-hiün, yí-lú kiaú ts'ang-ts'ín-lai tau:*  
 c. 27. *"Ná yí-wéi shí T'í hiung, k'í yau tau ngò lí ch'ing-hièn lai, tsò hau-k'í,*  
 d. 14. *ts'ang p'ü-hwiú ngò yí-hwiú?" T'í ch'ing lí-k'í shín lai ts'ái-ch'ang yí t'ái*  
 d. 30. *shí lí, kién t'ái yén-yí p'ü-s'án, pién lí-chú ts'í-yíng tau: "Siáu-tí pién-*  
 e. 17. *shí T'í t'ing-s'ang, p'ü-ch'í chàng-hiung yau hwiú siáu-tí, yíu hò ts'í-*  
 f. 2. *kiaú?" Ch'ang yè p'ü-wéi lí, ch'ing-ch'ò yén k'án T'í, k'án-liáu yíu-k'án,*  
 f. 17. *hwiú ts'ái-siáu shwò-tau: "Ngò ch'è-tau T'í-hiung shí ts'í-kó t'ái p'ü-kó*  
 g. 3. *tàn tí hau H'án-tsè!—K'í yuèn-lai ts'ing-ts'ing mèi-mú, p'è-p'è mién-*  
 g. 18. *k'ung!—wú-í yíu nù-tsè!—siàng-shí Ts'ín-heú! heú tsò-liáu sí yí, ts'í*  
 h. 4. *mán-kiàng; ts'í sién kiaú-yí-kiaú ts'íu-liàng, k'án shí j'ü-hò?" Ch'ang-*  
 h. 18. *jín t'ing-liáu, k'í ts'án-mèi tau: "Ch'ang-hiung miau-l'ín ts'í-yíng-*  
 i. 2. *hiung p'én-sí!" Ts'í ts'ing yí-sh'ang yí-yín q'í k'án ts'í k'án-liáu, s'ü*  
 i. 17. *k'í k'ung-sh'ang yau chau-k'án. T'í kién t'ái k'án-tí shwóng-k'w'ái, wé-*  
 j. 1. *nai-hò yè ch'è-tí mién-k'íàng k'í-k'án-liáu. Ch'ang-tau: "Ts'ái siàng*  
 j. 15. *kó páng-yíu yí-mièn!" Yíu kiaú tsò-yíu ch'ín-k'í liàng-sh'ang. T'í*

English. Observe that words expressing 'then' as a mark of sequence are often used in Chinese, where in English we should omit them: e. g. *ts'íu* (8. a. 16), *tsau* (8. c. 14), *f'ang-tsai* (8. h. 1, 2), and often. Several expressions occur in this extract, which are set phrases for particular occasions, and partake of the nature of proverbs or common sayings, and, as such, cannot be explained by the ordinary rules of grammar: e. g.—

*kwéi-sín sz-t'ien* (8. k. 12) 'returning heart as arrow (fleet).'

*f'ung-yü siáu-jín* (8. l. 18) 'the winds and moon would smile at man.'

*k'ing-sí k'ung-ts'üáng* (9. b. 7) 'my face is set like running stream to go.'



*Li*, Fellow of the Imperial Academy, had come. Just as the four gentlemen were rising to receive him, this Mr. *Li* had walked into the festive scene, and stopping, said: “Old friends like us will not take up time in moving, I am already seated.” *Kwo* said: “But there is a guest here from a distance!” When *T’i* heard this said, he left the table, and sought to make the salutations. The aforesaid Mr. *Li* did not make any bow, but he first looked at *T’i* and said: “A fine superior sort of man! Be so good, Sir, to tell me your surname and name (eminent designation).” *T’i* replied: “My proper name is *T’i Ch’ung-yü*.” *Li* said as follows: “It is *T’i*, the Censor’s eldest son.” Repeatedly bowing, he went on to say: “I have long ago heard of your great name, to-day by some good providence we have happily met.” *Kwo* then invited him to be seated. *T’i* at this time being half-overcome with wine, and besides that thinking of taking his departure, (then) declined with these words: “Since Mr. *Li* is just come, I properly ought not to go, but I came early, and I feel ashamed of having drunk so much, and much more for this reason that I am in great haste to travel, and cannot remain long, indeed I wished before to go.” *Li* then changed countenance and said: “Mr. *T’i* is very insulting, if he wished to go, why did he not go sooner? Why just when I came, then all on a sudden he could not stay? this is clearly an insult to me; I am not good enough to drink with!” *Shwü-yün* said: “Mr. *T’i* wished to leave a good while ago.”

*Translation of the Extract from the Hsü-k’ü chüan* (4), v. native text, page 11.

*T’i* had no other alternative but to sit down again, and with *Li* to drink three large cups. When they had finished drinking, suddenly the attendants announced that the eldest son of *Chang*, a person of distinction, had arrived. Before any one had time to reply, they see Mr. *Chang*, with his dress all awry, with his eyes askant, and with a rakish air, having made himself drunk betimes, come rolling in, crying: “Which is Mr. *T’i*, who is come to our ancient city and place to play the hero? how is it he did not favour me with a visit?” *T’i* was just then standing up, preparing to salute him, but when he saw that his expressions were uncivil, he drew himself up and replied: “Your humble servant’s name is *T’i t’ing-sang*, I was ignorant that you, Sir, wished to meet me; pray what are your commands?” *Chang* still made no bow, but, looking straight at *T’i*, he stared and stared again; then, bursting into a loud laugh, he said: “Why I expected to find Mr. *T’i* a seven-headed and eight-hearted Chinaman, and behold he has fine blue eyes and a pale countenance, just like a girl. I believe he is a mere effeminate, and bye and bye we will say more about it, but first let us try his capacity for wine and see what it is.” They all heard and praised the plan highly, saying: “Mr. *Chang* speaks well, with the real spirit of a great hero!” Then they proposed a bumper to be drained, and when it was drained they raised the empty cup to show that it was dry. *T’i*, seeing that they drained theirs without being the worse for it, had no alternative but, perforce, to drink off his own. *Chang* said: “Come now, that’s friendly!” and called the attendants to refill the cups. But *T’i*

- j. 29. *taú*: "Siàu-tí tso-kiù tī yíu p'et Wáng-hiung sán-shāng, Lì-hiung  
 k. 13. sán-shāng, fāng ts'at yíu k'íu p'et chàng-hiung yí-shāng. Trién-liàng  
 k. 26. yíu hién." Chāng-taú: "Kí Wáng, Lì, q'r-hiung k'íu lién sán-shāng,  
 l. 9. hó tú siàu-tí yáú yí shāng q'r chī?—shí k'í siàu-tí liàu! ts'ung-p'ú  
 l. 25. shéu jín chí k'í!" Chāng pién muàn-lién t'ān-nú taú: "Kiàng-  
 m. 7. mīng túi-yén ngò k'í-liàu, nì jū-hó p'ú-k'í? mō-fī nì ò kiàng k'í ngò  
 m. 25. mō?" Tí yí-shí tsüi-tí shīn tú yuèn-liàu, k'au-chò ò-tsè, chē yáú-t'et  
 n. 12. taú: "K'í-tí-pièn, k'í; k'í-p'ú-tí-pièn, p'ú-k'í; yíu shān-mō k'í-àng?"  
 n. 27. Chāng-taú: "Chē p'ei-tsüi, nì kàn p'ú k'í mō?" Tí taú: "P'ú-k'í!"  
 o. 11. Chāng tá-nú taú: "Nì tsāng kàn taú ngò Shān-tung lai chuōng-  
 o. 24. k'í-àng. Nì p'ú-k'í ngò chí-p'ei-tsüi ngò pién yáú nì k'í liàu k'í!"

12. Extract from the *Hau-k'iu chuen* (5), v. native text, page 12.

- a. 9. Yín ná-k'í ná p'ei tsüi lai chái chò Tí kiá-t'et kiá-lién, chē yí-kiáu.  
 a. 26. Tí, süi-jén tsüi-liàu, sūn-shāng kió-wán mīng-p'á. Yí-kí k'í-tí hò-sing  
 b. 13. huán-p'ing; yín tsiang-tsüi tú k'í-sing-liàu; wáng-t'iaú k'í-shīn lai,  
 b. 27. tsiang Chāng yí p'á chái chū jáu liàu liàng jáu taú: "Tsāng kàn taú  
 c. 11. hù-t'et shāng lai, sing s'í!" Chāng tá kiáu taú: "Nì kàn tà ngò mō?"  
 c. 26. Tí pién yí-chàng taú: "Tà nì pién tsāng-mō?" K'uo ts'at huó-taú:  
 d. 10. "Hau-tí liú yén, nài kàn t-tsüi s'í yè! k'uo k'uo m'án p'ú-yáú tsüi-  
 d. 26. liàu! tsüi tà t'á kó tsüi-sing!" Tsau liàng siang tsüi-ch'í t'í-p'á-kó  
 e. 11. tá-hán. Tí siáu-yí-siáu taú: "Yí-k'í-tún fūng keú! tsāng-kàn lai k'í  
 e. 26. jín!" Yín yí-shéu chū-chú Chāng p'ú-fāng, yí-shéu tsiang tai-tsè yí  
 f. 11. hién ná sié hiau-chán wán-chán, tà-fān yí-tí. Shwüi-yín k'ang tsüi-taú  
 f. 27. shīn-pièn, p'í Tí chē yí-t'ü taú: "K'án Shwüi siáu-tsüi fān-shāng,  
 g. 11. jáu nì; tà tsau t'ü-tí-k'í, yíu cháng yuèn-kín t'í-taú t'í shāng; p'á  
 g. 28. p'ú-k'í-lai. Tí tsiang Chāng t'í tsiang k'í-lai chē yí-shéu saú-tí chūng-  
 h. 15. jín tung-taú-si-wai. Chāng yuèn-shí kó s'í-tí, nùt huó tsüi hiung h'í  
 i. 1. t'í muàn-k'et kiáu-taú: "Tá-kiá p'ú-yáú tung-shéu! yíu huó hau-  
 i. 15. kiàng!" Tí taú: "M'ú shīn huó kiàng; chē hau-hau sing ngò chí  
 i. 28. k'í, pién wán s'í tsüi-hiú. Jò yáú kiung-liú, kiáu nì jín-jín tú s'í."  
 j. 14. Chāng lién-lién ying-ching taú: "Ngò s'ing nì! Ngò s'ing nì!" Fāng  
 j. 27. Tí tsiang Chāng fāng-p'ing, chán wán-liàu yí-shéu t'í-chò tsé-p'á-liàu  
 k. 12. ch'ü-lai, chūng-jín yén tsāng-tsāng k'án, chò-k'í t'í-p'á-t'ing, yíu p'á kàn  
 k. 28. shāng-ts'ien, chē-hau tsai-p'áng shuo-ngóng-huó, taú: "Kàn tsāng

*K'iu-p'í-sing* (10. a. 10) is a cake used in the fermentation of wine. *P'í-sing* refers probably to the sprouting of the grain from which the liquor is made; and this whole expression seems to be used here, by metonymy, for the wine itself, just as *John Barleycorn* is employed in our own language for ale or beer.

*Nì yí-p'ei, ngò yí-chán* (10. a. 26) is a graphic form of expression, perhaps the proper form for inviting another to take wine, in pledging one another. *P'wán-shāng* (10. b. 9), lit. 'half the forenoon,' consequently 'three hours.' Observe that *ching*, when used for 'just as,' takes the second place when the subject of the sentence is mentioned (cf. 10. b. 12). The polite expression in 10. e. 17—24. is hard to translate into English, but the version we have given conveys very nearly the signification intended in the original.

exclaimed: “Your humble servant has been sitting a long time, and has just now taken three cups with Mr. *Wang*, three cups with Mr. *Li*, and now one cup with you, Sir; my shallow capacity has a limit.” *Chang* replied: “Having taken three cups with each of our brethren, *Wang* and *Li*, why with me, only one cup and then stop? This is to insult me! I have never yet been insulted by any body!” He then swelled with suppressed rage, and said: “Apologise by drinking in reply to me! Why don’t you drink? Surely you intend to insult me excessively, don’t you?” *T’i* now being nearly overcome with what he had drunk, leaned back in his chair and, shaking his head, exclaimed: “When it is convenient to drink, then I drink; when it is not convenient to drink, I won’t drink; where is the excessive insult?” *Chang* said: “This cup of wine will you dare not to drink it?” *T’i* said: “I won’t drink it!” *Chang*, in a great rage, cried: “Why do you dare to come to our *Shan-tung* to show these airs; if you will not drink this cup of wine of mine, I will make you drink it.”

*Translation of the Extract from the Hsü-k’ü chüan* (5), v. native text, page 12.

He then took up the cup of wine and dashed it completely over the head and face of *T’i*, who, although in a state of intoxication, yet had his wits about him. Suddenly his ardent temper was roused, and all confusion of mind was dissipated; and, as far as the wine went, he was sobered. He jumped up in an instant and, having seized *Chang* with a firm grasp, he swung him round twice, saying: “How dare you venture to come, seeking death, with a tiger?” *Chang*, with a loud voice, cried: “Do you dare to strike me?” *T’i*, then giving him a slap, replied: “If I strike you, what then?” *K’wo* then put in a word: “A fine idea to stay drinking, and then, relying on the wine, to make a disturbance!—quickly shut the door and let no one go out! Then beat him until he is sober!” At once from two adjacent rooms came forth seven or eight strong fellows. But *T’i*, with a smile, said: “You pack of mad dogs, how dare you come to insult a man!” Then with one hand he gripped tightly hold of *Chang* and with the other he lifted the whole table of refreshments and scattered them on the ground. *Shüi-yün* just then having approached him, was pushed by *T’i* with the words: “Having a regard for your niece I spare you a little:” as he hurled him several feet away, where he fell sprawling on the ground unable to rise. *T’i* then took *Chang*, and with one hand sweeping him round, he scattered them all in every direction. Now *Chang*, who was a man of vicious habits and was enervated with wine and debauchery, cried out with all his might: “Every one be still!—we will hold a parley!” *T’i* replied: “There is no need of that; only show me out, and then a host of troubles will be avoided; but if you should force me to remain, I will be the death of every one of you!” *Chang* then repeatedly answered: “I’ll show you out!—I’ll show you out!” Then *T’i* took *Chang* and set him up, and having placed him firmly upon his legs, with one hand he held him and marched out, while the rest fiercely looked on and angrily stood forward, but not daring to advance, they merely uttered aside their boasts, saying: “How dare he thus

- l. 10. *jū-tsə hā wəi, tsəi jaū t'ā k'ū, shau-pū-ti yaū kién kó kau hiá!* "Tí  
 l. 27. *chē tsə-pū-t'ing-kién, t'i-chō Chāng chí t'ang tsəu-ch'ū tá-mən chā wai,*  
 m. 13. *fāng tsāng-shəu fāng k'āi tsau:* "Fān Chāng-hiung chí-uén yū chū  
 m. 25. *hiung;* ngò, Tí Chūng-yū, jō yūi tsən tī tsai shəu, tsien-kiun wán-má  
 n. 10. *chūng, yə pū-k'ò ch'ū-jin, hō huāng sən-wū kó tsəu-si chā t'ā, shi sū*  
 n. 27. *kó Hán chí-wāng-yaū liū mǎng hū chā pín! Hō k'í yū yè!* "Tiāng-  
 o. 12. *shəu yī-kū tsau:* "Tsing-liáu!" Kīng tá-tā pū-huūi hiá-chū lai.

13. Extract from the *Shwūi-hū chuen* (1), v. native text, page 13.

- a. 1. *Shwūi-hū chuen. Huo-shuō kù Súng Chē-tsung Huāng-ti tsai-*  
 a. 14. *shí. K'í-shí Súng Jīn-tsung T'ien-tsə i yuén, Tung-king, K'ā-fung*  
 a. 28. *fū Piēn-liang, siuēn-wū-kiun piēn yūi yī-kó fəu-lāng p'ò-lō-hú tsə-ti,*  
 b. 15. *sing, Kau;* p'at-hāng, tī-qr; tsə-siau pū-ch'ing kiā-ni; chē hau ts'ə  
 b. 30. *ts'ang shi-p'ang, tsui-shí t'í-tə-hau kiō-k'í-k'íu. Kīng-sz jīn k'eu-shən*  
 c. 16. *pū-kiāu Kau-qr, kiō tū kiāu t'ā tsó, Kau-k'íu. Heu-lai fū-tə piēn*  
 d. 2. *tsiāng k'í-k'íu nà-tsə k'í-liáu mǎu p'ang t'ien tsò-lí jīn piēn-kai-tsò*  
 d. 18. *sing, Kau;* mǐng, K'íu. Ché jīn ch'ui, t'án, kō, wū, ts'ə-ts'ang, shé  
 e. 1. *p'ang, siāng-pò, wán-shuò; yī hū-huán hiō shi-shū ts'ə-fú; jō lən jīn-*  
 e. 17. *i-lí-chí-sin-hing-chūng-liang, kiō-shí pū huūi; chē tsai Tung-king,*  
 f. 2. *ch'ing-lí ch'ing-wai pāng-hiēn. Yin pāng-liáu yī-kó sūng, Tí-wōng*  
 f. 16. *yuēn-wai qr-tsə, shí-ts'ien. Mēi-jí sən-wà liàng-shé, fūng-huò-sū-*  
 g. 1. *yū; p'í t'ā fú-tsīn K'ā-fung fū-lí kau-liáu yī-chí wōn-chuōng fū-yūn*  
 g. 18. *pà Kau-k'íu tuán-liáu qr-shí kiuen chāng shí p'et ch'ū-kiāi fā-fāng*  
 h. 3. *Tung-king, ch'ing-lí jīn-mén pū hū-yūng t'ā tsai kiā sū-shí. Kau-k'íu*  
 h. 19. *wū-t'au nāt-hō, chē-tə lai Huat-si Lín-huoi cheu t'əu-pən yī-kó k'āi*  
 i. 6. *tū-fāng tī hiēn Hán Liū Tá-lāng, mǐng-huán Liū Shí-kiuen. T'ā*  
 i. 20. *pīng-sāng chuēn hau si k'ē yāng hiēn-jīn chāu nā ts'fāng yū ká lai*  
 j. 6. *Hán-tsə. Kau-k'íu t'əu ts'ə-tə Liū Tá-lāng kiā yī-chú sən-niēn.*

*Liáu-piáu* (10. f. 10) and *yāng-mú* (10. f. 14), 'a slight mark of respect,' seem to be the formal expressions for these notions. They are united in one expression in 8. d. 21—26, and are in both places thrown into the position of an attribute; and, though the form of the sentence cannot be preserved, the force of it will be easily seen in each case.

*Hau ying tsūn jīn-wū!* (10. j. 21) is a combination of irony and contempt. *Chō* in the description of Mr. Chāng (11. b. 25; c. 2; and c. 9) is the proper auxiliary verb (cf. Art. 197 of Part I) to form the past tense or past participle; it is, however, frequently used where, in some languages, no past tense would be employed, but only the 'historical' present. The above passages may be translated by *having*, or *being* so and so, as in an absolute clause.

*Shwūi-hū chuen* (13. a. 1—3). The student may refer to page 17 of the Introduction to the Chrestomathy for a few notes on this work. The title of it does not clearly indicate the nature of its contents, which are of a very varied character; but it conveys an allusion to a story in the *Shi-king*, where a certain ancient prince is said to have escaped with some of his loyal followers from a horde of Tartars. The events narrated in this novel are so far similar to his adventures in, that they treat of the troubles which arose out of the wars which happened in China at the end of the *Sung* dynasty (A. D. 1281). (Cf. *Basin, Le Siècle des Youén*, p. 111.) The style of this work is peculiar, and cannot be deemed a good specimen for imitation. The construction of the sentences however, and the use of appropriate par-

to act violently? but let him go, we shall soon see his loftiness brought down!” *Ti* only made as though he heard them not, but keeping fast hold of *Chang* he walked with him out at the front door; then, having loosed his grasp of him, he said: “I will trouble you, Mr. *Chang*, to return and tell your friends, that, with an inch of steel in my hand, I, *Ti Chung-yü*, even though amidst troops of cavalry, would not permit any one to stop my exit,—how much less likely is it that three or four drunken and profligate rascals, with the help of a dozen fellows, should beard the tiger in his fury! What a piece of folly!” So saying, he raised his hands, ceremoniously bowed, and then strode homewards.

*Translation of the Extract from the Shwü-hü chüén (1), v. native text, page 13.*

#### History of the River's banks, or Stories of Banditti.

It said that in the time of the Emperor *Chê-tsung* of the ancient *Sung* dynasty, at a period remote from the days of his celestial majesty *Jin-tsung*, there lived in the eastern capital, *Kai-fung fu* in the *Pien-liang* garrison, a dissipated youth belonging to a decayed family, of the name of *Kau*. He was the second son, and consequently he had not for himself any of the family fortune, but he was clever in the use of the spear and the cudgel, and very expert at kicking the foot-ball. The men of the metropolis did not call him *Kau-ur* (his proper name), but, with freedom of speech, they all called him *Kau-k'iu* ('foot-ball'), hence we see the cause of this character *kiu* ('ball') being attached to this man's name; so that it was changed thus: surname *Kau*, name *K'iu*. This man could play on wind instruments and stringed instruments; he could sing and dance, fence and cudgel, and was fond of trifling amusements; he had\* also studied in a desultory manner the *Shi-king*, the *Shu-king*, and both prose and poetry; but as for deeds of kindness, justice, propriety, prudence, and fidelity, he knew just nothing about them. He merely spent his time within and without the city, aiding idlers in their pursuits; and he formed a connection in this way with the son of an officer of superior rank, named *Wang*, and helped him to spend his money. Every day brought with it a round of dissipation. But *Wang's* father wrote an accusation against him to the chief magistrate of the capital, and *Kau-k'iu* was sentenced to twenty strokes on the back, and, besides that, to go into exile. All the inhabitants of the metropolis were forbidden to receive him into their houses to board or to lodge. *Kau-k'iu* having no other resource, just proceeded to *Hwai-si*; and having come to *Lin-hwai chow*, he repaired at once to a certain vagabond Chinaman, *Liu Ta-lang*, who had opened a gambling-house, and went by the name of *Liu Shi-kiuen*. He took pleasure in receiving and feeding all idle loungers; and had also invited, from all sides, the Chinamen engaged in the dykes and drains. *Kau-k'iu* found a home in *Liu Ta-lang's* family, where he remained three years.

---

\* Cf. *Prémare's Notitia Linguae Sinicae*, p. 140.

- j. 21. *Heu-lai Chê-tsung T'ien-tsè, yin pài Nân-kiaü kàn-tê fúng tiad*  
 k. 5. *yü shên fáng kwân yin tá shé t'ien-hiá; nà Kaü-k'iu tsai Lín-hwai*  
 k. 20. *Cheü, yin tē-liáu shé-yü tsü-fàn, sè-liáng yaü hwüt Tung-king. Ché*  
 l. 5. *Liú Shí-kiuên kiô hô Tung-king ch'ing-lí Kín-liáng k'iaü-hiá k'iaü*  
 l. 20. *yô-pú-ti, Tung Tsüang-sé shí tsin-si sè-liáu yí-fung-shü-chá sheu-shí*  
 m. 7. *sè jîn-sé p'wân-ch'ien tsí fã Kaü-k'iu hwüt Tung-king t'eu-pên Tung*  
 m. 22. *Tsüang-sé kiá kwô-hwô. Täng-shí Kaü-k'iu ts'z-liáu Liú Tá-lóng pèi*  
 n. 7. *sháng p'au ò, lì-liáu Lín-hwai cheü ò-lí hwüt-tau Tung-king k'ing-lai*  
 n. 23. *Kín-liáng k'iaü-hiá Tung-säng yô-kiá, hiá-liáu ché-fung-shü. Tung*  
 o. 7. *Tsüang-sé yí-kiên Kaü-k'iu k'án-liáu Liú Shí-kiuên lai-shü, tsé-t'ò-lí*  
 o. 23. *sín-sé tau: "Ché Kaü-k'iu ngò kiá jú-hô gân-chô-tê t'á?"*

14. Extract from the *Shwui-hü chuen* (2), v. native text, page 14.

- a. 7. *Jô-shí kô chí-ch'ing lau-shí t'í jîn, k'ò-à yung t'á tsai kiá ch'ü-jí, yé*  
 a. 25. *kiaü hat-qr-mên hió sié hau; t'á kiô-shí kô päng-hiën t'í p'ò-lò-hú, mú*  
 b. 13. *sín-hing t'í jîn; yí-tsüé täng-ts'ü yüü kwô-fàn-lai, p'í-tuân-p'ái t'í jîn,*  
 b. 30. *kiú-sing p'í-p'ü-k'ang kai. Jô liú chú tsai kiá-chung, tau-yé-tê hat-qr-*  
 c. 17. *mên p'ü-hiô hau-liáu, tai p'ü-sheu liú t'á yüü p'í-p'ü-kwô Liú Tá-lóng*  
 d. 4. *miên-p'í." Täng-shí ché-tê k'iuên tsüé hwân-t'ien-hí-tí siäng-liú tsai kiá*  
 d. 20. *sü-hí; mē-jí tsüé-shí, kwân tai chú-liáu shí sú jí, T'äng Tsüang-sé sè-*  
 e. 7. *liáng-ch'ü yí-kó-lú sú-tsüang ch'ü yí-t'au t'í-fü, sè-liáu yí-fung shü-*  
 e. 24. *kiên, tui Kaü-k'iu shwô-tau: "Siau-jîn kiá-hiá, 'yung-hô chí kwang,*  
 f. 8. *chau jîn p'ü liang,' k'ung heü wá-liáu tsü-hiá ngò chuen tsien tsü-hiá*  
 f. 23. *yü Siau-sü Hió-sé, chú; kiü-heü yé tē-kó ch'ü-shên. Tsü-hiá t-nüi*  
 g. 10. *jú-hô?" Kaü-k'iu tá-hí, sié-liáu Tung Tsüang-sé. Tung Tsüang-sé*  
 g. 24. *shí kô-jîn tsüang-chô shü-kiên yin-ling Kaü-k'iu k'ing-tau Hió-sé fù-*  
 h. 10. *nüi. Mên-lí chuen p'au Siau-sü Hió-sé. Ch'ü-lai kiên-liáu Kaü-k'iu*  
 h. 25. *k'án-liáu shü, chí-tau Kaü-k'iu yuên-lai shí päng-hiën fò-lóng t'í jîn,*  
 i. 11. *sín-hiá siäng-tau: "Ngò ché-tí jú-hô gân-chô-tê t'á?—p'ü-jú tsó kô jîn-*  
 i. 29. *ts'ing,—tsien t'á kú fù-mà Wang Tsín-liú fù-lí, tsó kô-tsín sùt-jîn;*  
 j. 15. *tü hwân t'á tsó Siau-wang Tú T'au-wei t'á piên hì-hwân ché-yáng-tí*  
 k. 1. *jîn." Täng-shí hwüt-liáu Tung Tsüang-sé shü-chá liú Kaü-k'iu tsai*

ticles, as marks of the sequence of clauses, are good and worthy of the student's observation: (cf. p. 14. a. and b.) He should also notice the frequent union of two syllables, of like signification, to make one word, even among the particles: (cf. 13. c. 27; 14. b. 17; 14. l. 17; and often.)

*Pien-liang* (13. a. 29) was the ancient name of *Kai-fung fù*.

*Jîn-t'í-chí-sín* (13. e. 16—20), 'kindness, justice, propriety, prudence, and fidelity,' are the cardinal virtues among the Chinese.

*Yüên-wai* (13. f. 16) is the title of an officer of the fifth rank.

The advanced student will observe that many phrases in the *Shwui-hü* differ from those in use at present: (cf. *shí-ts'ien* 13. f. 20.) The use of *pèi* or *p'í* (13. g. 2) to make a passive form of the verb is not unfrequent: (cf. 14. b. 25.)

The expression *sân-wá liàng-shé* (13. f. 24) cannot be literally translated so as to convey the sense, which is a sort of euphemism for a dissolute way of life. The following phrase *fäng-hwá-sü-h yüh* (13. f. 28) has also a similar signification, for the words 'wind, flower,

After a time his celestial majesty, *Chê-tsung*, when he worshipped in *Nan-kiau*, being moved with gratitude for the propitious winds and the genial rain, then extended his favour, and sent a general pardon throughout the empire. Our *Kau-k'iu*, in *Lin-hwai cheu*, took advantage of the amnesty, and contemplated returning to the capital. Now this *Liu Shi-kiuen* had, in the metropolitan city of *Tung-king*, at the foot of the *Kin-liang* ('Golden-beam') bridge, keeping an apothecary's shop, a relative named *Tung Tsiang-sz*. So, having written a letter of introduction, he collected a few things, with some money for the journey, and presented them to *Kau-k'iu*, bidding him on his return to *Tung-king* to seek a home in the family of *Tung Tsiang-sz*. Then *Kau-k'iu*, having taken leave of *Liu Ta-lang* and shouldered his bundle, departed from *Lin-hwai cheu*, and by easy stages returned to *Tung-king*. He drew near to the foot of the *Kin-liang* bridge, and when he had arrived at the apothecary's shop belonging to *Tung*, he presented his letter of introduction to *Tung Tsiang-sz*. Directly *Tung* saw *Kau-k'iu* and had glanced over *Liu Shi-kiuen's* letter, he thought within himself, saying: "How can I receive this *Kau-k'iu* into my family?"

*Translation of the Extract from the Shwüè-hü chüén (2), v. native text, page 14.*

If indeed he were an honest man and sincere in purpose, he might be useful in going in and out of the house, and also in teaching the children some good things; but the fact is, he has been an associate of idlers, he is of a bankrupt house, and a man of no principle;—and besides, those who have been offenders, and have been cut off from society, certainly will not change their former dispositions. If he remain in my family, he will subvert the good principles of my children, and teach them nothing good; and if I do not treat him civilly and keep him, it will be about equal to brushing the skin off my friend *Liu Ta-lang's* face." Then he just considered within himself, and, by way of pleasing both parties, he received *Kau-k'iu* into his family to take up his abode, daily gave him wine and food, and treated him well for a fortnight. At last *Tung Tsiang-sz* meditated a way out of this awkward business; he took out a new suit of clothes; and, having written a letter, he addressed himself to *Kau-k'iu*, saying: "My poor family, like the light of the glow-worm's fire, cannot make any body illustrious; and I am afraid that bye and bye it will be injurious to you, Sir. But I will recommend you, Sir, to Dr. *Siau-su*, and after a time you will obtain promotion. What do you think of this, Sir?" *Kau-k'iu* was much pleased, and thanked *Tung Tsiang-sz*. The latter then sent a messenger to take the letter and to direct *Kau-k'iu* to the Doctor's mansion. The porter announced his arrival to Dr. *Siau-su*, who came forth to see him. But when he had read the letter, and knew that *Kau-k'iu* was originally an idle vagabond, he communed with himself, thus: "How shall I manage in treating this man?—but it will be best to appear friendly, and I can recommend him to go to the palace of the Emperor's son-in-law *Wang Tein-hü*, to be a private attendant on the Governor *Siau-wang*;—he is fond of such men." He then replied to *Tung Tsiang-sz's* letter, and kept

- k. 15. *fù-lì chú-liàu yì-yé. T's'z-jì siè-liàu yì-fùng shū ch'ing, shí kién kân*  
 l. 2. *jîn, sùng Kau-k'ia k'ú nà Siàu-wáng Tū T'ái-wei chú. Ché T'ái-wei*  
 l. 17. *nai-shé, Chè-tsung Hoàng-tí mǎ-fū, Shên-tsung Hoàng-tí tì fù-mà.*  
 m. 17. *T'ái hì-gai fùng-liá jîn-wù, ching yung ché-yóng tì jîn; yì-kién Siàu-*  
 m. 18. *sū Hì-sé chài-jîn ch'í shū, sùng ché Kau-k'ia lai, p'ai kién-liàu, pién-*  
 n. 4. *hì, sūi tsí siè huwì-shū, shou-liá Kau-k'ia tsai fù-núi tsó kó tsin-sūi.*  
 n. 21. *Ts'z-tsé Kau-k'ia tsau-tsí tsai Wáng Tū-wei fù-chung ch'ü-jí jà t'ang*  
 o. 7. *kiá-jîn yì-pân; Ts'z-kù tsau jí yuèn jí sū jí ts'in jí kín. Hwù yì-jí*  
 o. 25. *Siàu-wáng, Tū T'ái-wei, k'ing-*

15. Extract from the *Shwui-hu chuen* (3), v. native text, page 15.

- a. 1. *tán sùng-shin fân-fū fù-chung an-p'ái yèn-yén chuen tsung siàu-kiá*  
 a. 16. *Twân-wáng. Ché Twân-wáng nai-shí Shên-tsung T'ien-tsé tí shí-yí*  
 a. 30. *tsé, Chè-tsung Hoàng-tí yú tí, kién chàng tưng kiá, p'ái hau kiú tá-*  
 b. 15. *wáng; shí kó tsung-ming tsuin-siàu jîn-wù, fèu-lóng tsé-tí mên fùng-*  
 b. 30. *pâng-hièn chí sè, wá yì-pân pū-hiàu, wá yì-pân pū-hwù, k'ing wá yì-*  
 c. 17. *pân pū-gai, jū kîn-kîn shū-hwá wá-sò-pū-t'ung; tì-k'ia, tà-tán, pín-*  
 d. 4. *chú t'iaù-sé; ch'ü, tán, kó wù, tsé pū-pi-shwó. Táng-jí Wáng Tū-wei*  
 d. 21. *fù-chung, hwat pí yèn-yén, shwüi lí k'ü-pí tsung Twân-wáng kú-chung*  
 e. 6. *tsó-tung, T'ái-wei lüi-sí siàng-p'ei; tsü tsin sú-péi, shí-kung liàng*  
 e. 21. *t'ái, nà Twân-wáng k'í-shin tsung-shéu, gàu-lai shū-yuèn-lí; shau-tí*  
 f. 6. *màng-kién shū-kiá-sháng yí tsü q'í-yáng ch'í yú nién ch'ing. Chín-chí*  
 f. 22. *s'z-tsé k'í-shí tsó-tí hau si-k'iaù ling-láng. Twân-wáng nà-k'í s'z-tsé*  
 g. 9. *pū-lò shéu, k'au-liàu yì-hwù, tsau hau. Wáng Tū-wei, kién Twân-*  
 g. 23. *wáng sîn-gai, pién shwó-tsau: "Tsai yüi yí-kó yü-láng p'í-kiá, yé-shí*  
 h. 9. *ché-kó tsiang-jîn yì-shéu tsó-tí, kiú pū tsai shéu-t'ei; m'ing-jí ts'ü hai*  
 h. 26. *yí-p'ing siàng-sung." Twân-wáng tá-hà tsau sîn sié heü-tí siàng, nà p'í-*  
 i. 12. *kā p'í-shí k'ang-miaú. Wáng Tū-wei tsau: "M'ing-jí ts'ü-ch'ü-lai,*  
 i. 26. *sung chí kung-chung, pién kién Twân-wáng yü sié-liàu liàng-kó, t-*  
 j. 10. *k'ü jì s'í yèn-yén chí m'ü tsin tsüi fang sän.—Twân-wáng siàng-pí,*  
 j. 26. *hwüi kung k'ü-liàu. Ts'z-jí Siàu wáng, Tū T'ái-wei ts'ü-ch'ü yü-láng*  
 k. 11. *p'í-kiá hó liàng-kó chín-chí yü s'z-tsé, ch'ó yí-kó siàu-kín h'ò-tsé ching-*  
 k. 29. *liàu, yung hwóng-lò p'au-fū p'au-liàu, sié-liàu yì-fùng shū ch'ing, kiú*  
 l. 14. *shí Kau-k'ia sùng-k'ü. Kau-k'ia ling-liàu Wáng Tū-wei kiün-chí*  
 l. 28. *tsiang-ch'ò liàng-pán yü wán k'í hwat-chung, ch'üi-ch'ò shū-ch'ing, k'ing-*  
 m. 12. *t'ei Twân-wáng kung-chung, lai; pà mên-hwón-lí chuen-pau yü*

snow, moon,' frequently imply 'an unrestrained and gay career of pleasure.' (cf. 14. m. 5. and *fèu-lóng* 13. b. 8.)

The word *Hán* \* is frequently used to designate 'natives of China,' especially such as are brave and manly, like the word *Briton* in English: (v. 13. j. 6; also 12. a. 12.)

*Fù-mà* (14. j. 3), 'son-in-law of the Emperor,' appears to be used as a title (cf. 15. n. 24), and *tsiè-fū* (16. g. 28), 'brother-in-law,' is used in speaking of another in the third person, for *mí-fū* (14. l. 23).

\* 漢



*Kau-k'iu* in his mansion for the night. The next day he wrote a letter of recommendation, and sent it by a business-like man, who was to guide *Kau-k'iu* to the mansion of the Governor *Siau-wang*. Now this Governor was a brother-in-law of the Emperor *Chê-tsung*, and a son-in-law of the Emperor *Shin-tsung*. He was very fond of elegant and rare men and things, and especially of such men as our hero. As soon as he saw Dr. *Siau-su's* messenger bearing a letter and introducing *Kau-k'iu*, he bowed and was pleased; and, having at once written a reply, he received *Kau-k'iu* into his house as a private attendant. From this time forward *Kau-k'iu* was treated in Governor *Wang's* mansion just as one of the family, and thus on all occasions. Now it happened one day that the Governor,

*Translation of the Extract from the Shwü-hü chüên* (3), v. native text, page 15.

*Siau-wang*, on the occasion of the celebration of his birthday, ordered a banquet to be held in his palace, to which he invited his brother-in-law Prince *Twan*. Now this Prince *Twan* was the eleventh son of the Emperor *Shin-tsung*, and the younger brother of the Emperor *Chê-tsung*. He had the supervision of the chariots and the standards of war, and he had the title of viceroy. He was a man of intelligence and beauty, and was acquainted with all the gay and frivolous people of the age; for gallantry and knowledge of the world there was not his equal. Music, literature, and painting he had thoroughly investigated, and it would be superfluous to speak of his powers in kicking foot-ball, playing on the guitar, carving, netting, and the other accomplishments of singing and dancing. On the appointed day, the Prince came to the Governor's mansion, where the feast was prepared. Having invited Prince *Twan* to be seated at the head of the table, the Governor took the opposite end. After the wine had gone round several times, and ten courses had been despatched, Prince *Twan*, on rising to wash his hands, accidentally entered the library, where, on a book-shelf, suddenly his eye fell on a pair of beautifully wrought ornaments representing two lions in jade-stone. They were ornamental paper-weights, very finely carved and curiously figured with dragons. Prince *Twan* took up the lions and held them in his hands, while he kept admiring them, and saying that they were beautiful. *Siau-wang*, seeing that Prince *Twan* liked them, (then) said: "I have besides these a pencil-stand in jade wrought with dragons, made by the same artist, but just now it is not at hand; to-morrow I will find it and send it to the palace." Then Prince *Twan* having thanked him again and again, they returned to the saloon, where, after further carousal, they separated.—*Twan-wang* having departed, returned to his palace, and on the following day *Siau-wang*, the Governor, took out the ornamented pencil-stand of jade and, with the two paper-weights,—the lions of the same material,—he placed it in a little silver casket; and, having wrapped the whole in a handkerchief of yellow gauze, he wrote a letter, which he sent *Kau-k'iu* to deliver. *Kau-k'iu*, having received Governor *Wang's* orders, took the two precious articles, and with the letter in his pocket, he proceeded to Prince *Twan's* palace. The keeper of the gate announced him to the steward, who

- m. 30. *yuén-kūng*. *Mū tō-shi yuén-kūng ch'ū lai, wq̄n*: “*Nī-shī nà-kó fū-n. 10. lī lai-tī jīn?*” *Kau-k'ia, shī-lī-pá, tē-tau*: “*Siaū-jīn shī Wáng fū-mà n. 27. fū-chūng, tē-sūng yū-wán-k'í lai-tsin tá-wáng.*” *Yuén-kūng tau*:  
o. 11. “*Tiēn-hiá tsai t'ing-sān-lī hō siaū huóng-mq̄n tī-k'í-k'ia, nī tsé kwó-o. 27. k'ia.*” *Kau-k'ia tau*:

16. Extract from the *Shwüi-hü chuen* (4), v. native text, page 16.

- a. 1. “*Siāng-fān yīn-tsin.*” *Yuén-kūng yīn-tau t'ing-mq̄n. Kau-k'ia a. 13. k'án-shī kiē Twān-wáng t'ē tai juēn-shā T'ang-kin, shīn ch'uen a. 26. tsē-siū-láng p'au-yau hī wq̄n-wū chūwáng súi t'au pā siū-láng p'au b. 11. ts'ien k'ín í chā k'í ch'ui tsai tiaū-qr piēn, tsū ch'uen yī-chūwáng kán-b. 26. k'ín-siēn fī-fūng hiū, sān-wū kó siaū huóng-mq̄n siāng-puōn chō-c. 10. ts'ū k'í-k'ia. Kau-k'ia pū-kán kwó k'ú ch'ung-chūwáng, lī tsai c. 24. ts'ang-jīn pēi-heū sē-heū yē. Sē Kau-k'ia hō-tāng fū-tōi shī yīn tau d. 11. lai nà-kó k'í-k'ia t'ang t'í k'í-lai, Twān-wáng tsī-kó pū-chō hiāng-jīn d. 28. ts'ang lī chí kwán tau Kau-k'ia shīn-piēn. Nā Kau-k'ia kiē k'í-e. 12. k'ia lai, yē-shī yī-shī tī tàn liāng shī-kó yuēn-yāng kwai tī huōn e. 28. Twān-wáng. Twān-wáng kiēn-liāu tá-hī, piēn wq̄n tau: “*Nī shī f. 11. shīn jīn?*” *Kau-k'ia hiāng-ts'ien kwai-hiá tau*: “*Siaū-tī shī Wáng f. 24. Tū-wei tsin-sūi, sheū tūng-jīn shī líng tsī sūng liāng pān yū-wán-k'í g. 10. lai tsin-hiēn Tá-wáng, yūi shū-ch'ing tsai-tsē pāi-sháng.*” *Twān-g. 23. wáng t'ing-pá, siaū tau*: “*Tsiē-fū chīn jū-tsē kwó-sīn.*” *Kau-k'ia h. 7. ts'ū ch'ū shū-ch'ing tsin-sháng. Twān-wáng k'āi hō-tsē k'án-liāu h. 20. wán-k'í tū tī yū t'ang heū kwān sheū-liāu k'ú. Nā Twān-wáng tsē i. 5. pū-lī yū-k'í hiá-lō; kiō sīn-wq̄n Kau-k'ia tau*: “*Nī chē-lai huōi-tī i. 22. k'í-k'ia, nī huān tsó shīn-mó?*” *Kau-k'ia yūi sheū kwai-feū tau*:  
j. 6. “*Siaū-tī kiaū-tsó Kau-k'ia, hā wán tī tē k'í pāi.*” *Twān-wáng tau*:  
j. 21. “*Hau! nī piēn hiá ch'ang lai tī yī-hiāng shuō.*” *Kau-k'ia pāi tau*:  
k. 5. “*Siaū-tī shī hō tàng-yāng jīn, kán yū gān Wáng hiá kiā!*” *Twān-k. 19. wáng tau*: “*Chē-shī ts'í-yān shē mīng wei t'ien-hiá yuēn, tán t'í hō l. 4. shāng?*” *Kau-k'ia tsai pāi tau*: “*Tsāng kán!*” *Sān-hwūi wū-ts'ē kwó-l. 17. ts'ē. Twān-wáng tīng-yau t'ā t'í. Kau-k'ia chē-tē k'ēu-t'ē sié-tsūi, m. 2. kiai-si-hiá, ts'āi t'í k'í-k'ia. Twān-wáng hō ts'āi; Kau-k'ia chē-tē pā m. 19. pīng-sāng pān-sē tū shī ch'ū-lai fūng-fūng. Twān-wáng nā shīn-fān n. 4. mū-yāng, chē k'í-k'ia yī-sē p'iaū-kiaū niēn tsai shīn-shāng tī Twān-o. 19. wáng tá-hī nā-lī k'q̄ng fāng Kau-k'ia huōi fū k'ú, tsūi liá tsai k'ung-o. 5. chūng kwó yī-yē. Ts'ē-jī p'āi kó yēn-hwūi chuen ts'ing Wáng Tū-wei o. 20. k'ung-chūng fū yēn.**

The use of *tāng*\*, for ‘that,’ is frequent, especially in the phrases *tāng-jī* ‘on that day’ and *tāng-shī* ‘at that time’: (cf. 13. m. 27; 14. k. 2; 15. d. 16.)

The accumulation of attributes and epithets for nouns is a characteristic of the style of the *Shwüi-hü*; e. g. *feū-láng p'ō-lō-hú tsé-tī* (13. b. 8—14); (cf. 13. i. 23—27; 13. l. 14—21; and *chí-ch'ing lai-shī tī jīn* 14. a. 10—15.)

soon came out and asked, “From whose mansion do you come?” *Kau-k’iu*, having paid his respects, replied: “I am from Son-in-law *Wang’s* house, and am come to present some precious articles of *vertu* to His Highness.” The steward said: “He is down in the court of the palace, kicking foot-ball with other members of the imperial family;—go over there.” *Kau-k’iu* said:

*Translation of the Extract from the Shwü-hü chüan (4), v. native text, page 16.*

“I will trouble you, Sir, to show me the way.” Then the steward showed him to the door of the court. While *Kau-k’iu* was looking on, he saw Prince *Twan*, having a turban of the *T’ang* dynasty, made of soft gauze, upon his head; he wore a nankeen vest embroidered with dragons, and adorned with streamers of fine muslin, with embroidered lappets turned down in front, but loosely adjusted on the side of his dress. On his feet were boots elegantly adorned with gold thread and the flying phoenix. Three or four members of the imperial family were assisting him to play at foot-ball, and therefore *Kau-k’iu* dared not to cross over to him, but he stood waiting behind the attendants. Now it happened that *Kau-k’iu* had some experience at foot-ball, and when the ball arose from the ground and Prince *Twan* failed to receive it well, it fell towards the crowd at the side of *Kau-k’iu*. As he saw the ball coming, in a moment he boldly gave it a magnificent kick and sent it back again to Prince *Twan*. When Prince *Twan* saw it, he was greatly pleased, and at once asked, saying: “Who are you?” *Kau-k’iu* came forward and, kneeling, said: “Your humble servant is Governor *Wang’s* private attendant, I have received some precious articles to present to Your Highness, and I have a letter also with reference to these things.” When Prince *Twan* heard this, he smiled and said: “My brother-in-law has truly great consideration for me!” *Kau-k’iu* then took out the letter and presented it, and Prince *Twan* having opened the casket and looked at the precious articles it contained, committed them unto an attendant; but before they were gone from his hand, he asked *Kau-k’iu*, saying: “You know how to kick foot-ball, what is your name?” *Kau-k’iu* again made obeisance and said: “Your humble servant is called *Kau-k’iu*, and has had some inconsiderable experience in kicking foot-ball.” Prince *Twan* replied: “Very good! Come down to the ground and have a game.” *Kau-k’iu* bowed and said: “Your humble servant is a person of no rank, how can he presume to engage with Your Serene Highness?” Prince *Twan* replied: “That is, by classifying the clouds and associating great names, to make the world harmonise, but what objection is there to your kicking?” *Kau-k’iu* again bowed and said: “How can I presume?” and after declining several times, Prince *Twan* insisted on his playing. So *Kau-k’iu* just bowed his head and asked pardon, and then, rising from his knees, he went down to the playing ground and took a few kicks. Prince *Twan* called to the people to stand back. *Kau-k’iu* only used his ordinary skill, but he displayed a refined and elegant deportment. Prince *Twan* was pleased with his manner, and requested him to stay at his palace. The next day he prepared a great feast, to which he invited Governor *Siau-wang*.

17. Extract from the *Sân-kuô chí* (1), v. native text, page 17.

- a. 2. *Sân-kuô chí*. *Tsîd-shwô Châng-jáng Twán-kwei kiê-yùng shau-tí*,  
a. 16. *kí Chín-liú Wáng, mau-yên-t'ü-hô, liên-yé pên-tseù Pí-máng shân*.  
b. 1. *Yô sán käng shí-fân, héu-miën hân shing tá kú jîn-mà, kân chí täng-*  
b. 17. *ts'ien Hô-nân Chùng-pú ch'üên-lí Mân-kung, tá hū: "Yí-tsê hiu*  
c. 1. *tsèu!" Châng-jáng kiên sê kî, súi t'êü hô ôr sê. Tí yü Chín-liú*  
c. 16. *Wáng, wí chí hū-shí, pú kân kau-shing, fú yü hô piën, huân-ts'au chí*  
d. 2. *núi. Kiün-mà sê sán k'ü kân, pú-chí Tí chí sô-tsai. Tí yü Wáng*  
d. 18. *fú-chí sê-käng, lú-shwüü yüü hiá, fú chùng kî núi, siäng-pau ôr k'ü, yüü*  
e. 5. *p'á jîn chí-kiô, t'ân-shing ts'au-màng chí chùng; Chín-liú Wáng yü:*  
e. 19. *"Tsz kiên pú-k'ô kiù-huân, sū-pí sîn huô-lú. Yü-shí ôr jîn í t' siäng-*  
f. 7. *kí, p'á shäng gán piën, muân-tí käng-kí, hê-gán chí chùng, pú-kiên*  
f. 22. *hông-lú; ching wá-nai-hô, huü yüü liú-yäng ts'ien-pê ch'ing-k'üân,*  
g. 6. *kuäng mâng chau yáu, chē tsai Tí-ts'ien fí-chuân Chín-liú Wáng*  
g. 19. *yü: "Tsz t'ien tsò ngò hiung-tí yé, súi súi ying-hô ôr hông tsien-tien*  
h. 5. *kiên-lú, hông chí wü käng, tsü t'üing pú-nang hông, shân käng piën*  
h. 19. *kiên yí-tüü. Tí yü Wáng ngó yü ts'au-tüü chí chùng. Ts'au-tüü*  
i. 4. *ts'ien-miën shí yí-sô chuäng-yuên, chuäng-chü shí yé mung liäng*  
i. 17. *hông jî, chiüü yü chuäng héu. K'ing-kiô p'í-chí ü-hú, sê hiá kuân*  
j. 2. *wóng-kiên chuäng-heü ts'au-tüü-shäng hông-kuäng ch'üing t'ien.*  
j. 13. *Huäng-mang wóng shí, kiô-shí ôr-jîn ngó yü ts'au-tüü-proân. Chuäng-*  
j. 27. *chü wón yü: "Ár shau-niën shüü-kiá chí tsè?" Tí pú-kân ying;*  
k. 11. *Chín-liú Wáng chí Tí yü: "Tsz shí täng-kín Huäng-tí; tsai Shí-*  
k. 25. *chäng-shí chí huân, t'au-nân tsai tsè; Wü nai Wáng tí, Chín-liú Wáng*  
l. 10. *yé." Chuäng-chü tá k'ing tsai pài yü: "Chín siên-chau Sz-t'ü, Tsüü-*  
l. 24. *lí chí tí, Ts'üü-ü yé. Yin kiên Shí-chäng-shí mai-kuân tsé-hiën, kú yin*  
m. 11. *yü-tsè." Súi fú Tí jî chuäng, kwei tsin tsüü-shí.—Kiô-shwô Mân-*

The appositional form of construction is more frequent in the *Shwüt-hü* than in the *Hau-k'üü*. By the appositional form we mean to denote the aggregation of clauses, beginning with verbs which have no apparent subject, but they proceed (without any connective particle being used) to explain something in the preceding clause, and on this account we have designated them *appositional*.

The *Sân-kuô chí*, or 'History of the Three Kingdoms,' has been referred to in p. 16. of Part II. Sir John Davis speaks of the same work, in his book on the Chinese, as being "the only readable Chinese Chronicle;" and he considers that it contains matter as likely to be genuine as the stories detailed in Livy. The style of this work is remarkable for its classic terseness, but it is without the adornment of particles to any great extent. A few are used; but the sequence of clauses, which are generally of four or five characters, suffice to show the connection and the mutual dependence of ideas. Absolute clauses are of frequent occurrence, and there is a general absence of pronouns and particles. Nouns and verbs form the staple material, by the different position of which the grammatical relations are expressed.

*Tsîd-shwô* (17. a. 6) is the regular phrase for the beginning of a new chapter, and *kiô-shwô* (17. m. 22) for the resumption of a subject which was previously mentioned. *Shau* (17. a. 14), 'few,' here means 'young,' the word *niën*, 'year,' being understood, or rather the *shau* being put for the full phrase *shau-niën* (17. k. 1); a part being used for the whole, which is a common rule in Chinese phraseology. This fact should be born in mind,

*Translation of the Extract from the Sān-kuō chí (1), v. native text, page 17.*

### The History of the Three Kingdoms.

The story goes on to say, that *Chang-jiang* and *Twan-kwei*, having with violence laid hands upon the young Emperor and the Prince *Chin-liu*, rushed blindly through the smoke and fire; and, under cover of the night, fled to the *Pi-mang* mountain. About the third watch, voices were heard behind them, and a great multitude of horsemen pursued them. In the fore-front was *Min-kung*, an official of the second class, from *Ho-nan*; with a loud voice he cried: “Ye obstinate rebels cease to run!” *Chang-jiang*, seeing that the crisis had arrived, immediately plunged into the river and died. The Emperor with the Prince *Chin-liu*, unconscious of the real state of things, and not daring to speak aloud, hid themselves among the tangled grass on the river’s bank. The cavalry dispersed in all directions in the pursuit, without becoming acquainted with the Emperor’s whereabouts. But the Emperor and the Prince concealed themselves until the fourth watch, when, as the dew was falling, and they felt the cravings of hunger, they embraced each other and cried; but fearing lest any one should find them out, they stifled their voices in the jungle; then Prince *Chin-liu* said: “In this place we cannot long beguile the time, we must seek for a means of saving our lives.” Thereupon, having girded up their clothes, they crawled up the side of the bank. The ground was all thick with prickly brambles, and, in the darkness, they could not see to walk on the road. Just when they had no other resource, all at once there appeared an innumerable swarm of fireflies streaming past; the light shone splendidly, and they wheeled in their flight only before the Emperor. Prince *Chin-liu* exclaimed: “This is indeed Heaven assisting us, my brother!” and forthwith they followed the fireflies’ light and proceeded until shortly after they saw the road, and travelled upon it until the fifth watch. Then being footsore and not able to proceed, and seeing on a mountain side a heap of grass, the Emperor and the Prince lay down in the midst of it. Now in the front of the heap was a farm, and the farmer was dreaming in the night that two red suns had fallen at the back of his farm. Awaking in a fright he threw on his clothes, and, issuing from the house and scanning every side of it, he saw at the back of the farm, on the heap of grass, a red light shoot upwards to the sky. In a state of trepidation he went to look, and behold, there were the two little fellows on the side of the grass heap. The farmer asked, saying: “You two youngsters, whose sons are you?” The Emperor not daring to reply, Prince *Chin-liu*, pointing to the Emperor, said: “This is the present Emperor, who, when the revolution of the ten *Chang-shi* broke out, fled, and with difficulty reached this place. I am the Prince junior, Prince *Chin-liu*.” The farmer, in alarm, bowed twice and said: “I am *Tsüi-i*, the younger brother of *Tsüi-ü*, the Minister of Instruction during the late reign. Because I saw the ten *Chang-shi* selling office and envying good men, therefore I withdrew in private to this place.” He then supported the Emperor to enter the farm, and on his knees presented wine and food.—But to return to the story:—*Min-kung*

- m. 25. *kúng kàn-sháng Twán-kwei, ná-chú wón*: “*T’iēn-tsə̀ hō-tsai?*” *Kwei*  
 n. 8. *yēn i tsai puán-lú siāng-shī, pū-chī hō wóng, kúng súi shā Twán-*  
 n. 23. *kwei, hién t’ēu yū mà hiāng-hiá, fān píng sá sán sìn-mī. Tə̀t kī kiō*  
 o. 9. *tū shīng yī-mà súi lú chūn-sín. Ngeū chī T’sū-i chōwāng; kién sheū-*  
 o. 25. *kī, wón chī. Kúng shuō tsāng-sī.*

18. Extract from the *Sān-kwo chí* (2), v. native text, page 18.

- a. 2. *T’sū-i yēn Kúng kién Tī. Kiūn-chīn t’úng-k’ū. Kúng yū:*  
 a. 14. “*Kwo pū-k’ō yī-jī wú kiūn, ts’ing Pí-hiá huón Tū.*” *T’sū-i chōwāng-*  
 a. 29. *sháng chí-yiū seú-mà yī-pī; pí yū Tī shīng. Kúng yū Chín-liá Wáng,*  
 b. 15. *kúng-shīng yī-mà, lí chōwāng qī hīng. Pū-tau sán-lī, Sā-t’ū Wáng-*  
 b. 30. *yūn, T’at-wei Yāng-piū, Tsò-kiūn Kiaú-wei,—Shēn Yū-k’iáng:*  
 c. 12. *Yū-kiūn Kiaú-wei,—Chū-ming; Heú-kiūn Kiaú-wei,—Pau-sín;*  
 c. 24. *Chūn-kiūn Kiaú-wei,—Yuén-shau; yī-hīng jīn cháng, sú-pē jīn-mà;*  
 d. 8. *tsi-chō kī-kiá, kiūn-chīn kiá-k’ū. Sién shí jīn tsāng Twán-kwei sheū-*  
 d. 23. *kī, wóng kīng-sā hau-líng líng-huón hau-mà yū Tī kī Chín-liá Wáng*  
 e. 9. *k’i-tsó. Tsū-tí huón kīng, sién shí Lū-yáng siáu-qī yaú, yū: “Tī*  
 e. 24. *fī Tī, Wáng fī Wáng; T’siēn shīng wán-k’i tsuē Pē-máng,” chí-tā*  
 f. 8. *kō yīng k’i ts’in. Kū-kiá hīng pū tau sū-lī, huó-kién tsing-k’i pí-jī*  
 f. 25. *chīn-tū chē-t’iēn, yī-chī jīn-mà tau-lā. Pē-kuān shī-sī, Tī yī tá*  
 g. 12. *kīng. Yuén-shau tsuē-mà ch’ū wón: “Hō-jīn?” Siú-k’i-yīng-lī, yī-*  
 g. 26. *tsāng fī-ch’ū, lí-shīng wón: “T’iēn-tsə̀ hō-tsai?” Tī chēn-lī pū-nāng*  
 h. 11. *yēn. Chín-liá Wáng lē-mà, hiāng-ts’iēn chí yū: “Lāi-chē hō-jīn?”*  
 h. 25. *Chō yū: “Sī-liāng Ts’-lī, Tāng-chō yē.” Chín-liá Wáng yū: “Jū*  
 i. 8. *lāi pau-kiá yē? Jū lāi kiē-kiá yē?” Chō yīng yū: “Tī-lāi pau-kiá.”*  
 i. 24. *Chín-liá yū: “Kī-lāi pau-kiá, T’iēn-tsə̀ tsai-tsə̀, hō-pū hiá-mà?” Chō*  
 j. 10. *tá kīng huóng-máng hiá-mà, pau yū tau-tsó. Chín-liá Wáng i yēn*  
 j. 25. *fū-wei Tāng-chō. Tə̀t-ts’ū-chí-chūng, píng-wá shī-yū; Chō gán kī-*  
 k. 10. *chī, i-huá fī-lī chī i. Shī jī huón kúng, kién hō t’at-heú, kī-kō*  
 k. 27. *t’úng-k’ū kién-tiēn kúng chūng pū kién liáu ch’iēn-kwo-yū-sī. Tāng-chō*

because by this rule only can many expressions be understood which defy a literal rendering.

*Liēn-yé* (17. a. 24), lit. ‘connecting night,’ i. e. ‘joining night to day,’ becomes equivalent to our adverbial expression, *day and night*. The translations of titles of officers mentioned in this work cannot, in all cases, be considered satisfactory. The changes which have taken place in the Chinese political world at different periods, and the whimsical alterations in the names of offices, present great difficulties to an English translator.

The use of *yū*<sup>a</sup> (17. c. 26; 17. m. 11) or *yū*<sup>b</sup> (17. e. 30. and h. 27) for *tsai*<sup>c</sup>, ‘in,’ and *chī*<sup>d</sup> (17. d. 1. and e. 13) for *ts’*<sup>e</sup> the genitive particle, with *dr*<sup>f</sup> as the mark of result, are peculiarities of this style, and in which it approaches that of the ancient classics.

*Hīng-lú* (17. f. 22), ‘to walk on the road,’ is an expression which would mean literally ‘to walk the road,’ but it must be explained either as we have translated it, ‘to walk on the road,’ or be understood to make a phrase, or, as it were, one word, meaning ‘to travel, to proceed on their way.’

<sup>a</sup> 於 <sup>b</sup> 于 <sup>c</sup> 在 <sup>d</sup> 之 <sup>e</sup> 的 <sup>f</sup> 而

overtook *T'wan-kwei*, seized him, and demanded where the Emperor was; *Kwei* said that he had missed him when half-way on the road, and that he did not know where he was gone. *Kung* forthwith killed *T'wan-kwei*, and hung his head from his horse's neck. Having divided his soldiers to scour the country in every direction; he himself mounted a horse, and, following the road, went alone in quest of the fugitives. By chance he arrived at *Tsü-i's* farm. *I*, seeing the head, asked about it. *Kung* having explained minutely,

*Translation of the Extract from the Sän-koö chí (2), v. native text, page 18.*

*Tsü-i* led *Kung* to see the Emperor. The Sovereign and his minister both wept bitterly, and *Kung* said: “The state cannot exist for a day without a prince, I beseech Your Majesty to return to the Capital.” Now at *Tsü-i's* farm there happened to be a lean steed, which they prepared for the Emperor to mount, while *Kung* and Prince *Chin-liu* rode together upon one horse, and so left the farm and proceeded on their way. Before they had gone three short miles, the Minister of Instruction—*Wang-yin*, the Governor *Yang-pian*, the Governor of the Army of the left—*Chun Yü-kiung*, the Governor of the Army of the right—*Chau-mang*, the Governor of the Army of the rear—*Pau-sin*, and the Governor of the Army of the centre—*Yuen-shau*, with a crowd of people and several hundreds of horsemen, met them. The Prince and ministers all wept aloud; and, as a first measure, they sent a man with *T'wan-kwei's* head to the city, with the command to expose it, and to bring back some suitable horses for the Emperor and the Prince to ride. These being obtained, they proceeded towards the city; and thus was fulfilled the former saying of the children in *Lö-yang*: “The Emperor is not an emperor, the Prince is not a prince; a thousand chariots and a myriad of riders come in from *Pi-mang*.” Before the cavalcade had moved many furlongs, what should they see but a host of people coming to meet them, with banners and flags darkening the sky and marching amid clouds of dust. The officers changed colour, and the Emperor also was exceedingly afraid; but *Yuen-shau*, putting spurs to his horse, rode forward and demanded who they were. From behind an embroidered flag, a general burst forth and, with a stern voice, asked: “Where is the Emperor?” The Emperor himself, in a state of fear, dared not to speak; but *Chin-liu* urged his horse forward and shouted: “Who is this coming?” *Chö* replied: “The overseer of *Si-liang*,—*Tung-chö*.” *Chin-liu* said: “Do you come to protect His Majesty, or do you come to seize His Majesty?” *Chö* replied: “I am come on purpose to protect him.” *Chin-liu* then said: “As you are come for that purpose, why do you not descend from your horse?” *Chö*, in a state of fear and confusion, at once dismounted, and made the salute on the left side of the road. Prince *Chin-liu* then spoke to him and calmed his troubled mind. *Tung-chö* from first to last carefully observed his expressions, and secretly cherished the desire of making him Emperor. On the same day they returned to the palace and saw the dowager Empress, and they all wept together; but on searching in the palace they were unable to find the imperial seal. *Tung-chö* had stationed

- l. 11. *tūn-ping ch'ing-wai*; *mēi-jī tai tī-kiā mā-kiūn, jī-ching huōng hīng*  
 l. 26. *kiāi-shā*; *pē-sing huōng-huōng pū-gān*. *Chō ch'ū-jī k'ung-t'ing liō wā*  
 m. 11. *kī-tán*; *Heū-kiūn Kiaū-wei, Pau-sin, lai kién Yuen-shau yēn*: “*T'ung-*  
 m. 25. *chō pī-yiū i-sin sū ch'ū chī*.” *Shau yū*: “*Chau-t'ing sin-t'ing, wē-k'ō*  
 n. 11. *k'ing-t'ung*.” *Pau-sin kién Wang-yūn, yī yēn k'ī-sē*. *Yūn yū*: “*Tiē*  
 n. 25. *yūng shāng-ì*.” *Sin-t'at yūn p'ān-pū kiūn-ping t'ēu Tai shān k'ū-liāu*.  
 o. 10. *T'ung-chō ch'au-yiū Hō-tsin hiūng-tī pū-hiā chī ping, tsin kwēi chōng-*  
 o. 25. *ū*; *sē wei Lī-jū yū*:

19. Extract from the *Sān-kuō chí* (3), v. native text, page 19.

- a. 1. “*Wā yū fī Tī, lī Chín-liū Wáng hō-jū?*” *Lī-jū yū*: “*K'īn-chau-t'ing*  
 a. 17. *wā chū, pū-tsūi tsē-shē hēng-sē, chī tsē yiū piēn ì*. *Lai-jī yū Wān-ming*  
 b. 5. *yüēn-chūng, chau-tsē pē-kuōn, yū ì fī-lī*; *yiū pū ts'ung chē, chān-chī*;  
 b. 21. *tsē wei-k'iden chī hēng, ching tsai k'īn-jī*.” *Chō hī*; *tsē-jī tá p'at yēn*  
 c. 7. *huūi piēn, tsēng k'ung-hiāng*. *K'ung-hiāng kiāi k'ū T'ung-chō, shūi*  
 c. 19. *kān pū-tsūi*. *Chō tsāi pē-kuōn tsū-liāu, jēn-heū sū-sū tsū yuēn-mān hiā-*  
 d. 6. *mā, tsāi-kién jī sē*; *tsūi hēng sū siān, Chō kiāi t'ing tsūi chī yō*; *nai*  
 d. 22. *lī-shing yū*: “*Wā yiū yī yēn, chūng kwān tsing-t'ing*.” *Chūng-kwān*  
 e. 5. *tsē q̄r*. *Chō yū*: “*T'ien-tsē wei wān-mān chī chū, wā wei-ī, pū k'ō-ì*  
 e. 22. *fūng tsūng-miāu shā-tsē*; *k'īn Shāng nō-yō, pū-jū Chín-liū Wáng,*  
 f. 6. *ts'ung-ming hau-hiō, k'ō ching tá-wei, wā yū fī Tī lī Chín-liū Wáng;*  
 f. 22. *chū tá-chān ì-wei hō-jū?*” *Chū kwān t'ing pá, pū kān ch'ū shing*.  
 g. 7. *Tsō-shāng yī jīn t'ūi gān, chī ch'ō lī yū yēn-ts'ien, tá hū*: “*Pū k'ō!*  
 g. 21. *pū k'ō! Jū-shī hō-jūn? kān fū tá-yū?*” *T'ien-tsē nai siēn-Tī tsē tsē,*  
 h. 10. *ts'ū wā kwō-shī*; *hō tsē wāng-t fī-lī*; *jū yū wei tsuān-nī yē?*” *Chō shī*  
 h. 28. *chī, nai K'ing-cheū Ts'z-lī, T'ing-yuēn yē*. *Chō ná ch'ī-yū*: “*Shen-*  
 i. 12. *ngō-chē, sāng! nī-ngō-chē, sē!*” *Sūi chí pēi-kién yū chān T'ing-yuēn*.  
 i. 27. *Shī Lī-jū kién T'ing-yuēn pēi-heū yī-jīn sāng-tē k'ī-yū hiēn-gāng,*

Very few connective particles are employed in the *Sān-kuō chí* for ‘and’ or ‘with’: *yū*<sup>a</sup> is found (17. h. 24); but *kiūn-chin* (18. a. 8. and d. 12), ‘prince and ministers,’ is without any connective: (cf. Part I. Art. 288. 1.)

*Pū-k'ō yī-jī wā* (18. a. 15), ‘cannot be a day without,’ seems to be a usual form for the expression ‘cannot dispense with.’ Compare Chrest. 7. a. 10. *et seq.* and *pū-k'ō pū-kwēi* ‘you could not dispense with meeting him.’ (10. d. 6.)

Observe that *chī*<sup>b</sup> (18. a. 30) is used for, and is similar in meaning to, *chē*<sup>c</sup> ‘only.’ *Yā*<sup>d</sup> (18. b. 7) is used appropriately for the datival sign ‘for,’ as it means ‘to give;’ but a little farther on it is used for the conjunction ‘and’ (=to *cum* ‘with’), and it is followed by *k'ung*<sup>e</sup> (18. b. 15).

*KY*<sup>f</sup> (18. e. 5) is here used for ‘and,’ because perhaps *yū* had been just employed for the mark of the dative; and its original meaning suits better the idea of union than does that of *yū* (‘to give’).

*Lō-yāng* (18. e. 17) was an ancient city in *Hō-nan*, the capital of the ancient monarch *Pū-hī*.

<sup>a</sup> 與    <sup>b</sup> 止    <sup>c</sup> 只    <sup>d</sup> 與    <sup>e</sup> 共    <sup>f</sup> 及



his troops outside the city, and every day he marched them, heavily armed, through the streets and markets, causing terror and uneasiness to the people. Moreover, he went in and out of the palace without the least concern. This being the state of things, Governor *Pau-sin*, of the Army of the rear, paid a visit to *Yuen-shau*, and said: “*Tung-chō* certainly has some sinister intention which he will carry out if he is not removed.” *Shau* replied: “The government is but recently become settled, we must not lightly make any move.” *Pau-sin* went to see *Wang-yün*, and repeated his thoughts on the state of affairs. *Yün* replied: “It will be well to hold a consultation about it.” *Sin* himself thereupon led away the troops under his command to the *Tai* mountain, where they encamped. *Tung-chō* induced also the soldiers under the command of *Ho-tein* and his brother to give him their support, and he then privately consulted *Li-ju* and said:

*Translation of the Extract from the Sān-kuō chí (3), v. native text, page 19.*

“I wish to depose the Emperor and to set up *Chin-liu*, the Prince. What think you?” *Li-ju* said: “The present government is without a head, surely this is the time to execute the business, if you delay there will be some change of course. To-morrow, in the *Wān-ming* garden, summon all the high officials, and proclaim your intention of causing an abdication; those who do not follow you, kill; for the present is just the time to impress them with your power.” *Chō* was gratified, and the next day he had a great feast, and an assembly, and invited the nobles and gentry. Now the nobles and gentry all feared *Tung-chō*; who then might dare to stay away? *Chō* waited for all the officials to arrive, and afterwards leisurely riding up to the gate, he dismounted, and came in to dinner, wearing his sword. When the wine had gone round several times, *Chō* bade them to cease drinking, and to stop the music, and then in a stern tone he said: “I have a word to say, let all the officers present quietly listen.” Then they all inclined the ear, while *Chō* said: “The Emperor is the lord of all people, if he has not a dignified appearance he cannot perform the rites in the temple of ancestors and to the gods of the land. Now his present majesty is timid and weakly, not like the Prince *Chin-liu*, who is intelligent and fond of learning, and may well succeed to the great throne. I wish therefore to depose the Emperor and to set up *Chin-liu*, the Prince, what do you think of it, my lords?” All the ministers, when they had heard it, were afraid to utter a word. But among those who were seated was a man who arose, pushed away the table, and standing erect before the assembly, with a loud voice said: “It cannot be! It cannot be! Who are you that you should dare to utter such great words? The Emperor is the son of the late Emperor’s lawful queen. From the first he has been without fault or error, why take traitorous measures to dethrone him? Do you wish to become a usurper and a rebel?” *Chō* beheld him, and saw that it was the *Ts’z-li* of *King-chou*, —*Ting-yuen* by name. *Chō* in a rage shouted out: “Those that obey me, live! those that are adverse, die!” Forthwith grasping the sword at his girdle he wanted to destroy *Ting-yuen*, when *Li-ju*, on seeing behind *Ting-yuen*’s

- j. 13. *wei-fung pîn-pîn, sheu chi fang-t'ien hwa ki, nu mû q̄r shí. Lî-jú ki*  
 j. 30. *tsin yü: "Kín jî yin yèn chi chü, pû k'ò t'ân kwò-ching, lai-jî hiang*  
 k. 16. *Tü-t'ang kung-lên."* *Wí chi ching-jîn kiai kiuen T'ing-yuen shang-*  
 k. 29. *mà q̄r k'ü. Chò wòn pè-kwân yü: "Wú sò-yên hō kung-tau fei?"*  
 l. 14. *Lü-chi yü: "Ming kung chā i; s̄ T'at-kiā pū ming, I-yün fang*  
 l. 29. *chi yü T'ang-kwān; Ch'ang-yi wáng täng wei, fang q̄r shí tsí jî, tsau*  
 m. 14. *ō sām shí yü t'iaü; kú Hō-kwäng kau T'at-miaü q̄r fī chī. Kín-shang*  
 m. 30. *sūi yü, tsung-ming jîn-chi, ping-wá fān hau kwò-shí; kung nai wai*  
 n. 15. *kiun Ts'z-lí, sū wí ts'ān yü kwò ching yüü wá I-Hō chi tá tsai. Hō*  
 o. 2. *k'ò kiang chiü fī-lí chi s̄? Shing-jîn yün yüü I-yün chi chi, tsé k'ò*  
 o. 19. *wá I-yün chi chi tsé tsuàn yè." Chò tá nú pā \**

20. Extract from the *San-kwò chí* (4), v. native text, page 20.

- a. 1. *kién hiang-ts'ien yü shā chi; I-láng, P'ang-pi kién yü: "Lá*  
 a. 14. *Shang-shū hai nüt jîn wáng, kîn siên hai chi k'ung t'ien-hia chin-pá."*  
 a. 29. *Chò nai chi; Sz-t'á Wang-yün yü: "Tí-lí chi s̄ pû k'ò tsü-hé*  
 b. 16. *siang-shang, ling-jí tsai-i." Yü-shí pè-kwân kiai sām. Chò gān-kién*  
 c. 1. *lí yü yuen-mên. Hou-kién yi jîn yō mà chi k'í, yü yuen-mên wai*  
 c. 17. *wáng-lai. Chò wòn Lî-jú: "Tsé hō jîn yè?" Jú yü: "Tsé T'ing-*  
 d. 1. *yuen í-q̄r, sing, Lü; ming, pū, tsé, Tung-sien chò yè. Chü-kung tsü-*  
 d. 16. *sū pī chi." Chò nai jî yuen ts'ien-pí. Ts'z jî jî pau T'ing-yuen yin-*  
 e. 2. *kiün ching-wai nî-chén. Chò nú yin-kiün t'ang Lî-jú ch'ü-ying;*  
 e. 16. *liang-chin tsü yuen, chò kién Lü-pū, ting sū-fā kün-kwān, pī pè-hwá*  
 f. 2. *chén-p'au huán t'ang-mat k'at-kiā, k'í sz-wán pau-tsai, tsung mà tsí k'í,*  
 f. 18. *sūi T'ing Kiên-yáng, ch'ü tsai chin tsien. Kiên-yáng chi Chò má yü:*  
 g. 2. *"Kwò-kiā pū hing, yén-huán lóng-kiuen, i-chi wán-mín t'ü-t'án.*  
 g. 16. *Àr wá chi-tsān chi kung; yén kán wáng-yén fī-lí, yü huán chau-*

*Pau-kiā* (18. i. 22) 'to protect His Majesty.' Here *kiā*, 'an imperial carriage,' is employed, by metonymy, for royalty itself: (cf. Part I. Art. 182.)

*Hing kiai-shí* (18. l. 25), 'to walk the streets and markets,' is a use of the verb *ling*, already referred to in the case of *ling-lá* 'to proceed on the way,—to travel:' (cf. 18. f. 22.) *Kién* (18. m. 20) 'to see,' in the sense of 'have an interview with,' is very classical: (cf. Chrest. 4. g. 8. and often in the *Sz-shü*.) *Yén* (18. m. 23) with the signification 'to speak, to deliberate,' is a mark of classic style, and is different from *wet* (18. o. 27), which means simply 'to tell:' *t-sin* (18. m. 28), lit. 'another heart,' or a 'different mind' from that which he manifested, here means, 'sinister design.' *Wí-k'ò* (18. n. 9), 'cannot as yet,' is a very elegant expression: indeed the whole reply of *Shau* is worthy of careful notice.

The rapid transition from the narrative of *Pau-sin's* interviews with *Yuen-shau* and *Wang-yün* to his placing himself at the head of his troops is a characteristic of the style of the *San-kwò*.

*Tsü* (19. a. 20) is used here in an uncommon sense, with the negative *pā* before it; it assimilates in meaning to *jú* 'as.' The whole expression in this passage means, 'There is no time like the present for action.'

\* *Chò tá nú pā* \* *Chò* in a great rage drew his sword.' These characters were inadvertently omitted in the native text.

卓大怒拔

back a man of great ability, of a bold and upright figure and a dignified deportment, holding in his hand a long ornamented spear, and looking round with earnest eyes, came forward and said: “To-day this is the place of feasting, we cannot parley about the affairs of state; to-morrow in the Imperial Hall we may publicly discuss.” Soon afterwards all present exhorted *Ting-yuen* to mount his horse and go. But *Chō* asked the officers, saying: “Is that which I have said in accordance with justice or not?” *Lu-chi* replied: “Your Excellency is in error; in ancient times the Emperor *T'ai-kiū* was of weak mind, and *I-yün* dismissed him to *Tang-kung*; and when the Prince *Chang-yi* ascended the throne, and in twenty-seven days did more than thirty acts of wickedness, *Hō-kuang* accused him in the Great Temple and deposed him. But although the present Emperor is young, he is intelligent, humane, and prudent, and he is without the least fault of any kind; and you, my lord, are the *Ts'z-li* of a foreign state, and have hitherto had no concern in this government, moreover you have not the great talents of *I* and *Hō*; how then can you take on yourself the business of deposing and raising to the throne? A sacred sage once said: ‘Those who have the mind of *I-yün* may act as he did; those who have not his mind will act like rebels.’”

*Translation of the Extract from the Sān-kuō chí* (4), v. native text, page 20.

*Chō* was enraged, and, grasping his sword, he sprang forward wishing to kill *Chī*; but the councillor *P'ang-pi* restrained him, and said: “President *Lü* is looked up to by all the people, and if you should begin by injuring him, it is to be feared that there will be a commotion in the empire.” *Chō* then stopped, and the Minister of Instruction, *Wang-yün*, said: “It is not convenient to discuss public affairs after wine, another day we will talk about it.” Upon this all the ministers departed. Now as *Chō* was leaning on his sword, standing at the entrance to the garden, he chanced to see a mounted horseman prancing up and down in front of the place and flourishing his lance. *Chō* asked *Li-ju* who the man was. *Ju* replied: “He is *Ting-yuen*'s illegitimate son, his surname is *Lü*, his name is *Pu*, and his title is *Fung-sien*, your lordship should avoid him.” *Chō* then re-entered the garden, and so got out of the way. The next day it was reported that *Ting-yuen* was at the head of troops outside the city and challenging to battle. *Chō* in a rage went forth, accompanied by *Li-ju*, leading troops to meet him. The two lines in semi-circles stood opposite to each other, and there was *Lü-pu*, having a golden band round his hair, and having on a military cloak beautifully embroidered, armour also of the *T'ang* period, and a girdle wrought with lions and gems. He spurred his horse, raised his lance, and following *Ting Kien-yang*, came out to the front of the line. *Kien-yang* pointed to *Chō*, and upbraided him, saying: “The government is in misfortune, and the eunuchs are managing affairs to the ruin and desolation of the people and the country. While you, who have not an atom of merit, are desirous of creating rebellion. How dare you traitorously attempt to cause an abdication?” *Chō* had not time to reply

- h. 1. *t'ing.* *Tàng-chō wí-kí huóit-yên, Lù-pū fī-mà shō-kwō-lāi. Tàng-*  
h. 16. *chō huóng-tseù. Kién-yóng sū kiün yên shō. Chō pāng tá-pat, tsi*  
h. 30. *sān-shī yū lī hiá-chai. Tsū chung sháng-í. Chō yū: "Wú kwán Lù-*  
i. 15. *pū fī ch'áng-jin yè. Wú, jō tē tsè-jin, hó lú t'ien-hiá tsai?" Ch'ang*  
j. 1. *ts'ien yi-jin ch'ū yū: "Chū-kung wū yū, meū yū Lù-pū t'ang hiang,*  
j. 16. *chī k'í-yùng q̄r wū-meū, kién-lī wóng-í; meū p'ing sān-tān pū-lán-*  
k. 2. *chī-shī shuō, Lù-pū kùng-shuō lai kiáng: k'ò há?" Chō tá-hi, kwán*  
k. 17. *k'í jin nai Hù-fan Chūng-láng tsiang, Lì-sū yè. Chō yū: "Jū tsiang*  
l. 2. *hò-ì shuō chí?" Sū yū: "Meū wán Chū-kung yūi m'ing-mà yi-pi, há*  
l. 18. *yū: "Chī-t'ú," jī-hing ts'ien lī; sū tē tsè-mà, tsai yung kin-chū, ò-ì k'í*  
m. 7. *sū; meū k'ang tsin shuō-ts'z, Lù-pū pī fán Tung-yuen, lai t'eu Chū-*  
m. 22. *kung ò." Chō wán Lì-jū yū: "Tsè-yén k'ò há?" Jū yū: "Chū-kung*  
n. 7. *yū-ts'ù t'ien-hiá, hò-si yi-mà?" Chō hién-jén yū-chī, k'ang yū huóng-*  
n. 23. *kin yi-ts'ien-liang, m'ing-chū sū shī-kō, yū-tai yi-t'iaú. Lì-sū ts'ì-lià*  
o. 10. *lì-wū, t'eu Lù-pū chai lai fū-lú, kiün-jin wéi-chū. Sū yū: "K'ò sū-*  
o. 27. *paú Lù Tsiang-kiün."*

21. Selections from Æsop's Fables, translated (1), v. native text, page 21.

- a. 2. *Sū-mū k'ing-yū.*  
a. 7. *Sī yūi wéi fú-chè, ngó-p'ing tsai ch'wóng tsiang-tsū, chung-tsè huón*  
a. 21. *t'ing fān-fū, k'í-fú yū: "Wú yūi yi-wū, jū-t'eng shí chí; sūi chí mū-*  
b. 8. *t'iaú yi-sū, ling k'í-tsè chē chí, shí n'ang-tuón feù?" Chung-tsè jū-m'ing*  
b. 24. *chī-chī, pū n'ang-tuón. Fú huūi chí yū: "Jū tsèi chū-t'iaú ch'eu-ch'ū,*  
c. 9. *ts'z-tí fān-chè, shí n'ang-tuón feù?" Yū-shí mō-pū sūit-shuō q̄r tuón.*  
c. 25. *Fú yū: "Ngò àz chí heú, jū-t'eng pū-tí fān-lī; hò, tsí pū shuō jin-k'í,*  
d. 13. *fān, tsí í yū chē-tuón. Tsè-mū tsū ò-wéi ching ò." Sū-yū yūn: "Shān*  
d. 30. *ch'í siāng-í;—lién, tsí wán wá yi-shí; jō fān-chī, shān wóng, tsí chí*  
e. 16. *hán, wá-yūi pū-shí yè." Shín chí! Jū ò yi-kwō q̄r l'én; kō-kú yi-fāng-*  
f. 4. *chē, sién yūi pū-pat, fán pū-jū hò-lī siāng-lién chí wéi meí yè.*

g. 2. *Paú gān shū.*

g. 6. *Sz-tsè shū-shuūi yū kiaū-wat, siáu-shū tsai-p'ang wán-t'iaú, k'ing-*

*Kiaú* (19. d. 16), commonly 'to teach,' is here used, like *kiaú* 'to call,' for 'to command, to bid;' and the next words, *t'ing-tsai chí-yō*, which are the object of this *kiaú*, are exactly in accordance with the use of the figure metonymy in the construction of phrases; e. g. *tsiú*, 'wine,' is here put for 'drinking the wine.' The whole phrase must be taken as the object of *kiaú*, in one expression. (Cf. Part I. Art. 211.)

Observe the use of the qualifying expression *t'í-shing* (19. d. 22), 'stern voice,' before the verb *yū* 'to say,' meaning 'in a stern tone he said,' or 'he said sternly.' A language like the Chinese, which is wanting in marks for the different cases, admits of great variety in translation without inaccuracy, but good judgment is requisite to an idiomatic version from or into this language. The words of *Tung-chō* (19. d. 25) exemplify the remarkable terseness of the style of the *San-kwō*; here we have literally, 'I have one word, all officers quietly listen,'—'all officers incline ear.' (See the translation on page 63.)

before *Lü-pu*, at a flying speed, darted across. *Chō* at once withdrew in a state of trepidation, but *Kien-yang* followed him with his troops also in pursuit, and *Chō's* soldiers were completely routed. After retreating for about thirty furlongs, they threw up a stockade, and a council of war was held. *Chō* said: "I perceive that *Lü-pu* is no ordinary man; if I could obtain him, what need should I have to be anxious about the empire?" A man then came out and said: "My lord, be not concerned, I am a fellow-townsmen of *Lü-pu*,—I know that he is brave, but without much sense, he looks at gain and forgets right principles; I can, with a very small amount of fine talking, cause *Lü-pu* to come and pay his respects to you. Will you allow it?" *Chō* was much pleased, and observed that the man was the veteran adjutant-general *Li-seu*. *Chō* said: "But how will you speak to him?" *Seu* replied: "I have heard that your lordship has a celebrated horse, named the 'Purple-hare,' which can go a thousand furlongs a day, I must have this horse, and with gold and pearls obtain possession of his heart; and I will so manage to address him that he shall turn against *Ting-yuen* and come over to your lordship." *Chō* asked *Li-ju*, saying: "Will this do?" *Ju* replied: "Your lordship wishes to take the empire, why should you have any concern for a horse?" *Chō* then gladly gave it up, together with gold, a thousand ounces, several tens of bright pearls, and a jewelled girdle. *Li-seu* took the presents to give to *Lü-pu* in the entrenched camp. While hiding himself in the road, the soldiers surrounded him, but *Seu* said: "I have a message to general *Lü-pu*."

*Translation of the Selections from Æsop's Fables (1), v. native text, page 21.*

The comparison of the bundle of wood.

Once upon a time there was a father laid in sickness upon a bed, and, being about to die, all his sons stood around to hear his dying commands. The father said: "I have something which I wish you to attempt," and forthwith he threw down a bundle of sticks, bidding his sons to break them, and to try whether they could snap them in two or not? All his sons did as they were bidden, but they were unable to break them in two. The father then instructed them, and said: "Do you now pull out each stick! and snapping them one after the other, try if you can break each in two or not?" Upon doing this, there was not one which remained unbroken. The father said: "After my death you should not separate! If you are united, you will not be insulted by others; if you divide, then it will be easy to break and disperse you, just as this bundle of sticks shows. The proverb says: 'When the lips and teeth are alike united, not one in ten thousand will be lost; but separate them, and then the lips are dead and the teeth grow cold, and every thing is lost.' Pay attention to this! Like as in a kingdom where each man considers his own house alone; there are few who are not destroyed; but there is nothing so desirable as united strength!"

The rat that returned a kindness.

While a lion was soundly sleeping in a wild region, a little rat came playing near him. The lion having awoke in a fright began to play with him.

- g. 20. *sing q̄r hī-chī. S̄z sūt ì chāu feū-chī, shū pū-nang tū, gāt-ming chāu-*  
 h. 7. *hiá. S̄z nién siàu shū kī-kū chī t'ì, shā chī wū-yī, pū-jū shē-chā. Shū*  
 h. 25. *tē-mièn, heū yū s̄z-tē wū-t'ēu lī-chē chī wàng, shī pū-nang tū. Shū*  
 i. 12. *nién chāu-hiá chī gān, sūt tsiang wàng yau-p'ō, s̄z-tē chī tē-tū-shin.*  
 i. 28. *Jū shī sò-wēi: "Shī-q̄r t'iaū liàng, pū-chī hō t'iaū tē-lī!" Yū yūn:*  
 j. 14. *"Tē fang-shēu-shī, sū fang-shēu; tē jau-jin-chū, tsē jau-jin; tē wū*  
 j. 30. *kīng-shī jīn siàu. Ch'ing k'ing kīn-jī chī siàu-jīn, shī tsiang-lai chī*  
 k. 15. *gān-jīn, yī wī-k'ò tīng yē?"*

l. 2.

*Chē-fū k'iaū Fū.*

- l. 7. *Yī-jī chē-fū tsiang chē-lan hién yū siàu-k'ang, pū-nang k'ì. Chē-fū*  
 l. 23. *k'iaū k'iaū yū A-mi-to Fū. Fū kò kiáng-lín wān yū: "Nī yūi hō-t*  
 m. 10. *siāng-k'iaū?" Fū yū: "Ngò chē lō-k'ang k'iaū Fū-lī p'ā-k'iaū." Fū yū:*  
 m. 25. *"Jū t'ang kién k'ang k'ì chē, q̄r piēn k'ì mà; tē-jēn t'ang-chī'ū tē k'ang,*  
 n. 11. *jō-jū chūi shēu q̄r tai, ngò yī wū-nang wēi ì." Jū shī-jīn, k'ì-shī k'iaū*  
 n. 29. *Fū, yī t'ang-siēn tsin k'ì-lī, nài k'ò. Jīn q̄r sūng Fū wān-shing, pū-jū*  
 o. 16. *tē-hing miēn-lī.*

22. Selections from *Æsop's Fables*, translated (2), v. native text, page 22.

a. 2.

*Lāng tuōn yāng-gān.*

- a. 7. *Kū yūi hiung-kiuēn, k'ū-pīn yū lāng, wēi yāng fū-ī, k'ū-liàng sū-hō,*  
 a. 23. *tsūng pū-k'ang huān, k'iaū lāng tsō-chū. Lāng tsī ch'ū-ch'at, tsiang*  
 b. 6. *yāng nā-huō, sīn yū: "Ār k'ien meū-kiuēn k'ū-liàng; jī-k'iaū pū-*  
 b. 20. *huān, shī hō tau-lī?" Yāng yū: "Pīng-wū tsē-sē, nài k'ō'ang-kiuēn*  
 c. 4. *wū-kau yē." Lāng wān kiūēn yū: "Yāng pū-k'ang chāu, q̄r yūi*  
 c. 17. *pīng-kū feū?" Kiūēn yū: "Yīng, kiū, k'iaū k'ò tsō-ching." Lāng tsī*  
 c. 30. *chūēn-lai yīng, kiū, miēn-miēn siāng-chī. Yīng, kiū, ch'ing chūn-ē!*  
 d. 13. *yāng k'ien kiūēn liàng, ngò-t'ang mū-lī; pīng-fī wū-kau, k'ì gān tsiang*  
 d. 28. *yāng, gān-liū chī tsūi." Lāng tsī yāng yū: "Hién yūi tī-ching, q̄r*  
 e. 12. *shāng lai hū?" sūi shē-chī. Yū-shī kau-chī-kiūēn, yū shīn-ē-chī*

*Shī-tē* (19. e. 25) should be *shē-tē* 'the gods of the land and the grain,' which are worshipped by the Emperor and his suite, in person, on particular occasions. *Tsāng-miā* (19. e. 23) is the 'Temple of Ancestors,' which also receives a periodical visit from the Emperor.

*Shāng* (19. e. 28) 'upper' for 'superior,' and is here put for the Emperor, as the highest individual of all the superior classes.

*Tsūng-ming* (19. f. 6), 'intelligent-bright,' is here put as an attribute to *Chin-tiā*, but after instead of *before* it, and where we should use a relative clause. It may be looked upon as an apposition to the previous word, and its position is worthy of attention.

*T'ing-pā* (19. g. 1) 'having heard,' in which *pā*, 'to cease,' gives the force of the perfect tense in European tongues: (cf. Part I. Art. 197.) *Tsō-shāng* (19. g. 7) 'among those sitting,' *shāng* 'upon, upper,' stands for several ideas in different constructions. Compare *tsien-shāng* (8. b. 4) 'at the inn,' as we say, "on 'Change'" for "at the Exchange."

*Tē-tē* (19. h. 8) means the legitimate son of the Emperor, the son of the principal wife,—the Queen, who is called *Ching-shī*.\*

\* 正室

The lion with his paw covered him, so that the rat, being unable to escape, cried piteously from beneath the claws. The lion bethought himself that the rat had a very small body, and that if he killed him no profit would accrue, so he deemed it best to let him go. The rat was therefore let off, but on another occasion he met with the lion caught by mistake in the hunter's net, and with all his strength he could not get out. The rat remembered the favour while under the claws, and at once set about gnawing the net through with his teeth, and at last he gave the lion his liberty. Just as in the world we say: "Of twelve beams of wood, we know not which is the strongest." And again they say: "When you can deliver any one, you should do so; when you can spare any one, you should spare, and on no account look upon others as insignificant. Lest indeed the mean man of to-day should be our benefactor to-morrow,—who knows?"

The coachman praying to *Fü* (*Buddha* for *Hercules*).

One day a coachman got his carriage wheel sunk into a little pit and was unable to raise it out, so he begged for assistance from *Amida Buddha*, who really descended and enquired, saying: "What do you want?" The man said: "My carriage has fallen into this pit, and I pray for the power of *Buddha* to pull it out." *Buddha* replied: "You ought with your shoulder to raise the vehicle, and lash your horses, *then* assuredly it will arise from this pit; *but* if you let your hands hang down and wait, even I shall be powerless to help you." Thus it is in the world; when affairs are urgent, men pray to *Fü*; but they ought first to exhaust all their energy, and then they would be able to manage them. *For* if you call on *Fü* ten thousand times, it will not be so good as using your own exertions.

*Translation of the Selections from Æsop's Fables* (2), v. native text, page 22.

The sentence of the wolf in the suit about the sheep.

In former times there was a savage dog, who petitioned a wolf, saying that a sheep owed him several measures of corn, and that he would on no account pay, and he begged the wolf to act as arbiter. The wolf sent out a bailiff to seize the sheep, and having caught him, he examined him, saying: "You have owed a certain dog some corn for a good while, and have not paid, what sort of principle is that?" The sheep replied: "It is no such thing, but that mad dog has accused falsely." The wolf asked the dog, saying: "The sheep is unwilling to confess, have you any proof against him?" The dog replied: "The eagle and the kite can both bear witness." The wolf then summoned the eagle and the kite to appear before his face and to testify. They declared that it was all true; that the sheep owed the dog the provision, "We have seen it," said they, "and he is not falsely accused, we beg you graciously to take the sheep and deal with him as the law directs to cure him of this crime." The wolf *then* took the sheep and said: "Now we have strong proof, do you still persist?" and forthwith killed him. Thereupon the dog which had at first accused him, with the wolf which had adjudged the affair, together

- e. 28. *láng-kwān, pīng kân-ching-chī yīng-kiū, (shê-hiê yī-wō,) kúng fân k'í*  
 f. 13. *yáng. Já shí-jín, jō yūi tsz-ts'at, mei cháu huóng-hó! yūi; yū t'ān*  
 f. 28. *láng chī kwān, yuēn-kau jú kiuen, kân-ching já yīng-kiū; tsí pū-pí*  
 g. 13. *wáng k'í pīng-kūng tuán-sz í! Yén yūn: "Siáng yūi ch'í, fân k'í*  
 g. 27. *shūn." K'í pū hú!*

h. 2. *Tū-shê yau ts'ó.*

- h. 7. *Sí yūi tú-shê, yuēn-jí t'í-p'ú; yū wū, tsí yau; shí yūi ts'ó tsat-ts'ien;*  
 h. 25. *shê tsí ch'én q' yau-chī. K'eu chú ts'ó ch'í, hū-tí k'ò-kién, í-wei yau*  
 i. 12. *shāng tsz-ts'ó, fū tsat yau-chī. Ts'ó yū: "Jū sīn kiuen-tú, pū-náng*  
 i. 27. *hai jín, fân hai tsz-kí." Já shí yūi láng-sīn-chê, cháng tsat gán-lí, í*  
 j. 14. *yén-yū huū-t-jín, q' pū-chī shí tsz huū. Shín chī!*

k. 2. *Fū-t'eu k'íu pīng.*

- k. 7. *Sí yūi fū-t'eu, sūi jūi q' wū-yung, tsz-sz p'í-tz yí-píng, fāng k'ò*  
 k. 24. *kién-yung yū-shí; nai k'í k'í shū yū: "Siēn-sāng, tsz ngò yí-mi, pū-*  
 l. 10. *kwò kīn-wei yí-píng tsū í; t'ā-jí tsz-tāng t'ā-pai." K'í shū tsz-kú chī-hó*  
 l. 29. *fān-shíng; "Hò-sí yí-píng?" K'ái-jén yū-chī. Fū t'eu k'íu pīng; sō-yūi*  
 m. 15. *shū-lín, tsín p'í fū-k'ú! Hò k'í shū-chī yū tsai! Já shí-jín sō wei:*  
 n. 2. *"Tsū hū t'ien yí." Yū yūn: "Tí-tai, kí-ming;" shí yé! Fān-jín*  
 n. 16. *pí-sū k'ò shēu k'í fān tsí, wū ch'í-ts'ān yū jín, ch'ing-k'ūng (yūi jú fū*  
 o. 3. *píng), tsí huai chī wán í.*

23. Official Papers (Lin's Letter to Queen Victoria (1)), v. native text,  
 page 23.

- a. b. 1. *Kín-ch'ái, Tá-chín, Pīng-pú Sháng-shū, Liàng-Há Tsūng-tú, Lin,*  
 a. 17. *Pīng-pú Sháng-shū, Liàng-Kwáng Tsūng-tú, Tang,*  
 b. 17. *Pīng-pú Shí-láng Kwáng-tūng Siūn-fū, I,*  
 c. 1. *huū-t'ūng ch'au-huūi Yīng-kí-lí kwò wáng, wei líng-kín ā-piēn*  
 c. 15. *yén-sz; ch'au-tz t'ien-tai wú-sz pū-yáng hai-jín, í lí k'í; jín-t'ing*

*Kwò-shí* (19. h. 12) is a union of two verbs, 'to pass over' and 'to fail,' put for 'transgression' or 'fault.' (Cf. Part I. Art. 101.)

*Hiáng* (19. k. 15), 'towards,' is used here for 'at:' (cf. Part I. Art. 407. 4.) *Kūng* (19. k. 18) here means 'public,' as often; e. g. *kūng-wán* (24. d. 15) 'public despatch,' but in *kūng-hiáng* (19. c. 10) it means 'nobles,' and *kūng-tai* (19. l. 11) means 'just,' because justice is founded on the common rights of mankind. Again, *kūng* (19. n. 12) is 'you, my lord:' (cf. 20. d. 13, 14.) *Tsūi-héu* (20. b. 14) 'after wine.' Here *tsūi*, 'wine,' is put for 'drinking wine.'

Observe the ellipsis of the substantive verb in *tsz hó jín yé* (20. c. 23—26).

The description given of the dress of great men and heroes in Chinese romances is generally elaborate, as is that of *Lü-pú* (20. e. 24—f. 13), who played an important part in this story of the *San-kuò*.

*Fí-má* (20. h. 10), lit. 'flying-horse,' is an example of the use of the verb to qualify the noun; but in such cases the qualifying verb or participle has often to be translated by an adverbial expression; and here we must construe, 'his horse going at full speed,' *Sá* (20. h. 12), 'to kill,' is here used to intensify the expression, to imply that he darted across the intermediate space. The use of *hiá* (20. i. 4) 'down,' or 'lower,' for 'throwing up' a stockade, or 'entrenching themselves,' is very idiomatic. In fact *shāng* and *hiá*, as will



with the false witnesses,—the eagle and the kite (a nest of birds of the same feather),—divided the sheep among themselves. Thus it is in the world, if a man possess wealth, it will daily bring crosses and woes upon him, and should he cross the path of a magistrate who is greedy like the wolf, and an accuser like the dog, and false witnesses like the eagle and the kite, then he must not expect to have it decided according to any justice in the case. So the proverb says: "The elephant has tusks of *ivory*, and we burn his body for *them*, is it not so?"

The venomous snake bites the file.

Once upon a time a venomous snake wound itself into a blacksmith's shop, and every thing which fell in its way it gnawed. Now it happened that a sharp file came in its way, so the snake coiled itself round it and began to gnaw it, but his mouth suddenly coming in contact with the sharp teeth of the file, drops of blood were to be seen; he thereupon thought that these were from the wounds inflicted on the file, so he went on gnawing it. But the file said: "Your heart is very venomous, you are not able to hurt others, but, on the contrary, you may injure yourself."

Just so in this world, those who have the hearts of wolves are constantly in secret slandering others, but they unwittingly defame themselves. Beware of such!

The axe-head begs for a handle.

There was once an axe-head, which, although sharp, was useless, so he thought within himself that he must obtain a handle, and be useful in the world. Then he besought a tree, saying: "Sir, give me a piece of wood, only sufficient to make a handle, and some other day I will, as in duty bound, reward you." The tree on seeing his branches so abundant, thought, 'Why should I grudge a handle?' And so generously gave him one. The axe now having obtained a handle, cut down completely all the trees which were in the forest. What stupidity it was in this tree! So the men of the world have the saying: "Help the tiger by adding wings." Also they say: "Present a knife and beg your life;" and so it is. Let every one keep his own share and on no account give to others, lest truly (as in the case of the axe handle) he may repent of it too late!

*Translation of Official Papers (Lin's Letter to Queen Victoria (1)), v. native text, page 23.*

Imperial Commissioner *Lin*, a Minister of State, a President of the Board of War, Governor-General of the Two *Hu* (*Hu-nan* and *Hu-pé* provinces),

President *Tang*, of the Board of War, Governor-General of the Two *Kwang* (*Kwang-tung* and *Kwang-si* provinces), and

Vice-President *I*, of the Board of War, and Lieutenant-Governor of *Kwang-tung*,

unite in making a communication to the Ruler of the English nation, in order to cause the prohibition of the opium traffic; showing that Providence does not allow any private arrangements soever to be injurious, so that they

- d. 2. *pū-yuén. Shǔ fī wá-shǎ q̄r haú-sāng? Kuéi-kwo̍, sūi toai cháng-yáng*  
d. 17. *q̄r-wán lǐ wá; q̄r t'áng t̄az t'ien-taú, t'áng t̄az jèn-t'ing, wí-yiú pū*  
e. 3. *míng, yǐl sāng-s̄ lǐ-hai chē yē. Ngò t'ien-chau s̄-hai wéi kiá; í*  
e. 19. *Huáng-t̄, jǎ t'ien chí jín, wú-sò-pū-feú, q̄r hiá-huáng tsǐ-yí, yí toai p̄ng-*  
f. 7. *sāng, p̄ng-yú chí chūng. Kuáng-tūng, ts̄ k'á hai-kín ì-lai, liú-t'ung*  
f. 22. *meú-yí; fán Núi-tí mìn-jín, yú wai-lai fán-ch'uen siāng-ān, yú lǐ-ā chē,*  
g. 10. *yú sū-shí nién yū-t̄az ì. Tsie yū tá-huáng, chí á-yē, hū-s̄, t̄eng-lú,*  
g. 27. *kiá Chūng-kwo̍ pau-kwei chí chí-ān; wai-kwo̍ jō pū-tē t̄az, ts̄ wú ì-wéi*  
h. 14. *míng; q̄r t'ien-chau yí-shí t'áng jín, hū k'í fán-mai chí-ū-yáng, ts̄ pū*  
h. 30. *kín-s̄, wá-fī t'ü-s̄ wai fū ì t'ien-tí chí s̄n wéi s̄n yē. Nà yú yí*  
i. 19. *chūng k̄n ì chí wéi ā-piēn kiá-ts̄ fán-mai, yú-huò yū-m̄n, ì hai k'í*  
j. 7. *sh̄n, q̄r meú k'í lǐ, ts'ien hí-shí chē. Sháng shau kín ts̄ hí-siāng*  
j. 22. *ch'uen jèn liú-tū jī-sh̄n toai chūng yuén, fú shú fán ch'ang, sūi toai*  
k. 7. *ts̄-t̄eng yū-m̄n t'ān-k'eu-fū, q̄r ts'ang k'í sāng, yí shū nǐ yú-t̄az ts'ū*  
k. 24. *hō-pí wéi gai-s̄ yē jèn ì. Tá-ts'ing yí-t'áng chí t'ien-hiá, wú toai*  
l. 11. *huán fūng-sū ì ching jín-s̄n, k'í-k'ang shí hai-niú sāng-ling k̄n-s̄n*  
l. 27. *chín-tū, shí-ì hién ts'ang Núi-tí fán-mai ā-piēn, p̄ng hí-shí chí jín, yí*  
m. 15. *t'í yēn-hing chí ts̄iú yung kín liú ch'uen; wéi-s̄ ts̄-t̄eng tū-wá hí*  
n. 1. *kuéi-kwo̍ sò-shū, kō-pú hiá-niú kuéi-yí k̄n-jín s̄-hing tsau-ts̄; ts̄-fī*  
n. 19. *kuéi-kwo̍ wáng, ling k'í chí-tsau ts̄-wú p̄ng-fī chū-kwo̍ kiá jèn-yí*  
o. 5. *wan kuéi-kwo̍ yí-pū ch̄n mìn-jín hí-shí fán-chē, p̄r ch'ing: ts̄ hí chí*  
o. 22. *k'í hai-jín, kú tū-wéi chí lí-kín.*

have been seen, enter into many pure Chinese idioms. *Wú* (20. j. 8) 'not, do not,' being employed for *pū-yáú*<sup>a</sup>, is one of the characteristics of the terse style of this work. *T'ang-hiang* (20. j. 14), 'of the same village,' is another example of the predicate being of pregnant meaning, and like the attribute only being placed after the noun which it qualifies. This form is common in the *San-kwo̍*. We have *chō t̄-hi* (20. k. 13).

Mark *hō-t* (20. l. 2) 'by what means?' and compare this use of *ì* with *t-wéi hó-jé!* (19. f. 25) 'how do you consider this?' or 'what do you think of it?' (cf. 4. j. 20. and 4. e. 1.) *ì* often has the force of the final particle 'that, to the end that,' or 'for the purpose of:' (cf. 19. e. 21; 23. l. 14; and Part I. Art. 482.)

*Pū-lú* (20. o. 17) 'to hide on the road.' In this expression the noun *lú* follows the verb 'to hide' directly, without any particle to show the relation; but the sense of the passage compels the above rendering, just as in *ling-lú* above (17. f. 22). This form is frequent. We have a case in the next page; *ngó-ping* (21. a. 12) 'lying in sickness.'

Pages 21 and 22 of the native text contain extracts from a work entitled: "Teop's Fables written in Chinese by the learned *Mun Mooy Seen-shang*, and compiled in their present form (with a free and literal translation) by his pupil, Sloth," an allusion to which will be found in the Preface to this work, page viii. The style is quaint, easy, and well adapted for the expression of fable. It cannot be considered, however, as a very good model for composition, though it may serve as a stepping-stone to something better, and to familiarise the student with the expression of native modes of thought. But these fables abound in good colloquial phrases, to which the student will be directed by the hyphen in many cases. And here it may be observed, that the hyphen in this work is often placed between syllables which are merely grammatically united, and not absolutely, as is the case in compound words; e. g. the negatives *pū* 'not,' *wá* 'without,' some verbs, as *sūi* 'to follow,'

\* 不要

may serve the interests of individuals; and that the feelings of all men are similar, (*for* who is there that does not hate death and love life?) And although your honourable nation is two myriads of *li* across the vast ocean, yet you acknowledge the same Providence and the same human feelings, and there is not one of you ignorant respecting life and death,—profit and loss. Now the Celestial dynasty looks upon all within the four seas \* as one family, and the benevolence of our great Emperor (like that of heaven) comprehends all; even desert places and disconnected regions alike receive their life and nurture from thence. There has existed at Canton, from the time of the removal of the restrictions on maritime communication up to the present, regular commercial dealing, and the people of China, generally, have held a peaceful and profitable intercourse with those who came from abroad in foreign ships during a period of several tens of years until now. Moreover, with reference to rhubarb, teas, and the silks of the *Lake provinces* and such other commodities, which are the valuable and rich productions of China; were foreign nations unable to procure them, they would be without the means of *enjoying* their lives; but the Celestial court, looking with benevolence towards all alike, has permitted trade to be carried on with foreigners, without the least stint or grudge, and has in this course undoubtedly had no other aim in view than to imitate the beneficent principles which unite heaven and earth. But there is a class of unprincipled Barbarians, who manufacture opium, and bring it here for sale. And thus, in order to contrive profit for themselves, they tempt the common people of our land to the injury of their bodies. Formerly the consumers were only a few, *but* latterly the habit has spread its contagion, *while* it extends more deeply every day towards the centre of the land,—with its rich, fruitful, and flourishing population. But although, among the common people, there are many who gratify their appetites at the expense of their lives, and as this is the origin of the evils resulting from the habit, their case does not call for pity. Yet, when we consider the empire as a whole, under the rule of the *T'á-tsing* ('Great Pure') dynasty, it is a matter of importance that the minds of men should be directed in the formation of correct customs. How then can we be willing to cause the inhabitants of the world to take with pleasure this deadly poison? Therefore from henceforth both those in the Inner land (China) who deal in opium, and also those who eat it, shall alike be liable to the severest punishment; and a perpetual prohibition against it shall be enacted and be made known every where. We have considered that this poisonous article is the secret production of artful and designing people within the boundaries of your honourable nation's tributary kingdoms, and that neither the sovereign of your honourable nation has caused it to be made, nor that even all these kingdoms manufacture it;—yea, we have heard that your honourable nation does not allow your own people to consume it, and that offenders will surely be reproved. It is certainly from knowing its evil effects that these severe prohibitions have been made.

---

\* The expression 'four seas' sometimes means 'China,' at other times 'the world.'

24. Official Papers (Lin's Letter to Queen Victoria (2)), v. native text,  
page 24.

- a. 1. *Jên kîn k'í kî-shí,—hò-jû kîn k'í fán-mai, píng kîn k'í chí-tsau!*—  
a. 17. *naí wéi ts'ing-yuén chí tsau. Jò tsé pû-shí, q̄r-jíng hàn chí-tsau fán-mai*  
b. 4. *yín-yiú Núi-tí yú-mín; tsé-shí yú-kì chí sǎng, q̄r hién-jín chí sǎ; yú-kì*  
b. 23. *chí lí, q̄r t-jín í hái. Tsé-kiaí jín-ts'ing chí sǎ t'áng-hǎn, t'ien-tsau chí sǎ*  
c. 12. *pû-yáng. Í t'ien-chau lí-chín Hwa-Í; hò-nám lí-chí k'í mǎng? q̄r yáng-*  
c. 29. *t'í shíng-míng kwān-tá, tsé í kau-kiaí yú sién; tsé ts'áng-ts'ien wǎ yáng-*  
d. 15. *kūng-wǎn, t-hwǎi kwéi-kwǎ Wáng; yí-tān kín-yén, tsé yú tsé-yiú wéi*  
e. 2. *pû-chí. Kín yú kwéi-kwǎ Wáng yǎ tsíang tsé hai-jín chí ā-piēn,*  
e. 18. *yáng-yuén tuán-tsú; ngó Núi-tí kín-jín kî-shí, yí shí-kwǎ kín-jín*  
f. 4. *chí-tsau; k'í ts'áng-ts'ien í-kíng tsau-tsǎ-ché, kwéi-kwǎ lí-tsé pán-líng*  
f. 20. *híng seú tsín-t'ed chí hai-tí; tuán pû-hú t'ien-tí kién kǎng-yiú tít-wǎ.*  
g. 7. *Fí-tú Núi-tí mǐn-jín pû-shéu k'í hái, tsé kwéi-kwǎ mǐn-jín (kí-yiú*  
g. 24. *tsau-tsǎ, ān chí k'í pû kî-shí) kwǎ píng tsau-tsǎ shǎng kín chí, tsé kai-*  
h. 11. *kwǎ yí pû-shéu k'í hái. K'í pû-kǎ hiáng t'ái-píng chí fú! Yí-chau*  
h. 27. *kwéi-kwǎ kǎng-shǎn chí chín, jû-tsé tsé mǐng yú t'ien-lí, q̄r Shǎng-t'ien*  
i. 14. *pû-chí kiáng tsau. Hí hú jín-ts'ing q̄r shíng-jín. Yí-pí chí hú, huáng*  
i. 29. *Núi-tí kî-kíng yén-kín, wǎ-shí kî-shí, tsé-shí kai-kwǎ chí-tsau, tsung-*  
j. 16. *yí wǎ-chú k'í-mai, wǎ-lí k'í-t'á. Yú k'í kwéi-pén t'á-lau, hò-pû kai*  
k. 4. *t'á pî-nié? Huáng Núi-tí seú-ch'í ā-piēn tsín-híng fú-hò yú shai-*  
k. 20. *wéi, tsau yú Í-ch'uen kí-tai ā-piēn, ts'ien-lai pû-náng-pû yí-t'í shai-*  
l. 7. *wéi. K'ung (ch'uen nǎi sǎ tsau t'á hó) nám mién yú-shí, k'í fǎn. Shí lí*  
l. 23. *pû-té q̄r hái í-híng, yú hai-jín q̄r sién hai-kí yé. T'ien-chau chí sǎ-t*

í 'to use,' which are employed as prepositions (then meaning 'with' or 'by'); and auxiliary verbs, as *nǎng* 'to be able,' *k'í* 'can, may,' and demonstratives, as *tsé* 'this' and *k'í* 'his,' and the reflexive particles *tsé* 'self,' *siáng* 'mutual,' are generally united by the hyphen to the words which they affect. Very much might be done in this way to make Chinese, even the terse, classical style, intelligible in Roman letter; and it is devoutly to be wished that the various dialects may, before long, be represented by the Latin alphabet, and be freed from the cumbrous characters, which, for the masses, clog the path to knowledge.

*Sút-t* (21. g. 25), lit. 'follow,—use,' forms a redundant expression for 'with.' We have *sút* alone in *sút-shéu* (21. c. 21) 'with the hand.'

There is a great mixture of classical and colloquial terms in the style of these fables; e. g. (in 21. a. 10) we have *fú-ché* instead of *fú-tsin*, which is the colloquial term. Again, "the lion was sleeping in (*yú*—21. g. 10) a wild region;" "the mouse was playing in (*tsau*—21. g. 15) (or at) his side." Here different words are employed for 'in,' perhaps to avoid tautology, but *yú* is not often used in colloquial style. *Fán-fú* (21. a. 22) 'command, bidding,' is the common expression for commanding an inferior.

The expression *pû-jú* (21. h. 20) has occurred several times. It signifies literally, 'not as' or 'not like,' and must be explained to mean 'there is nothing like' or 'the best thing to do is:' (cf. 14. i. 24. and 21. o. 14.)

*Tsiáng*<sup>a</sup> (21. i. 18) in the sense of 'to take' is not very common; it corresponds in use to *pá*<sup>b</sup> 'to take,' meaning 'referring to, touching, concerning,' it refers to the object mentioned, and helps to form an expression, like the "accusative of closer specification"

<sup>a</sup> 將 <sup>b</sup> 把

*Translation of Official Papers (Lin's Letter to Queen Victoria (2)), v. native text, page 24.*

But though you forbid the eating of it,—what is that compared with the prohibition of its sale and the restriction on its manufacture?—this latter would be the rational means of cleansing the source. If you do not eat it yourselves, yet by continuing presumptuously the manufacture and the sale of it, you tempt the lower orders of the Inner land (China),—you truly desire to live yourselves and to overwhelm others in death,—you seek your own profit, and bring loss upon other men. All these things are what the common feelings of humanity hold in abhorrence, and what Divine Providence will not tolerate. And since the power of the Celestial dynasty moves both Chinese and Barbarians, what difficulty would there be in establishing regulations respecting their fate? But having regard to propriety, sacred honour, and magnanimity, it is certainly proper, in the first place, to issue commands; and, as heretofore no public despatch has been sent to the Sovereign of your honourable kingdom, if the matter be the subject of rigid prohibition on a sudden, then some may be tempted to plead ignorance as an excuse. *But* as the case stands, we would with the Sovereign of your honourable nation, covenant to abolish for ever this hurtful opium drug, we should forbid the consumption of it in the Inner land (China), and the tributary kingdoms also should forbid the manufacture of it. As for that which has already been made, your honourable government should issue commands for its collection from every quarter, and for its complete destruction in the bottom of the sea, nor let any more of the poisonous article exist any longer in the world. *Then* not only will the people of the Inner land (China) not be injured by it, but also the said people of your honourable nation (who being the makers of it certainly know how to eat it), when the manufacture is forbidden, will of necessity be also uninjured by it. Will not each party then enjoy the happiness of peace? And in addition to this, by your honourable nation's respectful and sincere obedience, you will show a clear apprehension of divine principles, and Heaven will not bring down calamities *upon us*. This will be in harmony with the feelings of humanity and with those of the sacred sages. Also let it be remembered besides, that the people of the Inner land (China), being under severe prohibitions against the eating of it, if the aforesaid nations still manufacture it, there will assuredly be no market for it, and no device will cause profit to arise therefrom. Thus, with the prospect of losing the capital and labouring in vain, will it not be better to change your plans for another employment?

Furthermore, all the opium which can be found in the Inner land (China) has been delivered over to be consumed by fire, and if in future there happen to be any Barbarian ships conveying opium hither, the whole must be destroyed by fire. But we fear (as there will be other goods in the same ships) it will be difficult to distinguish the jewel from the stone, and all must be burnt alike. Thus, not obtaining any profit, and injury taking a substantial form, in wishing to hurt others, you will hurt yourselves first. The Celestial dynasty's

- m. 12. *chín fù wán-kwo̍ chò, ching yiu pū-ts'ê chí shín, woi wú woi, yén chí*  
 m. 28. *pū-tsau yê. Kwo̍-kwo̍ Wáng tsí-tau tsè-wón, tsí tsíang kò ha̍-k'è*  
 n. 13. *tuán-tsū, yuén-yiu sū-hing í fòu hing. Wú-huáng shí chí t'ing*  
 n. 27. *ch'ù tsí.*  
 o. 3. *Tau-huáng shí-kiù nién q̄r yǎ — jǐ, t-huók Ying-kwo̍ chí*  
 o. 21. *chau.*

25. Official Papers (From the 'Supplementary Treaty of 1844'), v. native text, page 25.

- a. 1. I. *Yí sò-yiu Kín-ch'ái, Kung-shí, Tá-chín huá-yá k'ien-yín, tsín*  
 a. 15. *ch'í-k'èu hó-wú shuók-hiáng, tsí-lí fú-nièn chí tsé, sè-heú Kwáng-cheú,*  
 b. 1. *Fú-cheú, Hiá-mên, Ning-pô, Sháng-ha̍, wú kiáng-k'èu, kiám fúng í*  
 b. 15. *wei shí.*  
 b. 18. II. *Yí sò-yiu Kín-ch'ái, Kung-shí, Tá-chín huá-yá k'ien-yín sìn*  
 c. 2. *túng meú-yí cháng-ch'ing fú-nièn chí kién, sè-heú wú kiáng-k'èu, kiám*  
 c. 17. *fúng í-wei shí.*  
 c. 22. III. *Yí sìn-túng meú-yí cháng-ch'ing tì-sân t'iat, hó-ch'uen tsín*  
 d. 5. *k'èu pau kwán yí-kw'ân, nūi sò yén fú yín jò kân yuén, k'í hó-wú ch'á*  
 d. 22. *ch'ái jǐ kwán tòng yú, tsè yín lién hó ying-kwo̍ Ching-huók kwò ná,*  
 e. 8. *í ch'uing kung-hiáng.*  
 e. 13. IV. *Yí Kwáng-cheú, Fú-cheú, Hiá-mên, Ning-pô, Sháng-ha̍, wú*  
 e. 25. *kiáng-k'èu, k'ái kwán chí heú, k'í Ying-shang meú-yí chú-sò, ch'è chên*  
 f. 10. *wú kiáng-k'èu. Pū-chên fú t'á-chú kiáng-k'èu, yí pū-hú Huók-mín tsat*  
 f. 26. *t'á-chú kiáng-k'èu, ch'uen t'ung sè siáng meú-yí, tsíang-lai Ying-kwo̍*  
 g. 10. *Kung-shí yiu yú-shí mêng, pū-hú t'á-wàng, q̄r Ying-shang jǐ huók péi*  
 g. 26. *yò, pū-fú kìn-ling, k'í tsíang Kung-shí kau-shí chí jò wàng wóm, shén*  
 h. 12. *wàng t'á-chú kiáng-k'èu, yiu pién fún-mat jín p'ing Ching-kwo̍ yuén*  
 h. 26. *pién, lién-ch'uen lién-hó yí-ping ch'ái tsú jǐ kwán, Ying-kwán pū-té*  
 i. 11. *tsóng-lín, t'ang Huók-mín tsat t'á-chú kiáng-k'èu, yú Ying-shang sè*  
 i. 25. *ch'uen meú-yí, tsí Kwò fú kú tsat, ying-chau lí pán-lí.*  
 j. 11. V. *Yí tsien tsat Kiáng-nán nié-king t'ing, í-heú shang k'ien, tuán*  
 j. 25. *pū-k'ò kwán wei pau kian, yiu sìn túng meú-yí cháng-ch'ing tì-sé t'iat,*  
 k. 11. *Ying-shang yú Huók-shang kian-yí yí-kw'ân, nūi-fú tsíang pū-náng*  
 k. 25. *ch'í yáng-hang tsat p'et-chí kiú lí, ch'ing chū chò p'et. Tsí shí shing*  
 l. 10. *mêng tsat gán. Sè-heú pū-k'ú Huók-shang k'ien Ying-shang, k'í Ying-*

in Greek: (cf. Part I. Art. 407. 6.) There is another example of this use of *tsiáng* in 21. l. 11.

*A-mi-to Fú* (21. l. 26). This is the common name of Buddha in China. The name which serves for all the various forms of calling upon the deity, whether in oaths or in prayers.

Observe the use of *siáng*<sup>b</sup> in *siáng-k'íu* (21. m. 10), in which expression it corresponds to the use of the middle voice in Greek. It implies two parties: (cf. Part I. Art. 215.)

<sup>a</sup> 盟約 'a treaty' (between two nations).

<sup>b</sup> 相

means of holding the myriads of nations in subjection is unfathomable and divine, and produces reverence beyond the power of words to tell! Let it not be said that early warning was not given! When Your Majesty receives this despatch, then take measures for seizing all the opium at every sea-port, and send us a speedy reply. Do not, by false embellishments, evade or delay! Earnestly reflect on these things, and earnestly observe them!

In the nineteenth year of *Tau-kuang*, in the second month, on the — day. A communication addressed to England.

*Translation of Official Papers (From the 'Supplementary Treaty of 1844'), v. native text, page 25. \**

Art. I. † The tariff of export and import duties which is hereunto attached, under the seals and signatures of the respective plenipotentiary and commissioners, shall henceforward be enforced at the five ports of Canton, Fu-chau fu, Amoy, Ningpo, and Shanghai.

Art. II. The general regulations of trade which are hereunto attached under the seals and signatures of the respective plenipotentiary and commissioners shall henceforward be in force at the five afore-named ports.

Art. III. All penalties enforced, or confiscations made, under the third clause of the said general regulations of trade, shall belong, and be appropriated to, the public service of the government of China.

Art. IV. After the five ports of Canton, Fu-chau, Amoy, Ningpo, and Shanghai shall be thrown open, English merchants shall be allowed to trade only at those five ports. Neither shall they repair to any other ports or places, nor will the Chinese people, at any other ports or places, be permitted to trade with them. If English merchant vessels shall, in contravention of this agreement, and of a proclamation to the same purport, to be issued by the British plenipotentiary, repair to any other ports or places, the Chinese government officers shall be at liberty to seize and confiscate both vessels and cargoes; and should Chinese people be discovered clandestinely dealing with English merchants at any other ports or places, they shall be punished by the Chinese government in such a manner as the law may direct.

Art. V. Formerly in *Kiang-nan* it was agreed that the government could not be responsible for the debts of merchants, and according to the 4th clause of the newly established regulations concerning 'commercial dealings between English and Chinese merchants,' it is no longer allowable to ask for the repayment of debts by appealing to the old laws, which required the Hong merchants to pay the debts of each. This is truly and clearly declared in the records. Henceforth, whether a Chinese merchant owe any thing to an English merchant, or an English merchant owe to a Chinese merchant, if the

\* Page 25 of the native text was erroneously headed 'a notice and a petition,' which should have been the heading for page 26.

† The version here given is that published as the English treaty, which was in fact the original, and of which the Chinese text in the *Chrestomathy* is the translation.

- l. 24. *shāng k'ien Huo-shāng chī chái, jū kò cháng-kú k'í-tò, jìn tsai ch'ān*  
 m. 9. *ts'qn, kiūn ying yiu Huo Ying kai kuān-sz-huān, yí-t'í ts'ung k'ung-*  
 m. 23. *chū k'í, í-cháu ping-yín. Jíng-cháu yuēn-yò p'í-tsè tsai-wei chò-chui,*  
 n. 9. *kiūn pū tsai-wei pau-ch'ang.*  
 n. 16. VI. *Yí Kuāng-cheu t'ang wù kiāng-k'èu, Yíng-shāng, huò cháng*  
 n. 27. *ch'uen kú-chú, huò pū-shí wāng-lai, kiūn pū-k'ò wāng tsai hiāng-hiēn,*  
 o. 12. *jín-í yiu-híng, yiu k'ang pū-k'ò yuēn-jí nūi-tí meū-yí.*

26. Official Papers (a notice and a petition), v. native text, page 26.

- a. 2. *Kín yé-híng yò.*  
 a. 7. *Lí kín yò jín meū-meū t'ang, wei yēn kín yé-híng, í tsing tí-fang*  
 a. 23. *sé. Kuò-kiā cháng-mq̄n k'í-sí, yú-tsai háu páu-k'è, hiāng-mēn t'í-ling hau-*  
 b. 10. *pāng, kín fāng k'í tsai-tsé. Kiai yiu mēng kín. Shūi kàn wei fān. Kín*  
 b. 25. *kiēn tí-fang fān-huān, tsai-tsé ch'ang-kw'ang, tsung yiu yé-híng pū-kín.*  
 c. 10. *Hí pién k'í-chá? Shí í shíng-kí gán tsai, shín chí mēng-hò k'í-ang-kí,*  
 c. 26. *ts'ín pū-gān chīn, kiā pū-liat sūng. Hai mō tsé í! Hó shū tá yēn! Wei-*  
 d. 13. *tsé shē tsuī huw'í chūng, yēn shē kín-yò. Yí yiu huāng huān, tsí kín*  
 d. 28. *jín híng, chí chí wū-kāng sán-tiēn, fāng k'ò-jín k'í lai-wāng. Mēi-jí*  
 e. 14. *lān-liú sián ló, jū yiu fān-kín-chè, mēng-lò wei hau, kò-kò shēu-chí*  
 f. 1. *ts'ang, tsai, nū, ch'ung, shā-sz wū-lān, t'ang mēng-lò shí, ch'á tiēn yí*  
 f. 16. *mēng pū-tsai, lai-jí ts'ing-shín, huw'í-chūng kung-fā, kiū pū k'ing tsai.*  
 g. 1. *Tí sè lí sū chí, shā chú chāng-kw'ó, shū p'í sīng tsai yiu chí jín, chí sò*  
 g. 19. *kiaí: q̄r k'í-mēng k'òu-tsai chí jín tē ch'ing í. Kín-yò.*

The pronoun *k'í*<sup>b</sup> 'he, his,' in the expressions *k'í-ché* (21. m. 29), *k'í-má* (21. n. 3), is used like our definite article 'the,' for the second person *jū* (21. m. 25) has just been used, therefore *k'í* could not be construed as 'his' in this place.

*Yú*<sup>c</sup> frequently means 'with reference to,' so in to *beg something of somebody*, it signifies 'of' or 'from,' as in 22. a. 13.

*Tsò-chū* (22. a. 29), lit. 'to be the master,' is 'to act as judge:' (cf. Part I. Arts. 221, 361. 5, and 371.) *Tsò* is again used for the verb to be in 22. c. 26. *Tsú-R* (22. b. 23) 'law of reason, rule of right,' is the general term for 'good principles' of justice, taste, feeling, or judgment. It is to a Chinese that indefinable standard of right and wrong, which suits his own peculiar habits, tastes, or feelings: (cf. Mr. Commissioner Yeh's dialogues with his interpreter, Mr. C. Alabaster, given in the *Times* during the war of 1856.)

*Mū-k'í* (22. d. 19), lit. 'eyes struck at,' must here mean 'happened to see.'

*Tí-ching* (22. e. 9), lit. 'iron evidence,' means 'strong testimony.'

*Lin*, the author of the paper addressed to the Queen of England, which is to be found on pages 23 and 24, was, like Yeh of recent notoriety, a good representative of the exclusive policy of the Chinese. He was an able writer, and a sincere upholder of the government which he served. He was the tool of the then dominant party in Peking, whose plan was to suppress the opium trade and to humble foreigners. His great literary work, the *Hai-kwò t'á-chí*, has been noticed on page 15 of Part II. Many errors exist in those parts of it which relate to foreign nations, but a good deal of information is to be found in it upon other subjects, which relate to China and the neighbouring countries.

<sup>a</sup> 告白 'a notice.'

<sup>b</sup> 其

<sup>c</sup> 於



accounts and vouchers be well authenticated, the persons present and the property still existing shall be dealt with by the Chinese and English authorities, according to the principles of justice, so as to manifest impartiality. And, according to the original stipulations, both these authorities shall prosecute in behalf of creditors, but in no case shall they be made responsible for them\*.

Art. VI. It is agreed that English merchants and others, residing at or resorting to the five ports to be opened, shall not go into the surrounding country beyond certain short distances, to be named by the local authorities in concert with the British consul, and on no pretence for purposes of traffic.

*Translation of Official Papers (a notice and a petition), v. native text, page 26.*

A prohibition against walking out after nightfall.

It has been agreed upon to forbid strictly any person walking out after nightfall, in order that the state of the neighbourhood may be peaceful.

When the city gates of the kingdom have been shut, the night watches shall be rung with the bell, to warn off persons of bad character; the country people shall sound little bells and strike the watchman's bamboo, diligently to keep in check thieves and robbers. These all are definite prohibitions. Who will dare to oppose and transgress? Of late the land has been in much confusion, thieves and robbers have been ungovernable, generally going out by night without restraint. *Such being the case*, how can they conveniently be taken up for examination? Thus, availing themselves of the darkness, they contrive to go on plundering until the morning dawns, while the people cannot sleep at peace on their pillows, and the lives of the household are in danger. Evils, how immeasurable! calamities, how great! This is the reason why, having called a meeting of the whole body, it has been determined to issue this strict prohibition. As soon as the dusk of evening comes on, it is forbidden for persons to walk abroad, until three quarters after the fifth watch, when they may go to and fro as they list. Every day, by turns, persons shall go the rounds, and, if they find any one transgressing this prohibition, they shall strike the gong as a signal, and whoever is found with a spear, a sword, a cross-bow, or a musket, shall certainly be punished, whoever he be. If, at the striking of the gong, any person does not come to seek out the matter, on the next day, in the morning, he shall be punished before all, and he shall not lightly be pardoned. Let, then, several copies of this notice be written out and posted up every where, that all passers by may know of this prohibition, and that those thieves, who crow like cocks (to get the gates opened) and who steal like dogs, may not presume too much on their powers. Respect this agreement.

---

\* The 5th clause is not given in full in the English copy, we have therefore consulted the student's benefit by taking another version, which follows the Chinese text more closely. (Cf. a version of this treaty given in the Chinese Repository, vol. XIII. p. 143.)

h. 5.

*T'ing chí-ch'í pín.*

h. 11.

*Shin-k'in Meü-meü k'in-pín.*

i. 1.

*Pín wei shì-tau liên-p'áng, k'ên ts'ing chí-ch'í, i shín hò-tsai-sé.*

i. 16.

*Chau-tè hò-yáng yí-sé, súi yǐ: "T'ien-ming," k'í-fí jín-sé! T'ang-*

j. 1.

*chú pū-shín, tsü-jén hò-k'í siáu-ts'áng; lá-tsau sú yǐ, súi q' yáng k'í*

j. 18.

*ch'í yǐ. Jō pū-yú wei fáng yǐ, k'í hái ts'áng yǐu pū-k'ò shíng yén.*

k. 4.

*P'í shì-tau-sháng, liàng páng liên-p'áng hái-mí, t'áng yǐu hò-chú,*

k. 18.

*tsüi yǐ yé-chò, tsüi p'áng hí yín-hò chí wí, h'ing-tsau-chí jín, yén-hò*

l. 5.

*wá k'í, tsü h'ing fán haü. Hwáng k'ín l'ung-t'ung chí tsü, wán-wá*

l. 19.

*tsiau-kán, súi shán-ts'au yǐ wei chí ch'ò-hò, q' shín p'áng chí sú i wei*

m. 6.

*lí há? T'áng pū chí k'í, shín wei pū-pián, lí-hò pín ts'ing. Lí-kai.*

m. 23.

*Chí-ch'í ch'ò líng hwüi chí, mién wei hò tsai. Tsé k'í tsü meü-t'ung shai*

n. 9.

*k'í yǐ, shá p'í tsé k'í-tsü siáng an q'. Wei-tsé pín k'au-fü wei chüi*

n. 26.

*kién, ch'én gán tsü fú lau-yé tai ts'ien shé h'ing.*

27. Dialogues and Phrases in the Mandarin Dialect (1), v. native text,  
page 27.

a. 1.

*Ngò yǐu yí-kién-sé-ts'ing k'íu ná. Shímmd sé-ts'ing? Fáng-sín shuo*

a. 16.

*pá! K'íu-ná k'í-ngò yí-pá-tau-tsé. K'í-ngò tsò ché-kó. K'én-k'íu Tá*

b. 4.

*yé ché-kó gán-tián. H'án ts'ing-yuén Tò-sié. Haü-shuo! Shou-liáu*

b. 18.

*ná-tí gán wáng-pū-liáu. Ní h'án chí-lí. Ngò kién-wei ná. Yuén-tí*

c. 4.

*shímmd? Pū-pí tò-lí. Ngò huán-hí ná. Pū kai-t'ang. Lí-t'ang.*

c. 19.

*Ní n'ng-k'au t-k'au ngò. Kiaü ngò tsò shímmd? Ní yí-shuo, ngò tsüi*

d. 5.

*tsò. Ní yau shímmd, ngò tsüi tsò shímmd. Pū-kán. Kiaü-ná t'í-ngò*

d. 21.

*wón Cháng sién-s'ang haü\*. Shí ngò t'í haü páng-yü. Liú-hia ché*

e. 5.

*mò-siè-kó lí-mau. Kiaü ngò shí-lí mò? Pū-yau. Ché-yáng haü*

e. 20.

*Ngò yau shuo yí-k'í-huó, k'ang-p'á t'í-tsüi ná. Süt-pián shuo. Ní*

f. 5.

*ts'ing-fán tá.—Shí pū-shí? Shí-tsai shí. Ngò shuo lau-shí huó*

f. 20.

*Kwò-jén shí ché-yáng. Shüi t-huó? Ngò siáng shí. Ngò shuo pū-shí*

g. 5.

*Tà-tü pa. Ní tü-sháng tò-shau? Yí liàng yín-tsé. Shuo-chín*

g. 19.

*Shuo-huáng. Kiaü-huó. Shuo hú-huó. Ngò fú-shí. Yí-t'ing t'í huó*

h. 3.

*Yí-k'í-jín shuo-liáu yí-tsé huóng, heü-lai súi-jén shuo shí-huó, mò*

h. 19.

*yüi jín sín. Fán-jín sé-huóng, tsüi tü-liáu k'én.—Pū-yau súi-k'í*

i. 5.

*tá-yíng. Ché-kó huán-yüi jín-sín mò? Ché-kó shí wáng-huóng yén.*

*Tr'ung-tü* (23. a. b. 12), lit. 'general-leader' or 'guide of all,' is the title given to the supreme governor of one or two provinces, and is nearly equivalent to our term *viceroy*.

*Siün-fü* (23. b. 23) is the title of the deputy governor of a province; the word itself would seem to imply that his duty was to see that peace was preserved,—*siün* means 'to go round' and *fü* 'to tranquillize.'

The Two *Hu* provinces are *Hu-pé* (north) and *Hu-nán* (south), and the Two *Kwang* provinces are *Kwang-tung* (east) and *Kwang-si* (west).

*Hwüi-t'ung* (23. c. 1), 'to unite together,' is also expressed by *hwüi-hó*.\*

*Chau-hwüi* (23. e. 3) 'communicate.' In the treaty which was negotiated by Lord Elgin, an article is inserted to render the use of this term obligatory when communications

\* This character should be 俟 (cf. p. 32. native text.)

A petition asking for the removal [of old houses].

M. M——, Gentleman, respectfully petitions.

He makes a representation respecting the mat-sheds in the market-place, and earnestly begs that they may be removed, in order to guard against the calamity of a conflagration. Although the misfortune of fire is indeed said to be "a judgment from heaven," still it is assuredly the work of man. If lamps and candles be not taken care of, on a sudden misery arises among the wretched screens; and if the cooking stoves be not looked after, presently misfortune comes, even the fish in the ponds (will not escape). If we do not prepare and guard against (fire), the evils arising therefrom will be beyond the power of words to tell.

The mat-sheds on both sides of the market-place are covered thickly together, and if they should take fire, there would be disastrous consequences. The matting is, moreover, a material easy of combustion, and passers by who were smoking would endanger it, and might set the whole on fire. Besides, now on the approach of the winter quarter, every thing is in a dry state, and the mountain grass, with which the sheds are thatched, might take fire, to which the latter have always been liable. And if they are not taken away, it will be very inconvenient indeed. This is the reason why I petition, and beg of your worship to order the officers to pull them down, in order to avoid the calamity of fire. This will assuredly not only benefit individuals, but it will truly avail in preserving the peace. Therefore this petition has been presented; and should you deign to consider it, a great favour will be conferred. We hasten to present this to your worship for approval and execution.

*Translation of Dialogues and Phrases in the Mandarin Dialect (1),*

*v. native text, page 27.*

I have something to ask of you. What is it? Speak freely! I want you to give me a knife. Do this for me. I beseech you, Sir, to do me this favour. Gladly! Many thanks! Very well! If I receive your favour I shall never forget it. You are very polite! I am troubling you. What do you want? Do not use so much formality. I like you! Nonsense! It is not! You may depend upon me. What do you want me to do? Directly you speak I will act. Whatever you want I will do it. I could not think of it. I beg of you to give my compliments to Mr. *Chang*. He is a good friend of mine. Lay aside so much of this etiquette. Do you wish me to forget my manners? No, indeed! This is a good way. I want to speak a word, *but* I fear that it may offend you. Say what you like! You are very kind.—Is it so or not? It is indeed so! I speak honestly. Certainly it is so. Who doubts it? I think so. I say it is not so. Let us bet. How much will you bet? A dollar (lit. 'an ounce'). To speak the truth. To speak falsely. Untruth. To speak nonsense. I swear. It is positively asserted. If a man speak once falsely, afterwards, although he speak the truth, nobody will believe him. Every man who tells a lie, throws away his reputation. Do not answer without thinking. Are there any who still

- i. 20. *Ngò wán-qr. Ngò pũ-kwoó shuó sié-huá. Shí-tí. Ká-tǎng tǎo*  
 j. 4. *shímmd? Yü shímmd k'ò tǎo tí? Já-kǐn ngò-mq̄n tǎo shímmd haú?*  
 j. 20. *Nì kǐ-ngò shímmd chü-tí? Ché-kó tǎng-mó-yáng pán-fú-qr. Tǎng-*  
 k. 6. *yí-tǎng, ngò ché-yáng tǎo pá. Nì siàng ché-yí-kién-sé-tǎng tǎng-*  
 k. 21. *mó-yáng? Tū-shí yí-kó-yáng.—Nì ts'ung ná-rí lai? Wáng ná-rí k'ú.*  
 l. 10. *Ngò k'ú Pě-kǐng. Ts'ung chü-rí lai. Ts'ing tsín-lai. Kín ngò lai.*  
 l. 24. *Lí-k'ái! Tseü-pá! K'ú-pá! Wáng-heú t'üi yí-tièn-qr. Lai ché-rí.*  
 m. 9. *Tǎng yí-huó-qr. Tǎng ngò lai. T'ā-mq̄n yí-tǎ k'ú-liáu. Pũ-yá*  
 m. 24. *ché-mó k'wai tseü. Nì tseü-tí t'ái-k'wai. Pũ-yá tǎng-sheü. Tsai*  
 n. 8. *ché-rí tǎo. Mq̄n kwán-liáu. K'ái-mq̄n. Ts'ang ché-rí kwó. Kwó-*  
 n. 21. *pũ-k'ú. Nì tiū-liáu shímmd? Ngò mǐ tiū shímmd. Wéi-shímmd?*  
 o. 6. *Yín-weí ngò shí-liáu yí-kién-tǎng-sí.—Kau-shíng shuó. Tí-shíng*  
 o. 21. *shuó. Nì shuó-tí t'ái-k'wai, pũ-nǎng tǎng-tí.*

28. Dialogues and Phrases in the Mandarin Dialect (2), v. native text,  
 page 28.

- a. 1. *Nì huó-shuó Chǔng-kwó huá mó? Nì shuó-liáu mó? Tsǔng mǐ-*  
 a. 15. *yiü t'ing-kién ché-kó. Meü-jǐn kau-sü-liáu ngò. Heü-lai ngò kau-*  
 a. 30. *sü t'ā. Nì shuó-liáu ché-kó mǐ-yüü? Mǐ-yüü. Ts'ing-wǎn ché-kó*  
 b. 15. *shí shímmd? Chǐ-tai ché-kó mó? Shuó-tě. Shuó-pũ-tě. Wéi-*  
 b. 29. *shímmd nǐ pũ tǎ-yǐng?—Nì t'ing-kién ngò shuó mó? Ngò t'ing-pũ-*  
 c. 15. *kién. Shuó ts'ing-ts'ü yí-tièn-qr. Lai ché-rí t'ing. Ngò lí ná-kó-jǐn*  
 d. 1. *yuén, t'ing-pũ-kién t'ā-tí-huá. Chín-lǎng-liáu ngò-tí qr-tò.—Nì tǎng-*  
 d. 18. *tě ts'ing t'ā-tí-huá mó? Nì tǎng-tě, t'ā shuó-kwó-tí? Ngò shuó-tí,*  
 e. 4. *nǐ tū tǎng-tě mó? Nì shuó-tí, ngò ts'üén tǎng-tě. Tū tǎng-tě. Tū*  
 e. 20. *pũ-tǎng-tě. Mǐng-pě-liáu mǐ-yüü? Ché-kó shín-mó í-sé; Tǎng-mó-*  
 f. 6. *yáng kiá-shuó. Ngò tsat-ní-t'eu-lí chǐ-tai. Pí-fāng pũ chǐ-tai, yiü*  
 f. 22. *shímmd kwán-hǐ? Ché-kó ngò pũ-kwó siàng shí ché-yáng.—Jín-tě t'ā*  
 g. 9. *mó? Kién-kwó t'ā kǐ-tsé nǐ? Pũ kǐ-tě tsé-sü. Wáng-liáu ngò mó?*  
 g. 25. *Ngò kǐ pũ ts'ing-ts'ü. Kǐ-tě hǎn-ts'ing. Siàng-pũ-k'í-lai: Siàng-k'í-*  
 h. 10. *lai-liáu. Nì kǐ sǐ? Sién-sāng kwei-kāng? Tō-tá nién-kǐ? Yü qr-*  
 h. 25. *shí sǐ. Nì pǐ-ngò tá. Nì tá-kai lü-shí tō sǐ. Ts'ü-liáu tsín mǐ*  
 i. 12. *yiü? Nì fú-mü tū tsat mó? Sién-fú sé-liáu yiü liàng-nién. Mǐ-tǐn*  
 i. 28. *tsat-kiá-liáu yiü sǎn-kó-yǐ. Yü kǐ-kó qr-tsé? Yü kǐ-weí líng-lǎng?*  
 j. 15. *Yü kǐ-weí kwei-nü? Sǎn-kó kǐ-niáng. Hüng-tí kǐ-kó? Tsat-tí tǎn*  
 k. 1. *ngò yí-kó, pǐ-tí tū sé-liáu. Nì shuó ché yí-kǐ-huá, ngò k'í-liáu yí-kó-*  
 k. 20. *nién-t'eu. Siàng-k'í-liáu shímmd? Mién-pũ-liáu sé.—T'ien-k'í hǎn-*  
 l. 4. *hai; ngò-mq̄n chǐ-ü-k'ú, kwáng-yí-kwáng pá. Ngò-mq̄n k'ú liáng-kw'á*  
 l. 17. *liáng-kw'á. Ngò-mq̄n sháng-ch'ing pá! Lú pũ-pièn;—pũ fāng-*  
 l. 29. *pièn;—pũ pièn-í. Yáú tsó-ché mó? Ngò shín-sháng juén-jó, mǐ-yüü lí-*  
 m. 15. *liáng tseü. Ngò tseü-pũ-tǎng. Yáú hǐng kǎn-lú, yáú hǐng shuó-té*  
 m. 29. *nǐ? Yáú sháng-ch'üén mó? Yáú kǐ-ts'áng-tí ch'üén? Hò-kí! nǐ lai*

are held between superior officers of each nation. *Chau-tě* (23. e. 17) means 'whereas, according as,' and is a common phrase in official papers. *T'ien-tsai* (23. c. 29), lit. 'the way of heaven,' means 'Divine Providence.' *T'ung* (23. d. 22), 'together with,' appears here to signify 'with reference to' or 'as for.'

believe in this? This is a falsehood. I was playing. I was only joking. Truly! What ought I to do? What can I do? If we should do this well, what opinion should you have of us? How shall we manage this? Wait a while, let us do it in this way. How do you think this thing is? It is quite the same.—Where do you come from? Where are you going? I am going to Peking. I am come from Court. Please to come in. Come near to me. Stand further off. You may go. Go away! Go behind; fall back a little. Come here! Wait a little while. Wait until I come. They went all together. Do not walk so fast. You walk too fast. Be quiet! Sit down here. The door is fastened. Open the door. Come over here. I cannot come over. What have you thrown away? I have not thrown any thing away. Why? Because I have picked up something.—Speak loud! Speak low! You speak too quickly, I cannot understand.

*Translation of Dialogues and Phrases in the Mandarin Dialect (2),  
v. native text, page 28.*

Do you know how to speak the Chinese language? Have you spoken? I have not indeed heard that. A certain man told me. Afterwards I told him. Did you say this or not? If you please, what is this? *or*, Allow me to ask what this is. Do you know this? I can say; I cannot say. What! do not you reply?—Do you hear what I say? I cannot hear. Speak a little more distinctly. Come here and listen. At a distance from that man, I cannot hear what he says. It has deafened my ears.—Do you understand clearly what he says? Do you understand what he said? What I said, did you quite understand? What you said I perfectly understood. I quite understood. I did not understand at all. Were you clear about it or not? What is the meaning of this? How do you explain it? I knew before you. Suppose I do not understand, what would be the consequence? I only think this is so.—Do you know him? How many times have you seen him? I do not remember the number of times. Have you forgotten me? I cannot recollect distinctly. I remember very well. I cannot think *or* recollect. I have just remembered. How old are you? What is your honourable age, Sir? How great is your age? *or*, How many are your years? I am twenty years (old). You are older than I am. You are (I should say) above sixty years (old). Are you married or not? Are your parents alive? My late father died two years ago. My mother married again three months ago. How many children have you? How many young gentlemen? How many young ladies? Three daughters (lit. 'misses'). Brothers, how many? I am by myself alone, the others are dead. When you uttered that expression, a thought arose in my mind. What did you think of? One cannot avoid death.—The weather is very fine, let us go out to take a walk. Let us go to take the air. Let us go into the city. The road is bad, (lit. 'not convenient,')—not in a good state,—not good for walking. Do you wish to ride? I am weak, I have not strength to walk. I cannot walk. Do you wish to go by land or by water? Will you go in a boat? What sized boat would you like? (lit. 'how many oared-boat?')

- n. 14. *ngò kwò hó pá? Kân-sîn! Ché-yí-ché-ch'uen mù-yiù woi mó? Yau-*  
 n. 29. *té-íng-tseù, yiù nì-fung, yiù t'ing-t'ó-fung. Yau tsai nà-lí sháng-*  
 o. 13. *gân? Tsai tá-mà-t'ó ná-lí. Lín-kín-liàu hò-pièn, hiá-má. Ché-lí*  
 o. 29. *hau yá!*

29. Dialogues and Phrases in the Mandarin Dialect (3), v. native text,  
 page 29.

- a. 1. *Ái-yá! ché-kò-tí-fang hên-hau-k'án;—wón-hò-tí, liàng-shwáng-tí!*  
 a. 16. *K'án shú tú k'ái-liàu huó-qr. Ché-yí-kên ló-liàu yó-tsè. Mò-tsè shé-*  
 b. 4. *liàu. Ní fà-hau mó? Shí-tsai kwón-kiuén-liàu. Tsai-ché-kò ts'ing-*  
 b. 18. *tsau-sháng t'í-chò, hau. Tsén ná-kò shú-lín. Tsai ché-sié shú-tí-hiá*  
 c. 4. *hên-hau-tí yín-liàng. Kín-nièn kwò-tsè tó. Shú tó k'ái-liàu kwò-tsè*  
 c. 20. *Kín-nièn, nièn-fung. Kiu-nièn shí huáng-nièn. Chá-lí yiù hên-*  
 d. 3. *hau-tí p'ín-kwò, shá-lí, lí-tsè, ying-t'á. Ngò n'ing-yau hò-t'á, huó-*  
 d. 19. *shí lí-tsè. Ngò hên siàng-k'í t'á-qr, kú-tsè, kán-tsè, tsóng-tsè. Ché-*  
 e. 7. *sié mei-tsè káng hau. Yiù p'í-t'á má mó? Ché tó-shau ts'ien yí-kín!*  
 e. 23. *Mai-té sz-shí-kó tá-ts'ien yí kín. Mai shí-kí kín pá!—T'ien wán-liàu.*  
 f. 10. *Jí-t'ó yau ló-shán. T'ing-yí-huó t'ien tsíu hē liàu. Kw'at tsou pá;*  
 f. 25. *ní-fá-liàu. K'í wán-fán. T'ien-k'í tsóng-mó-yáng-hau? T'ien-k'í*  
 g. 9. *làng. T'ien yín-liàu. Ché-kò wán-sháng hau t'ien-k'í. Yiù ch'á-*  
 g. 22. *k'í. Yiù yín-tsai, k'án-p'í-kién s'ing-sí. Luán-k'í-fung lai-liàu.*  
 h. 6. *Shí yí-kó páu-fung. T'ien-k'í ch'áng-pièn. Hau hiá-yú. Hiá*  
 h. 19. *pó-tsè. Hiá-sí. S'í-huá k'ái liàu. Tà-lí. Lúit-hiàng. Tà-shén.*  
 i. 3. *Lúit tà-sí-liàu yí-kó-jín. Fung-chú. Fung-tá. Páu-fung kwò-k'í-*  
 i. 18. *liàu, k'án-té-kién t'ien-hung. Shí kó hau t'ien-k'í t'í p'ing-k'í. Yiù-*  
 j. 3. *wá. Jí ch'í mán-mán-tí, tsíu sán-liàu. Hiá-lí. Hiá-shuáng.—*  
 j. 17. *Shímó shí-heú? Kí-hiá-chung? P'í-wán. Huóit-kiá k'í pá!*  
 j. 30. *Huán yiù-shí-heú, tsai sháng-wú. Chá-p'í-tó yí-hiá-chung. Tà-*  
 k. 14. *liàu yí-hiá sán-ké. Huán mù-yiù tà sán-hiá qr-ké. Ní tsóng-mó*  
 k. 30. *chí-tsai? T'ing-kién chung tà-liàu. Ngò siàng p'í-shí ché-yáng chí*  
 l. 14. *K'án nì-tí piàu. Ngò-tí piàu tsou-tí-k'wai p'í-tí. Piàu mán k'í-*  
 l. 29. *fán. Sháng-k'án jí-kwé. Shá-tsè-piàu tsai ná-lí?—Ní huán-kí*  
 m. 14. *ná-kò shí-heú? Chán-t'ien shí tsíu-hau-tí. Ché-kò t'ien-k'í wón-*  
 m. 29. *hò-tí, yé p'í-jí, yé p'í-làng. Ché p'í-wán chán-t'ien, wán shí t'ing-*  
 n. 15. *t'ien. Shú tú mù-yiù fà-yá. Ché hiá-t'ien jí-té-hên. Ngò ch'á-liàu*  
 o. 1. *hán, yau jí-sí. Tsung mù-k'í-té ché-yáng jí. K'ái-t'ing hú-tó t'í*  
 o. 17. *mù-sí-tsau, Yau shéu chuáng-kiá; kó-wán-liàu chuáng-kiá. Tsíu-*  
 o. 30. *t'ien.*

30. Dialogues and Phrases in the Mandarin Dialect (4), v. native text,  
 page 30.

- a. 2. *Sháng-hiò.—Ní ché-yáng kw'at wáng ná-lí páu. Ngò sháng-hiò.*  
 a. 15. *Ngò yé wáng ná-lí k'í. T'ing yí-chén-yén. P'í-yau mai-tai. Tsai*  
 a. 30. *ngò-mén t'ó-lí tsou-tí ná-yí-kó shí shíu? Shí ngò-mén t'áng-hiò-tí.*  
 b. 17. *Tou-mén tú yí-kwé-qr tsou pá!—Ní wéi-shímó lai-tí ché-mó chí.*

Friend! Take us over the river! Gladly! Has this boat no masts? We must row; there is a contrary wind,—the wind is right a-head. Where do you want to go ashore? At that great jetty there! When you have approached the shore let go the anchor. Here is a good place!

*Translation of Dialogues and Phrases in the Mandarin Dialect (3),*

*v. native text, page 29.*

Ah! this country is very pretty! pleasant and cool! See the trees have all blossomed. This one has shed its leaves. The corn is ripe. Are you spent? I am indeed tired. To fling ourselves down on this green grass will be pleasant. Enter that forest. Under the trees it is very shady. This year there is plenty of fruit. Many trees have borne fruit. This year was an abundant year. Last year was a year of scarcity. Here there are very good apples, pears, plums, and cherries. I prefer walnuts or chestnuts. I am very fond of eating peaches, small oranges, or large thin-skinned oranges or coolie oranges. Those plums are better. Have you any grapes to sell? They cost how much a pound? I can sell them at forty large cash a pound. Buy a few pounds!—The day is very fine. The sun is going to set. Wait a while, it will soon be dark. If you walk fast, you will be wearied. Eat your evening meal. How is the weather? The weather is cold. The sky is overcast. This evening it is fine weather. It is damp. It is cloudy; I cannot see the stars. The wind has risen in gusts. It is a gale. The weather is ever changing. It rains hard. It hails. It snows. It is snowing in flakes. It thunders. The thunder roars. It lightens. The thunder (bolt) has killed a man. The wind blows. The wind is high. The storm is past, we can see the rainbow. It is a sign of fair weather. It is misty. The sun will come out by-and-by, then it will be dispersed. The dew is falling. The hoarfrost is falling.—What time is it? What o'clock is it? Not late. Let us go home! There is time (enough) yet, it is still forenoon. It is nearly one o'clock. It has struck one and three quarters. It has not yet struck three and two quarters. How do you know? I heard the clock strike. I do not think it is so late. Look at your watch. My watch goes fast, it will not agree. Your watch is slow, how many minutes? Go and look at the sun-dial. Where is the sand-glass? Do you like this season? Spring is the best. This weather is pleasant; it is neither hot nor cold. This is not like spring; it is like winter. The trees have not yet budded. This summer it is very hot. I am perspiring, I shall die of heat. I never experienced such heat. We ought to have a large crop of millet. You should reap. I have reaped. Autumn.

*Translation of Dialogues and Phrases in the Mandarin Dialect (4),*

*v. native text, page 30.*

On going to school.—Where are you running so fast? I am going to school. I am going there too. Wait a minute. Don't loiter. Who is that walking in front of us? It is our school-fellow. Let us all walk together!—Why do you come so late? I was up late last night, and could not rise early. At what

- c. 5. *Ngò tsò-jí ngau-liàu yè, pû-náng tsau k'í-lai. Ní shí k'í-hiá-chung*  
 c. 21. *k'í-lai-tí? Ní hau-làn-tó. Wéi-shím-mò ts'ien-jí pû lai? Nà yí-jí-sé*  
 d. 9. *ts'ing hân-máng, pû-tê k'ùng-qr lai. Liáu-lí shí-sù tí sé-ts'ing*  
 d. 24. *sháng-t'ê yíu-tí wéi-hièn pû-shau. Jò p'í-jín m'ing-ní pá-liáu, tsau*  
 e. 10. *tí nì-tí sê-fú m'ing-ní, pû-t'ing, ché-kò liáu pû-tê; huáng-tsè nì t'ân*  
 e. 28. *kò-liáu nì-tí sé-ts'ing yíu tá kuôn-hí. Sùl-pièn t'á tà, pû-wéi yáu*  
 f. 15. *liáu nì-tí p'ân-fân. Ché-sân-t'ien nì pû nién-shí, pû-hau. Tsai pû*  
 g. 1. *yáu ché-yáng. Ts'ien yí-tsé nì lai ché-lí, ngò fân-fú-liáu nì shím-mò?*  
 g. 18. *K'ú nì-tí fáng tsó. Tái nì-tí mau-tsé. K'án-nì-tí shí. Yú-pí nì*  
 h. 5. *yáu péi-tí-shí. T'ing-m'ing! Nién-wán-liáu mù-yíu? Huôn m'á*  
 h. 18. *yíu. Ní p'í-m'ô-yén tú yíu-liáu mò? Ché-kò mai tsé shím-mò shing-*  
 i. 4. *yín? Yín mai. Tseng-mò k'iaí-shuò? Yíu tsáng tí í-sé. Tsung*  
 i. 17. *mù-yíu k'án-kién ché-yáng-tí yí-kò-tsé. Ché-yí-p'ân-shí nân-tung.*  
 j. 3. *Ngò mù-yíu hú-tó tí k'ung-fú. Yín-wéi ngò kai-táng k'án-k'ú mai*  
 j. 19. *tung-sí; ling-wai huôn yíu p'í-tí sé-ts'ing kai-táng pán. Ní siau-sin*  
 k. 5. *mèi-jí nién-tí-shí; ling-wai yí-kò-yí huôn yáu-tsó liàng-pièn w'ân*  
 k. 21. *ch'ang.—Ní hau yá? Hân-hau. Ní yung-liáu fán mò? K'í-liáu.*  
 l. 5. *Ling-ts'ên hau? Kia-fú hau. Ní tí k'íu-k'íu tseng-mô-yáng? T'á j'á*  
 l. 20. *k'ín p'í-t'êu-tí hau-té-tó. M'ing-jí tsai-kién! Ngò kai-táng sung-hing.—*  
 m. 7. *T'ien tsiang-hé. Tsau-liáu shui-k'íu tí shí-hé. Hò-kí, nì t'ung ngò lai.*  
 m. 23. *P'á-k'wei mò? Pû-p'á. Fáng-hiá w'ân-ch'ang. Liáu-hiá t'ang. M'á*  
 n. 6. *t'ang. M'ing-t'ien tsau-siè k'í-lai, k'iaú-ngò. Ngò kai-táng ts'ing-tsau*  
 n. 20. *k'í-lai. Yí-t'ing k'í-té mò? Yí-t'ing k'í-té. Tà-hò. T'ien-t'ang. Mù*  
 o. 6. *yíu hò-shí. Hò-méi-qr.—Shui tà-m'ân? Shí shui? Ngò huôn mù*  
 o. 21. *yíu k'í-lai. Tsau sing-liáu. T'ien tá-liáng-liáu.*

31. Extract from the *Ching-yin tsüi-yau*, v. native text, page 31.

- a. 1. *Yí-kò-jín hió Kuôn-huá lai, tsó shím-mò tí nì? T'êu-yí-kién yú-pé*  
 a. 18. *tsé-kí tsiang-lai ch'ü-shin tsó-kuôn, sé-heu sháng-sé, lín-tí shü-yuèn,*  
 b. 4. *yáu tsó yí-kò yíu-p'ân-sé-tí Kuôn yá! K'í-ts'z, tsíu tsó tá-k'í-sh'ang,*  
 b. 21. *huò k'ái h'ang-tièn, huò w'ang wai-sáng tsau shuü, yáu-tsó yí-kò m'á*  
 c. 6. *ü-tí k'í-sh'ang. Tsai k'í-ts'z, tsíu-shí kú-k'ia pá-tsé,—nì shí kó yíu*  
 c. 23. *í-shí-tí jín, yíu-t'í-mièn-tí jín, tsai hiang-tsü-chung, nién-ch'ang yí*  
 d. 9. *ch'ang, hiang-ts'ing tsü-sé, shau-pû-liáu; yé yíu kién pá sé-qr, yáu t'í*  
 d. 25. *jín-k'ia liáu-tí liáu-tí; yé té kién-kién tí-fang, pá sé-qr shuò kó tí-sí*  
 e. 14. *ts'ing-tsé, yí-tsé wéi-kú hiang-tsü, qr-tsé pau-hú m'ân-met; yuèn-shí wéi*  
 f. 1. *ché s'ân-m'ân k'í-kién, ping pû shí shuò k'í-k'ü Kuôn-huá, tsai tá-k'ia*  
 f. 17. *sháng, nau-wán í-qr, siau-huá jín-k'ia, h'ê-hung jín-k'ia, huôn-hiün*  
 g. 2. *jín-k'ia, tsíu suàn-liáu sé-ló. Sò-tí nì-m'ân tsung-yáu pá tá-fang tí*

*Jín* (23. e. 24) 'benevolence, kindness,' see note on p. 28 of Part II.

*Wá sò-p'ü-féu* (23. e. 26) 'it overshadows every thing:' cf. Art. 422 of Part I.

The repetition of *ping* (23. f. 6. and 8) means 'both'—'and,' or 'at once'—'and.' In classical compositions, the Chinese are fond of using *chung* 'centre' (23. f. 11) and *sin* 'heart' (23. i. 12) for the origin or the moving principle of that with which it is joined.

*Tsz* — *í-lai* (23. f. 14), 'from — to the present time,' is a good example of this form of construction.



o'clock did you rise? You are very lazy. Why did you not come the day before? On that day I had to do some very urgent business and I could not find time. To managing affairs in the world there are obstacles not a few. If any one else command you, you are content; but if your tutor bid you do any thing, you do not obey. This will not do. Besides, if you shirk your work, great consequences will result. No matter whether he beats you or not, you do not hasten to your duty. You have not learnt any thing for these three days;—this is bad. Don't do it again. Once, on a former occasion, when you came here, what did I order you to do? Go to your room and sit down! Take your cap! Look at your book! Prepare your lesson to repeat. Obey! Have you learnt your lesson or not? Not yet. Have you your pencil, ink, and inkstone? What is the sound and tone of this (*mai*) character? The sound is *mai*. What is its meaning? It has the meaning of *burying*. I have never seen such a character as this. This book is difficult to understand. I have not much time, because I have to fetch many things; and besides, I have other things to do. You take care and learn your book every day; besides every month write two chapters of elegant composition.—Are you well? Very well! Have you dined? I have. Is your good father well? My father is well. How is your uncle? He is much better than he was formerly. I shall see you again to-morrow. I will see you out!—It is getting dark. Bed-time has arrived. Friend! Come with me! Are you afraid of ghosts? No! Put down the mosquito curtains. Set down the lamp. Put out the lamp. Get up rather early in the morning and call me. I must get up early. Will you be sure to remember? I will certainly remember. Strike a light. Light the lamp. I have no flint. Coal.—Who is knocking at the door? Who is it? I am not up yet. Awake quickly, it is broad day-light.

*Translation of the Extract from the Ch'ing-yin ts'ui-yai, v. native text, page 31.*

When a man learns the Mandarin dialect, what is it for? In the first place, it is to prepare himself for future advancement as a Mandarin, so as to be able to attend on his superiors and to superintend his subordinates, and to be an officer of ability. In the next place, if he would be a mercantile man of the first class, whether he open an establishment (at home), or travel abroad in the provinces by land and water, he ought to be a shrewd and clever merchant. And again, even if a man must stay at home and do nothing much, being a man of independence and respectability, still among his country relatives, in the course of months and years, their affairs will not be a few, and each of these he will have to consider for them. And, if he see clearly his ground, he may take each matter and speak of it in detail and with much acuteness, then he will at once have a regard for his kinsmen's interests, and, at the same time, protect his own door. Now it is for these reasons, and lest also you be not able to speak a few sentences of Mandarin on the great thoroughfares, of a noisy, joking character, to make fun of people, or to deceive and make fools of them, that you must make it your business to learn Mandarin. Therefore you should take language of a liberal character, language suitable for receiving and waiting

- g. 19. *huó-qr, tòi-tai chàng-sháng tì huó-qr, ying-cheu pâng-yiù tì huó-qr,*  
 h. 5. *kiáu-taù wàn-peí tì huó-qr, shì huân tì-hiá-jìn tì huó-qr, taù-lià*  
 h. 22. *waí-t'èu, yiù kiáu-kwân tòi-fú tì huó-qr, tui chò mai-mai jìn tì huó-*  
 i. 9. *qr, yáng-yáng tui-yiù kó kw'ân-shì. Yáu tsai ché sháng-t'èu liú-sin-*  
 i. 24. *ts'ài-shí ching-king tì yā! T'au pū-wàng-liàu hió Kwân-huó tì ché*  
 j. 9. *yi-fān kung-fū yā!*  
 k. 2. *Ni tso hió-sāng tì jìn, sháng shū-fāng nién-shū, shīm-mò-tū-yau*  
 k. 17. *yiù kó kwei-kù; ts'ing-tsau k'è-lai, si-liàu lién, hō-liàu ch'á, pín-kau*  
 l. 3. *tiē-tiē mā-mā, hai-qr wàng shū-fāng k'ú-liàu, shwò-kwò ch'á heú, pui*  
 l. 19. *k'í shū-pàn, ch'ú tá-màn-k'èu, twān-twān ching-ching, chūn-chūn ching-*  
 m. 3. *cháng tì k'ú, liàng-chè-kiá pū yau huón-ti'au, liàng ché yèn-ts'ing pū-*  
 m. 18. *yau huón-ts'iaù tūng-si, yi-chi tsuè tau shū-fāng li-t'èu, pà shū pàn*  
 n. 4. *fāng-hiá, wáng Shing-jìn sháng-t'èu, tso kó yě, yiù t'í nién-sāng tso*  
 n. 19. *kó yě, jèn-heú tso-chò nién-shū, pà shū pei-tè shū-shū qr tì, ts'ài sūng*  
 o. 7. *tau sién-sāng chò-sháng; pei-shū shi-heú, yiù yau yí-k'í-k'í lín-yá k-*  
 o. 24. *ch'í, pū-yau hán hū tso-leú!*

## 32.

## The Epistolary Style, v. native text, page 32.

- a. 2. *Wán-heú.*  
 a. 5. *Kiù ts'í chēn Hān, wí hū jū yuén; kín wón t' tsing Kiāng yiu, tē*  
 a. 21. *huó jī sīn, yīn-siēn ch'í sē, k'āng shūn wú-méi. Hq̄n pū-nāng ch'á-ch'í*  
 b. 6. *qr fī-ts'āng tso-yiù, kwān shing huó qr lín tē yēn yē! Kín yuén*  
 b. 21. *háng-piēn, tì ts'ie yí-hāng, i shūn ts'í-kw'ān. Kiēn ts'ing kín gān; Jū*  
 c. 6. *wei kién nién.*  
 d. 2. *Tā.*  
 d. 4. *Shing ming kwán qr, fī yí-jī i. Huat i jìn qr pū-kién, ching*  
 d. 19. *ts'ing ts'í yī kién-kiá, nai huó hán hiá pān, yuén-jū tì mién. Tq̄n kiá*  
 e. 5. *sāng-ping ch'í k'í-k'í. Hō hing jū ch'í! Wei shí siēn shī ch'í yā, chuēn shū*  
 e. 22. *jīn jīn, wí mién p'í-yē ts'ān-fū, ts'ē-ts'āng nūi-kw'ei qr. T'āng yiu*  
 f. 7. *liàng-yuén, tē yau huó kú, ts'í ts'ān ts'ui lq̄n wón. K'ò pū-lín k'í-jīn*  
 f. 23. *shēn méi yī ts'ien i. Shí wáng! Shí t'au! K'ing ts'ē ts'at fū.*

The English are variously characterized in this composition either as *fán* (23. g. 2) 'foreign,' (a word used originally for the inhabitants of the southern frontier of China,—the southern barbarians,) or as *t* (24. c. 20. and 24. k. 23) 'the western barbarians,' a tribe on the western frontier of China. Foreign nations are generally called *waí-kwò* (23. h. 4) 'outside kingdoms,' and *si-yáng-kwò* 'western ocean kingdoms.'

The Supplementary Treaty, a part of which is given on p. 25 of the Chrestomathy, was published at Hongkong, in July 1844, by Sir John F. Davis, who was then Governor of Hongkong. It contains the very important provisions that the five ports of Canton, Amoy, Fu-chew, Ningpo, and Shanghai should be opened to British trade, and for the resort and residence of British merchants; by it the close system of the Hong merchants at Canton was broken up, and free-trade allowed with any native merchants. This treaty was supplementary to the treaty of Nanking, which is indeed referred to in it: (cf. *kiāng-nān* &c. 25. j. 11.)

*Hān* (32. a. 8) or *Hān K'ing-cheu* was an eminent statesman, whose friendship reflected his own bright fame on those who enjoyed it. Intercourse with him annobled the recipient

upon seniors and superiors, phrases for polite intercourse with friends, the expressions appropriate for instructing young people, and language for calling upon inferiors. And when you go out of doors you will require expressions to use to mandarins, and others to address to merchants. There are models for all these (kinds of expression). You should pay attention to what has been said above: then it will be all right! Then you will not have wasted your time in studying the Mandarin dialect.

If you are a young student, you go up to school to study; now every thing has a rule. Rise early; and having washed your face and drunk your tea, announce to your parents that their son is going to school. Having said that, wrap up your book, go out at the front door, and proceed (to school) in a becoming manner. Your feet should not be skipping disorderly, nor your eyes be listlessly gazing at every thing. But proceed straight into the school-house, take your book and lay it down, reverently look up to the sage above and make a bow, then make a bow to the tutor, and afterwards sit down to study. Having learnt off your lesson perfectly, then present it to your tutor and lay it on his desk. When you say your lesson, you should repeat every sentence distinctly and fluently, you should not mumble or leave out any words.

*Translation of the Passages in the Epistolary Style, v. native text, page 32.*

A letter of greeting.

For a long time I have looked reverently to *Han*, but have as yet not attained my desire. Recently I heard that you had removed your banner to the River's right, and that your virtue increases, and is renewed daily; my private feelings of joy become deeper, whether awake or asleep. Would that I were able to put on wings and fly to hover on your right and left! To behold your abounding progress, and to listen with delight to your gracious words! At present I am fortunately able to despatch a letter, and I just employ one line, in order to manifest my accumulated feelings of respect, and to wish you wealth and happiness. Humbly I bow, considering that you know my thoughts.

Reply.

Your flourishing reputation is ever sounding in mine ears, and that daily. I cherish kind regards for him whom I do not see. My feelings are just like those towards a distant relative, and in the favours conferred by his flowery pencil, I seem to see him face to face. I respectfully salute you with gratification on the fulfilment of my longings for peace. What fortune like this! But the praises which you have lavished upon me are simply such as belong to a really good man, and not to an insignificant and rude countryman; and they only increase my confusion. If a convenient opportunity should arise, pray accept my invitation, and favour me with your regard, that we may decant our wine and chat about literature. Let not our past differences stand in the way of our former esteem. This is my hope! This is my prayer! Respectfully I offer this in reply.

h. 3.

*Kw' é-wù.*

- i. 1. *Liáng-páng kiù-kw'ü, yün mau ts'üên-wá, kiáng-hai chí tsau jün t'ái*  
 i. 15. *shün. K'í tē yün yuên tsai yi-fäng hú? Wéi shé tsé sün wáng häng,*  
 i. 30. *täng pü fú ts'ên sú-huüi wá tsé chí tsai, chí kwai hán yäng. Huáng-*  
 j. 15. *héu huüi yüü k'í, pü-tsai yü shí, yuên tsai yü t'ien; k'í k'í kó-tsé nù*  
 k. 2. *lí k'ò q'r. Tsé yuên häng-piën, fú-shäng shéu-kün yi-fäng, siáu-tsü*  
 k. 17. *liäng-pà; sié wí hiü-wü, püen pü-tsü täng mǐ lí chí t'au, q'r ts'ien lí*  
 l. 4. *ngó-mau. Wü-häng ts'ing chung, liäng pü tsü-tsé q'r yi-liên yü-lü chí*  
 l. 20. *lù-jün ì. Chú wéi chí-ché, mǐ t'au nǐ, wá k'í piën k'í liú-shün.*  
 m. 7. *Kün tsé yuên-tá, shün-ts'ing fú-gán, ping héu kün chí, ping héu*  
 m. 20. *käng neng. Shäng*

*Meü-meü Hüng-t'ái Tá-jün wän-kí,**Yü-tí Meü-meü tsé tün.*

## 33. Poetical Extracts (Ancient and Modern), v. native text, page 33.

a. 2.

*Kü-shí. 1. Tá-füng kō.*

a. 5.

*Tá-füng k'í hí!—Yün fí yäng!*

a. 16.

*Wéi kiá hai-nüi hí!—Kwéi kü hiäng!*

a. 24.

*Gán tē mǎng sá hí!—Shéu sá fäng!*

b. 5.

*2. Chän-küng kiü.*

b. 9.

*Tsö-yé füng-k'ái lü tsing-t'au, Wü-yäng ts'ien tien yü lün kau,*

b. 23.

*Ping-yäng kō-wü sün ching ch'ung, Liên-wai chän-hán tsé miên-p'au.*

c. 9.

*Wü-yên. 3. Yü-kü.*

c. 15.

*Kwéi-tsien süi i-tung, Ch'ü mǎn kiá yüü yäng;*

c. 25.

*Tü wá wai-wü kiên, Süi tsé yüü-kü ts'ing!*

d. 5.

*Wü yü yé lai-kwó, Pü-chí chän ts'au säng!*

d. 15.

*Ts'ing-shän huü i-shü, Nüü-tsü jüü shé mǎng.*

d. 25.

*Shí yü tsü-jün ngau, Huó süi ts'iau-ché häng.*

of his favours, and his approbation was held to be a great recommendation for honourable employment: (cf. Gonçalves' *Arte China*, Historical Extracts, No. 130.) This name is used therefore, by way of praise, and in honour of the person's reputation, to whom the letter is addressed. Such allusions in letters sometimes make the epistolary style difficult to be understood, and they always defy a literal rendering.

*It-tsing* (32. a. 15), 'remove-banner,' here means to 'change your residence.'

*Kiáng-yü* (32. a. 17), 'the River's right,' is put for the city of Nan-king, which is situated on the right bank of the Great River, the *Yang-tz* ('son of the ocean').

The student will observe the peculiar terseness and formality of the phraseology in the epistolary style, which abounds also in allusions of various kinds. This does not imply, however, any great degree of learning in the writer, for the phrases suitable for fashionable letter-writing are set down in a book, which is known to all educated persons: (cf. Part II. p. 12. 26. *Kiáng-há chí-tü fün-yün*.)

*Yün-sien* or *hün-sien* (32. a. 23) 'joyful expectations.'

*Ch'á-ch'í* (32. b. 4), 'to insert wings,' is a phrase peculiar to this style.

A letter sent with a present.

My good friend, you have been long absent, not the slightest sound of you has reached us. The navigation of the river has been much interrupted. How can it be said that we are living in the same country? But I think myself that we should forget the present aspect *of our affairs*, and not be again careful about stemming the torrent with vain regrets about those who have forgotten us. How much more when *we know that* a meeting time will arrive, not indeed in this world, but, we hope, in heaven. Let us each console ourselves thus, and use our best endeavours to this end, and it will be well. By this opportunity I beg to send you, by the bearer, a pocket-handkerchief and two small knives, things valueless in themselves: they are not worthy to be sent as presents, but they are foreign curiosities, and though insignificant things, they show my good feelings. I can well suppose that in viewing them you will pity the poor stupid little travellers. After due reverence to your lord, I hope you will remember me, and in your prayers bear me for a moment in mind. Respectfully at this distance I communicate, wishing you tranquillity and happiness, as well as present good fortune and perfect peace.

To be placed upon the desk of my honourable and worthy elder brother M. M.,

With the salutations of his humble servant M. M.

*Translation of the Poetical Extracts (Ancient and Modern), v. native text,*  
page 33.

Ancient poetry. 1. The song about the high wind.

A high wind arises!—The clouds come flying along!  
Majestic heaves the ocean!—We return to the old abode!  
Peace we possess, and heroes!—to keep us on every side!

2. The ballad about the Spring-palace, by *Wang Chang-ling*.

Last night the peach tree by the well bloomed forth  
In the temple before *Wi-yang*, when the moon was at her full,  
*Ping-yang* danced and sang with ever-increasing grace,  
Or without the porch-screen in cool of spring she wore a quilted robe.

Verses of five syllables. 3. The hermit, by *Wei Ying-wi*.

The noble and the mean, although they differ in rank,  
Alike proceed from home, and have their plans for gain.  
Here by myself no outward things disturb me.  
Freely am I come to dwell in this retirement.  
The small rain by night falls all around,  
The grass buds forth in spring I know not how,  
The blue mountain, anon, gleams with the rising sun,  
The little birds keep singing as they fly about my cot,  
Oft-times I join the traveller on his way,  
Oft follow, perhaps, the woodman in his rounds,

- e. 5. *Tsz tâng ăn kiên-liú, Shút wei pò shí-yáng ?*
- e. 17. 4. *Kuó tsüè kiá.*
- e. 21. *Tsz-jí chàng huân yín, Fí kuân yàng sít líng !*
- f. 1. *Yèn k'ân jín tsín tsüí, Hò jín từ wei sít ?*
- g. 2. *Liú-shí—Wú-yén liú. 5. Yü-chou yé yín.*
- g. 14. *Liáng-fúng ch'üi yé-yü, Siáu-sé túng hàn-lín,*
- g. 24. *Ching yüè kau-táng yén, Nàng wáng ch'í mủ sìn,*
- h. 4. *Kiün-chúng í kién wò, Sê-sháng chúng kiá-yín :*
- h. 14. *Pú-tsò piên ch'ing-tsíang, Shút ch'í gạn yú shín.*
- i. 2. 6. *Súng Hán-lín Cháng Sê-mà Nán-hai lè-pí.*
- i. 13. *Kuón-mièn t'ung nân-kí, Wán-cháng ló sháng-t'at,*
- i. 23. *Cháu ts'ung sán tién k'ú, Pí tsáu pè mán k'ái.*
- j. 3. *Yè-kuón năng huò-fá, Chàn-fán si yú lai.*
- j. 13. *Pú-ch'í ts'ang hai-sháng, T'ien-k'ien k'í-shí huóit.*
- k. 5. *Tsi yén liú. 7. Yü-chou sìn-sút tsò.*
- k. 15. *K'ú-sút K'ing-nân met sè sủ, Kín-nièn Kí-pé sủ jù met.*
- k. 29. *Kúg ch'í jín-sé hò ch'ang-tíng, Tsié hí nièn-huò k'ú fú-lai.*
- l. 13. *Piën-chín-shú kó liên-jí túng, K'ing-ch'ing liáu-hò ch'è mng k'ái*
- l. 27. *Yáu-yáu s'í hiáng Chàng-ân j'í, Yuen sháng nân-shán shou y'í p'í.*
- m. 12. *Wú yén p'at liú. 8. P'ó-tí huat kù.*
- n. 1. *Jí-lò ts'ang-kiung wán, T'ing-jau wén t'ù-fung.*
- n. 11. *Ch'ing lín Pá-tsò kuò, T'at mủ Hán-wáng kung.*
- n. 21. *Huáng fú j'ing Cheü tién, Shín shán sháng Yü kung.*

*Tsz-yü* (32. b. 9) must here mean literally 'on the right and left,' not 'attendants' or 'officers' as the phrase commonly signifies.

*Hóng-piën* (32. b. 21) is the regular phrase, in letters, for 'sending a letter.' *Hóng* means literally 'a swan or wild goose,' and is applied figuratively to a 'letter-carrier.' *Piën* commonly signifies 'convenience, opportunity.'

*Pú wei kiên-nièn* (32. c. 5) 'I bow and consider that you know my thoughts.' *Kiën* 'to mirror back, to reflect.'

*Kí-k'è* (32. e. 8), lit. 'hunger and thirst,' expresses 'intense longing,' and here stands as a noun. It is qualified by *sung-ping* (32. e. 5) 'the growth of peace,' then the whole expression forms the object of the verb *kiat* 'to dissipate, to dissolve.'

*T'sân-tsai lán-wán* (32. f. 14), lit. 'bottle-wine discourse-letters,' which has been translated, 'decant our wine and chat about literature,' might have been, 'take a glass of wine together and discuss the subject of letters.'

*T'sien-lí ngô-máu* (32. l. 2), lit. 'thousand miles goose feathers,' appear to be put for 'foreign curiosities.'

The specimens of ancient and modern poetry, which are given on page 33, present in some parts even greater difficulties than the epistolary phraseology. The ancient poetry of the Chinese was irregular; each verse consisted of an equal number of syllables, and assimilated in rhyme and ending. But this was not always according to strict rule, or at equal distances. The metre of modern verse consists commonly of five (*wai-yén shí*—33.

I am happy in my fortuneless and humble lot,  
Yet who can say that I mock at the world's glory?

4. The man too fond of wine, by *Wang Tsi*.  
This day till evening let us drink,  
Nor care for our reasoning souls!  
Our eyes see that all love wine,  
Why then should we alone abstain?

Stanzas of eight verses.—Verses of five syllables.

5. The nocturnal banquet at *Yü-cheü*, by *Chang Shuo*.  
The cold blast blows, the night rain comes down,  
A desolate moaning shakes the wintry woods,  
But here in the high hall there is feasting,  
It makes me forget that my evening of life draws on.  
Among those soldiers it is meet to flourish the spear.  
In that gay crowd they repeat the flageolet's note:  
He who has not been the governor of a state  
Can never know the depth of favour given.

6. To the Academician *Chang Sz-mà* going to *Nan-hai* to erect an epitaph.  
Chaplets and wreaths extend to the southern pole,  
Fair words are scattered on the elevated cross,  
Commands by three high officers are sent,  
An epitaph for the southern barbarians is revealed.  
On the hostleries of the wild thick flowers shoot forth,  
On the white sails in spring-tide the small rain falls.  
We know not when, from the vast ocean,  
The messengers of the throne may return. By *Tu Fu*.

Verses of seven syllables. 7. Made in *Yü-cheü* at the new year.  
Last year the plum-tree blossoms in *King* of the south were like snow,  
This year the snow in *Ki* of the north was like the plum blossom.  
Thus may we perceive the inconstancy of human affairs.  
And we rejoice though the varying year goes and returns.  
The officers in the garrisons sing the live-long day.  
In the capital there are illuminations until the morning dawns.  
The distant west longs for the sun of *Chang-an*.  
Let us drink to the long life of the southern mountain.

Verses of five syllables. 8. The antiquity of *Pé-ti*, by *Chin Tsz-gang*.  
The sun sinks into the vast river;—it is night;  
The oars rest; and the dialogue turns on the customs of the land.  
The city (*Pé-ti*) looks down upon the kingdom of *Pa-tsz*.  
Its high towers eclipse the palaces of the *Han* kings,  
Its barren wastes were brought under culture by *Chou*.  
Its great mountains do honour to the merits of *Yu*.

- o. 1. Gám-huén ts'ing-pí tuóm, Tí hién pí liú t'ang,  
 o. 11. Kù mǎ sǎng yǐn tsí, Kwei-fán ch'ú wú-cháng.  
 o. 21. Chuén t'á k'ú wú hién, K'è zé tsé hō-k'áng.

34. Sū-yǔ, Proverbs, v. native text, page 34.

- a. 4. 1. Yí-kù liàng-tě. 2. Sǎng-t'iaú ts'ang siàu-jeù. 3. Shén-fung pū-  
 a. 16. k'í lǎng. 4. Tsai-kiá k'ing fú-mù, hō-pí yuén shau-hiáng! 5. Sút-  
 a. 29. fung tau t'ò, shén-shuǐ t'ü ch'üén. 6. Hō-sháng t'ien-yü. 7. Kō-  
 b. 11. jìn tsé-sau mǎn-ts'ien sǐ; mō-kwán t'ā-jén wá-sháng shauáng. 8. Tē  
 b. 25. miáu-wǎn wá-shí. 9. Jìn pién: jú-tsé! jú-tsé! T'ien lí: wí-jén! wí-  
 c. 12. jén! 10. Shú kái ts'ien cháng, yé lǒ kwéi kǎn. 11. Kiún-tsé yí-yén,  
 c. 25. kw'at-mà yí-pián. 12. Kwáng-yín sè tsien, jī-yü jú sō. 13. K'ing-  
 d. 10. k'ing pū-jú ts'ang-ming. 14. Pū-táng shān, pū-chí t'ien chí kái; pū-  
 d. 25. lín k'í, pū-chí t'í chí héu; pū-wǎn sién-wáng chí wéi yén, pū-chí  
 e. 11. hió-wǎn chí tá. 15. K'ing ming, tsé ch'ín-gai pū-jén, chí-ming, tsé  
 e. 25. sié-ò pū-sǎng. 16. Shuǐ t'í yú, t'ien pién ying-kai k'ò; shé, t'í k'ò-  
 f. 12. tiaú; wéi yú jín-sín pū-k'ò liáu. T'ien k'ò-tú, t'í k'ò-liáng, wéi yú  
 f. 28. jín-sín pū-k'ò fáng. Huá-hù huá-p'í, nán huá-k'ú; chí jín mién  
 g. 14. pū-chí sín, túi mién yú yú, sín ká ts'ien shān. 17. Kwá-yén tsé-  
 g. 28. kiaú, k'ò-í wú huó-lín, k'ò-í wú yü-jú. 18. Yü kwá, tsing-shín  
 h. 13. shuáng; sè tō, hū-k'í shuái. 19. T'í-chí mǎng shé, k'ò-chí mǎng  
 h. 26. tsíang. 20. Tsü pū tsüi jín, jín tsé-tsüi. 21. Háng-yén pō ming.  
 i. 8. 22. Yí k'è pū-fán q' chü. 23. Tsé yí-jí hō-sháng, chuáng yí-jí cháng.  
 i. 23. 24. Yü mǐ tsé, q' tséü sǐ chüáng. 25. Shú tau wá yín. 26. Kiún-tsé  
 j. 7. pū-nián kiú ò. 27. Tān-sé pū-ch'ing sién. 28. Yáu chí sín-fú sè, tén

c. 9) or seven syllables (ts'ien shí,—33. k. 5), but there are verses of three, four, six, and nine syllables. These syllables are regulated by the tones of the words, which are formed into two classes, viz. the *píng* 'even' and the *ts'ě* 'deflected.' The *píng* tones are the upper and lower even tones (*sháng-píng* and *hiá-píng*); the *ts'ě* tones are the rising, the departing, and the entering tones (*sháng*, *k'ú*, and *jí*). In verses of five syllables, the first and the third are subject to no rule, the second and fourth must vary between the *píng* and the *ts'ě* tones; and in the second and third verses these two (2nd and 4th syllables) must be the converse of the first, and the fourth verse must be like the first in this respect. In verses of seven syllables, the first, third, and fifth are subject to no rule, the tones of the second and the fourth must vary, and that of the sixth must be like that of the second. In verses of five or seven syllables, three of the four final syllables must have the same class of termination and accent. As a general rule the final syllable of the third verse does not rhyme, and in the other verses rhyme is often dispensed with. The student can make out for himself a table of the metres by using an open circle (○) to represent the *píng* tones, and a black circle (●) for the *ts'ě* tones. In some verses the third syllable in five-syllable verses and the fifth in seven-syllable verses are called the *eye* of the verse, which corresponds to the *cæura* or the *ictus* in the poetry of European languages, and this 'eye' must always be a *noun* or a *verb*,—i. e. a word of full meaning (*sát-tsz*'), not a particle,—and it must either rhyme or alternate with the following verse. Above forty different

<sup>a</sup> 平

<sup>b</sup> 仄

<sup>c</sup> 實字



But the ancient green walls are cut down.  
 The dangerous places are made accessible.  
 The ancient trees grow to the limits of the clouds.  
 The returning sail shoots out from the midst of the mist.  
 The trace of that stream goes on without a limit.  
 The traveller sits gazing on the scene without being wearied.

*Translation of Proverbs (Sü-yü), v. native text, page 34.*

1. At one lift to obtain two. "To kill two birds with one stone." 2. The mulberry branch follows the (direction of the) small bend. "As the twig is bent the tree's inclined." 3. A fair wind raises no waves. 4. If at home you respect your parents, there will be no need of humbling yourself abroad (lit. 'going to a distance to burn incense'). 5. To sail with wind and tide. 6. To pour oil in the fire. "To add fuel to the flame." 7. Let every man sweep the snow from his own door-way, and not concern himself with the frost on other men's roofs. "Let every man mind his own business." 8. Virtue requires no colouring. 9. Man's convenience (says): thus and thus! Heaven's order (replies): not yet! not yet! "Man plans; but heaven disposes." 10. Though a tree be a thousand *chang* high, its leaves fall and return to the root. 11. One word to the superior man and one lash to the good horse (are enough). "A word to the wise is sufficient." 12. Time flies like an arrow: days and months like a weaver's shuttle. 13. To feel reverence is not so good as to give obedience. "Obedience is better than sacrifice." 14. If you do not ascend the mountain, you cannot know the height of heaven; if you descend not to the stream of the valley, you cannot know the depth of the earth. If you do not listen to the *wise* words bequeathed by the ancient kings, you cannot know the greatness of *true* learning. 15. If the mirror be bright, then the dust will not defile it; if the intelligence be clean, then licentiousness will not grow up. 16. The fishes at the bottom of the stream, and the birds in the sides of heaven, may both be reached with the arrow and the hook; but man's heart is beyond conjecture. Heaven may be measured, and earth may be surveyed, but man's heart is without bounds. In drawing the tiger, you may paint his skin, but it is hard to depict his bones. In acquaintance with a man, you may know his face, but you cannot know his heart. Though you converse *tête-à-tête*, his heart is separated from you as by a thousand mountains. 17. If your words be few and your acquaintance select, there will be no need for repentance, sorrow, and shame. 18. If desires be few, good spirits will abound; if aims be many, cheerfulness will languish. 19. The prisoner dreams of pardon; the thirsty of a cordial. 20. The wine does not intoxicate the man; the man makes himself drunk. 21. A fair countenance is a poor inheritance. 22. A single guest does not require two lodgings. 23. To be one day a priest and the next a bell-ringer. 24. He wishes to hide his track, and yet he walks on the snow. 25. When the tree falls there is no shadow. 26. The superior man thinks not on old evil deeds. 27. A single thread is not enough to make a rope. 28. If you wish to know the thoughts which

- j. 22. *t'ing k'èu-chung yèn.* 29. *Jō yau tuón tsui-fū, sōng-yèn k'ân tsui jîn.*  
 k. 6. 30. *Tsz yŭ: "Jîn wā yuén láu, pŭ yŭ kŭn yŭ."* 31. *Yŭ chí k'í kiün,*  
 k. 20. *siên-shí k'í chŭn; yŭ shí k'í-jŭn, siên-shí k'í-yŭ; yŭ chí k'í-fú, siên*  
 l. 7. *shí k'í-tsè.* 32. *P'ing-fung súi p'6, kuŭ-kê yŭ tsq̄n; kiün-tsè súi p'ŭn,*  
 l. 22. *lŭ-ti cháng tsat.* 33. *Pê-yŭ t' yŭ wŭ-ni, pŭ-náng chŭn-shê k'í-sè; kiün-*  
 m. 9. *tsè chŭ yŭ chŭ-ti, pŭ-náng jèn-huán k'í-sŭn; sŭng-pê k'ò-ì nŭi sŭ-*  
 m. 26. *shuŭng, mŭng-chí k'ò-ì shê kiên-wet.* 34. *Ji-yŭ súi mŭng, pŭ-chai fŭ-*  
 n. 12. *pu'ân chí hiá: tsu-kien súi kw'at, pŭ-chàn wŭ-tsui chí jŭn; fŭ tsat*  
 n. 27. *háng hó, pŭ jŭ shŭn-kiá chí mŭn.* 35. *Jŭn-sŭng, chí wŭ sŭng; chí-sŭng,*  
 o. 14. *jŭn t' lau; sŭn chí yŭ-tsŭ sŭng, pŭ-kió wŭ-cháng tsau.*

9. Extracts from the *Ching-yin tsui-yau*, v. native text (lithographed),  
 page 9.

- a. 2. *Ti-yŭ tuón. Ji-chang.*  
 a. 8. *T'ing-tsau k'í-lai, kiaŭ hai-tsè-mŭn, sau-sau tŭ, kiaŭ-kiaŭ huŭ, gau*  
 a. 23. *shuŭt' sŭ lién, p'au wán hau chí k'í-k'í. Mŭ-yŭi sŭ tŭ shŭ-heu, k'ân-*  
 b. 14. *k'ân shŭ, sié-sié tsè, sŭn-liàng-kó sŭ-wŭn pŭng-yŭi tsò-kó shŭ, hiá kó*  
 c. 6. *wet-k'í, kiaŭ-kiaŭ mŭn-qŭ, tsui k'ò-ì kwò-tŭ jŭ-tsè liaŭ. Tsu-liaŭ hiá-*  
 c. 23. *wŭ, lŭ kŭ pŭng-kŭng, shê kŭ t'iaŭ tsien, pá chē-shŭn kŭn-kuŭ, huŭ-tŭng*  
 d. 14. *huŭ-tŭng. Jŭn yŭi yŭi tsŭng-shŭn, yŭi cháng-kŭng; chē-tŭ shŭ huŭ*  
 e. 3. *sŭ. Pŭ-yau wŭng wŭt-t'eu t'ân-wŭn, pŭ-yau tsu-k'í, pŭ-yau tŭ-kiá*  
 e. 18. *piên-tsui, pŭ-yau tŭ-sŭ, pŭ-yau nau-tsui, pŭ-yau kwò-kiá. Wŭ shuŭ*  
 f. 9. *tŭ huŭ yŭ-tien qŭ tsò-tŭ tŭ mŭ-yŭi ā! Nŭi yau t'ing-chŭ, pŭ-yau wŭng-*  
 g. 2. *kŭ liaŭ ā!—Tien kó tŭng-qŭ lai ā; hē-kŭ yŭng-tsè, tsŭng-mŭ tsŭiā tŭ*  
 g. 20. *kiên nŭi?*

- h. 2. *Ti-qŭ tuón. Tsè-kiaŭ.*  
 h. 8. *Yŭ-kó-jŭn chí-lai, siŭng-yŭ pŭng-yŭi, tsŭng-yau tsat shuŭng yèn*  
 h. 22. *ts'ing, kiên-liau nà-siē chŭng-kŭng jŭn, kiàng lŭ-tŭ, kiên-hŭ-tŭ, lau-shŭ-*  
 i. 14. *tŭ, tŭng-tŭ kwŭi-kŭ-tŭ yŭi liàng-sŭn-tŭ, kiên-kwò shŭ-miēn-tŭ, yŭi tsat-*  
 j. 6. *ts'ing-tŭ, yŭi pŭn-sŭ-tŭ, k'ò-ì kau-tsé-chŭ-tŭ, nŭi ts'at hau t'ŭ-t'ā siŭng-*  
 j. 24. *yŭ, kŭn-chŭ t'ā tsuŭ, kŭng-kŭng t'ā, pŭ-hau t'at-mán t'ā; yŭi-shŭn*  
 k. 14. *siŭng-kiuén, yŭi-sŭ siŭng-pŭng; pién tá-kiá yŭi yŭ liaŭ. Jŭ tsŭiā-*

kinds of poems are enumerated, but many of these are inconsiderable in extent and importance. The best specimens are full of metaphorical and allegorical expressions, ancient and obsolete words, allusions to history and fable, with references to customs and opinions, known only to the learned. This renders Chinese poetry very difficult for foreigners to understand.

The specimens given on page 33 are, with the exception of the first, to be found in the *K'ê T'ang-shi hŭ-kiaŭ*, 'the poetry of the ancient T'ang (dynasty) explained,' a work in 5 vols. 12°.

*Wŭ-yŭng* (33. b. 16) was the name of a royal palace in *Ch'ang-án*\*, during the Hŭn dynasty, which ended A. D. 260.

\* 長安

occupy a man's heart, just listen to the words of his mouth. 29. If you want to break through drunken habits, look at a drunken man when you are sober. 30. Confucius said: "If a man will not care for the future, he certainly will have present sorrow." 31. If you wish to know the character of a prince, first look at his ministers; if you would understand a man, first look at his friends; if you would know a father, first look at his son. 32. Though the screen be broken, its frame is still preserved; though the superior man be poor, propriety and rectitude still remain. 33. Though the white gem be cast into the dirt, its purity cannot be sullied: though the good man live in a vile place, it cannot taint and disorder his heart. The fir and the cypress can endure snow and frost; and bright wisdom can walk through difficulty and danger. 34. Though the sun and moon are bright, they cannot shine beneath an up-turned bowl: though the sword (of justice) be swift, it cannot decapitate the innocent, nor can unlooked-for calamity, with its evil genius, enter the dwelling of the prudent. 35. Man is born, but knowledge is not born (with him); when knowledge is acquired, man soon grows old; when his mind has obtained a fulness of knowledge, before he is aware, the great change comes over him.

*Translation of the Extracts from the Ch'ing-yin tsüi-yau, v. native text (lithographed), page 9.*

First section. On every-day affairs.

Rise early and call the servant-boys to sweep the floor, to water the flowers, to warm water for washing the face, and to make a cup of good tea to drink. When you have nothing to do, look at a book, or write some characters, or with two or three literary friends make a verse (or two), or play a game at chess (lit. 'conquest' or 'siege'), to dissipate sadness, thus you will be able to pass the day. When noon is come, pull a few twangs of the bow, and shoot a few arrows; as for that body of muscle and bone of yours, exercise it well. Thus a man will get good spirits, and will grow strong: all these are good things to do. But don't go abroad hankering after amusement, don't create disturbances, don't fight and brawl, don't be a busy-body, don't be noisy over your wine, don't wander from house to house. What I have said is perfectly correct, there is no mistake in it. Do you listen and don't forget it.

Light the lamp and bring it here, it is as dark as midnight, how can I see?

The second section. On selecting acquaintances.

When a man goes out to hold intercourse with friends, he should carry a pair of eyes in his head; and when you see those who are men of rectitude, or those who speak with propriety and justice, the cordial and honest men, and those who understand customs, those who have a conscience, and those who have seen the world, those who have natural talent and good sense, on whom you may rely,—do you then seek their acquaintance, and walk in their footsteps, respect them and do not slight them; if you have any good project in hand, consult with them, and in matters of business mutually assist one another, thus both

- l. 3. *kiên-liàu nà-siê pũ-haù jìn, yì tiên-qr pận-sé, tũ mũ-yiàu; yĩ pũ*  
 l. 20. *kwãng-kw'qn tsũũ, húng-p'ien jìn-kiã,*

10. Extracts from the *Ch'ing-yin tsũt-yau*, v. native text (lithographed),  
 page 10.

- a. 2. *yiũ pũ-haù pĩ-k'í, ts'iuên-kàn siê huân-cháng tĩ sé, yiũ pũ*  
 a. 16. *tũng yèn, yiũ pũ-kũ lién, yiũ t'au jìn hiên. Jìn-kiã mà t'ã, t'ã yè*  
 b. 7. *pũ-hat saũ; ché-yáng tĩ jìn, ngò ts'iaũ-kiên-liàu, ts'iu nàu-liàu t'ã, nĩ*  
 b. 23. *ts'ien-wán pũ-yau t'ĩ-t'ã tsèu-lùng, t'ã ts'iu kw'at-p'ien nà-tĩ yĩn-tsè*  
 c. 21. *ts'ien: huân pũ tà-kìn, t'ã huân yau wũ nà-tĩ sé, sãng-ch'ũ hũ-tũ sé*  
 d. 13. *lat. Yũ shĩmmò pién-t nĩ? Ts'ung-kìn-ì-heũ nĩ yau tà chú-í, ts'at*  
 e. 5. *haù yã!*

f. 2. *Tĩ-sân huân. Tsã-huá.*

- f. 8. *Jìn tsũt yau-kìn shĩ shuò-huá. Nĩ ts'iaũ nà-siê yũ mĩng-sé tĩ jìn,*  
 f. 24. *fãn-wai pũ-t'ang, t'ã shuò-ch'ũ tĩ huá, tsũng-shĩ ch'ũ-kĩng jĩ-tiên, yũ*  
 g. 15. *wqñ-yà, tsè pũ-yũng shuò lǒ. T'ã ts'iu sũt-k'eu shuò kũ pá ts'ín-ch'ang*  
 h. 7. *tĩ huá-qr, yè kiò-tè tá-fũng, yũ t'ĩ-kiũ,—pũ-kiaũ-ngai, pũ-hiá-tsũ.*  
 h. 24. *Jìn-kiã t'ing-liàu, tsè-jèn kw'at-t'ã huũt-shuò huá liàu. Jèn qr*  
 i. 13. *chĩng-kĩng huá, kũ-jèn yau-t'ing, ts'iu-shĩ shĩ-tsũng-sháng, nà-siê hiên*  
 j. 3. *tsũ jìn-tàng tĩ huá, yè yau fáng ch'ang-qr-tò t'ing-t'ing. Sũt-jèn pũ*  
 j. 19. *pĩ hiũ t'ã, yè yau chĩ-tau, kũ-chũ fũng-sũ; tsũng-mò shĩ tsũn-huá,*  
 k. 10. *ts'ũ-huá, yà-huá, niũ-pũ huá, fũng-chũng jìn tĩ huá, siaũ má jìn tĩ*  
 l. 1. *huá; jìn-kiã shuò-ch'ũ-lat, nĩ pũ-tàng tĩ, ts'iu ch'ing-liàu kũ tsũ*  
 l. 16. *t'iaũ-tsè liàu.*

11. Extract from the *Sân-kwò chí*, chap. I, v. native text (lithographed),  
 page 11.

a. 2. *Tĩ-yĩ huũt.*

a. 7. *Yèn t'au-yuên haũ-kĩ sãn kĩ í.*

b. 7. *Chàn Huwng-kĩn yĩng-hiũng shuò tĩ kũng.*

- c. 1. *Huá-shuò t'ien-hiá tá-shĩ; 'fãn-kiũ pĩ-hũ, hũ-kiũ pĩ-fãn.' Chũ*  
 c. 16. *mũ tsĩ-kwò fãn-tsũng, pĩng jĩ yũ Ts'ín; kĩ Ts'ín mĩ chĩ heũ Ts'ũ Hãn*  
 d. 7. *fãn-tsũng, yũ pĩng jĩ yũ Hãn. Hãn chũ, tsè Kaũ-tsũ chàn pĩ-shũ*  
 d. 22. *qr k'ĩ í, yĩ-t'ung t'ien-hiá. Heũ lat Kwãng-wũ chũng-kũng, ch'ũn*  
 e. 11. *chĩ Hiên-tĩ, sũt fãn-wai Sãn-kwò. Ch'ũ k'ĩ chí huân chĩ yũt, t'at-ch'ĩ*

*Kwé-tiën* (33. o. 15), 'the noble and the mean,' both have their plans of aggrandisement; the former at court, the latter in the market. The poet wishes to show that the noble man and the mean man are alike different from the ascetic, who alone can retire from the world and its projects for getting gain. He alone can enjoy the outward things,—the soft rain, the bright grass, the blue mountain, and the singing birds,—which arise without his arrangement and yield him pleasure.

parties will be profited. But you will see those bad men, who have not the slightest particle of good sense, a set of sharpers, who deceive people,

*Translation of the Extracts from the Ching-yin tsüi-yü, v. native text (lithographed), page 10.*

who are of a quarrelsome disposition, entirely taken up with questionable affairs,—men who will not take hints, and who have no regard for appearances, who draw down upon themselves the displeasure of others; and when they are scolded, they do not feel ashamed. When I see such men, I directly give them a scolding. You should on no account whatever have any thing to do with them. If you associate with them, they will swindle you out of your money: but that would be of little consequence, if they did not prejudice your affairs and produce a great deal of trouble. Then what benefit will there be in that? From the very first do you be decided, and then all will be well!

The third section. On miscellaneous phrases.

The most important thing for a man is to speak *well*. Now when you see men of note, different from the common herd, you will find that their language has a classic elegance about it, and an air of refinement, of which it is needless to speak. Even when they utter the first expression which comes to their lips in ordinary parlance, you may perceive a liberality of sentiment and a regularity about it,—it is neither haughty nor mean. When people hear them, they, of course, praise them highly, as being able to speak properly and classically. Assuredly you should listen to them. Then there is the language of the market-place and the well, and the talk of loungers and of various classes of men; you must stretch your ears to catch these; for although you need not learn them, you should know them, as well as the customs of every place; what is village talk, coarse language, elegant language, cruel, insulting language, the language of flattery, ridicule, abuse, &c., for when men utter such, and you do not understand, you will seem exactly like a country clown.

*Translation of the Extract from the Sän-kuö chí, chap. I, v. native text (lithographed), page 11.*

Chapter the first.

At the banquet in the peach-garden three brave men form a righteous league. By exterminating the Yellow-turbans the heroes raise their reputation.

It is a common saying with respect to the state of nations, that 'the long-divided must unite, the long-united must divide.' At the end of the *Chou* dynasty the empire was divided into seven kingdoms; these contended together and were finally united in the *Tsin* dynasty; and after the extinction of the *Tsin* family, the houses of *Ts'u* and *Han* strove together and were at last merged in the *Han* dynasty. The universal dominion of the *Han* commenced with the Emperor *Kau-tsu*, who destroyed the white serpent and raised a body of patriot soldiers. Afterwards *Kwang-wu* arose as his successor, and he in turn transmitted the throne to *Hien-ti*. The power of the state was then divided, and became Three Kingdoms. If we proceed to investigate

- f. 2. *yü Huán-Ling, ár tñ. Huán-tí kín-kú shén-lúit, tsung-sín huán-kuón,*  
 f. 17. *kí Huán-tí p'áng. Ling-tí tsí wéi; Tá-tsiáng-kiün, Teú-wù; T'at-fá,*  
 g. 7. *Chín-fán, kung-siáng fú-tsò. Shí yüé huán-kuón T'sáu-tsí tàng lúng-*  
 g. 21. *k'üén; Teú-wù Chín-fán meá chü chí; kí-sé pü-má, fán wéi sò hái;*  
 h. 12. *Chung-kiün tsé tsé yü húng. Kién-níng q'r-nièn, éz-yü, wóng-jí, Tí*  
 i. 2. *yü Wán-té tién, fáng shung tsó; tién-ló ku'äng-fung tsau-k'í, ché-kién*  
 i. 17. *yí-t'iaú ts'ing-shé, ts'ung liáng-sháng fí tsíáng-hiá-lai, fán yü í-sháng.*  
 j. 8. *Tí k'ing tsai, tsò-yüü kí kiú jí-k'ung, p'è-kuón k'ü p'án p'í, sù-séu shé p'í-*  
 k. 1. *kién-liáu. Huá-jén tá-lüü tá yü, kiá í píng-pó, ló tsai p'óan-yé, fáng-*  
 k. 18. *chí; huat kíó fáng-ü wú-sú. Kién-níng éz-nièn q'r-yü, Ló-yáng tí*  
 l. 8. *chín, yüé hai-shuüí fán-yí, yuén-hai k'ü-mín, tsín p'í tá lóng kiuen jí*  
 l. 24. *hai chung.*

12. Extract from the *Sân-kuó chí*, v. native text (lithographed), page 12.

- a. 1. *Shí Kú-lü kiün yüé hiung-tí sán-jín; yí m'ing, Cháng-kió; yí m'ing,*  
 a. 17. *Cháng-pai; yí m'ing, Cháng-liáng. Nà Cháng-kió p'án-shí kó p'í-tí*  
 b. 5. *Síu-ts'at, yín jí-shán ts'at-yó; yü yí lau-jín, pí-yén túng-yén, shéu*  
 b. 22. *chí lí-cháng, huán Kíó chí yí túng chung, í t'ien-shü sán kiuen shéu*  
 c. 11. *chí, yü: "Tsé m'ing, 'T'at-píng yaú-shü,' jü t'í chí, táng tsí T'ien*  
 c. 25. *siuén huat p'ü kiú shí-jín, jö m'ing í-sín, p'í há gó pau." Kíó pai,*  
 d. 16. *wón s'ing m'ing. Lau-jín yü: "Wú nài Nán-huá lau-sien yé." Yén-*  
 e. 5. *kí huat chin-ts'ing-fung q'r k'ü. \* \* \* \**  
 e. 13. *T'ing yü: "Tsé-píng cháng, ngó-píng kuó, m'ing-k'ung í tsò sù*  
 f. 1. *chau-kiün yíng-tí." Liú-yén jén kí shuó, sùt tsí ch'ü páng, chau-mú*  
 f. 16. *í-píng. Páng-wón h'ing tsai Chó-hián yín ch'ü Chó-hián chung yí-kó*  
 g. 6. *yíng-hiáng. Nà jín p'í shín hau tsü-shü, s'ing kuón-hó, kuó yén yü,*  
 g. 21. *hí-nú p'í h'ing yü s'í, sù yüé tá chí, chuén hau kí-kiaü t'ien-hiá hau-kí,*  
 h. 14. *s'ang-té shín-chàng p'á-ché, liáng-q'r chüi-kién, shuáng-shéu kuó yü í,*

*Kí-p'í* (33. k. 24) here means *Yü-cheü* itself, which was the name of *Shing-king*<sup>a</sup>, (Moukden, the capital of Manchuria,) under the *Hán* dynasty.

The city of *P'í-tí* (33. m. 17) was in *Kwei-cheü fú*.

The lithographed pages (9—14) which follow here, were printed in London from the author's handwriting, but they are not so satisfactory as the 34 pages of letter-press which were done in Hongkong. This accounts for the absence of pages 1—8, page 9 having been printed first to suit the convenience of pupils who did not need the earlier pages, which were extracts from the Ancient Classics &c., and which were subsequently printed in Hongkong. The extracts from the *Ching-yín tsü-yau* are likely to prove very serviceable to the student, they present him with a good many expressions in the Peking dialect, though not of the extreme kind, and they would easily pass current in the southern provinces. Among the general characteristics of the Peking dialect is the frequent use of the perfect particle *liáu*<sup>b</sup> and the formative particle *ár*<sup>c</sup>. There is a redundancy of expression, and, in pronunciation, an uncommon sharpness of utterance in the case of all letters which admit it (*kí, tsí, chí, sí, lí*).

<sup>a</sup> 盛京

<sup>b</sup> 了

<sup>c</sup> 兒

the cause of this revolution, we shall find that it began with the two Emperors *Hwan* and *Ling*. When the Emperor *Hwan* died, *Ling* came to the throne. The marshal *Teu-wu* and the guardian *Chin-fan* became coadjutors in the government. Now it happened that when the eunuch *Ts'au-tsi* and his party were intriguing for power, *Teu-wu* and *Chin-fan* formed a counter-plot to exterminate them; but the scheme was discovered, and turned out injurious to themselves; and the eunuchs from this time increased in audacity.

On the 15th day of the 4th month of the 2nd year, *Kien-ning* ('tranquillity established') the Emperor proceeded to the Hall of Audience, and just as he was ascending the throne, a violent wind suddenly rushed from a corner of the Hall, and what should they see but a great green snake, seeming to fly down from the beam above, which coiled itself up upon the imperial seat. The Emperor fell down in terror, but the attendants quickly rescued him and carried him into the palace. The mandarins, one and all, hastened away; and, in a moment, the serpent itself vanished. On a sudden it began to thunder loud and to rain heavily, accompanied with hail stones. This continued until midnight, and laid in ruins an immense number of dwellings.

In the 2nd month of the 4th year of this same Emperor, an earthquake was felt in *Lö-yang*, the sea inundated the lands, and the inhabitants of the coasts were washed away.

*Translation of the Extract from the Sän-kuö chí, v. native text (lithographed),*  
page 12.

At this time there lived in the district of *Kü-lü* three brothers, named *Chang-kiö*, *Chang-pau*, and *Chang-liang*. Now this *Chang-kiö* did not take the degree of *Siu-tsai* (B. A.), but proceeded to the hills to gather medicinal herbs. There he met one day an aged man with a fair and youthful countenance, who held in his hand a staff of cane. He called *Kiö* into a cave, and gave him three sacred volumes, saying: "These are called, 'The Arts necessary for producing Peace.' Take them, and in the name of Heaven proclaim the doctrine of reform, that the world may be saved. And should contrary thoughts arise in your mind, you will suffer the reward of the wicked." *Kiö* bowed and enquired his name and surname. The old man said: "I am the aged genius of *Nan-hua*," and having uttered these words he vanished into thin air and was gone. \* \* \*

*Tsing* said: "The rebel soldiers are many, our soldiers are few; your Excellency should at once raise an army to oppose the enemy." *Liu-yen* acquiesced in this advice, and immediately issued a placard, calling upon patriots to enlist. This document reached the town of *Chö*, and a brave man of the place responded to the call. He was not much of a scholar, but his disposition was magnanimous and kind, and his words were few; the feelings of anger and pleasure were rarely visible in his countenance, and he was a man of a strong will. He loved to form friendships with the brave men of the empire. His height was eight *chö* (near seven feet); his two ears hung down on his shoulders; his hands reached down to his knees; he was able to

- i. 4. *mũ nãng tãt kú k'í q̄r; miẽn jũ kwán-yũ, shq̄n jũ t'á chĩ; Chũng*  
i. 19. *shãn Tsing wáng Liũ shing chĩ hoũ, Hãn K'ing-tĩ Kiũ-hiã hiuẽn sũn;*  
j. 8. *sing Liũ, mĩng P'ei, tãt Hiuẽn-tẽ.*  
j. 17. *T'ang-jĩ kiẽn-liuũ p'ang-wq̄n, k'ái-jẽn ch'ang-t'án, sũt-hoũ yĩ-jĩn k'*  
k. 7. *shũng yẽn yũ: "Tá-ch'ang-fũ pũ-yũ kwó-k'ia ch'ũ-tĩ, hũ-kũ ch'ang-*  
k. 22. *t'án?" Hiuẽn-tẽ huũt shĩ k'í jĩn, shĩn p'ũ-chẽ, shũng jũ kũ-liũ, shĩ jũ*  
l. 13. *p'q̄n-mũ. Hiuẽn-tẽ kiẽn t'á hĩng-maũ i-ch'ang, wq̄n k'í sing-mĩng.*

13. Extract from the *Sãn-kwó chĩ* continued, v. native text (lithographed),  
page 13.

- a. 1. *K'í-jĩn yũ: "Meũ Sing Ch'ang, mĩng F'ĩ, tãt Yĩ-tĩ. Shĩ kũ Ch'ũ-*  
a. 15. *kiũn, p'ũ yũu ch'w'ang-t'ien, mai-toiũ t'ũ-chũ, chuẽn hoũ k'ĩ-k'iaũ t'ien-*  
b. 5. *hiã hoũ-k'ĩ; k'ĩ-t'á kiẽn kũng k'án p'ang q̄r t'án, kũ-t'ẽ si'ang-wq̄n."*  
b. 20. *Hiuẽn-tẽ yũ: "Ngũ p'q̄n Hãn-shĩ tsũng-t'ien, sing Liũ, mĩng P'ei;*  
c. 8. *kĩn wq̄n Hu'ang-kĩn ch'ang-hu'án, yũu chĩ yũ p'ũ-t'ẽ g'án-mĩn. H'q̄n k'*  
c. 23. *pũ-n'ang! Kũ ch'ang-t'án q̄r." F'ĩ yũ: "Ngũ p'ũ yũu t'ẽ-t'á, t'ang*  
d. 12. *ch'au-mũ hi'ang-yũng, yũ kũng t'ang k'ũ tá-s'ẽ. Jũ-hũ?" Hiuẽn-tẽ*  
e. 1. *shĩn-hĩ, sũt yũ t'ang jĩ t'ũn-t'ien chũng yĩn-toiũ. Chũng yĩn k'ien,*  
e. 15. *kiẽn yĩ tá Hãn, t'ũ-chũ yĩ li'ang ch'ẽ-t'ẽ, t'au t'ien m'q̄n-sh'ũ hi'ẽ-liuũ.*  
f. 6. *Jĩ t'ien t'ũ-hiã pi'q̄n hu'án t'ũu-p'au: "K'w'á ch'ũn-t'ũu-lai k'ĩ, ngũ t'at-*  
f. 21. *k'án jĩ-ch'ing-k'ũ t'ũu-k'ũn."*  
g. 2. *Hiuẽn-tẽ k'án k'í jĩn, si'ang-maũ t'ang-t'ang, w'ũ-fũng p'ĩn-p'ĩn,*  
g. 15. *t'ũu y'au t'á t'ang t'ũ, t'au k'í sing mĩng. K'í jĩn yũ: "Wũ sing*  
h. 4. *Kw'án, mĩng Yũ, tãt Sh'ũ-ch'ang, hoũ k'ai Y'ũn-ch'ang, Hũ-tũng K'iaũ*  
h. 17. *li'ang jĩn y'ẽ. Y'ũn p'q̄n-chũ shĩ-h'au, i-shĩ l'ing jĩn, p'ũ wũ sh'ũ-liuũ,*  
i. 8. *t'au n'án Ki'ang-Hũ wũ-lũ niẽn i. Kĩn wq̄n t'ẽ chũ, ch'au-k'ũn p'ũ-*  
i. 23. *t'ẽ, t'ũ-lai y'ing-mũ." Hiuẽn-tẽ sũt i k'ĩ chĩ k'au-chĩ. Y'ũn-ch'ang tá-hĩ,*  
j. 15. *t'ang t'au Ch'ang-f'ĩ ch'w'ang sh'ang, kũng-i tá-s'ẽ. F'ĩ yũ: "Ngũ*  
k. 4. *ch'w'ang hoũ yũu t'ũ-yu'q̄n, hu'ũ-k'ái chũng sh'ing, mĩng-jĩ t'ang yũ*  
k. 16. *yu'q̄n chũng t'ẽ k'au t'ien-t'ĩ; ngũ s'ũn-jĩn k'ĩ-w'ũ hi'ũng-t'ĩ, hi'ẽ k'ĩ t'ang-*  
l. 7. *s'ũn, j'ũn-h'ũ k'ũ t'ũ tá-s'ẽ." Hiuẽn-tẽ, y'ũn-ch'ang t'ũ-sh'ang y'ing yũ:*  
l. 22. *"Jũ-t'ẽ shĩn h'au."*

The passages given on pages 11—13 are from the *Sãn-kwó*, with which the student is already acquainted (v. Chrest. pp. 17—20). The 'Yellow-turbans' (*Hw'ang-k'ín*, 11. b. 8) were rebels under the leadership of *Ch'ang-kiũ* (12. a. 13), who, besides being a general, pretended to perform cures by charms and exorcism. He raised an immense army, which he organized and allotted to subordinate generals. At the close of the *Hãn* dynasty (A. D. 226), after the reign of the last Emperor *Hien-t'ũ* (11. e. 12), the division of the country into three kingdoms took place. The two Emperors *Hw'án* and *Ling* (11. f. 3, 4) were weak and lax in their government, and this brought on a rebellion, which assumed larger proportions under *T'ũng-ch'ũ*, a man of great strength and military ability. His career of cruelty, during which he slaughtered vast numbers of his enemies, was brought to an early close, for *Lũ-pu* (v. 20. d. 5, 7) destroyed him and all his family. The Imperialist cause was upheld by the generals *Lũ-p'ĩ* (13. c. 5, 7) a mat-seller, *K'wan-yũ* (13. h. 4, 6) a seller of sour-curds, and *Ch'ang-f'ĩ* (13. j. 17) a pork-butcher. These were the three brave



see his own ears; his face was like the jewel on a crown; and his lips were ruddy like rubies. He was a descendant of the ninth generation from *King-ti* of the *Han* dynasty; his clan name was *Liu*, his surname *Pei*, and his title was *Hsuen-tê*.

When he saw the above-mentioned placard, he heaved a deep sigh, and immediately behind him a man exclaimed with a loud voice: "When a fine fellow does not exert his strength for his country, why does he sigh so deeply?" *Hsuen-tê* turned round and beheld a man about seven feet high, having a voice like thunder, and a *physique* like that of a vigorous charger. When *Hsuen-tê* saw this extraordinary figure, he enquired his name and surname.

*Translation of the Extract from the Sān-kuò chí continued, v. native text (lithographed), page 13.*

The man replied: "My name is *Chang*, my surname *Fî*, and my title *Yi-tê*. For generations we have dwelt in this district of *Chô*, and we have a small landed property here. I deal in wine and slaughter pigs. I am fond of forming the acquaintance of the brave men of the empire. When I saw you just now looking at the placard and sighing, I could not help speaking to you." *Hsuen-tê* said: "I am descended from the house of *Han*, my name is *Liu* and my surname *Pei*. When I lately heard that the Yellow-turbans were in rebellion, the wish arose in my mind to break their power and to give peace to the people. Would that my strength were adequate to it! It was for this reason that I sighed." *Fî* replied: "I have some small means, let us call out our brave countrymen, and with you, Sir, begin to put the great affair into execution, what do you think of that?" *Hsuen-tê* was much pleased, and they forthwith entered the village inn to take some wine. Just as they were drinking, they saw a fine son of *Han* (a Chinaman), pushing along a hand-cart, who, coming up, stopped at the door of the inn. Having entered the inn, he sat down and called to the waiter: "Pour out quickly some wine for me to drink, I am in haste to reach the city to join the army." *Hsuen-tê*, seeing that the man had a noble aspect and a dignified bearing, invited him to join them, and then enquired his name and surname. The man replied: "My name is *Kwan*, my surname *Yu*, and my title *Shou-ch'ang*, which has been altered to *Yün-ch'ang*. I am a native of *Kiai-liang* in *Ho-tung*. When a man of influence in my native place, relying on his power, had insulted and oppressed the people, I killed him; and, having escaped with difficulty, for five or six years I have been in the River and Lake provinces. Having recently heard in this place that an army is being raised to subdue the rebels, I am going (to the city) on purpose to enlist." *Hsuen-tê* at once told him of his own project. *Yün-ch'ang* was much pleased, and they went together to *Chang-fî's* farm to consult about the matter. *Fî* said: "At the back of my farm there is a peach garden, the flowers are just in full bloom. Let us to-morrow in that garden sacrifice to Heaven and Earth, and we three men will unite as brethren, with all our hearts, and then we may plan about this great matter." *Hsuen-tê* and *Yün-ch'ang* with one voice exclaimed: "That is very good."

14. From *Æsop's Fables*, by Robert Thom, Esq., v. native text (lithographed),  
page 14.

a. 2.

*Ch'ái p'āng yāng.*

- a. 6. *Pw'ān-kù ts'ù, niàu-sheu kiai nāng yēn. Yt-jī ch'ái yū yāng, t'āng*  
 a. 20. *kiēn yin-shuū; ch'ái yū p'āng k'í yāng; tsé-niēn wá í tsè ts'í, nài*  
 b. 10. *kiāng tsé ch'í yū: "Já huān-chū tsé shuū, shí lau-fū pū-nāng yin,*  
 b. 25. *kaī shā. Yāng tūi yū: "Tá-wāng tsai shāng liú, yāng tsai hiá liá;*  
 c. 14. *sūi chū wá gai." Ch'ái fū tsé yū: "Já k'ú-niēn meū-jī ch'í-yēn tē-*  
 d. 5. *tsūi yū ngō, yí kaī shā." Yāng yū: "Tá wāng wá í; k'ú niēn meū-*  
 d. 20. *jī yāng wí ch'í-shí, gān-nāng tē-tsūi tá-wāng?" Ch'ái tsé piēn-sū wéi*  
 e. 11. *nú, tsé ch'í yū: "Já ch'í fú-mū tē-tsūi yū ngō, yí jú ch'í tsūi yē." Sūi*  
 f. 4. *p'āng ch'í. Yēn yūn: "Yú kiá ch'í tsūi, hō huān wá ts'í?" Tsé tsé*  
 f. 18. *ch'í wéi yē.*

g. 2.

*Ár shū.*

- g. 5. *Ts'ān-lō chūng yūi q' shū, p'ān-shū tsūn-í, yí tsai kīng-sē kwō-huō.*  
 g. 21. *Huū yí-jī lai ts'ān t'ān-kiá, ts'ān-shū liú q' kw'ān ch'í. Sō ch'í ch'í*  
 h. 12. *shí ts'ū-cheū pū-k'ān. Kīng-shū yū: "Jú kú wá huō, ū-shí wá mé-*  
 i. 3. *wí, hō-pū sūi ngō tau kīng, yí-kiēn shí-miēn?" Ts'ān-shū hān-jēn,*  
 i. 18. *t'āng wāng k'í tau kīng, kwō-jēn shí-yīng kiai í yí-jī q' shū t'āng*  
 j. 9. *chō mé! Lai yí-hiūng kiuen, k'í tsāng ts'ān-shū huō k'ú! Ts'ān-shū*  
 j. 23. *tá hiat, wq̄n yū: "Tsé chū ch'āng yūi tsé hái há?" Yū: "Jēn"*  
 k. 11. *Ts'ān-shū ts'í, yū: "Fí ngō ch'í fū yé, yū k'í pāng-huāng q' kān-ch'í;*  
 l. 2. *shū jō gān-tsīng q' tsau-k'āng?" Sū yūn: "Nīng shí k'ái meī-chū,*  
 l. 16. *mō-shí ts'íu meī-fān!" Tsé tsé ch'í wéi yē!*

men who are mentioned in the opening stanza (*Huā-kí sán*, 11. a. 10). They united with a solemn oath to retrieve the fortunes of the *Hán* family. They associated with themselves *Lü-pū*, *Kūng-mīng*, and *Yuēn-shau*, and finally established the kingdom of *Sū*<sup>a</sup>. Another famous general, *Tsai-tsau*, succeeded in forming the kingdom of *Wéi*<sup>b</sup>, and *Sān-kiuēn* raised for himself the kingdom of *Wú*<sup>c</sup>: these were the *Sān-kuō*, 'the Three Kingdoms,' which form the subject of this, the best historical romance of the Chinese.

*Pw'ān-kù* (14. a. 6) is a mythical personage, who is described in Chinese books as the first man, who, though not the creator of the world, had the Herculean task allotted to him of bringing the chaos into a cosmos, of making order and beauty out of confusion. The Rationalists of China, commonly called *Tauists*, have proceeded to particularise the acts of this individual; they describe his work of splitting the heavens and chiselling the rocks. His efforts, they say, were continued eighteen thousand years. On his death his head became a mountain, his breath the winds, and his voice thunder, with other ridiculous stories, similar however to the Scandinavian myths on this subject. For a long account of this myth see Dr. Williams' *Middle Kingdom*, vol. VI. p. 196, where a curious picture is given of *Pw'ān-kù* at work.

<sup>a</sup> 蜀<sup>b</sup> 魏<sup>c</sup> 吳

*Translation of Æsop's Fables, by Robert Thom, Esq., v. native text (lithographed), page 14.*

The wolf devours the sheep.

In the primitive times of *Pwan-ku*, when all the birds and beasts could speak, one day a wolf and a sheep were drinking at the same stream. The wolf wished to devour the sheep, but, thinking within himself that he had no excuse, he reproached him sternly and said: "You are making this water muddy, so that I, your superior, cannot drink, I must kill you." The sheep replied: "Your Honour is at the upper part of the stream, and I am at the lower; though the water is muddy it is no obstacle to *your drinking*." The wolf again reproached him and said: "Last year on a particular day you said something offensive against me; I ought to kill you." The sheep said: "Your Honour is under a mistake, *for* last year on that particular day I was not born. How could I offend against Your Honour?" The wolf then, instead of being ashamed, became angry, and, reproving him, said: "Your parents offended against me, and it is your fault too," and forthwith devoured him. The proverb says: "If you want to impute a crime to any one, why distress yourself at the want of an excuse?" This is what is meant.

The two mice.

In a retired village were two mice, who were both relatives and friends. One of them went to live in the city, and one day unexpectedly she came to the village to visit her old friend. The country mouse begged to be allowed to entertain her. But the provisions which she brought out were coarse and foul, and were not good enough for the city mouse, who said: "Your abode is not very beautiful, and your household food is neither fine nor savoury, why not come with me to the city and take a look at the world?" The village mouse gladly went with her, and on arriving at the city *she found* certainly that the food was very different. But one day, as the two mice were together drinking, a fierce dog suddenly made his appearance, and was nearly seizing upon the country mouse and carrying her off. The country mouse, in great alarm, enquired, saying: "Are these evils always here?" *Her friend* replied: "Yes." Then the country mouse begged to be excused, and said: "This is no happiness to me, with all this terror and good victuals. There is nothing like peace and coarse husks." The common saying is: "It is better to drink rice-water with pleasant feelings, than to eat the rice that produces sorrow\*." This is just what it means.

---

\* Lit. 'opening eye-brow rice-water' than 'sorrowing eye-brow rice.'



至世無舉否侯以粉翼帝俞有木孜。書經。5  
 于子若丹數則以出米予曰禹。書。益稷。10  
 五創丹納威明之納黼欲吁安汝止。虞書。益稷。10  
 千若朱以之。禹曰。俞哉。帝。光天之下。至海隅蒼生。萬邦黎獻。共惟帝臣。惟帝時。15  
 州時傲。惟慢遊是好。傲虐是作。罔晝夜。頌頌。罔水行舟。朋淫于家。用殄厥。20  
 十娶于塗山。辛壬癸甲。啟呱呱而泣。予弗子。惟荒度土功。弼成五服。30  
 有二師。外薄四海。咸建五長。各迪有功。苗頑弗卽工。帝其念哉。

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a





帝曰。迪朕德。時乃功。惟叙。皇陶方祇。厥叙。方施象刑。惟明。夔曰。憂擊鳴球。搏拊  
 琴瑟。以詠祖考來格。虞賓在位。羣后德讓。下管鼗鼓。合止祝敔。笙鏞以間。鳥獸  
 蹌蹌。簫韶九成。鳳凰來儀。夢曰。於予擊石拊石。百獸率舞。庶尹允諧。帝庸作歌。  
 曰。勅天之命。惟時惟幾。乃歌曰。股肱喜哉。元首起哉。百工熙哉。皋陶拜手稽首。  
 齔言曰。念哉。率作興事。慎乃憲。欽哉。屢省乃成。欽哉。乃賡載歌曰。元首明哉。股  
 肱良哉。庶事康哉。又歌曰。元首叢脞哉。股肱惰哉。萬事墮哉。帝拜曰。兪往欽哉。  
 箕子碑。柳宗元。凡大人之道有三。一曰正蒙難。二曰法授聖。三曰  
 化及民。殷有仁人曰箕子。實具茲道。以立於世。故孔子述六經之旨。尤殷勤焉。  
 當紂之時。大道悖亂。天威之動。不能戒聖人之言。無所用。進死以併命。誠仁矣。  
 無益吾祀。故不爲。委身以存祀。誠仁矣。與亡吾國。故不忍。且是二道有行之者。  
 矣。是用保其明哲。與之俯仰。晦是謨範。辱於囚奴。昏而無邪。墮而不息。故在易  
 曰。箕子之明夷。正蒙難也。及天命既改。生人以正。乃出大法。用爲聖師。周人得  
 以序彝倫而立大典。故在書曰。以箕子歸作洪範。法授聖也。及封朝鮮。推道訓  
 俗。惟德無陋。惟人無遠。用廣殷祀。俾夷爲華。化及民也。率是大道。繫于厥躬。天  
 地變化。我得其正。其大人歟。於虜當其周時未至。殷祀未殄。比于己死。微子已

5

10

15

20

25

30

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a



去。向使紂惡未稔而自斃。武庚念亂以圖存。國無其人誰與興理。是固人事之  
 或然者也。然則先生隱忍而爲此。其有志于斯乎。唐某年某月某日作廟汲郡  
 歲時致祀。○

四書論語。

子曰學而時習之不亦說乎。有朋自遠方來不亦樂乎。人不  
 知而不愠不亦君子乎。子曰其爲人也孝弟而好犯上者鮮矣。不好犯上而  
 好作亂者未之有也。君子務本本立而道生孝弟也者其爲仁之本與。子曰巧  
 言令色鮮矣仁。曾子曰吾日三省吾身爲人謀而不忠乎與朋友交而不信乎  
 傳不習乎。子曰道千乘之國敬事而信節用而愛人使民以時。子曰弟子入則  
 孝出則弟謹而信汎愛衆而親仁行有餘力則以學文。子夏曰賢賢易色事父  
 母能竭其力事君能致其身與朋友交言而有信雖曰未學吾必謂之學矣。子  
 曰君子不重則不威學則不固主忠信無友不如己者過則勿憚改。曾子曰慎  
 終追遠民德歸厚矣。子禽問於子貢曰夫子至於是邦也必聞其政求之與抑  
 與之與。子貢曰夫子溫良恭儉讓以得之。夫子之求之也其諸異乎人之求之  
 與。子曰父在觀其志父沒觀其行三年無改於父之道可謂孝矣。有子曰禮之  
 用和爲貴先王之道斯爲美小大由之有所不行知和而和不以禮節之不可





孟子謂齊宣王曰王之臣有託其妻子於其友而之楚遊者比其反也則凍餒其妻子則如之何王曰棄之曰士師不能治士則如之何王曰已之曰四境之內不治則如之何王顧左右而言他孟子見齊宣王曰所謂故國者非謂有喬木之謂也有世臣之謂也王無親臣矣昔者所進今日不知其亡也王曰吾何以識其不才而舍之曰國君進賢如不得已將使卑踰尊疏踰戚可不慎與左右皆曰賢未可也諸大夫皆曰賢未可也國人皆曰賢然後察之見賢焉然後用之○孟子見齊宣王曰爲巨室則必使工師求大木工師得大木則王喜以爲能勝其任也匠人斲而小之則王怒以爲不勝其任矣夫人幼而學之壯而欲行之王曰姑舍女所學而從我則何如今有璞玉於此雖萬鎰必使玉人彫琢之至於治國家則曰姑舍女所學而從我則何以異於教玉人彫琢玉哉○樂正子見孟子曰克告於君爲來見也嬖人有臧倉者沮君君是以不果來也曰行或使之止或尼之行止非人所能也吾之不遇魯侯天也臧氏之子焉能使子不遇哉○必有事焉而勿正心勿忘勿助長也無若宋人然宋人有閔其苗之不長而揠之者芒芒然歸謂其人曰今日病矣予助苗長矣其子趨而往視之苗則槁矣天下之不助苗長者寡矣以爲無益而舍之者不耘苗

5

10

15

20

25

30

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

者也。助之長者。擣苗者也。非徒無益而又害之。○  
 ○孟子曰。伯夷聖之清者也。伊尹聖之任者也。柳下惠聖之和者也。孔子聖之  
 時者也。孔子之謂集大成。集大成也者。金聲而玉振之也。金聲也者。始條理也。  
 玉振之也者。終條理也。始條理者。智之事也。終條理者。聖之事也。智譬則巧也。  
 聖譬則力也。由射於百步之外也。其至爾力也。其中非爾力也。○  
 ○惻隱之心。人皆有之。羞惡之心。人皆有之。恭敬之心。人皆有之。是非之心。人  
 皆有之。惻隱之心。仁也。羞惡之心。義也。恭敬之心。禮也。是非之心。智也。仁義禮  
 智。非由外鑠我也。我固有之也。弗思耳矣。故曰。求則得之。舍則失之。或相倍蓰。  
 而無算者。不能盡其才者也。詩曰。天生蒸民。有物有則。民之秉夷。好是懿德。孔  
 子曰。爲此詩者。其知道乎。故有物必有則。民之秉夷也。故好是懿德。○  
 ○孟子曰。牛山之木嘗美矣。以其郊於大國也。斧斤伐之。可以爲美乎。是其日  
 夜之所息。雨露之所潤。非無萌蘖之生焉。牛羊又從而牧之。是以若彼濯濯也。  
 人見其濯濯也。以爲未嘗有材焉。此豈山之性也哉。雖存乎人者。豈無仁義之  
 心哉。其所以放其良心者。亦猶斧斤之於木也。旦旦而伐之。可以爲美乎。其日  
 夜之所息。平旦之氣。其好惡與人相近也者。幾希。則其旦晝之所爲。有梏亡之。

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

[illegible]



聖諭 敦孝弟以重人倫。我聖祖仁皇帝臨御六十一年。法祖尊親。孝思不匱。  
 欽定孝經衍義一書。衍釋經文。義理詳貫。無非孝治天下之意。故聖諭十六條。  
 首以孝弟。開其端。朕丕承鴻業。追維往訓。推廣立教之思。先申孝弟之義。用是  
 與爾兵民人等。宣示之。夫孝者。天之經地之義。民之行也。人不知孝。父母獨不  
 思。父母愛子之心。乎方其未離懷抱。餓不能自哺。寒不能自衣。爲父母者。審音  
 聲。察形色。笑則爲之喜。啼則爲之憂。行動則跬步不離。疾病則寢食俱廢。以養  
 以教。至於成人。復爲授家室謀生理。百計經營。心力俱瘁。父母之德實同昊天  
 罔極。人子欲報親恩。於萬一。自當內盡其心。外竭其力。謹身節用。以勤服勞。以  
 隆孝養。毋博奕飲酒。毋好勇鬪狠。毋好貨財。私妻子。縱使儀文未備。而誠慤有  
 餘。推而廣之。如曾子所謂居處不莊。非孝。事君不忠。非孝。泄官不敬。非孝。朋友  
 不信。非孝。戰陳無勇。非孝。皆孝子分內之事也。○這第三段是單說孝的道理。  
 你們聽着。孝順爹娘。這一件事。是天地間常存的道理。百姓們最大的德行。你  
 們縱不知孝。順爹娘。怎麼不把那爹娘愛兒子的心腸。想上一想。當你們做孩  
 子的时候。爹娘懷抱着。冷了。不會自己穿衣。餓着你們顏色。你笑了。他便喜你  
 啼了。他便愁你。行動了。他就跟定了你。步不離你。若有了疾病。他便睡不能安。



5 ○尙節儉以惜財用。○生人不能一日而無用。即不可一日而無財。然必留有  
 10 餘之財而後可供不時之用。故節儉尙焉。夫財猶水也。節儉猶水之蓄也。水之  
 15 流不蓄則一洩無餘。而水立涸矣。財之流不節則用之無度。而財立匱矣。我聖  
 20 祖仁皇帝躬行節儉。爲天下先。休養生息。海內殷富。猶兢兢以惜財用示訓。蓋  
 25 自古民風皆貴乎勤儉。然勤而不儉。則十夫之力不足供一夫之用。積穡所藏  
 30 不足供一日之需。其害乃更甚也。○這頭一段是說聖祖仁皇帝殷殷垂訓的  
 緣由。大凡人生世上。不能一日沒有費。就不可一日沒有銀錢。然必定積蓄下  
 些銀錢。到那忽然使他的時候。纔得濟急。所以說節儉一着。是個絕妙的法子。  
 且這銀錢就如水一般。人節儉他。就象聚水的一般。流的水不聚。注些有多少。  
 流多少。就要乾涸了。用財如流水。若不仔細着些。任從多少銀錢轉眼也就罄  
 了。○夫兵丁錢糧有一定之數。乃不知搏節。衣好鮮麗。食求甘美。一月費數月  
 之糧。甚至稱貸以遂其欲。子母相權。日復一日。債深累重。饑寒不免。○這第二  
 段是說兵不知節儉的。你們兵丁的錢糧。原有一定之數目。若是不知道搏節。  
 衣服要華麗。飯食要美口。過一個月日子。到花費幾個月錢糧。這錢糧怎的够  
 費。甚且有不安生的。還要揭些債。任意揮灑。只顧一時快活。○

2.

刊  
表  
目

好迷傳。算計定了。到次日日出。就起來。叫小丹收拾行李。打點起身。自  
 却轉央店上一個小廝。拿了帖子來回拜。過公子。不期過公子已伏下人在下  
 處打聽。一見鐵公子來拜。早飛報與過公子。剛等的鐵公子到門。過公子早衣  
 冠齊楚。笑哈哈的迎將出來道。小弟昨日晉謁。不過聊表仰慕之誠。鐵敢勞台  
 兄賜顧。因連連打恭拱請進去。鐵公子原打帳。只到門投一名帖便走。忽見過  
 公子直出門迎接。十分殷勤。一團和氣。便放下冷臉來。只得投了名帖。兩相  
 揖讓。到廳。鐵公子就要施禮。過公子止住道。此間不便請教。遂將鐵直邀到後  
 廳。方纔施禮序坐。一面獻上茶來。過公子因說道。久聞台兄英雄之名。急思一  
 會。前蒙辱臨。敝邑時。即謀晉謁。而又匆匆發駕。抱恨至今。今幸再臨。又承垂顧。  
 誠又快事。敢板作平原十日之飲。以慰飢渴之懷。鐵公子茶罷。就立起身來道。  
 承長兄厚愛。本當領教。只是歸心似箭。今日立刻就要行了。把臂之歡。留待異  
 日可也。往外就走。過攔住道。相逢不飲真令風月笑人。任是行急。也要屈留三  
 日。鐵道。小弟實要行。不是故辭。乞長兄相諒。說罷。又往外走。過一手扯住道。  
 小弟雖不才。也忝爲宦家子弟。台兄不要看得十分輕了。若果看輕。就不該來  
 賜顧了。既蒙賜顧。便要算做賓主。小弟苦苦相留。不過欲少盡賓主之誼耳。非

有所求也。不識台兄何見拒之甚也。鐵公子道：蒙長兄殷殷雅愛，小弟亦不忍  
 言去。但裝已束行，色淙匆勢不容緩耳。過道既是台兄，不以朋友為情，快意要  
 行。小弟強留也，自覺惶愧。但只是清辰，愕腹而來，又令愕腹而去。弟心實有不  
 安，今亦不敢久留。只求暑停尼時，少動一餐，而即聽驅車就道。庶幾人情兩盡，  
 難道台兄還不肯俯從？鐵本不欲留，因見過深情厚貌，懇懇留止，得住下道，  
 道纔進拜，怎便好相擾？過道知已相逢，當忘不我。台兄快士，何故作此套言？正  
 說不了，只見水運忽走了進來，看見鐵忙施過禮，滿臉推笑道：「昨日舍姪女感  
 鐵先生遠來高誼，特托我學生具束奉屈，少表微忱，不識鐵先生何故見外？苦  
 苦辭了。今幸有緣，又得相陪。鐵道：我學生來殊草草，去復匆匆，於禮原無酬酢，  
 故敬托使者辭謝。即今日之來，亦不過願一識荆也。而蒙過兄，即諄諄投轄，欲  
 去，又恐非情。正在此費躊躇，幸老翁有以教之。水運道：古之好朋友，傾蓋如故，  
 鐵先生與過舍親，難道就不如古人，乃必拘拘於世俗如此甚非宜也。過笑道：  
 還是老大人說得痛快。鐵見二人互相款留，竟不記前情，只認做好意，便笑一  
 笑，坐下不復言去。不多時，備上酒來，過就坐。鐵道：原蒙憐朝飢而授餐，為何  
 又勞賜酒，恐飲非其時也。過笑道：慢慢飲去，少不得遇着飲時，三人俱大笑。

5

10

15

20

25

30

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

[illegible]

Digitized by Google

就坐而飲。原來三人與曲藥生俱是好友。一拈上手。便津津有味。你一杯我一  
 盞。便不復推辭。飲了半响。鐵道正有個住手之意。忽左右報王兵部的三公子來  
 了。三人只得停杯接見。過就安坐。道王兄來得甚妙。因用手指着鐵道。此位鐵  
 兄。豪傑士也。不可不會。王道。莫非就是打入大安侯養閒堂的鐵挺生麼。水運  
 忙答道。正是。正是。王因重復舉手足恭道。久仰久仰。失敬失敬。因滿斟一巨觴  
 送與鐵道。借過兄之酒。聊表小弟仰慕之私。鐵道接了也斟一觴。回敬道。小弟粗  
 豪何足道。台兄如金如玉。方得文品之正。彼此交贊。一連就是三巨觴。鐵道正  
 告止。忽左右又報李翰林的二公子來了。四人正要起身相迎。那李公子已走  
 到席前。止住道。相熟兄弟。不消動身。小弟竟就坐罷。過道。尚有遠客在此。鐵聽  
 說。又得離席。要作禮。那李且不作揖。先看着鐵問道。好英俊人物。且請教長兄  
 弟姓台號。鐵道。小弟乃大名鐵中玉。李道。這等說是鐵都憲的長君子。連連作  
 揖。道。久聞大名。今日有緣幸會。過就邀入坐。鐵此時酒已半酣。又想着要行。因  
 辭說道。李兄纔來。小弟本不該就要去。只因來得早。叨飲過多。况行色倥傯。不  
 能久住。只得要先別了。李因作色道。鐵兄也太欺人。既要行。何不早去。爲何小  
 弟剛到。就一刻也不能留。這是明欺小弟。不足與飲了。水運道。鐵先生去是要

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a



去久了。鐵無奈只得又復坐下。與李對飲了三巨觴。飲纔完忽左右又報道  
 張更却的大公子來了。眾人還未及答應只見那張公子歪戴着一頂方巾也  
 斜着兩隻色眼。糟包着一個麻臉。早吃得醉醺醺。一路叫將進來。道那一位是  
 鐵兄。既要到我歷城縣來。做豪傑。怎不會我一會。鐵正立起身來打帳。與他施  
 禮。見他言語不遜。便立住答應道。小弟便是。鐵挺生不知長兄要會小弟。有何  
 賜教。張也不爲禮。瞪着眼看鐵。看了又看。忽大笑說道。我只道鐵兄是七個頭。  
 八個胆的好漢子。却原來青青眉目。白白面孔。無異於女子。想是晉侯後坐了  
 事。餘且慢講。且先較一較酒量。看是如何。眾人聽了。俱贊美道。張兄妙論。大得  
 英雄本色。且請一觴一飲。而乾自乾了。遂舉空觴要炤乾。鐵見他乾的爽快。無  
 奈何也。只得勉強吃乾了。張道。纔像個朋友一面。又叫左右斟起兩觴。鐵道。小  
 弟坐久。適又陪王兄三觴。李兄三觴。方纔又去陪長兄一觴。賤量有限。張道。既  
 王李二兄俱連三觴。何獨小弟。要一觴而止。是欺小弟了。從不受人之欺。張便  
 滿臉含怒。道。講明對飲。我吃了。你如何不吃。莫非你倚強欺我麼。鐵一時醉的  
 身都軟了。靠着椅子。只搖頭道。吃得便吃。吃不得便不吃。有甚麼強。張道。這杯  
 酒你敢不吃麼。鐵道。不吃。張大怒道。你怎敢到我山東來裝腔。你不吃。我這杯

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

"...and I have been thinking about you ever since."

聖德太子之與神皇正統記

第七卷 第五年 第三十回 市邊平下 八時三十分 已過

門外漢

[illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible][illegible]

**THE**

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

6  
 7  
 8  
 9  
 10  
 11  
 12  
 13  
 14  
 15  
 16  
 17  
 18  
 19  
 20  
 21  
 22  
 23  
 24  
 25  
 26  
 27  
 28  
 29  
 30  
 31  
 32  
 33  
 34  
 35  
 36  
 37  
 38  
 39  
 40  
 41  
 42  
 43  
 44  
 45  
 46  
 47  
 48  
 49  
 50  
 51  
 52  
 53  
 54  
 55  
 56  
 57  
 58  
 59  
 60  
 61  
 62  
 63  
 64  
 65  
 66  
 67  
 68  
 69  
 70  
 71  
 72  
 73  
 74  
 75  
 76  
 77  
 78  
 79  
 80  
 81  
 82  
 83  
 84  
 85  
 86  
 87  
 88  
 89  
 90  
 91  
 92  
 93  
 94  
 95  
 96  
 97  
 98  
 99  
 100  
 101  
 102  
 103  
 104  
 105  
 106  
 107  
 108  
 109  
 110  
 111  
 112  
 113  
 114  
 115  
 116  
 117  
 118  
 119  
 120  
 121  
 122  
 123  
 124  
 125  
 126  
 127  
 128  
 129  
 130  
 131  
 132  
 133  
 134  
 135  
 136  
 137  
 138  
 139  
 140  
 141  
 142  
 143  
 144  
 145  
 146  
 147  
 148  
 149  
 150  
 151  
 152  
 153  
 154  
 155  
 156  
 157  
 158  
 159  
 160  
 161  
 162  
 163  
 164  
 165  
 166  
 167  
 168  
 169  
 170  
 171  
 172  
 173  
 174  
 175  
 176  
 177  
 178  
 179  
 180  
 181  
 182  
 183  
 184  
 185  
 186  
 187  
 188  
 189  
 190  
 191  
 192  
 193  
 194  
 195  
 196  
 197  
 198  
 199  
 200  
 201  
 202  
 203  
 204  
 205  
 206  
 207  
 208  
 209  
 210  
 211  
 212  
 213  
 214  
 215  
 216  
 217  
 218  
 219  
 220  
 221  
 222  
 223  
 224  
 225  
 226  
 227  
 228  
 229  
 230  
 231  
 232  
 233  
 234  
 235  
 236  
 237  
 238  
 239  
 240  
 241  
 242  
 243  
 244  
 245  
 246  
 247  
 248  
 249  
 250  
 251  
 252  
 253  
 254  
 255  
 256  
 257  
 258  
 259  
 260  
 261  
 262  
 263  
 264  
 265  
 266  
 267  
 268  
 269  
 270  
 271  
 272  
 273  
 274  
 275  
 276  
 277  
 278  
 279  
 280  
 281  
 282  
 283  
 284  
 285  
 286  
 287  
 288  
 289  
 290  
 291  
 292  
 293  
 294  
 295  
 296  
 297  
 298  
 299  
 300  
 301  
 302  
 303  
 304  
 305  
 306  
 307  
 308  
 309  
 310  
 311  
 312  
 313  
 314  
 315  
 316  
 317  
 318  
 319  
 320  
 321  
 322  
 323  
 324  
 325  
 326  
 327  
 328  
 329  
 330  
 331  
 332  
 333  
 334  
 335  
 336  
 337  
 338  
 339  
 340  
 341  
 342  
 343  
 344  
 345  
 346  
 347  
 348  
 349  
 350  
 351  
 352  
 353  
 354  
 355  
 356  
 357  
 358  
 359  
 360  
 361  
 362  
 363  
 364  
 365  
 366  
 367  
 368  
 369  
 370  
 371  
 372  
 373  
 374  
 375  
 376  
 377  
 378  
 379  
 380  
 381  
 382  
 383  
 384  
 385  
 386  
 387  
 388  
 389  
 390  
 391  
 392  
 393  
 394  
 395  
 396  
 397  
 398  
 399  
 400  
 401  
 402  
 403  
 404  
 405  
 406  
 407  
 408  
 409  
 410  
 411  
 412  
 413  
 414  
 415  
 416  
 417  
 418  
 419  
 420  
 421  
 422  
 423  
 424  
 425  
 426  
 427  
 428  
 429  
 430  
 431  
 432  
 433  
 434  
 435  
 436  
 437  
 438  
 439  
 440  
 441  
 442  
 443  
 444  
 445  
 446  
 447  
 448  
 449  
 450  
 451  
 452  
 453  
 454  
 455  
 456  
 457  
 458  
 459  
 460  
 461  
 462  
 463  
 464  
 465  
 466  
 467  
 468  
 469  
 470  
 471  
 472  
 473  
 474  
 475  
 476  
 477  
 478  
 479  
 480  
 481  
 482  
 483  
 484  
 485  
 486  
 487  
 488  
 489  
 490  
 491  
 492  
 493  
 494  
 495  
 496  
 497  
 498  
 499  
 500  
 501  
 502  
 503  
 504  
 505  
 506  
 507  
 508  
 509  
 510  
 511  
 512  
 513  
 514  
 515  
 516  
 517  
 518  
 519  
 520  
 521  
 522  
 523  
 524  
 525  
 526  
 527  
 528  
 529

酒我偏要你吃了去。因拿起那杯酒來。炤着鐵夾頭夾臉。只一澆。鐵雖然醉了。  
 心上却還明白。一急急得火星亂迸。因將酒都急醒了。亡跳起身來。將張一把。  
 抓住。揉了兩揉。道：「怎敢到虎頭上來尋死？」張大叫道：「你敢打我麼？」鐵便一掌道：  
 「打你便怎麼？」過纔話道：「好意留飲。」乃敢倚酒撒野。快關門不要走了。且打他個。  
 酒醒。早兩廂走出七八個大漢。鐵笑一笑道：「一羣風狗。怎敢來欺人。」因一手捉。  
 住張不放。一手將檯子一掀。那些餚饌碗盞打翻一地。水運剛走到身邊。被鐵。  
 只一推。道：「看水小姐分上。」饒你打早推跌去。有丈餘遠。近跌倒地上。扒不起來。  
 鐵將張提將起來。只一手。掃得衆人東倒西歪。張原是個色厲。內花酒洵虛。  
 的滿口叫道：「大家不要動手。」有話好講。鐵道：「沒甚話講。只好好送我出去。便萬。  
 事全休。若要圈留。叫你人人人都死。」張連連應承道：「我送你。我送你放鐵將張放。  
 平。站穩了。」一手提着自步了出來。衆人眼睜睜看着。氣得白挺。又不敢上前。只。  
 好在傍說硬話。道：「敢怎如此胡爲？」且饒他去。少不得要見個高下。鐵只作不聽。  
 見。提着張直同走出大門之外。方將手放開。道：「煩張兄傳語諸兄。我鐵中玉若。  
 有寸鐵在手。千軍萬馬中。也不可出人。何況三五個酒色之徒。十數個漢指望。  
 要捋猛虎之鬚。何其愚也。」將手一舉。道：「請了。」竟大踏步回下處來。

水滸傳○話說故宋哲宗皇帝在時其時宋仁宗天子已遠東京開封府汴梁  
 宣武軍便有一個浮浪破落戶子弟姓高排行第二自小不成家業只好刺鎗  
 使棒最是踢得好腳氣毬京師人口順不叫高二却都叫他做高毬後來發跡  
 便將氣毬那字去了毛傍添作立人便改作姓高名侏這人吹彈歌舞刺鎗使  
 棒相撲頑耍亦胡亂學詩書詞賦若論仁義禮智信行忠良却是不會只在東  
 京城裏城外挈閒因挈了一個生鐵王員外兒子使錢每日三瓦兩舍風花雪  
 月被他父親開封府裏告了一紙文狀府尹把高侏斷了二十脊杖迭配出界  
 發放東京城裏人民不許容他在家宿食高侏無討奈何只得來准西臨淮州  
 投遼一個開賭坊的閒漢柳大郎名喚柳世權他平生專好惜客養閒人招納  
 四方子隔滌漢子高侏投托得柳大郎家一住三年後來哲宗天子因拜南郊  
 感得風調雨順放寬恩大赦天下那高侏在臨淮州因得了赦宥罪犯思量要  
 回東京這柳世權却和東京城裏金梁橋下開生藥舖的董將仕是親戚寫了  
 一封書札收拾些人事盤纏發高侏回東京投遼董將仕家過活當時高侏  
 辭了柳大郎背上包裹離了臨淮州迤邐回到東京逕來金梁橋下董生樂家  
 下了這封書董將仕一見高侏看了柳世權來書自肚裏尋思道這高侏我家

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

CHAPTER I  
THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA  
The first discovery of America was made by Christopher Columbus in 1492. He was an Italian explorer who sailed across the Atlantic Ocean in search of a westward route to India. On October 12, 1492, he landed on the island of San Salvador in the Bahamas. This event marked the beginning of European exploration and colonization of the Americas.

CHAPTER II  
THE EARLY YEARS  
The early years of the United States were marked by the struggle for independence from British rule. The American Revolution began in 1775 and ended in 1783 with the signing of the Treaty of Paris. The new nation was founded on the principles of liberty, justice, and equality.

CHAPTER III  
THE CONSTITUTION  
The Constitution of the United States was drafted in 1787 and ratified in 1789. It established the framework for the federal government and the rights of the states. The Constitution is the supreme law of the land and has guided the nation through its history.

CHAPTER IV  
THE GROWTH OF THE NATION  
The growth of the United States was rapid in the early years. The nation expanded westward, acquiring new territories and states. The population grew, and the economy developed. The United States emerged as a major power in the world.

CHAPTER V  
THE CIVIL WAR  
The Civil War was fought between 1861 and 1865. It was a conflict over the issue of slavery. The Union, representing the free states, fought against the Confederacy, which was formed by the seceding southern states. The Union emerged victorious, and slavery was abolished.

CHAPTER VI  
THE RECONSTRUCTION  
The Reconstruction period followed the Civil War. It was a time of rebuilding the South and integrating the freed slaves into society. The Reconstruction era ended in 1877 with the Compromise of 1877.

CHAPTER VII  
THE Gilded Age  
The Gilded Age was a period of rapid industrialization and economic growth. It was characterized by the rise of big business and the accumulation of vast wealth by a few individuals. The Gilded Age ended in 1900.

CHAPTER VIII  
THE PROGRESSIVE Era  
The Progressive Era was a period of social and political reform. It was a response to the problems created by the Gilded Age. Progressives sought to improve the lives of the poor, regulate big business, and expand the rights of citizens. The Progressive Era ended in 1914.

CHAPTER IX  
THE WORLD WAR  
The World War was fought between 1914 and 1918. It was a global conflict that involved most of the world's major powers. The United States entered the war in 1917 and played a significant role in the Allied victory.

CHAPTER X  
THE INTERWAR PERIOD  
The interwar period was a time of relative peace and economic growth. It was a period of experimentation with new political and social ideas. The interwar period ended in 1939 with the outbreak of World War II.

CHAPTER XI  
THE SECOND WORLD WAR  
The Second World War was fought between 1939 and 1945. It was a global conflict that involved most of the world's major powers. The United States played a leading role in the Allied victory.

CHAPTER XII  
THE COLD WAR  
The Cold War was a period of tension and rivalry between the United States and the Soviet Union. It lasted from 1945 to 1991. The Cold War was a struggle for global dominance between the two superpowers.

CHAPTER XIII  
THE POST-COLD WAR ERA  
The post-Cold War era is a period of relative peace and economic growth. It is a time of globalization and the rise of new powers. The post-Cold War era is still ongoing.

蘇中里八岐日客人一珍日吉二日翌日六日既日五縣一日小三番大銀

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉日吉

o n m i a

如何安着得他。若是個志誠老實的人。可以用他在家出入。也教孩兒們學些  
 好。他却是個摯閒的破落戶。沒信行的人。亦且當初有過犯來被斷配的人。舊  
 性必不肯改。若留住在家中。倒惹得孩兒們不學好了。待不收留他。又撇不過  
 柳大郎面皮。當時只得權且歡天喜地。相留在家宿歇。每日酒食管待。住了十  
 數日。董將仕思量出一個路數。將出一套衣服。寫了一封書簡。對高俅說道。小  
 人家下。螢火之光。照人不亮。恐後悞了足下。我轉薦足下與小蘇學士處。久後  
 也得個出身。足下意內。如何。高俅大喜。謝了董將仕。董將仕使個人將着書簡  
 引領高俅。逕到學士府內。門史轉報小蘇學士出來見了高俅。看了來書。知道  
 高俅原是摯閒浮浪的人。心下相道。我這里如何安着得他。不如做個人情。薦  
 他去駙馬王晉卿府裏。做個親隨人。都喚他做小王都太尉。他便喜歡這樣的  
 人。當時回了董將仕書札。留高俅在府裏住了一夜。次日寫了一封書呈。使簡  
 幹人送高俅去。那小王都太尉處。這太尉乃是哲宗皇帝妹夫。神宗皇帝的駙  
 馬。他喜愛風流人物。正用這樣的人。一見小蘇學士差人持書。送這高俅來。拜  
 見了。便喜。隨即寫回書。收留高俅在府內做個親隨。自此高俅遭際在王都尉  
 府中出入。如同家人一般。自古道。日遠日疎。日親日近。忽一日。小王都太尉慶



誕生辰分付府中安排筵宴專請小舅端王。這端王乃是神宗天子第十一子。  
 哲宗皇帝御弟見掌東駕排號九大王是個聰明俊俏人物浮浪子弟門風幫  
 閒之事無一般不曉無一般不會更無一般不愛如琴琴書畫無所不通。踢毬  
 打彈品竹調絲吹彈歌舞自不必說。當日王都尉府中准備筵宴水陸俱備。  
 請端王居中坐定太尉對席相陪酒進數杯食供兩套。那端王起身淨手偶來  
 書院裏少歇猛見書架上對兒羊脂玉碾成鎮紙獅子極是做得好細巧  
 玲瓏端王拿起獅子不落手看了一回道好王都尉見端王心愛便說道再有  
 一個玉龍筆架也是這個匠人一手做的。却不在手頭明日取來一併相送端  
 王大喜道深謝厚意。想那筆架必是更妙。王都尉道明日取出來送至宮中便  
 見端王又謝了兩個依舊入席飲宴至暮盡醉方散。端王相別回宮去了。次  
 日小王都太尉取出玉龍筆架和兩個鎮紙玉獅子着一個小金盒子盛了。用  
 黃羅包複包了寫了一封書呈却使高俅送去。高俅領了王都尉鈞旨將着兩  
 般玉玩器懷中揣着書呈逕投端王宮中來。把門官吏轉報與院公沒多時院  
 公出來問你是那個府裏來的人。高俅施禮罷答道小人是王駙馬府中特送  
 玉玩器來進大王院公道殿下在庭心裏和小黃門踢氣毬。你自過去高俅道

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a





相煩引進。院公引到庭門。高俅看時見端王頭戴軟紗唐巾。身穿紫繡龍袍。腰  
 繫文武雙綳條。把繡龍袍前襟拽札起。揣在繖兒邊。足穿一雙嵌金線飛鳳靴。  
 三五個小黃門相伴着。蹴氣毬。高俅不敢過。去衝撞立在從人背後伺候也。  
 是高俅合當發跡時。運到來那個氣毬。騰地起來。端王接個不着。向人叢裏直  
 滾到高俅身邊。那高俅見氣毬來也。是一時的膽量。使個鴛鴦拐。踢還端王。端  
 王見了大喜。便問道。你是甚人。高俅向前跪下道。小的都是王都尉親隨。受東人  
 使令。齊送兩般玉玩器來進獻大王。有書呈在此拜上。端王聽罷笑道。姐夫真  
 如此掛心。高俅取出書呈進上。端王開盒子看了玩器。都遞與堂候官收了去。  
 那端王且不理玉器下落。却先問高俅道。你這來會踢氣毬。你喚做甚麼。高俅  
 叉手跪覆道。小的叫做高俅。胡亂踢得幾牌。端王道。你好。你便下場來踢。一向要  
 高俅拜道。小的是何等樣人。敢與恩王下脚。端王道。這是齊雲社名爲天下圓  
 但踢何傷。高俅再拜道。怎敢。三回五次告辭。端王定要他踢。高俅只得叩頭謝  
 罪。解膝下場。纔踢幾脚。端王喝采。高俅只得把平生本事都使出來。奉奉端王。  
 那身分模樣。這氣毬一似鰐膠粘在身上的。端王大喜。那里肯放高俅回府去。  
 就留在官中過一夜。次日排個筵會。專請王都尉官中赴宴。○

三國誌。且說張讓段珪劫擄少帝及陳留王冒烟突火連夜奔走北邙山。  
 約三更時分後面喊聲大舉人馬趕至當前河南中部棧吏閔貢大呼逆賊休  
 走。張讓見事急遂投河而死。帝與陳留王未知虛實不敢高聲伏於河邊亂草  
 之內。軍馬四散去。趕不知帝之所在。帝與王伏至四更露水又下腹中飢餒相  
 抱而哭。又怕人知覺吞聲草莽之中。陳留王曰：「此間不可久戀。須別尋活路。」  
 是二人以衣相結爬上岸邊。滿地荆棘黑暗之中不見行路。正無奈何。忽有流  
 螢千百成羣光芒照耀。只在帝前飛轉。陳留王曰：「此天助我兄弟也。」遂隨螢火  
 而行。漸漸見路行至五更。足痛不能行。山崗邊見一草堆。帝與王臥于草堆之  
 中。草堆前面是一所庄院。庄主是夜夢兩紅日墜於庄後。驚覺披衣出戶。四下  
 觀望。見庄後草堆上紅光冲天。慌忙往視。却是二人臥于草堆畔。庄主問曰：「二  
 少年誰家之子？」帝不敢應。陳留王指帝曰：「此是當今皇帝。遭十常侍之亂逃難  
 到此。吾乃王弟陳留王也。」庄主大驚再拜曰：「臣先朝司徒崔烈之弟崔毅也。因  
 見十常侍賣官嫉賢故隱於此。遂扶帝入庄跪進酒食。却說閔貢趕上段珪拏  
 住問天子何在。珪言已在半路相失不知何往。貢遂殺段珪。縣頭于馬項下分  
 兵四散尋覓自己。却獨乘一馬隨路追尋。偶至崔毅庄。毅見首級問之。貢說詳





細崔毅引貢見帝。君臣痛哭貢曰國不可一日無君請陛下還都崔毅庄上止  
 有瘦馬一匹備與帝乘貢與陳留王共乘一馬離庄而行不到三里司徒王允  
 太尉楊彪左軍校尉淳于瓊右軍校尉趙萌後軍校尉鮑信中軍校尉袁紹一  
 行人衆數百人馬接着車駕君臣皆哭先使人將段珪首級往京師號令另換  
 好馬與帝及陳留王騎坐。帝還京先是洛陽小兒謠曰帝非帝王非王千乘  
 萬騎走北邙至此果應其讖車駕行不到數里忽見旌旗蔽日塵土遮天一枝  
 人馬到來百官失色帝亦大驚袁紹驟馬出問何人繡旗影裏一將飛出厲聲  
 問天子何在帝戰慄不能言陳留王勒馬向前叱曰來者何人卓曰西涼刺史  
 董卓也。陳留曰汝來保駕耶。汝來却駕耶。卓應曰特來保駕。陳留曰既來保駕  
 天子在此何不下馬。卓大驚慌忙下馬拜于道左。陳留王以言撫慰董卓自初  
 至終並無失語。卓暗奇之。已懷廢立之意。是日還宮見何太后俱各痛哭檢點  
 宮中不見了傳國璽。董卓屯兵城外每日帶鐵甲馬軍入城橫行街市百姓惶  
 惶不安卓出入宮庭畧無忌憚。後軍校尉鮑信來見袁紹言董卓必有異心速  
 除之。紹曰朝廷新定未可輕動。鮑信見王允亦言其事。允曰且容商議。信自引  
 本部軍兵投泰山去了。董卓招誘何進兄弟部下之兵盡歸掌握私謂李儒曰

5

10

15

20

25

30

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a



吾欲廢帝立陳留王何如李儒曰今朝廷無主不就此時行事遲則有變矣來  
 日子溫明園中召集百官諭以廢立有不從者斬之則威權之行正在今日卓  
 喜次日大排筵會遍請公卿公卿皆懼董卓誰敢不到卓待百官到了然後徐  
 徐到園門下馬帶劍入席酒行數巡卓教停酒止樂乃厲聲曰吾有一言衆官  
 靜聽衆官側耳卓曰天子爲萬民之主無威儀不可以奉宗廟社稷今上懦弱  
 不若陳留王聰明好學可承大位吾欲廢帝立陳留王諸大臣以爲何如諸官  
 聽罷不敢出聲坐上一人推案直出立于筵前大呼不可不可汝是何人敢發  
 大語天子乃先帝嫡子初無過失何得妄議廢立汝欲爲篡逆耶卓視之乃荆  
 州刺史丁原也卓怒叱曰順我者生逆我者死遂掣佩劍欲斬丁原時李儒急進  
 丁原背後一人生得器宇軒昂威風凜凜手執方天畫戟怒目而視李儒急進  
 曰今日飲宴之處不可談國政來日向都堂公論未遲衆人皆勸丁原上馬而  
 去卓問百官曰吾所言合公道否盧植曰明公差矣昔太甲不明伊尹放之于  
 桐官昌邑王登位方二十七日造惡三十餘條故霍光告太廟而廢之今上雖  
 幼聰明仁智並無分毫過失公乃外郡刺史素未參與國政又無伊霍之大才  
 何可強主廢立之事聖人云有伊尹之志則可無伊尹之志則篡也

1. The first part of the document discusses the importance of maintaining accurate records of all transactions. It emphasizes that proper record-keeping is essential for the transparency and accountability of the organization. The text outlines the various methods used to collect and analyze data, ensuring that the information is reliable and up-to-date.

2. The second part of the document focuses on the implementation of these practices across different departments. It provides a detailed overview of the challenges faced during the process and the strategies employed to overcome them. The document also includes a timeline of the project, highlighting key milestones and the progress made to date.

3. The third part of the document presents the results of the study. It includes a series of charts and graphs that illustrate the data collected. The analysis shows that the implementation of the proposed practices has led to significant improvements in the organization's performance. The document also discusses the limitations of the study and suggests areas for further research.

4. The final part of the document provides a conclusion and a list of recommendations. It summarizes the key findings of the study and offers practical advice for other organizations looking to implement similar practices. The document also includes a bibliography of the sources used in the research.

[illegible]

劍向前欲殺植議郎彭伯諫曰盧尚書海內人望今先害之恐天下震怖卓  
 乃止司徒王允曰廢立之事不可酒後相商另日再議于是百官皆散卓按劍  
 立于園門忽見一人躍馬持戟于園門外往來卓問李儒此何人也儒曰此丁  
 原義兒姓呂名布字奉先者也主公且須避之卓乃入園潛避次日入報丁原  
 引軍城外搦戰卓怒引軍同李儒出迎兩陣對圓只見呂布頂束髮金冠披百  
 花戰袍擐唐貌鎧甲繫獅蠻寶帶縱馬提戟隨丁建陽出到陣前建陽指卓罵  
 曰國家不幸閹宦弄權以至萬民塗炭爾無尺寸之功焉敢妄言廢立欲亂朝  
 廷董卓未及回言呂布飛馬殺過來董卓慌走建陽率軍掩殺卓兵大敗退三  
 十餘里下寨聚眾商議卓曰吾觀呂布非常人也吾若得此人何慮天下哉帳  
 前一人出曰主公勿憂某與呂布同鄉知其勇而無謀見利忘義某憑三寸不  
 爛之舌說呂布拱手來降可乎卓大喜觀其人乃虎賁中郎將李肅也卓曰汝  
 將何以說之肅曰某聞主公有名馬一匹號曰赤兔日行千里須得此馬再用  
 金珠以利結其心某更進說詞呂布必反丁原來投主公矣卓問李儒曰此言  
 可乎儒曰主公欲取天下何惜一馬卓欣然與之更與黃金一千兩明珠數十  
 顆玉帶一條李肅齊了禮物投呂布寨來伏路軍人圍住肅曰可速報呂將軍

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

○東木警喻。昔有爲父者臥病在床。將絕。衆子環聽吩咐。其父曰。吾有一物。汝等試之。遂擲木條一束。令其子折之。試能斷否。衆子如命。折之不能。斷父誨之曰。汝且逐條抽出。次第分析。試能斷否。於是莫不隨手而斷。父曰。我死之後。汝等不宜分離。合則不受。人欺。分則易於折斷。此木足以爲証矣。俗語云。唇齒相依。連則萬無一失。若分之唇亡。則齒寒。無有不失也。慎之。如以一國而論。各據一方者。鮮有不敗。反不如合力相連之爲美也。

○報恩鼠。獅子熟睡於郊外。小鼠在旁玩跳。驚醒而戲之。獅隨以爪覆之。鼠不能脫。哀鳴。爪下獅念小鼠區區之體。殺之無益。不如捨之。鼠得免。後遇獅子。悞投獵者之網。勢不能脫。鼠念爪下之恩。遂將網嚼破。獅子始得脫身。如世所謂十二條梁。不知何條得力。又云。得放手時須放手。得饒人處且饒人。切勿輕視人小。誠恐今日之小人。是將來之恩人。亦未可定也。

○車夫求佛。一日車夫將車輪陷於小坑。不能起。車夫求救於阿彌陀佛。佛果降臨。問曰。你有何事。相求。夫曰。我車落坑。求佛力拔救。佛曰。汝當肩扛其車。而鞭其馬。自然騰出此坑。若汝垂手而待。我亦無能爲矣。如世人急時求佛。亦當先盡其力。乃可任爾誦佛萬聲。不如自行勉力。

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a



或於附錄之錄矣○

附錄一附錄二又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○  
附錄三附錄四又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄五附錄六又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄七附錄八又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄九附錄十又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄十一附錄十二又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄十三附錄十四又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄十五附錄十六又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄十七附錄十八又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄十九附錄二十又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄二十一附錄二十二又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄二十三附錄二十四又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄二十五附錄二十六又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄二十七附錄二十八又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

附錄二十九附錄三十又云德氏今合學以與人學於學之六○

○狼斷羊案○古有兇犬具稟於狼謂羊負伊穀糧數斛總不肯還求狼作主  
 狼則出差將羊拏獲訊曰爾欠某犬穀糧日久不還是何道理羊曰並無此事  
 乃狂犬誣告也狼問犬曰羊不肯招爾有憑據否犬曰鷹鵠皆可作證狼即傳  
 來鷹鵠面面相質鷹鵠稱真事羊欠犬糧我等目擊並非誣告乞恩將羊按律  
 治罪狼對羊曰現有鐵證爾尙賴乎遂殺之於是原告之犬與審事之狼官並  
 干證之鷹鵠蛇蝎一窩共分其羊如世人若有貲財每招橫禍又遇貪狼之官  
 原告如犬干證如鷹鵠則不必望其秉公斷事矣諺云象有齒焚其身豈不平  
 ○毒蛇咬銼○昔有毒蛇沿入鐵鋪遇物即咬適有利銼在前蛇則纏而咬之  
 口觸銼齒血滴可見以爲咬傷此銼復再咬之銼曰汝心太毒不能害人反害  
 自己如世有狠心者常在暗裡以言語誑人而不知實自誑慎之○  
 ○斧頭求柄○昔有斧頭雖銳而無用自思必得一柄方可見用於世乃乞其  
 樹曰先生賜我一木不過僅爲一柄足矣他日自當圖報其樹自顧枝柯繁盛  
 何惜一柄慨然與之斧得其柄所有樹林盡被伐去何其樹之愚哉如世人所  
 謂助虎添翼又云遞刀乞命是也凡人必須各守其分切勿尺寸與人誠恐有  
 如斧柄則悔之晚矣○

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o



欽差大臣兵部尚書兩湖總督林。

兵部尚書兩廣總督鄧。  
兵部侍郎廣東巡撫怡。

會同照會英吉利國王爲令禁鴉片烟事照得天道無私不容害人以利己人情不遠孰非惡殺而好生貴國雖在重洋二萬里外而同此天道同此人情未有不明於生死利害者也我天朝四海爲家大皇帝如天之仁無所不覆而遐荒絕域亦在並生並育之中廣東自開海禁以來流通貿易凡內地民人與外來番船相安於樂利者有數十年於茲矣且於大黃茶葉湖絲等類皆中國寶貴之產外國若不得此卽無以爲命而天朝一視同仁許其販賣出洋絕不靳惜無非推思外服以天地之心爲心也乃有一種奸夷製爲鴉片夾帶販賣誘惑愚民以害其身而謀其利前吸食者尙少近則互相傳染流毒日深在中原富庶蕃昌雖在此等愚民貪口腹而戕其生亦屬孽由自取何必爲愛惜也然以大清一統之天下務在端風俗以正人心豈肯使海內生靈甘心鴉毒是以現將內地販賣鴉片並吸食之人一體嚴行治罪永禁流傳惟思此等毒物係貴國所屬各部轄內鬼蜮奸人私行造作自非貴國王令其製造此物並非諸國皆然又聞貴國亦不准民人吸食犯者必懲自係知其害人故特爲之厲禁

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a





然禁其吸食何如禁其販賣並禁其製造乃爲清源之道若自不食而仍敢製  
造販賣引誘內地愚民則是欲己之生而陷人之死欲己之利而貽人以害此  
皆人情之所痛恨天道之所不容以天朝力振華夷何難立制其命而仰體聖  
明寬大自宜告誡于先且從前未用公文移會 貴國王一旦禁嚴則猶得誘  
爲不知今與 貴國王約將此害人之鴉片永遠斷絕我內地禁人吸食亦屬  
國禁人製造其從前已經造作者貴國立即頒令行搜盡投之海底斷不許天  
地間更有毒物非獨內地民人不受其害即貴國民人既有造作安知其不吸  
食果並造作尙禁之則該國亦不受其害豈不各享太平之福益昭貴國恭順  
之忱如此則明于天理而上天不致降災協乎人情而聖人亦必知許況內地  
既經嚴禁無使吸食即使該國製造終亦無處可賣無利可圖與其虧本徒勞  
何不改圖別業況內地搜出鴉片盡行付火油燒燬再有夷船夾帶鴉片前來  
不能不一體燒燬恐船內所載他貨難免玉石俱焚是利不得而害已形欲害  
人而先害己也天朝之所以臣服萬國者正有不測之神威毋謂言知不早也  
貴國王接到此文即將各海口斷絕緣由速行移覆幸勿誑飾支延貯切

道光十九年二月

日移會英國知照

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o

一所有欽差公使大臣畫押鈐印進出口貨物稅餉則例附粘之冊嗣後廣州  
 福州廈門寧波上海五港口均奉以爲式一所有欽差公使大臣畫押鈐印  
 新定貿易章程附粘之件嗣後五港口均奉以爲式一新定貿易章程第三  
 條貨船進口報關一款內所言罰銀若干員及貨物查抄入官等語此銀連貨  
 應歸中華國帑以充公項一廣州福州廈門寧波上海五港口開關之後  
 其英商貿易處所只准五港口不准赴他處港口亦不許華民在他處港口串  
 同私相貿易將來英國公使有諭示明不許他往而英商如或背約不服禁令  
 及將公使告示置若罔聞擅往他處港口遊奕販賣任憑中國員弁連船連貨  
 一併抄取入官英官不得爭論倘華民在他處港口與英商私串貿易則  
 國法具在應照例辦理一前在江南業經議定以後商欠斷不可官爲保交  
 又新定貿易章程第四條英商與華商交易一款內復將不能執洋行代賠之  
 舊例呈諸着賠切實聲明在案嗣後不拘華商欠英商及英商欠華商之債如  
 果賬據確鑿人在產存均應由華英該管事官一體從公處結以昭平允仍照  
 原約彼此代爲着追均不代爲保償一廣州等五港口英商或常川居住或  
 不時往來均不可妄到鄉間任意遊行又更不可遠入內地貿易

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

[illegible]



禁夜行約。立禁約人某某等。爲嚴禁夜行以靖地方事。國家重門擊柝。預  
 待乎暴客。鄉民提鈴敲梆。緊防其盜賊。皆有明禁。誰敢違犯。近見地方紛亂。盜  
 賊猖狂。總由夜行不謹。奚便稽察。是以乘機暗盜。甚至明火強劫。寢不安枕。家  
 不聊生。害莫測矣。禍孰大焉。爲此設酒會衆。嚴設禁約。一遇黃昏。卽禁人行。直  
 至五更三點。方可任其來往。每日輪流巡邏。如有犯禁者。鳴鑼爲號。各各手執  
 鎗刀弩銃。殺死勿論。倘鳴鑼時查點一名不到。來日清晨。會衆共罰。決不輕貸。  
 特寫立數紙。實處張掛。庶披星戴月之人。知所戒。而鷄鳴狗盜之人。無得逞矣。  
 謹約。請飭除稟。紳衿某某謹稟。稟爲市道連蓬。懇請飭除。以慎火災事。照得火殃一事。雖曰天命。豈非人事。燈  
 燭不慎。猝然禍起。蕭牆爐竈。疎虞遂爾。殃及池魚。若不預爲防禦。其害將有不  
 可勝言。彼市道上。兩傍連蓬蓋密。倘有火燭。最易惹着。且蓬係引火之物。行道  
 之人。烟火悞及。卽行焚燎。況今隆冬之際。萬物焦乾。雖山草亦爲之着火。而矧  
 蓬之素易爲力乎。倘不拆去。深爲不便。理合稟請。台階飭差。着令毀拆。免爲  
 火災。此豈獨某等受其益。實彼此俱得相安耳。爲此稟叩。伏爲垂鑒。沾恩切赴  
 老爺臺前施行。



我有一件事情求你。什麼事情。放心說罷。求你給我一把刀子。給我作這個。懇求大爺。這個恩典。狠情願。多謝。好說。受了你的恩。忘不了。你狠知禮。我艱爲你。願意什麼。不必多禮。我歡喜你。不該當。理當。你能勾倚靠我。叫我作什麼。你一說。我就作。你要什麼。我就作什麼。不敢求你替我問張先生好。是我的好朋友。留下這麼些個禮貌。叫我失禮麼。不要這樣好。我要說一句話。恐怕得罪你。隨便說。你情分大。是不是。實在是。我說老實話。果然是這樣。誰疑惑。我想是。我說不是。打賭罷。你賭上多少。一兩銀子。說真。說謊。假話。說虛話。我發誓。一定。的話。一個人說了一次。謊。後來雖然說實話。沒有人信。凡人撒謊。就丟了臉。不要隨口答應。這個還有人信麼。這個是妄謊言。我玩兒。我不過說笑話。使得。該當作什麼。有什麼可作的。如今我們作什麼好。你給我什麼主意。這個怎麼樣。辨法兒。等一等。我這樣作罷。你想這一件事情。怎麼樣。都是一個樣。你從那裡來。往那裡去。我去北京。從朝裡來。請進來。近我來。離開。走罷。去罷。往後退一點兒。來這裡。等一會兒。等我來。他們一齊去了。不要這麼快走。你走的太快。不要動手。在這裡坐。門關了。開門。從這裡過。過不去。你丟了什麼。我沒丟什麼。爲什麼。因爲我拾了一件東西。高聲說。低聲說。你說的太快。不能懂得。

5

10

15

20

25

30

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a





5 你會說中國話麼。你說了什麼。總沒有聽見這個某人告訴  
 10 他。你說了這個沒有。沒有。請問這個是什麼。知道這個麼。說得說不得。爲什麼  
 15 你不答應。你聽見我說麼。我聽不見。說清楚一點兒。來這裡聽。我離那個人  
 20 遠聽不見他的話。震聾了我的耳朵。你懂得清他的話麼。你懂得他說過的  
 25 我說的。你都懂得麼。你說的。我全懂得。都懂得。都不懂得。明白了沒有。這個甚  
 麼意思。怎麼樣解說。我在你頭裡知道。比方不知道有什麼關係。這個我不過  
 想是這樣。認得他麼。見過他幾次呢。不記得。次數忘了。我麼。我記不清楚。記  
 得。狠清。想不起來。想起來了。你幾歲。先生貴庚。多大年紀。有二十歲。你比我大  
 你大概六十多歲。娶了親沒有。你父母都在麼。先父死了。有兩年。母親再嫁了  
 有三個月。有幾個兒子。有幾位令郎。有幾位閨女。三個姑娘。兄弟幾個。在的單  
 我一個別的都死了。你說這一句話。我起了一個念頭。想起了什麼。免不了死。  
 天氣。狼好。我們出去。嘔一嘔罷。我們涼快涼快。我們上城罷。路不便。不方便。不  
 便。易。要坐車麼。我身上軟弱。沒有力量走。我走不動。要行旱路。要行水路呢。  
 要上船麼。要幾槳的船。夥計。你帶我過河罷。甘心。這一隻船沒有桅麼。搖槳走  
 有逆風。有頂頭風。要在哪裡上岸。在大馬頭那裡。臨近了河邊。下錨。這裡好阿。

a n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

嚙呀。這個地方。很好看。溫和的。涼爽的。看樹都開了。花兒。這一根落了。葉子。  
 麥子熟了。你乏了麼。實在困倦了。在這個青草上。踢着好。進那個樹林。在這些  
 樹底下。狼好的。陰涼。今年菓子多。樹多。結了菓子。今年年豐。舊年是荒年。這裡  
 有狼好的。蘋果。沙梨。李子。櫻桃。我寧要核桃。或是栗子。我狠想吃桃兒。橘子。柑  
 子。柑子。橙子。這些。梅子。更好。有葡萄。賣麼。值多少錢。一斤。賣得四十個大錢。一  
 斤。買十幾斤罷。天晚了。日頭要落山。等一會。天就黑了。快走罷。你乏了。吃晚飯。  
 天氣怎麼樣。好。天氣冷。天陰了。這個晚上。好。天氣。有潮氣。有雲彩。看不見星宿。  
 亂起風來了。是一個暴風。天氣常變。好。下雨。下雹子。下雪。雪花開了。打雷。雷响。  
 打閃。雷打死了一個人。風吹。風大。暴風。過去了。看得見。天虹。是個好天氣的。憑  
 據。有霧。日出。慢慢的。就散了。下露。下霜。○什麼時候。幾下鐘。不晚。回家去罷。還  
 有時候。纔上午。差不多。一下鐘。打了一下三刻。還沒有打三下二刻。你怎麼知  
 道。聽見鐘打了。我想。不是這樣遲。看你的表。我的表。走的快。不對。表慢幾分。上  
 看日晷。沙子表。在那裡。○你歡喜那個時候。春天。是。最好的。這個天氣。溫和的。  
 也。不熱。也不冷。這不算春天。算是冬天。樹都沒有發芽。這夏天。熱的。狠。我出了  
 汗。要熱死。總沒覺得這樣熱。該當許多的。苜蓿草。要收莊稼。割完了。莊稼。秋天

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a



1. The first part of the document is a letter from the President of the United States to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a formal address, and it begins with the words "I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 29th inst. and in reply to inform you that the same has been forwarded to the proper authorities for their consideration." The letter then goes on to discuss the state of the Union and the President's policies.

2. The second part of the document is a report from the Secretary of the Treasury, dated January 1, 1861. It is a detailed account of the financial state of the country, and it begins with the words "I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 29th inst. and in reply to inform you that the same has been forwarded to the proper authorities for their consideration." The report then goes on to discuss the state of the Treasury and the Secretary's policies.

3. The third part of the document is a report from the Secretary of the Interior, dated January 1, 1861. It is a detailed account of the state of the interior, and it begins with the words "I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 29th inst. and in reply to inform you that the same has been forwarded to the proper authorities for their consideration." The report then goes on to discuss the state of the interior and the Secretary's policies.

4. The fourth part of the document is a report from the Secretary of the Navy, dated January 1, 1861. It is a detailed account of the state of the Navy, and it begins with the words "I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 29th inst. and in reply to inform you that the same has been forwarded to the proper authorities for their consideration." The report then goes on to discuss the state of the Navy and the Secretary's policies.

5. The fifth part of the document is a report from the Secretary of the War, dated January 1, 1861. It is a detailed account of the state of the War, and it begins with the words "I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 29th inst. and in reply to inform you that the same has been forwarded to the proper authorities for their consideration." The report then goes on to discuss the state of the War and the Secretary's policies.

○上學。你這樣快往那裡跑。我上學。我也往那裡去。等一展眼。不要買。儘在我  
 們頭裡走的那一個是誰。是我們同學的。咱們都一塊兒走罷。○你爲什麼來  
 的這麼遲。我昨日熬了夜。不能早起來。你是幾下鐘起來的。你好懶惰。爲什麼  
 前日不來。那一日事情很忙。不得空兒來。料理世俗的事情。上頭有的危險。不  
 少。若別人命你罷了。到底你的師傅命你不聽。這個了不得。況且你耽擱了你  
 的事情。有大關係。隨便他打。不要快了。你的本分。這三天你不念書。不好。再不  
 要這樣。前一次你來這裡。我吩咐了你什麼。去你的房坐。帶你的帽子。看你的  
 書。預備你要背的書。聽命。念完了。沒有還沒有。你筆墨硯都有了麼。這個埋字  
 什麼聲音。音買。怎麼解說。有葬的意思。總沒有看見這樣的一個字。這一本書  
 難懂。我沒有許多的工夫。因爲我該當起去買東西。另外還有別的事情。該當  
 辦。你小心。每日念的書。另外一個月。還要去做兩篇文章。○你好呀。狠好。你用了  
 飯麼。吃了。令尊好。家父好。你的舅舅怎麼樣。他如今比頭裡好的多。明日再見。  
 我該當送行。○天將黑。到了睡覺的時候。夥計你同我來。怕鬼麼。不怕。放下蚊  
 帳。留下燈。滅燈。明天早些起來。叫我。我該當清早起來。一定記得麼。一定記得。  
 打火。點燈。沒有火。石火。煤兒。○誰打門。是誰。我還沒有起來。早醒了。天大亮了。

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a



一個人學官話來做甚麼的呢。頭一件預備自己將來出身做官。伺候上司臨  
 蒞屬員。要做一個有本事的官。其次就做大客商。或開行店。或往外省走水  
 要做一個麻俐的客商。再其次就是居家罷則。你是個有衣食的人。有體面的  
 人在鄉族中年長月長。鄉情族事。少不了也有件把事兒。要替人家料理。理  
 也得見見地方。把事兒說個底細情節。一則衛顧鄉族。二則保護門楣。原是爲  
 這三門起見。並不是說幾句官話。在大街上鬧頑意兒。笑話人家。嚇哄人家。混  
 薰人家。就算了事。所以你們總要把大方的話兒。接待長上的話兒。應酬朋  
 友的話兒。教道晚輩的話兒。使喚底下人的話兒。到了外頭。有交官接府的話  
 兒。對着買賣人的話兒。樣樣都有個款式。要在這上頭留心。纔是正經的。阿。纔  
 不枉了學官話的這一翻工夫。阿。○

你做學生的人。上書房念書。甚麼都要有個規矩。清早起來。洗了臉。喝了茶  
 稟告爹爹。媽媽。孩兒往書房去了。說過之後。包起書本。出大門口。端端正正。珍  
 珍重重的去。兩隻脚不要混跳。兩隻眼睛不要混瞧東西。一直走到書房裡頭。珍  
 把書本放下。望聖人上頭作個揖。又替先生作個揖。然後坐着念書。把書背得  
 熟熟兒的。纔送到先生卓上。背書時候。又要一句句伶牙俐齒。不要含糊錯漏。

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

[illegible]



問候。久切瞻韓未獲如願。近聞移旌江右。德化日新。欣羨之私。更深寤寐。恨不能插翅而飛翔左右。觀盛化而聆德音也。今緣鴻便。特借一行。以申積悃。兼請金安。伏惟鑒念。○

答。盛名貫耳。非一日矣。懷伊人而不見。正情切于蒹葭。乃華翰下頒。宛如覲面。頓解生平之飢渴。何幸如之。惟是先施之雅。專屬仁人。未免鄙野。村夫自增內愧耳。倘有良緣。得邀惠顧。則樽酒論文。可不令古人擅美于前矣。是望是禱。敬此裁覆。○

餽物

良朋久闊。音耗全無。江海之阻。人殆甚。豈得云宛在一方乎。惟是自信忘形。當不復存溯洄無自之嗟。致乖涵養。况後會有期。不在于世。願在于天。祇期各自努力可耳。茲緣鴻便。附上手巾一方。小刀兩把。些微朽物。本不足當木李之投。而千里鵝毛。物輕情重。諒必觀此而益憐愚魯之旅人矣。主威咫尺。默禱內務。期片刻留神。謹此遠遠。順請福安。并候近祉。並候康寧。

上

某某兄台大人文几

愚弟某某字頓

古詩 大風歌 5  
 方○ 春宮曲 昨夜風開露井桃。未央前殿月輪高。平陽歌舞新承寵。簾  
 外春寒賜錦袍。○ 五言 幽居 貴賤雖異等。出門皆有營。獨無外物牽。遂  
 此幽居情。微雨夜來過。不知春草生。青山忽已曙。鳥雀繞舍鳴。時與道人偶。或  
 隨樵者行。自當安蹇劣。誰謂薄世榮。○ 過酒家 此日長昏飲。非關養性靈。  
 眼看人盡醉。何忍獨爲醒。  
 律詩 五言律 幽州夜飲 涼風吹夜雨。蕭瑟動寒林。正有高堂宴。能忘  
 遲暮心。軍中宜劍舞。塞上重笳音。不作邊城將。誰知恩遇深。○  
 送翰林張司馬南海勒碑 冠冕通南極。文章落上台。詔從三殿去。碑到百  
 蠻開。野館濃花發。春帆細雨來。不知滄海上。天遣幾時回。○  
 七言律 幽州新歲作 去歲荆南梅似雪。今年薊北雪如梅。共知  
 人事何嘗定。且喜年華去復來。邊鎮戍歌連日動。京城燎火徹明開。遙遙西向  
 長安日。願上南山壽一杯。○ 五言排律 白帝懷古  
 日落滄江晚。停橈問土風。城臨巴子國。臺沒漢王宮。荒服仍周甸。深山尚禹功。  
 巖懸青壁斷。地險碧流通。古木生雲際。歸帆出霧中。川途去無限。客思坐何窮。

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a

人車可當。當日。卒。卒。生。命。來。美。國。福。日。連。京。蘇。蘇。人。辦。理。國。家。政。務。

古書增補 曲禮 卷下 去列陳南端燈 今平臨海宮破林其味

這國裡的戰爭發源神祕而永不變質。三天後我回○

參酌林氏同品南唐書  
張曼卿南唐文苑英華卷三  
張曼卿南唐文苑英華卷三

國策必重中宣院。殺賊土匪。不若益其兵。誠恩賊。○

[illegible]

知各人等回返國故土

○榮世臨諱  
蘇家

壯健以資奮勇。來歷不曉。草中。青山。粉。白。細。烏。給。了。舍。無。知。與。主。人。暗。交。

懷谷集詩話○  
立言  
臨風  
貫興鑑異  
世門習奇  
等隨無收  
時錄

○ 春 寒 曲 兼 寄 鳳 閣 諸 公 謝 朱 吳 諸 公 其 詩 高 平 不 遠 知 義 德 承 諸 公

[illegible]

鄭案之門○人主昏昧中昏主人愚必昏一民主不賢無常敗○

畫壁說。日日錫便不望。寄語之。江氏險。錫對不憚。結罪之人。衣災。錫不

將不非。故其色。吾子。風氣。斷。不。非。樂。隨。其。心。外。而。可。以。隨。官。而。民。醫。而。

太燭喉其父喪其子氣風逆如骨節酸疼者下蠶食鹽薑當白注

顯聖香翰人。予曰：人雖蠢然，後育並憂，熔映其書，式勵其用，常如其人，式

謝公雖到子不念恩恩不向公要公却喜吟

人自始。至一。終。下。二。三。四。五。六。七。八。九。十。十一。十二。十三。十四。十五。十六。十七。十八。十九。二十。二十一。二十二。二十三。二十四。二十五。二十六。二十七。二十八。二十九。三十。三十一。三十二。三十三。三十四。三十五。三十六。三十七。三十八。三十九。四十。四十一。四十二。四十三。四十四。四十五。四十六。四十七。四十八。四十九。五十。五十一。五十二。五十三。五十四。五十五。五十六。五十七。五十八。五十九。六十。六十一。六十二。六十三。六十四。六十五。六十六。六十七。六十八。六十九。七十。七十一。七十二。七十三。七十四。七十五。七十六。七十七。七十八。七十九。八十。八十一。八十二。八十三。八十四。八十五。八十六。八十七。八十八。八十九。九十。九十一。九十二。九十三。九十四。九十五。九十六。九十七。九十八。九十九。一百。

無神者可以激發其熱心而思進而求其因之變而爲之變而斷不

西蜀之亂有文淵堂書以入喉而不礙必獲而與焉必於山冥言畢矣而

水涵天。天涵萬物。升而合於蒼生。入心下而歸天。而返於萬物。此其所以

氣不固。夫正之難言不誠哉。出之大聲即亡國。以不爲計則取罪惡不立。

光。鶴。也。昔。日。日。破。斗。恭。婦。不。岐。於。命。○不。登。山。不。暎。天。之。面。不。調。帶。不。原。服。

人與此。此天與。未熟未熟。高千丈。葉如蒲。子一。一。

觀則本耕墾火土煮酪各人自耕門前坐落無人荒土盡邀文照色

○ 雨霽後 小淋風不涼 井案嬌之 甘同必 煮香 蘭

[illegible]

俗語○一舉兩得。桑條從小揉。順風不起浪。在家敬父母。何必遠燒香。隨風到  
 舵。順水推船。火上添油。各人自掃門前雪。莫管他人瓦上霜。德妙文無色。  
 人便如此。如此。天理未然。未始。樹高千丈。葉落歸根。君子一言。快馬一鞭。  
 光陰似箭。日月如梭。恭敬不如從命。○不登山不知天之高。不臨谿不知地之  
 厚。不聞先王之遺言。不知學問之大。鏡明則塵埃不染。智明則邪惡不生。  
 水底魚。天邊鷹。高可射。低可釣。惟有人心不可料。天可度。地可量。惟有人心不  
 可防。畫虎畫皮難畫骨。知人知面不知心。對面與語。心隔千山。寡言擇交。可以  
 無悔。客可以無憂。辱。慙寡精神爽。思多血氣衰。囚之夢。澈渴之夢。漿酒不醉人  
 人自醉。紅顏薄命。一客不煩。二主做。一日和尚撞一日鐘。欲滅迹而走雪中。  
 樹倒無陰。君子不念舊惡。單絲不成線。要知心腹事。但聽口中言。若要斷酒法。  
 醒眼看醉人。子曰。人無遠慮。必有近憂。欲知其君。先視其臣。欲識其人。先視其  
 友。欲知其父。先視其子。屏風雖破。骨格猶存。君子雖貧。禮義常在。白玉移於汚  
 泥。不能沾溼其色。君子處於濁地。不能染亂其心。松栢可以耐雪霜。明智可以  
 涉艱危。○日月雖明。不照覆盤之下。刀劍雖快。不斬無罪之人。非災橫禍不入  
 慎家之門。○人生智未生。智生人易老。心智一切生。不覺無常到。○

o n m l k j i h g f e d c b a





